XC40 2022 (21w46) User Manual

Version 2025-08-28

Disclaimer

Due to the dynamic nature of our software-based product, the content of this PDF represents the most up-to-date version of the user manual as of the time of printing. As we continuously update and improve our product, certain content may not reflect the most up-to-date information in a future instance. Therefore, we strongly recommend utilising the digital user manual app in your car's centre display for the most accurate and up-to-date information. You can also access information in the Volvo Cars mobile app.

Please note that if you choose to print the manual, we cannot guarantee the validity of the information in future instances, as updates may have occurred since the time of printing. To ensure the highest level of safety and optimal product usage, we strongly advise relying on the digital user manual, which can be easily accessed through your car's centre display.

This printable version is generic and does not correspond to your car. If there are discrepancies between this printable manual and the manual you see in your car's centre display, the latter takes precedence.

Contents

1. Owner information
   - 1.1 Owner information
   - 1.2 The owner's manual and the environment
   - 1.3 Reading the owner's manual
   - 1.4 Owner's manual in centre display
   - 1.5 Navigate in the owner's manual in the centre display
2. Your Volvo
   - 2.1 Volvo's areas of innovation
     - 2.1.1 Environmental efficiency
     - 2.1.2 Sensus - online connectivity and entertainment
   - 2.2 Volvo ID
     - 2.2.1 Volvo ID
     - 2.2.2 Creating a Volvo ID
     - 2.2.3 Problems logging in with Volvo ID
   - 2.3 Type approvals and licences
     - 2.3.1 License agreement for driver display
     - 2.3.2 Type approval for HomeLink®
     - 2.3.3 License agreement for audio and media
     - 2.3.4 Type approval Radio Equipment Directive
     - 2.3.5 Certificate for wireless charger
     - 2.3.6 Type approval for the remote control key system
     - 2.3.7 Customer Privacy Policy
     - 2.3.8 Terms & Conditions for Services
     - 2.3.9 Navigation license agreements
     - 2.3.10 Candidate List Substance Information (CL) in accordance with the Reach Regulation, Article 33.1
     - 2.3.11 Spotify License agreement
   - 2.4 Displays and controls by the driver in a left-hand drive car
   - 2.5 Displays and controls by the driver in a right-hand drive car
   - 2.6 Connection of equipment to the car's diagnostic socket
   - 2.7 Driver distraction
   - 2.8 Change of market when importing or relocating

2.9 Showing the car's identification number
2.10 Recording data
2.11 Installation of accessories
2.12 Software updates
2.13 Important information on accessories and auxiliary equipment

3. Safety
3.1 Seatbelts
3.1.1 Seatbelts
3.1.2 Putting on and taking off seatbelts
3.1.3 Seatbelt tensioner
3.1.4 Resetting the electric seatbelt tensioner
3.1.5 Door and seatbelt reminder
3.2 Airbags
3.2.1 Airbags
3.2.2 Driver airbags
3.2.3 Passenger airbag
3.2.4 Activating and deactivating passenger airbag
3.2.5 Inflatable curtains
3.2.6 Side airbags
3.3 Child safety
3.3.1 Mounting points for child seats
3.3.1.1 Lower mounting points for child seats
3.3.1.2 i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats
3.3.1.3 Upper mounting points for child seats
3.3.2 Child seat location
3.3.2.1 Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts
3.3.2.2 Child seat positioning
3.3.2.3 Child seat mounting
3.3.2.4 Overview table for location of child seats
3.3.2.5 Table for location of ISOFIX child seats
3.3.2.6 Table for location of i-Size child seats
3.3.3 Activating and deactivating child safety locks
3.3.4 Child safety
3.3.5 Child seats
3.3.6 Type lists for Volvo's child restraint systems
3.3.7 Activating and deactivating passenger airbag
3.4 Safety mode
3.4.1 Traffic accident
3.4.2 Safety mode
3.4.3 Starting and moving the car after safety mode
3.5 Safety
3.6 Safety during pregnancy
3.7 Whiplash Protection System

4. Displays and voice control
4.1 Driver display
4.1.1 Gauges and indicators in driver display
4.1.1.1 Fuel gauge
4.1.1.2 Outside temperature gauge
4.1.1.3 Gear shift indicator
4.1.2 Trip computer
4.1.2.1 Trip computer
4.1.2.2 Show trip data in driver display

4.1.2.3 Resetting the trip meter
4.1.2.4 Show trip statistics in centre display
4.1.2.5 Settings for trip statistics
4.1.3 Driver display
4.1.4 Driver display settings
4.1.5 License agreement for driver display
4.1.6 App menu in the driver display
4.1.7 Managing the app menu in the driver display
4.1.8 Indicator and warning symbols
4.1.9 Messages in the driver display
4.1.10 Date and time
4.2 Centre display
4.2.1 Settings
4.2.1.1 Resetting user data for change of ownership
4.2.1.2 Other settings in the centre display's top view
4.2.1.3 Resetting settings in the centre display
4.2.1.4 Open contextual setup in the centre display
4.2.1.5 Changing system units
4.2.1.6 Switching off and changing system sound volume in the centre display
4.2.1.7 Changing system language
4.2.1.8 Changing appearance in the centre display
4.2.1.9 Show trip data in driver display
4.2.1.10 Settings for trip statistics
4.2.1.11 Driver display settings
4.2.1.12 Date and time
4.2.1.13 User terms and conditions and data sharing
4.2.1.14 Activating and deactivating data sharing
4.2.1.15 Settings for unlocking
4.2.1.16 Settings for Care Key
4.2.1.17 Lock indication setting
4.2.1.18 Settings for Keyless entry
4.2.1.19 Automatic parking brake activation setting
4.2.2 Driver profiles
4.2.2.1 Driver profiles
4.2.2.2 Renaming a driver profile
4.2.2.3 Link key to driver profile
4.2.2.4 Protect driver profile
4.2.2.5 Selecting driver profile
4.2.2.6 Resetting settings in the driver profiles
4.2.3 Overview of centre display
4.2.4 Activating and deactivating centre display
4.2.5 Managing the centre display
4.2.6 Navigating in the centre display's views
4.2.7 Managing subviews in centre display
4.2.8 Symbols in the centre display's status bar
4.2.9 Function view in centre display
4.2.10 Moving apps and buttons in centre display
4.2.11 Message in centre display
4.2.12 Keyboard in the centre display
4.2.13 Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display
4.2.14 Changing keyboard language in centre display
4.2.15 Show trip statistics in centre display

4.2.16 Owner's manual in centre display
4.2.17 Navigate in the owner's manual in the centre display
4.3 Symbols and messages
4.3.1 Message handling
4.3.1.1 Message in centre display
4.3.1.2 Managing messages in the centre display
4.3.1.3 Handling a message saved from the centre display
4.3.1.4 Messages in the driver display
4.3.1.5 Managing messages in the driver display
4.3.1.6 Handling a message saved from the driver display
4.3.2 Messages for BLIS
4.3.3 Messages for City Safety
4.3.4 Messages for Cross Traffic Alert
4.3.5 Symbols and messages for electronic stability control
4.3.6 Symbols and messages for adaptive cruise control
4.3.7 Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist
4.3.8 Symbols and messages for lane assistance
4.3.9 Display mode for lane assistance
4.3.10 Messages for Park Assist Pilot
4.3.11 Symbols and messages for Park Assist Pilot
4.3.12 Symbols and messages for park assist camera
4.3.13 Symbols and messages for steering assistance upon risk of collision
4.3.14 Symbols in the centre display's status bar
4.3.15 Indicator and warning symbols
4.3.16 Symbols and messages for parking climate control
4.3.17 Overheating in the engine and drive system
4.3.18 Symbols and messages for automatic gearbox
4.4 Voice control
4.4.1 Controlling climate control with voice control
4.4.2 Voice control of radio and media
4.4.3 Voice control
4.4.4 Using voice control
4.4.5 Updating voice control
4.4.6 Tips for improving voice control
4.4.7 Settings for voice control
4.4.8 Command list for voice control of the navigation system
4.4.9 Controlling a telephone with voice control
4.4.10 Voice control of text messages
4.4.11 Control the navigation system with voice control
4.5 Displays and controls by the driver in a left-hand drive car
4.6 Displays and controls by the driver in a right-hand drive car

5. Lighting
5.1 Exterior lighting
5.1.1 Active bending lights
5.1.2 Active main beam
5.1.3 Using direction indicators
5.1.4 Brake lights
5.1.5 Rear fog lamp
5.1.6 Front fog lamps/cornering lights
5.1.7 Dipped beam
5.1.8 Using main beam
5.1.9 Using home safe lighting

5.1.10 Adapting the headlamp pattern from the headlamps
5.1.11 Emergency brake lights
5.1.12 Position lamps
5.1.13 Guidance light
5.1.14 Hazard warning flashers
5.1.15 Daytime running lights
5.1.16 Exterior lamp positions
5.1.17 Bulb specifications
5.1.18 Checking trailer lamps
5.2 Interior lighting
5.2.1 Interior lighting
5.2.2 Adjusting interior lighting
5.3 Adjusting light functions via the centre display
5.4 Lighting control
6. Windows, glass and mirrors
6.1 Rearview mirrors
6.1.1 HomeLink®
6.1.2 Rearview and door mirrors
6.1.3 Angling adjustment of the door mirrors
6.1.4 Adjusting rearview mirror dimming
6.1.5 Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors
6.1.6 Storing a position for seat and door mirrors
6.1.7 Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors
6.1.8 Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors
6.2 Windscreen and rear window
6.2.1 Damaged windscreen
6.2.2 Wiper blades and washer fluid
6.2.3 Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing
6.2.4 Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer
6.2.5 Using the rain sensor
6.2.6 Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function
6.2.7 Using windscreen and headlamp washers
6.2.8 Using windscreen wipers
6.2.9 Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors
6.2.10 Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors
6.2.11 Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen
6.2.12 Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated windscreen
6.3 Side windows and panoramic roof
6.3.1 Power windows
6.3.2 Operating power windows
6.3.3 Panoramic roof
6.3.4 Operating the panoramic roof
6.3.5 Automatic closing of the panoramic roof's sun blind
6.4 Windows, glass and mirrors
6.5 Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds
6.6 Reset sequence for pinch protection
6.7 Activating and deactivating max defroster
7. Seats and steering wheel
7.1 Front seat
7.1.1 Climate controls for front seat
7.1.1.1 Activating and deactivating heated front seat
7.1.1.2 Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat

7.1.1.3 Regulating fan level for front seat
7.1.1.4 Regulating temperature for front seat
7.1.1.5 Synchronising temperature
7.1.2 Memory function for front seat
7.1.2.1 Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors
7.1.2.2 Storing a position for seat and door mirrors
7.1.3 Front seats
7.1.4 Power front seat
7.1.5 Adjusting the power front seat
7.1.6 Manual front seat
7.1.7 Adjusting the length of the seat cushion in the front seat
7.1.8 Adjusting the lumbar support in the front seat
7.2 Rear seat
7.2.1 Climate controls for rear seat
7.2.1.1 Activating and deactivating heated rear seat
7.2.2 Rear seat
7.2.3 Adjusting the head restraints in the rear seat
7.2.4 Lowering the backrests in the rear seat
7.2.5 Through-load hatch in the rear seat
7.3 Steering wheel
7.3.1 Speed-dependent steering force
7.3.2 Steering wheel controls and horn
7.3.3 Adjusting the steering wheel
7.3.4 Steering lock
7.3.5 Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel
7.3.6 Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel
8. Climate control
8.1 Climate system controls
8.1.1 Climate controls for passenger compartment
8.1.1.1 Activating auto climate control
8.1.1.2 Regulating fan level for front seat
8.1.1.3 Activating and deactivating air conditioning
8.1.1.4 Activating and deactivating air recirculation
8.1.1.5 Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation
8.1.1.6 Regulating temperature for front seat
8.1.1.7 Synchronising temperature
8.1.1.8 Changing air distribution
8.1.2 Climate controls for seat and steering wheel
8.1.2.1 Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel
8.1.2.2 Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel
8.1.2.3 Activating and deactivating heated rear seat
8.1.2.4 Activating and deactivating heated front seat
8.1.2.5 Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat
8.1.3 Climate controls for windows and mirrors
8.1.3.1 Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors
8.1.3.2 Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors
8.1.3.3 Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen
8.1.3.4 Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated windscreen
8.1.3.5 Activating and deactivating max defroster
8.1.4 Climate controls
8.2 Air distribution
8.2.1 Activating and deactivating air recirculation

8.2.2 Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation
8.2.3 Activating and deactivating max defroster
8.2.4 Air distribution
8.2.5 Changing air distribution
8.2.6 Table of air distribution options
8.2.7 Opening, closing and aiming the air vents
8.3 Parking climate
8.3.1 Preconditioning
8.3.1.1 Preconditioning
8.3.1.2 Start and switch off preconditioning
8.3.1.3 Preconditioning time setting
8.3.1.4 Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning
8.3.1.5 Removing time setting for preconditioning
8.3.1.6 Adding and editing time setting for preconditioning
8.3.2 Climate comfort for parking
8.3.2.1 Climate comfort when parking
8.3.2.2 Starting and switching off climate comfort when parking
8.3.3 Parking climate
8.3.4 Symbols and messages for parking climate control
8.3.5 Parking heater
8.4 Heater
8.4.1 Heater
8.4.2 Parking heater
8.4.3 Additional heater
8.4.4 Activating and deactivating automatic start of auxiliary heater
8.5 Climate
8.6 Controlling climate control with voice control
8.7 Servicing the climate control system
8.8 Climate control - sensors
8.9 Climate zones
8.10 Perceived temperature
9. Key, locks and alarm
9.1 Remote control key
9.1.1 Driver profiles
9.1.1.1 Driver profiles
9.1.1.2 Renaming a driver profile
9.1.1.3 Link key to driver profile
9.1.1.4 Protect driver profile
9.1.1.5 Selecting driver profile
9.1.1.6 Resetting settings in the driver profiles
9.1.2 Link key to driver profile
9.1.3 Immobiliser
9.1.4 Keys
9.1.5 Ordering additional keys
9.1.6 Replacing the battery in the key
9.1.7 Locking and unlocking using the key's buttons
9.1.8 Care Key – restricted key
9.1.9 Settings for Care Key
9.1.10 Unlocking the tailgate with a key button
9.1.11 Detachable key blade
9.1.12 Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade
9.1.13 The key's range

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

9.1.14 Type approval for the remote control key system
9.1.15 Antenna locations for the start and lock systems
9.1.16 Ignition positions
9.1.17 Selecting ignition mode
9.2 Locking and unlocking
9.2.1 Keyless locking and unlocking
9.2.1.1 Operating the tailgate with foot movement
9.2.1.2 Antenna locations for the start and lock systems
9.2.1.3 Keyless locking and unlocking with touch-sensitive surfaces
9.2.1.4 Keyless locking and unlocking
9.2.1.5 Settings for Keyless entry
9.2.1.6 Closing and locking tailgate with button
9.2.1.7 Keyless unlocking of the tailgate
9.2.2 Keys
9.2.3 Locking and unlocking using the key's buttons
9.2.4 Settings for unlocking
9.2.5 Unlocking the tailgate with a key button
9.2.6 Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade
9.2.7 Automatic locking when driving
9.2.8 Double lock
9.2.9 Setting the max. opening for electrically operated tailgate
9.2.10 Locking and unlocking from inside the car
9.2.11 Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car
9.2.12 Private locking
9.2.13 Activating and deactivating private locking
9.2.14 Locking and unlocking
9.2.15 Activating and deactivating child safety locks
9.2.16 Lock confirmation
9.2.17 Lock indication setting
9.3 Alarm
9.3.1 Alarm
9.3.2 Activating and deactivating alarms
9.3.3 Reduced alarm level
10. Driver support
10.1 Cruise control functions
10.1.1 Cruise control
10.1.1.1 Cruise control
10.1.1.2 Standby mode for cruise control
10.1.1.3 Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions
10.1.2 Adaptive cruise control
10.1.2.1 Adaptive cruise control
10.1.2.2 Symbols and messages for adaptive cruise control
10.1.2.3 Standby mode for adaptive cruise control
10.1.2.4 Automatic braking with cruise control functions
10.1.2.5 Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions
10.1.2.6 Change of target with cruise control functions
10.1.2.7 Setting time interval to vehicle ahead
10.1.2.8 Warning from cruise control functions in the event of a collision risk
10.1.3 Pilot Assist
10.1.3.1 Automatic braking with cruise control functions
10.1.3.2 Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions
10.1.3.3 Change of target with cruise control functions

10.1.3.4 Pilot Assist
10.1.3.5 Display for adaptive cruise control and Pilot Assist
10.1.3.6 Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist
10.1.3.7 Standby mode for Pilot Assist
10.1.3.8 Setting time interval to vehicle ahead
10.1.3.9 Difference between Pilot Assist and lane assistance
10.1.3.10 Warning from cruise control functions in the event of a collision risk
10.1.4 Overtaking assistance
10.1.4.1 Overtaking Assistance
10.1.4.2 Using Overtaking Assistance
10.1.5 Cruise control functions
10.1.6 Steering wheel buttons for the cruise control functions
10.1.7 Selecting and activating cruise control functions
10.1.8 Deactivating cruise control functions
10.2 Speed limiter functions
10.2.1 Speed limiter
10.2.1.1 Speed limiter
10.2.2 Automatic speed limiter
10.2.2.1 Automatic speed limiter
10.3 Distance Warning
10.3.1 Setting time interval to vehicle ahead
10.3.2 Warning from cruise control functions in the event of a collision risk
10.4 Blind Spot Information
10.4.1 BLIS
10.4.2 Activating and deactivating BLIS
10.4.3 Messages for BLIS
10.4.4 Limitations of BLIS
10.5 Cross Traffic Alert
10.5.1 Cross Traffic Alert
10.5.2 Activating and deactivating Cross Traffic Alert
10.5.3 Messages for Cross Traffic Alert
10.5.4 Limitations of Cross Traffic Alert
10.6 Rear Collision Warning
10.6.1 Rear Collision Warning
10.6.2 Limitations of Rear Collision Warning
10.7 Connected Safety
10.7.1 Connected Safety
10.7.2 Activating and deactivating Connected Safety
10.7.3 Limitations of Connected Safety
10.8 City Safety
10.8.1 City Safety™
10.8.2 Subfunctions for City Safety
10.8.3 Setting the warning distance for City Safety
10.8.4 Messages for City Safety
10.8.5 Limitations of City Safety
10.8.6 City Safety brakes for oncoming vehicles
10.8.7 City Safety in cross traffic
10.8.8 Limitations for City Safety in cross traffic
10.8.9 Automatic braking in the event of an impeded evasive manoeuvre with City Safety
10.8.10 Detection of obstacles with City Safety
10.9 Steering assistance at risk of collision
10.9.1 Steering assistance at risk of collision

10.9.2 Activating or deactivating steering assistance in the event of a collision risk
10.9.3 Symbols and messages for steering assistance upon risk of collision
10.9.4 Limitations for steering assistance at risk of collision
10.9.5 Steering assistance upon risk of run-off
10.9.6 Steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision
10.9.7 Steering assistance upon risk of rear-end collision
10.10 Driver Alert Control
10.10.1 Driver Alert Control
10.10.2 Activating and deactivating Driver Alert Control
10.10.3 Selecting rest stop guidance in the event of a warning from Driver Alert Control
10.10.4 Limitations of Driver Alert Control
10.11 Lane assistance
10.11.1 Lane assistance
10.11.2 Activating and deactivating lane assistance
10.11.3 Difference between Pilot Assist and lane assistance
10.11.4 Select assistance option for lane assistance
10.11.5 Symbols and messages for lane assistance
10.11.6 Display mode for lane assistance
10.11.7 Limitations of Lane assistance
10.12 Electronic stability control
10.12.1 Electronic stability control
10.12.2 Symbols and messages for electronic stability control
10.12.3 Electronic Stability Control in sport mode
10.12.4 Activating and deactivating sport mode for electronic stability control
10.13 Road Sign Information
10.13.1 Road Sign Information
10.13.2 Road Sign Information and Sensus Navigation
10.13.3 Activating and deactivating Road Sign Information
10.13.4 Limitations of Road Sign Information
10.13.5 Warning for speed limitation and speed camera from road sign information
10.13.6 Activating and deactivating warnings from road sign information
10.13.7 Display mode for road sign information
10.14 Parking functions
10.14.1 Parking assistance
10.14.1.1 Park Assist
10.14.1.2 Park Assist System front, rear and along the sides
10.14.1.3 Activating and deactivating Parking Assistance System
10.14.1.4 Symbols and messages for Park Assist Pilot
10.14.1.5 Limitations of park assist system
10.14.2 Active park assist
10.14.2.1 Park Assist Pilot
10.14.2.2 Parking variants with Park Assist Pilot
10.14.2.3 Using Park Assist Pilot
10.14.2.4 Leaving parallel parking with Park Assist Pilot
10.14.2.5 Messages for Park Assist Pilot
10.14.2.6 Limitations of Park Assist Pilot
10.14.3 Park assist camera
10.14.3.1 Park assist camera
10.14.3.2 Activating park assist camera
10.14.3.3 Symbols and messages for park assist camera
10.14.3.4 Park assist lines for park assist camera
10.14.3.5 Park assist camera locations and surveillance areas

10.14.3.6 Sensor fields for park assist system
10.15 Camera and radar unit
10.15.1 Recommended maintenance for camera and radar units
10.15.2 Symbols and messages for camera and radar units
10.15.3 Limitations for camera and radar units
10.15.4 Camera unit
10.15.5 Radar unit
10.15.6 Type approval for radar device
10.16 Driving support systems
10.17 Safety check of driver support when starting
10.18 Warnings from various driver support systems
10.19 Speed-dependent steering force
10.20 Drive modes when using time interval to vehicles
10.21 Auto braking after a collision
11. Starting and driving
11.1 Starting and switching off the car
11.1.1 Immobiliser
11.1.2 Starting the car
11.1.3 Using jump starting with another battery
11.1.4 Switching off the car
11.1.5 Ignition positions
11.1.6 Selecting ignition mode
11.2 Alcohol lock
11.2.1 Alcohol lock
11.3 Gearbox
11.3.1 Kick-down function
11.3.2 Launch function
11.3.3 Gearbox
11.3.4 Automatic gearbox
11.3.5 Changing gear with automatic gearbox
11.3.6 Symbols and messages for automatic gearbox
11.3.7 All-wheel drive
11.3.8 Manual gearbox
11.3.9 Gear selector inhibitor
11.3.10 Gear shift indicator
11.4 Brakes
11.4.1 Foot brake
11.4.1.1 Brake assistance
11.4.1.2 Braking on gritted roads
11.4.1.3 Braking on wet roads
11.4.1.4 Foot brake
11.4.1.5 Brake system maintenance
11.4.2 Parking brake
11.4.2.1 Parking brake
11.4.2.2 Activating and deactivating the parking brake
11.4.2.3 Parking on a hill
11.4.2.4 Automatic parking brake activation setting
11.4.2.5 In the event of a fault in the parking brake
11.4.3 Brake fluid – specifications
11.4.4 Brake functions
11.4.5 Automatic braking when stationary
11.4.6 Activating and deactivating the automatic brake at a standstill

11.4.7 Auto braking after a collision
11.4.8 Help when starting on a hill
11.4.9 Regenerative braking
11.4.10 Low speed control
11.4.11 Hill descent control
11.5 Drive modes
11.5.1 Regenerative braking
11.5.2 Drive modes
11.5.3 Changing drive mode
11.5.4 Drive mode Eco
11.5.5 Activating and deactivating drive mode Eco with the function button
11.5.6 Launch function
11.5.7 Low speed control
11.5.8 Activating and deactivating low speed control
11.5.9 Hill descent control
11.5.10 Activating and deactivating hill descent control
11.5.11 All-wheel drive
11.6 Start/stop function
11.6.1 Start/stop function
11.6.2 Activating and deactivating the start/stop function
11.6.3 Freewheel function with the engine not running
11.7 Recommendations for driving
11.7.1 Towing
11.7.2 Help when starting on a hill
11.7.3 Braking on gritted roads
11.7.4 Braking on wet roads
11.7.5 Parking on a hill
11.7.6 Petrol particle filter
11.7.7 Petrol station
11.7.8 Drive mode Eco
11.7.9 Economical driving
11.7.10 Preparations for a long trip
11.7.11 Overloading the starter battery
11.7.12 Driving in water
11.7.13 Winter driving
11.7.14 Overheating in the engine and drive system
11.7.15 Driving with a trailer
11.8 Towbar and trailer
11.8.1 Towing capacity and towball load
11.8.2 Towbar
11.8.3 Specifications for towbar
11.8.4 Towbar-mounted bicycle rack
11.8.5 Extendable and retractable towbar
11.8.6 Low speed control
11.8.7 Driving with a trailer
11.8.8 Trailer stability assist
11.8.9 Checking trailer lamps
11.9 Fuel
11.9.1 Fuel gauge
11.9.2 Handling of fuel
11.9.3 Petrol
11.10 Refuelling

11.10.1 Handling of fuel
11.10.2 Fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions
11.10.3 Petrol station
11.10.4 Fuel tank - volume
11.10.5 Filling fuel
11.10.6 Opening and closing the fuel filler flap
11.11 Emission control
11.11.1 Petrol particle filter
11.12 HomeLink
11.12.1 HomeLink®
11.12.2 Using HomeLink®
11.12.3 Programming HomeLink®
11.12.4 Type approval for HomeLink®
11.13 Compass
11.13.1 Compass
11.13.2 Activating and deactivating the compass
11.13.3 Calibrating the compass
11.14 Towing and recovery
11.14.1 Towing
11.14.2 Fitting and removing the towing eye
11.14.3 Recovery
11.14.4 Safety mode
11.14.5 Starting and moving the car after safety mode
11.15 Operational disruption
11.16 Traffic accident

12. Sound, media and Internet
12.1 Radio
12.1.1 Digital radio
12.1.1.1 Digital radio
12.1.1.2 Link between FM and digital radio
12.1.2 Voice control of radio and media
12.1.3 Radio
12.1.4 Start radio
12.1.5 Changing radio band and radio station
12.1.6 Searching for radio stations
12.1.7 Settings for radio
12.1.8 RDS radio
12.1.9 Save radio channels in the Radio Favourites app
12.2 Media player
12.2.1 Video
12.2.1.1 Video
12.2.1.2 Playing a video
12.2.1.3 Playing back DivX®
12.2.1.4 Settings for video
12.2.2 Media via Bluetooth®
12.2.3 Connecting a device via Bluetooth®
12.2.4 Voice control of radio and media
12.2.5 Media player
12.2.6 Media playback
12.2.7 Controlling and changing media
12.2.8 Searching media
12.2.9 Compatible media formats

12.2.10 Gracenote®
12.2.11 Updating Gracenote®
12.2.12 Media via USB port
12.2.13 Connecting a device via USB port
12.2.14 Technical specifications for USB devices
12.3 Phone
12.3.1 Phone connection
12.3.1.1 Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth automatically
12.3.1.2 Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time
12.3.1.3 Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone
12.3.1.4 Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones
12.3.1.5 Removing devices connected to Bluetooth
12.3.1.6 Bluetoothprofiles for Sensus Connect
12.3.1.7 Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth manually
12.3.2 Apple CarPlay
12.3.2.1 Apple® CarPlay®
12.3.2.2 Using Apple® CarPlay®
12.3.2.3 Tips for using Apple® CarPlay®
12.3.2.4 Settings for Apple® CarPlay®
12.3.3 Android Auto
12.3.3.1 Android Auto
12.3.3.2 Using Android Auto
12.3.3.3 Tips for using Android Auto
12.3.3.4 Settings for Android Auto
12.3.4 Settings for Bluetooth devices
12.3.5 Bluetooth compatibility with phones
12.3.6 Connect the car to the Internet via a Bluetooth-enabled phone
12.3.7 Phone
12.3.8 Controlling a telephone with voice control
12.3.9 Settings for phone
12.3.10 Managing the phone book
12.3.11 Managing phone calls
12.3.12 Managing text messages
12.3.13 Settings for text messages
12.3.14 Wireless phone charger
12.3.15 Using the wireless phone charger
12.3.16 Certificate for wireless charger
12.4 Apps
12.4.1 Available in-car apps
12.4.1.1 Android Auto
12.4.1.2 Available apps
12.4.1.3 Apple® CarPlay®
12.4.1.4 Air Quality app
12.4.1.5 Google Local Search
12.4.1.6 Park and Pay
12.4.1.7 Record & Send
12.4.1.8 Spotify
12.4.1.9 TuneIn
12.4.1.10 Using TuneIn
12.4.1.11 Weather
12.4.1.12 WikiLocations
12.4.1.13 Yelp

12.4.1.14 Car status
12.4.1.15 Download Center
12.4.2 Apps
12.4.3 Downloading apps
12.4.4 Deleting apps
12.4.5 Updating apps
12.4.6 Volvo ID
12.4.7 Creating a Volvo ID
12.5 Internet connection
12.5.1 Online services
12.5.1.1 Connected Safety
12.5.1.2 Apps
12.5.1.3 User terms and conditions and data sharing
12.5.1.4 Activating and deactivating data sharing
12.5.1.5 Data sharing for Volvo On Call
12.5.1.6 Data sharing for driver profile
12.5.1.7 Data sharing for services
12.5.1.8 Volvo ID
12.5.1.9 Creating a Volvo ID
12.5.1.10 Real Time Traffic Information
12.5.1.11 Volvo On Call
12.5.2 Tips for using the Bluetooth connection
12.5.3 Connect the car to the Internet via a Bluetooth-enabled phone
12.5.4 Internet-connected car
12.5.5 Tips in the event of problems with Internet connection
12.5.6 Sharing Internet access from the car via a Wi-Fi hotspot
12.5.7 Connect the car to the Internet via a phone (Wi-Fi)
12.5.8 Connect the car to the Internet via car modem (SIM card)
12.5.9 Settings for car modem
12.5.10 No or poor Internet connection
12.5.11 Remove Wi-Fi network
12.5.12 Wi-Fi technologies and security
12.6 Sound, media and Internet
12.7 License agreement for audio and media
12.8 Storage space on hard disk
12.9 Sound settings
12.10 Sound experience
12.11 Customer Privacy Policy
12.12 Sensus - online connectivity and entertainment
12.13 Terms & Conditions for Services

13. Volvo On Call
13.1 Volvo On Call services
13.1.1 Help with Volvo On Call
13.1.2 Emergency assistance with Volvo On Call
13.1.3 Automatic collision alarm with Volvo On Call
13.1.4 Send destinations to the car's navigation system via a Volvo On Call service centre
13.1.5 Remote Vehicle Immobiliser (RVI) with Volvo On Call
13.1.6 Remote Door Unlock (RDU) with Volvo On Call
13.1.7 Stolen Vehicle Tracking (SVT) with Volvo On Call
13.1.8 Theft Notification (TN) with Volvo On Call
13.1.9 Help during a trip with Volvo On Call
13.1.10 Customer service via Volvo On Call

13.2 Practical information on Volvo On Call
13.2.1 Getting started with Volvo On Call
13.2.2 Prioritising between Volvo On Call service centre and emergency call centre
13.2.3 PIN code for Volvo On Call
13.2.4 Standby battery for Volvo On Call
13.2.5 Volvo On Call abroad
13.2.6 Volvo On Call availability
13.2.7 Change of ownership with Volvo On Call
13.3 Volvo Cars app
13.3.1 The Volvo Cars-app
13.4 Data sharing for Volvo On Call
13.5 Volvo On Call
13.6 Volvo On Call subscription
13.7 Extend your Volvo On Call subscription
13.8 Messages for Volvo On Call

14. Navigation
14.1 Enter destination
14.1.1 Enter destination directly on map
14.1.2 Specifying a destination with an address
14.1.3 Specify destination with free text searching
14.1.4 Specify destination with point of interest
14.1.5 Specifying a destination with latest/favourites/library
14.1.6 Specify destination with Send to Car
14.1.7 Select a detour in the navigation system
14.1.8 Send destinations to the car's navigation system via a Volvo On Call service centre
14.2 Itinerary and route
14.2.1 Information card in navigation system
14.2.2 Showing POIs along a route
14.2.3 Itinerary
14.2.4 Show an alternative route
14.2.5 Edit or delete the itinerary
14.2.6 Show itinerary
14.2.7 Showing guidance points in the itinerary
14.2.8 Select a detour in the navigation system
14.3 Traffic information
14.3.1 Information card in navigation system
14.3.2 Select a detour in the navigation system
14.3.3 Traffic disruptions on the map
14.3.4 Showing traffic congestion along route
14.3.5 Real Time Traffic Information
14.3.6 Activating and deactivating Real Time Traffic Information
14.4 Settings for navigation
14.4.1 Map settings
14.4.2 Navigation system settings
14.4.3 Settings for route and road navigation
14.4.4 Traffic settings
14.5 Map update
14.5.1 Updating maps from an online car
14.5.2 Updating maps via computer and USB
14.5.3 Map updates
14.6 Command list for voice control of the navigation system
14.7 Sensus Navigation

14.8 Activating and deactivating the navigation system
14.9 Control the navigation system with voice control
14.10 Frequently asked questions about the navigation system
14.11 Symbols and buttons in the navigation system
14.12 Navigation license agreements
14.13 Navigation system in centre display
14.14 Navigation system in driver display
14.15 Activating and deactivating the navigation system in the driver display
14.16 Suggest new map information with Map Creator
14.17 Traffic information providers

15. Wheels and tyres
15.1 Changing wheels
15.1.1 Changing wheel
15.1.2 Jack
15.1.3 Wheel bolts
15.1.4 Spare wheel
15.1.5 Handling the spare wheel
15.1.6 Snow chains
15.1.7 Winter tyres
15.1.8 Punctures
15.1.9 Tool kit
15.2 Tyres
15.2.1 Dimension designation for tyre
15.2.2 Approved tyre pressures
15.2.3 Tyres' rotation direction
15.2.4 Tread wear indicators on the tyres
15.2.5 Dimension designation for wheel rim
15.2.6 Minimum permitted tyre load index and speed rating for tyres
15.3 Tyre pressure
15.3.1 Tyre pressure monitoring
15.3.1.1 Tyre pressure monitoring system
15.3.1.2 See tyre pressure status in the centre display
15.3.1.3 Action in the event of warning for low tyre pressure
15.3.1.4 Saving a new reference value for tyre pressure monitoring
15.3.1.5 Messages for tyre pressure monitoring
15.3.2 Checking tyre pressure
15.3.3 Adjusting tyre pressure
15.3.4 Location of tyre pressure label
15.4 Emergency puncture repair
15.4.1 Emergency puncture repair kit
15.4.2 Inflating tyres with the compressor from the puncture repair kit
15.4.3 Using a puncture repair kit
15.5 Winter driving
15.5.1 Snow chains
15.5.2 Winter tyres
15.5.3 Preparations for a long trip
15.5.4 Winter driving
15.6 Tyres
15.7 Approved wheel and tyre sizes

16. Loading, storage and passenger compartment
16.1 Loading
16.1.1 Recommendations for loading

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

16.1.2 Bag hooks
16.1.3 Load retaining eyelets
16.1.4 Fitting and removing the safety net
16.1.5 Roof load and loading on load carriers
16.1.6 Towbar-mounted bicycle rack
16.1.7 Driving with a trailer
16.2 Cargo area
16.2.1 Safety net, safety grille and cargo cover
16.2.1.1 Fitting and removing the safety net
16.2.2 Cargo area
16.2.3 Bag hooks
16.2.4 First aid kit
16.2.5 Remove and store the parcel shelf
16.2.6 Folding up the cargo area floor
16.2.7 Load retaining eyelets
16.2.8 Warning triangle
16.2.9 Release folding cargo area floor
16.2.10 Unlocking the tailgate with a key button
16.2.11 Setting the max. opening for electrically operated tailgate
16.2.12 Operating the tailgate with foot movement
16.2.13 Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car
16.2.14 Keyless unlocking of the tailgate
16.3 Storage and passenger compartment
16.3.1 Passenger compartment interior
16.3.2 Emptying the ashtray
16.3.3 Using the cigarette lighter
16.3.4 Electrical sockets
16.3.5 Using electrical sockets
16.3.6 Using the glovebox
16.3.7 Sun visors
16.3.8 Tunnel console
16.3.9 Fuses under the left-hand front seat
16.4 Through-load hatch in the rear seat

17. Maintenance and service
17.1 Car care
17.1.1 Interior cleaning
17.1.1.1 Cleaning the centre display
17.1.1.2 Cleaning the driver display
17.1.1.3 Cleaning the leather steering wheel
17.1.1.4 Cleaning the seatbelts
17.1.1.5 Cleaning the interior
17.1.1.6 Cleaning textile floor and entrance mats
17.1.1.7 Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts
17.1.1.8 Cleaning leather upholstery
17.1.1.9 Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining
17.1.2 Exterior cleaning
17.1.2.1 Cleaning the exterior lamps
17.1.2.2 Cleaning the wiper blades
17.1.2.3 Car paintwork
17.1.2.4 Colour codes
17.1.2.5 Touching up minor paintwork damage
17.1.2.6 Cleaning the exterior

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

17.1.2.7 Rustproofing
17.1.2.8 Automatic car wash
17.1.2.9 Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components
17.1.2.10 Cleaning wheel rims
17.1.2.11 Handwashing
17.1.2.12 High-pressure washing
17.1.2.13 Polishing and waxing
17.2 Wiper blades and washer fluid
17.2.1 Wiper blades and washer fluid
17.2.2 Setting the wiper blades in service position
17.2.3 Topping up washer fluid
17.2.4 Replacing the wiper blade, rear window
17.2.5 Replacing windscreen wiper blades
17.3 Bulb replacement
17.3.1 Replacing the rear direction indicator bulb
17.3.2 Changing brake light bulb
17.3.3 Replacing the rear fog lamp bulb
17.3.4 Bulb replacement
17.3.5 Exterior lamp positions
17.3.6 Bulb specifications
17.3.7 Checking trailer lamps
17.4 Engine compartment
17.4.1 Topping up washer fluid
17.4.2 Brake fluid – specifications
17.4.3 Opening and closing the bonnet
17.4.4 Engine compartment overview
17.4.5 Coolant
17.4.6 Topping up coolant
17.4.7 Engine oil
17.4.8 Checking and filling with engine oil
17.4.9 Engine oil – specifications
17.4.10 Fuses in engine compartment
17.5 Tools and accessories
17.5.1 Jack
17.5.2 Emergency puncture repair kit
17.5.3 First aid kit
17.5.4 Warning triangle
17.5.5 Tool kit
17.6 Fuses
17.6.1 Fuses and central electrical units
17.6.2 Replacing a fuse
17.6.3 Fuses under the left-hand front seat
17.6.4 Fuses in engine compartment
17.7 Battery
17.7.1 Replacing the battery in the key
17.7.2 Overloading the starter battery
17.7.3 Using jump starting with another battery
17.7.4 Batteries and power supply
17.7.5 Recycling the batteries
17.7.6 Symbols on the batteries
17.7.7 Starter battery
17.7.8 Support battery

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

17.8 Service
17.8.1 Servicing the climate control system
17.8.2 Volvo service programme
17.9 Car status
17.9.1 Car status
17.9.2 Sending car information to a workshop
17.10 Download Center
17.10.1 Download Center
17.10.2 Updating software via Download Centre
17.10.3 Tips in the event of problems with updates via the Download Centre
17.11 Recommended maintenance for camera and radar units
17.12 Brake system maintenance
17.13 Operational disruption
17.14 Data transfer between car and workshop via Wi-Fi
17.15 Raise the car

18. Specifications
18.1 Dimensions and weights
18.1.1 Towing capacity and towball load
18.1.2 Dimensions
18.1.3 Weights
18.1.4 Specifications for towbar
18.2 Specifications for engine
18.2.1 Engine specifications
18.2.2 Adverse driving conditions for engine oil
18.2.3 Engine oil – specifications
18.3 Specifications for fluids and lubricants
18.3.1 Topping up washer fluid
18.3.2 Air conditioning – specifications
18.3.3 Brake fluid – specifications
18.3.4 Transmission fluid – specifications
18.3.5 Fuel tank - volume
18.3.6 Adverse driving conditions for engine oil
18.3.7 Engine oil – specifications
18.4 Specifications for wheels and tyres
18.4.1 Approved tyre pressures
18.4.2 Approved wheel and tyre sizes
18.4.3 Minimum permitted tyre load index and speed rating for tyres
18.5 Bulb specifications
18.6 Type designations
18.7 Fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions

1. Owner information

1.1. Owner information

Owner's information is available in several different product formats, both digital and printed. The owner's manual is available in the car's centre display and on the Volvo Cars support site. There is a supplement to the owner's manual available in the glovebox, with specifications and fuse information, among other things. A printed owner's manual can be ordered.

The car's centre display [1]

In the centre display, drag down the top view and tap on **Owner's manual**. Available here are options for visual navigation with exterior and interior images of the car. The information is searchable and is also divided into categories.

Volvo Cars support site

More information on your car is available on the Volvo Cars website and support site.

Go to volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] and select your country. The page is available for most markets.

The support site contains contact details to customer support and your nearest Volvo retailer. If your car is equipped with Sensus Navigation, you also have the option to download maps.

Printed information

There is a supplement to the owner's manual [1] in the glovebox that contains information on fuses and specifications, as well as a summary of important and practical information.

Depending on equipment level selected, market, etc. additional owner's information may also be available in printed format in the car.

A printed owner's manual and associated supplement can be ordered. Contact a Volvo dealer to order.

> **Important**
>
> The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven safely in traffic and that applicable laws and regulations are followed. It is also important that the car is maintained and handled in accordance with Volvo's recommendations in the owner's information.
>
> If there should be a difference between the information in the centre display and the printed information then it is always the printed information that applies.

Note

Changing the language in the centre display may mean that some owner's information is not compliant with national or local laws and regulations. Do not switch to a language that is difficult to understand as this may make it difficult to find your way back through the screen structure.

[1] A complete printed manual is included with the car for markets without owner's manual in the centre display.

1.2. The owner's manual and the environment

The Owner's Manual is printed on paper originating from controlled forests.

The Forest Stewardship Council (FSC)® symbol shows that the paper pulp in a printed owner's manual comes from FSC®-certified forests or other controlled sources.

1.3. Reading the owner's manual

To help you get to know your new car, read the Owner's Manual before you drive it for the first time.

Reading the owner's manual is a way to become familiar with new functions, get advice on how to handle the car in different situations and learn how to make use of all the car's features. Please pay attention to the safety instructions contained in the owner's manual.

Development work is constantly underway in order to improve our product. Modifications may mean that information, descriptions and illustrations in the owner's manual differ from the equipment in the car. We reserve the right to make modifications without prior notice.

© Volvo Car Corporation

Options/accessories

In addition to standard equipment, the owner's manual also describes options (factory fitted equipment) and certain accessories (retrofitted extra equipment).

All, at the time of publication known, options and accessories are marked with an asterisk: *.

The equipment described in the owner's manual is not available in all cars - they have different equipment depending on adaptations for the needs of different markets and national or local laws and regulations.

The intention of this owner's information is to explain all possible functions, options and accessories included in a Volvo vehicle. It is not intended as an indication or guarantee that all of these features, functions and options are included in every vehicle. Some terminology used may not exactly match terminology used in sales, marketing and advertising materials.

In the event of uncertainty over what is standard or an option/accessory, contact a Volvo dealer.

Special texts

Warning

Warning texts appear if there is a risk of injury.

Important

Important texts appear if there is a risk of damage.

Note

Note texts give advice or tips that facilitate the use of e.g. features and functions.

Decals

The car contains different types of decal which are designed to convey important information in a clear manner. The decals in the car have the following descending degree of importance for the warning/information.

Warning of personal injury

Black ISO symbols on yellow warning field, white text/image on black message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in serious personal injury or fatality.

Risk of property damage

White ISO symbols and white text/image on black or blue warning field and message field. Used to indicate the presence of danger which, if the warning is ignored, may result in damage to property.

Information

White ISO symbols and white text/image on black message field.

Note

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and location in the car. The information that applies to your particular car is available on the respective decals for your car.

Illustrations and video clips

Illustrations and video clips used in the owner's manual are sometimes schematic and are intended to provide an overall picture or example of a certain function. They may deviate from the car's appearance depending on equipment level and market.

* Option/accessory.

1.4. Owner's manual in centre display

The owner's manual is available in the car's centre display[1].

> **Important**
>
> To learn about important safety instructions, and for as good an experience as possible, Volvo recommends that you read throughout all of the owner's information under each category in the centre display before driving for the first time.

> **Important**
>
> The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven safely in traffic and that applicable laws and regulations are followed. It is also important that the car is maintained and handled in accordance with Volvo's recommendations in the owner's information.

Finding information in the car's centre display

You can access the owner's manual in the following ways:

1. Swipe from the top and down on the centre display in order to open the top view.
2. Tap on **Owner's manual**.

Find information by:

- using the search function
- navigating visually using exterior and interior images
- clicking through categories.

> **Note**
>
> The digital owner's manual is not available while driving.

Changing the language in the centre display may mean that some owner information does not match national or local laws and regulations. Do not switch to a language that is difficult to understand, as this may make it difficult to find your way back through the structure on screen.

Shortcut to related owner's information

There is a shortcut in the top view that opens an article in the owner's manual that is related to the content shown on the screen. For example, **Navigation Manual** – is a shortcut to an article concerning navigation.

This only applies to some of the apps in the car. For downloaded third party apps, for example, it is not possible to access app-specific articles.

Printed information and support site

Depending on equipment level selected, market, etc. additional owner's information may also be available in printed format in the car.

The associated supplement can be ordered. Contact a Volvo dealer to order.

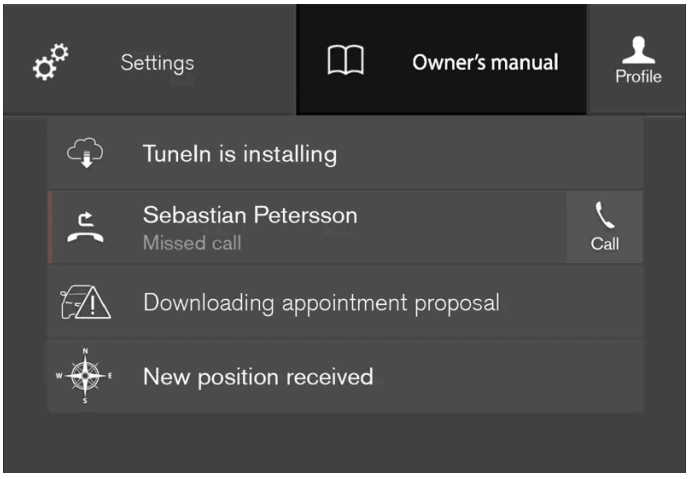
The owner's manual is also at volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] .

> **Note**
>
> If the information in the digital owner's manual and the printed supplement **Featured articles from the owner's manual** differ, the printed information takes precedence.

[1] Applies for most markets.

1.5. Navigate in the owner's manual in the centre display

The digital owner's manual can be accessed from the centre display top view in the car. The content is searchable, and the various sections are designed to facilitate navigation.



The owner's manual is accessed from the top view.

1 To open the owner's manual - drag down the top view in the centre display and tap on **Owner's manual**.

There is a range of different options for finding information in the owner's manual. The options can be accessed from the owner's manual homepage and from the top menu.

Opening the menu in the top menu

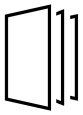
1 Press ☰ in the upper list in the owner's manual.

> A menu with different options for finding information is opened:

Homepage

Tap on the symbol to go back to the start page in the owner's manual.

Categories



The articles in the owner's manual are structured into main categories and subcategories. The same article can be found in several appropriate categories so that it can be found more easily.

1 Press **Categories**.

> The main categories are shown in a list.

2 Tap on a main category (❑).

> A list of subcategories (❑) and articles (🗎) is shown.

3 Tap on an article to open it.

To go back, press the back arrow.

Quick Guide

Press the symbol to access a page with links to a selection of articles that can be useful to read in order to get to know the more common functions of the car. The articles can also be accessed via categories, but are collected here for faster access. Tap on an article in order to read it in its entirety.

Hotspots for exterior and interior

Exterior and interior overview images of the car. Different parts are designated with hotspots that lead to articles about those parts of the car.

1 Press **Exterior** or **Interior**.

> Exterior or interior images are shown with so-called hotspots in place. The hotspot leads to articles about the corresponding part of the car. Swipe horizontally over the screen to browse among the images.

2 Tap on a hotspot.

> The title of the article about the area is shown.

3 Tap on the title to open the article.

To go back, press the back arrow.

Favourites

Press the symbol to access the articles saved as favourites. Tap on an article in order to read it in its entirety.

Saving or deleting articles as favourites

Save an article as favourite by pressing ☆ at the top right when an article is open. When an article has been saved as a favourite the star is filled in: ★.

To remove an article as a favourite, press the star again in the current article.

Video

Press the symbol to view brief instruction videos for various functions in the car.

Information

Tap on the symbol to obtain information about which version of the owner's manual is available in the car as well as other useful information.

Using the search function in the top menu

1 Tap on 🔍 in the top menu of the owner's manual. A keyboard appears in the lower part of the screen.

2 Type in a keyword, such as "seatbelt".

> Suggestions for articles and categories are shown while letters are being entered.

3 Tap on the article or category to access it.

2. Your Volvo

2.1. Volvo's areas of innovation

2.1.1. Environmental efficiency

Volvo Car Corporation is constantly working on the development of safer and more efficient products and solutions in order to reduce the negative impact on the environment.

Environmental care is one of Volvo Cars' core values and influences all operations. The environmental work is based on the whole life cycle of the car and takes into account the environmental impact it has, from design to scrapping and recycling. Volvo Cars' basic principle is that every new product developed must have less impact on the environment than the product it replaces.

Volvo's environmental management work has resulted in the development of more effective and less polluting drivelines. Personal environment is also important to Volvo - the air inside a Volvo is, for example, cleaner than the air outside thanks to the climate control system.

Your Volvo complies with stringent international environmental standards. All Volvo's manufacturing units must be ISO 14001 certified, and this supports a systematic approach to the operation's environmental issues, which leads to continuous improvement with reduced environmental impact. Holding the ISO certificate also means that environmental laws and regulations in force are complied with. Volvo also requires that its partners must also meet these requirements.

Fuel consumption

Since a large part of a car's total environmental impact stems from its use, the emphasis of Volvo Cars' environmental work is on reducing fuel consumption, carbon dioxide emissions and other air pollutants. Volvo cars have competitive fuel consumption in each of their respective classes. Lower fuel consumption generally results in lower emission of the greenhouse gas, carbon dioxide.

Contributing to a better environment

An energy-efficient and economical car can contribute to reduced environmental impact and also involve reduced costs for the owner of the car. As the driver, it is easy to reduce fuel consumption and thereby save money and contribute to a better environment - here is some advice:

- Plan for an effective average speed. Speeds above approx. 80 km/h (approx. 50 mph) and below 50 km/h (approx. 30 mph) lead to increased energy consumption.
- Follow the Service and Warranty Booklet'srecommended intervals for service and maintenance of the car.
- Avoid letting the engine idle - switch off the engine when stationary for longer periods. Pay attention to local regulations.
- Plan the journey - a lot of unnecessary stops and uneven speed contribute to increased fuel consumption.
- Use preconditioning* before starting in cold conditions - it improves starting capacity and reduces wear in cold weather. The engine reaches normal operating temperature more quickly, which decreases consumption and reduces emissions.

Also remember to always dispose of environmentally hazardous waste, such as batteries and oil, in an environmentally safe manner. Consult a workshop in the event of uncertainty about how this type of waste should be discarded - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Efficient emission control

Your Volvo is manufactured following the concept "Clean inside and out" – a concept that encompasses a clean interior environment as well as highly efficient emission control. In many cases the exhaust emissions are well below the applicable standards.

Clean air in the passenger compartment

An air filter helps prevent dust and pollen entering the passenger compartment via the air intake.

The Interior Air Quality System (IAQS)* ensures that the incoming air is cleaner than the air in the traffic outside.

The system cleans the air in the passenger compartment from contaminants such as particles, hydrocarbons, nitrous oxides and ground-level ozone. If the outside air is contaminated then the air intake is closed and the air is recirculated. Such a situation may arise in heavy traffic, queues and tunnels for example.

IAQS is a part of the CleanZone Interior Package (CZIP)*, which also includes a function that allows the fan to start when the car is unlocked with the key.

Interior

The material used in the interior of a Volvo is carefully selected and has been tested in order to be pleasant and comfortable. Some of the details are hand-made, such as the seams of the steering wheel that are sewn by hand. The interior is monitored in order not to emit strong odours or substances that cause discomfort in the event of e.g. high heat and bright light.

Volvo workshops and the environment

Regular maintenance creates the conditions for a long service life and low fuel consumption for your car. In this way you also contribute to a cleaner environment. When Volvo's workshops are entrusted with the service and maintenance of your car it becomes part of Volvo's system. Volvo makes clear demands regarding the way in which workshop premises shall be designed in order to prevent spills and discharges into the environment. The workshop staff have the knowledge and the tools required to guarantee good environmental care.

Recycling

Since Volvo works from a life cycle perspective, it is also important that the car is recycled in an environmentally sound manner. Almost all of the car can be recycled. The last owner of the car is therefore requested to contact a retailer for referral to a certified/approved recycling facility.

* Option/accessory.

2.1.2. Sensus - online connectivity and entertainment

Sensus makes it possible to use different types of apps and turn the car into a Wi-Fi hotspot.

This is Sensus

Sensus offers an intelligent interface and online connectivity with the digital world. An intuitive navigation structure makes it possible to receive relevant support, information and entertainment when it is necessary.

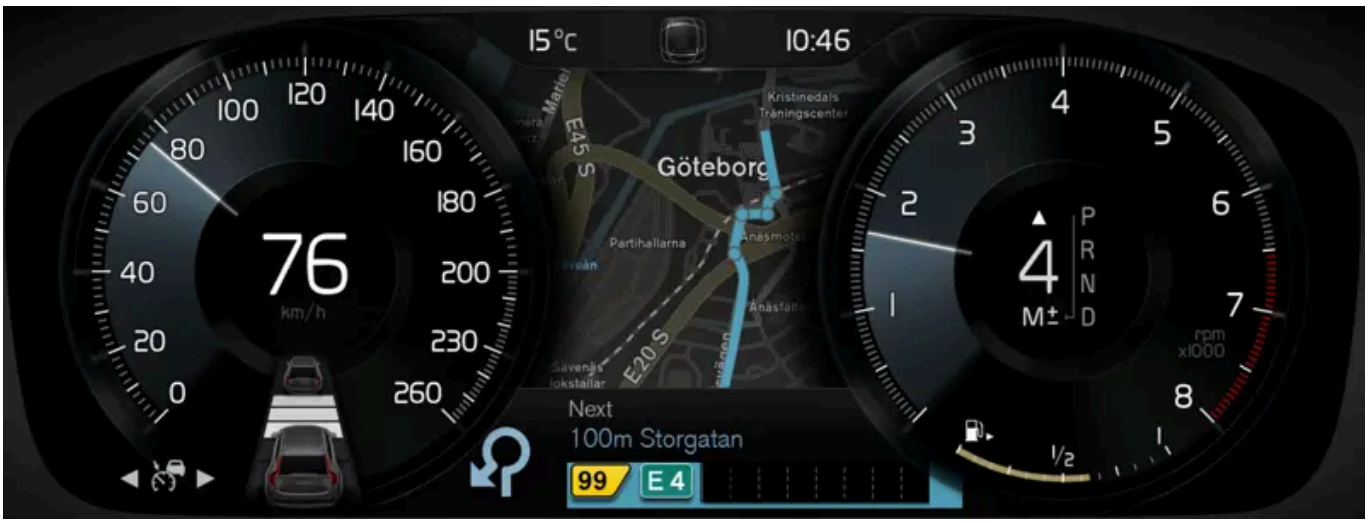
Sensus covers all solutions in the car that are connected with entertainment, online connectivity, navigation* and the user interface between driver and car. It is Sensus that makes communication possible between you, the car and the outside world.

Information when it is needed, where it is needed

The different displays in the car provide information at the right time. The information is shown in different locations based on how it should be prioritised by the driver.

Different types of information are shown in different displays depending on how the information should be prioritised.

Driver display



Driver display[1].

The driver display shows information on speed and e.g. incoming calls or song tracks being played. The display is operated via the two steering wheel keypads.

Centre display

Many of the main functions of the car are controlled from the centre display, a touch screen which reacts to touch. The number of physical buttons and controls in the car is therefore minimal. The screen can even be operated while wearing gloves.

From here, for example, you can control the climate control system, the entertainment system and seat position*. The information that is shown in the centre display can be acted on by the driver or someone else in the car when the opportunity arises.

Voice control system

The voice control system can be used without the driver needing to take his/her hands off the steering wheel. The system can understand natural speech. Use voice control to, for example, play back a song, call someone, increase the temperature or read out a text message.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

2.2. Volvo ID

2.2.1. Volvo ID

Volvo ID is a personal ID that gives access to a wide range of services via a single username and password.

> **Note**
>
> The services available may vary over time and depend on equipment level and market.

One example of a service when Volvo ID is needed is when checking the car on your phone using the Volvo Cars app[1].

Note

If the username/password for a service (e.g. Volvo On Call) is changed, then it is also changed automatically for other services.

Volvo ID is created from the car, volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] or the Volvo Cars app.

When a Volvo ID is registered in the car, several services will be made available. Several Volvo IDs can be used for the same car and several cars can even be connected to the same Volvo ID.

* Option/accessory.

[1] If you have Volvo On Call*.

2.2.2. Creating a Volvo ID

It is possible to create a Volvo ID in different ways. If the Volvo ID is created at volvoid.eu.volvocars.comm/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] or with the Volvo Cars app, the Volvo ID must also be registered to the car in order to enable use of the various Volvo ID services.

Create a Volvo ID with the Volvo ID app

1. Download the Volvo ID app from **Download Centre** in the centre display's app view.
2. Start the app and register a personal email address or mobile number.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address/mobile number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and automatically registered to the car. Volvo ID services can now be used.

Create a Volvo ID with the Volvo Cars app

1. Download the latest version of the Volvo Cars app to the phone[1].
2. Select to create Volvo ID.
3. The web page for creating a Volvo ID is shown.
4. Enter a personal email address or mobile number.
5. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address/mobile number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and is ready for use.

Create a Volvo ID via the Volvo Cars website

1. Go to volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] . Select to create a Volvo ID.
2. Enter a personal email address or mobile number.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address/mobile number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and is ready for use.

Registering your Volvo ID to the car

If your Volvo ID was created online or using the Volvo Cars app, register it to your car:

1. If not done already, download the Volvo ID app from **Download Centre** in the centre display's app view.

   > **Note**
   >
   > To download apps, the car must be connected to the Internet.

2. Start the app and enter your Volvo ID.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the email address/mobile number linked to your Volvo ID.

> Your Volvo ID is now registered to the car. Volvo ID services can now be used.

[1] Available to download via e.g. Apple App Store or Google Play.

2.2.3. Problems logging in with Volvo ID

This article describes problems that may arise when logging in with Volvo ID. For example, if you have forgotten your password or your Volvo ID username.

Forgotten your password

To reset your password, follow the instructions below:

In the Volvo Cars app[1]

1. Open the Volvo Cars app.
2. Select **Log in**.
3. Press **Forgotten password?** and follow the instructions.

You can also change your password at volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] .

Login failure after creation of a new account

Sometimes there may be a delay in the process which can result in an account not being available directly after it has been created. Try again after 24 hours and if the problem remains, contact your local Volvo dealer or Volvo Cars customer service for further assistance.

What is my Volvo ID (username)?

If the Volvo ID is connected to the car, you can also access the username in the Volvo ID app, which can be found in application view in the centre display. Your Volvo ID is identical to the registered email address/mobile number.

Unlock your Volvo ID

Your account will be locked after 5 failed attempts to log in to the Volvo Cars app[1]. You can easily unlock the account by clicking on **Forgotten password?** in the login screen.

Change of email address

If you change your email address and still have access to the old address you can log in with the old details and change your username yourself. If you no longer have access to the old address then you should create a new Volvo ID using the new address.

Login failure after changing Volvo ID (username)

Check that you have received a confirmation message in which your new username is confirmed. Once this has been done, you should be able to login with the new user name. If you did not receive the confirmation e-mail, your old username is probably still in place. Log in and try to change the username again.

Login failure after changed password

Try to login with your previous password. If this is not successful, try to reset the password.

Account registered to a different market

An account is registered to a specific market and cannot be moved to a different market. To be able to re-use the same email address/mobile number, we advise you to first delete your account for the old market and then create a new account for the new market.

E-mail failure

If you entered an email address as username and did not receive a confirmation email after registering, make sure that you entered a valid email address and that the email was not stopped by a spam filter. Try to register your e-mail address again.

More help

If you have not found a solution to a problem relating to Volvo ID and need more help, contact your local Volvo dealer or Volvo Cars Customer Service.

> **Note**
>
> Services available on volvocars.com and for Volvo On Call* may vary depending on market.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

* Option/accessory.

2.3. Type approvals and licences

2.3.1. License agreement for driver display

A license is an agreement for the right to operate a certain activity or the right to use someone else's entitlement according to the terms and conditions in the agreement. The following text is Volvo's agreement with the manufacturer or developer.

Freetype Project License

3rd Party Software Disclaimers and License Agreements Confidential ID 06-00004-004 39 / 75 Revision 06.00A, 2015-06-09 2006-Jan-27 Copyright 1996-2002, 2006 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg.

Introduction

The FreeType Project is distributed in several archive packages; some of them may contain, in addition to the FreeType font engine, various tools and contributions which rely on, or relate to, the FreeType Project. This license applies to all files found in such packages, and which do not fall under their own explicit license. The license affects thus the FreeType font engine, the test

programs, documentation and makefiles, at the very least. This license was inspired by the BSD, Artistic, and IJG (Independent JPEG Group) licenses, which all encourage inclusion and use of free software in commercial and freeware products alike. As a consequence, its main points are that: o We don't promise that this software works. However, we will be interested in any kind of bug reports. (`as is' distribution) o You can use this software for whatever you want, in parts or full form, without having to pay us. (`royalty-free' usage) o You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it, or only parts of it, in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you have used the FreeType code. (`credits') We specifically permit and encourage the inclusion of this software, with or without modifications, in commercial products. We disclaim all warranties covering The FreeType Project and assume no liability related to The FreeType Project. Finally, many people asked us for a preferred form for a credit/disclaimer to use in compliance with this license. We thus encourage you to use the following text:

"Portions of this software are copyright © 2013 The FreeType Project (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved."

Legal Terms

0. Definitions – Throughout this license, the terms `package', `FreeType Project', and `FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the `FreeType Project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release. `You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where `using' is a generic term including compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a `program' or `executable'. This program is referred to as `a program using the FreeType engine'. This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType Project, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive. If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this. The FreeType Project is copyright (C) 1996-2000 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg. All rights reserved except as specified below.

1. No Warranty – THE FREETYPE PROJECT IS PROVIDED `AS IS' WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT. '

2. Redistribution – This license grants a worldwide, royalty-free, perpetual and irrevocable right and license to use, execute, perform, compile, display, copy, create derivative works of, distribute and sublicense the FreeType Project (in both source and object code forms) and derivative works thereof for any purpose; and to authorize others to exercise some or all of the rights granted herein, subject to the following conditions: o Redistribution of source code must retain this license file (`FTL.TXT') unaltered; any additions, deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files. o Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the distribution documentation. We also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn't mandatory. These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the FreeType Project, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.

3. Advertising – Neither the FreeType authors and contributors nor you shall use the name of the other for commercial, advertising, or promotional purposes without specific prior written permission. We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the following phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: `FreeType Project', `FreeType Engine', `FreeType library', or `FreeType Distribution'. As you have not signed this license, you are not required to accept it. However, as the FreeType Project is copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it. Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType Project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.

4. Contacts – There are two mailing lists related to FreeType: o freetype@nongnu.org. Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library and distribution. If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven't found anything to help you in the documentation. o freetype-devel@nongnu.org. Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc. Our home page can be found at http://www.freetype.org

HarfBuzz / UCDN License

- Copyright © 2010,2011,2012 Google, Inc.
- Copyright © 2012 Mozilla Foundation
- Copyright © 2011 Codethink Limited
- Copyright © 2008,2010 Nokia Corporation and/or its subsidiary(-ies)
- Copyright © 2009 Keith Stribley
- Copyright © 2009 Martin Hosken and SIL International
- Copyright © 2007 Chris Wilson
- Copyright © 2006 Behdad Esfahbod
- Copyright © 2005 David Turner
- Copyright © 2004,2007,2008,2009,2010 Red Hat, Inc.
- Copyright © 1998-2004 David Turner and Werner Lemberg

For full copyright notices consult the individual files in the package. Permission is hereby granted, without written agreement and without license or royalty fees, to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose, provided that the above copyright notice and the following two paragraphs appear in all copies of this software. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE TO ANY PARTY FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE AND ITS DOCUMENTATION, EVEN IF THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE. THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE SOFTWARE PROVIDED HEREUNDER IS ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, AND THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER HAS NO OBLIGATION TO PROVIDE MAINTENANCE, SUPPORT, UPDATES, ENHANCEMENTS, OR MODIFICATIONS.

Libunibreak License

This library is released under an open-source licence, the zlib/libpng licence. Please check the file LICENCE for details. Apart from using the algorithm, part of the code is derived from the data provided under http://www.unicode.org/Public. And the Unicode Terms of Use may apply: URL:http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html

LICENSE:

- Copyright (C) 2008-2012 Wu Yongwei <wuyongwei at gmail dot com>
- Copyright (C) 2012 Tom Hacohen <tom dot hacohen at samsung dot com>

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the author be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software. Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgement in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Unicode Inc. License Agreement

EXHIBIT 1 UNICODE, INC. LICENSE AGREEMENT - DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE Unicode Data Files include all data files under the directories http://www.unicode.org/Public/, http://www.unicode.org/reports/, and http://www.unicode.org/cldr/data/ . Unicode Software includes any source code published in the Unicode Standard or under the directories http://www.unicode.org/Public/, http://www.unicode.org/reports/, and http://www.unicode.org/cldr/data/. NOTICE TO USER: Carefully read the following legal agreement. BY DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, COPYING OR OTHERWISE USING UNICODE INC.'S DATA FILES ("DATA FILES"), AND/OR SOFTWARE ("SOFTWARE"), YOU UNEQUIVOCALLY ACCEPT, AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY, ALL OF THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE, DO NOT DOWNLOAD, INSTALL, COPY, DISTRIBUTE OR USE THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE. COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE Copyright © 1991-2010 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Unicode data files and any associated documentation (the "Data Files") or Unicode software and any associated documentation (the "Software") to deal in the Data Files or Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Data Files or Software, and to permit persons to whom the Data Files or Software are furnished to do so, provided that (a) the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear with all copies of the Data Files or Software, (b) both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in associated documentation, and (c) there is clear notice in each modified Data File or in the Software as well as in the documentation associated with the Data File(s) or Software that the data or software has been modified. THE DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in these Data Files or Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

ZLIB Data Compression Library License Agreement

(C) 1995-2010 Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software. Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Jean-loup Gailly Mark Adler jloup@gzip.org madler@alumni.caltech.edu If you use the zlib library in a product, we would appreciate *not* receiving lengthy legal documents to sign. The sources are provided for free but without warranty of any kind. The library has been entirely written by Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler; it does not include third-party code. If you redistribute modified sources, we would appreciate that you include in the file ChangeLog history information documenting your changes. Please read the FAQ for more information on the distribution of modified source versions.

GLEW Licence (Modified BSD Licence)

The OpenGL Extension Wrangler Library

- Copyright (C) 2002-2008, Milan Ikits <milan.ikits@ieee org>

- Copyright (C) 2002-2008, Marcelo E. Magallon <mmagallo@debian.org>
- Copyright (C) 2002, Lev Povalahev

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. * The name of the author may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2.3.2. Type approval for HomeLink® * [1]

The type approval for HomeLink® can be read below.

Country/Area	Type approval
USA and Canada	This device complies with FCC rules part 15 and Industry Canada RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.
Europe	Gentex Corporation hereby declares that HomeLink® Model UAHL5 complies with the Radio equipment directive 2014/53/EU. Wavelength within which the radio equipment functions: • 433.05MHz-434.79MHz <10mW E.R.P. • 868.00MHz-868.60MHz <25mW E.R.P. • 868.70MHz-868.20MHz <25mW E.R.P. • 869.40MHz-869.65MHz <25mW E.R.P. • 869.70MHz-870.00MHz <25mW E.R.P. Certificate holder address: Gentex Corporation, 600 North Centennial Street, Zeeland MI 49464, USA

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

2.3.3. License agreement for audio and media

A license is an agreement for the right to operate a certain activity or the right to use someone else's entitlement according to the terms and conditions in the agreement. The following texts are Volvo's agreements

with manufacturers/developers.

Dirac Unison®

Dirac Unison co-optimises the loudspeakers in frequency, time and space for the best possible bass integration and clarity. It enables a faithful reproduction of the acoustic characteristics of specific performance venues.Using advanced algorithms, Dirac Unison controls all loudspeakers digitally based on acoustic high-precision measurements. Like a conductor of an orchestra, it guarantees that the loudspeakers perform in perfect unison.

DivX®

DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logotypes are trademarks belonging to DivX, LLC and are used under licence.

This DivX Certified® device can play back DivX® Home Theater video files up to 576p (including .avi, .divx). Download free software on www.divx.com to create, play back and stream digital video.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play back purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) films. Get the registration code by locating the DivX VOD section in the device's settings menu. Go to vod.divx.com for more information on how to complete the registration.

Patent numbers

Protected by one or more of the following US patents. 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 8,656,183; 8,731,369; RE45,052.

Gracenote®

Portions of the content are copyright © of Gracenote or its providers.

Gracenote, the Gracenote logo and logotype, "Powered by Gracenote" and Gracenote MusicID are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement

This program or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California, USA ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote ("Gracenote software") activates this program to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track and title ("Gracenote data") from online servers or embedded databases (together called

"Gracenote servers") and in order to perform other actions. You may only use Gracenote data in accordance with the intended end-user functions for this program or this device.

You agree to only use Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers for your own personal non-commercial use. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit this Gracenote software or any Gracenote data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED IN THIS AGREEMENT.

You agree that your non-exclusive right to use Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers will be terminated if you violate these restrictions. If your license is terminated you agree to cease all use of Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers. Gracenote holds exclusive rights to all Gracenote data, all Gracenote software and all Gracenote servers, including all ownership rights. Gracenote will under no circumstances have any obligation to pay you for any information you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce the company's rights under this agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track enquiries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to enable the Gracenote service to count enquiries without knowing anything about who you are. Additional information is available on the web page for Gracenote's privacy policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote software and everything included in Gracenote data are licensed to you "as is". Gracenote provides no undertakings or warranties, express or implied, as to the accuracy of the Gracenote data contained in the Gracenote servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote servers or to change data categories for any reason that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is provided that the Gracenote software or Gracenote servers are fault-free or that the Gracenote software or Gracenote servers will operate without interruption. Gracenote has no obligation to provide you with new, improved or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future, and the company reserves the right to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. GRACENOTE DOES NOT GUARANTEE THE RESULTS OBTAINED THROUGH YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR A GRACENOTE SERVER. GRACENOTE WILL IN NO EVENT BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGE OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR REVENUES.

© Gracenote, Inc. 2009

Sensus software

This software uses parts of sources from clib2 and Prex Embedded Real-time OS - Source (Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1991, 1993, 1994), and Quercus Robusta (Copyright (c) 1990, 1993), The Regents of the University of California.All or some portions are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. Neither the name of the <ORGANIZATION> nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR

OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

This software uses parts of sources from "libtess". The Original Code is: OpenGL Sample Implementation, Version 1.2.1, released January 26, 2000, developed by Silicon Graphics, Inc. The Original Code is Copyright (c) 1991-2000 Silicon Graphics, Inc. Copyright in any portions created by third parties is as indicated elsewhere herein. All Rights Reserved. Copyright (C) [1991-2000] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/ shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software. THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

This software is based in parts on the work of the FreeType Team.

This software uses parts of SSLeay Library: Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). All rights reserved

Linux software

This product contains software licensed under GNU General Public License (GPL) or GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

You have the right of acquisition, modification, and distribution of the source code of the GPL/LGPL software.

You may download Source Code from the following website at no charge: http://www.embedded-carmultimedia.jp/linux/oss/download/TVM_8351_013

The website provides the Source Code "As Is" and without warranty of any kind.

By downloading Source Code, you expressly assume all risk and liability associated with downloading and using the Source Code and complying with the user agreements that accompany each Source Code.

Please note that we cannot respond to any inquiries regarding the source code.

camellia:1.2.0

Copyright (c) 2006, 2007

NTT (Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation). All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer as the first lines of this file unmodified.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY NTT ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL NTT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Unicode: 5.1.0

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

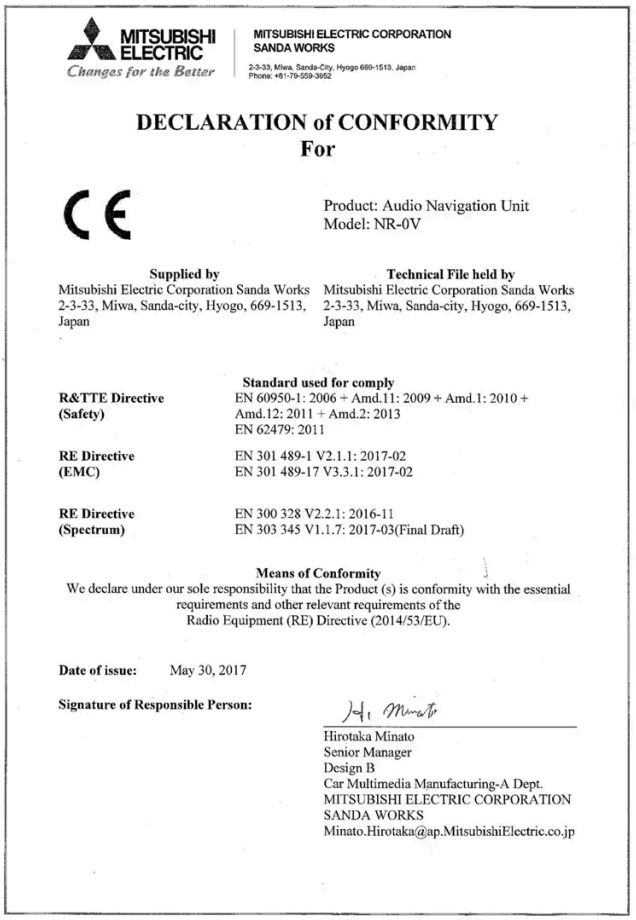
Copyright c 1991-2013 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Unicode data files and any associated documentation (the "Data Files") or Unicode software and any associated documentation (the "Software") to deal in the Data Files or Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Data Files or Software, and to permit persons to whom the Data Files or Software are furnished to do so, provided that (a) the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear with all copies of the Data Files or Software, (b) both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in associated documentation, and (c) there is clear notice in each modified Data File or in the Software as well as in the documentation associated with the Data File(s) or Software that the data or software has been modified.

THE DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in these Data Files or Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

Declaration of Conformity



MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC
Changes for the Better

MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION
SANDA WORKS
2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-City, Hyogo 669-1513, Japan
Phone: +81-79-559-3952

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY
For

CE

Product: Audio Navigation Unit
Model: NR-0V

Supplied by	**Technical File held by**
Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan	Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan

	Standard used for comply
R&TTE Directive (Safety)	EN 60950-1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2009 + Amd.1: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011 + Amd.2: 2013 EN 62479: 2011
RE Directive (EMC)	EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1: 2017-02 EN 301 489-17 V3.3.1: 2017-02
RE Directive (Spectrum)	EN 300 328 V2.2.1: 2016-11 EN 303 345 V1.1.7: 2017-03(Final Draft)

Means of Conformity
We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio Equipment (RE) Directive (2014/53/EU).

Date of issue: May 30, 2017

Signature of Responsible Person:

Hirotaka Minato
Senior Manager
Design B
Car Multimedia Manufacturing-A Dept.
MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION
SANDA WORKS
Minato.Hirotaka@ap.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp

Country/Area	
Brazil:	ANATEL Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário isto e, não tem direito a protecão contra interferéncia prejudicial, mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferéncia a sistemas operando em caráter primário. Para consultas, visite: www.anatel.gov.br
The United Arab Emirates:	TRA REGISTERED No.: ER013275/14 DEALER No.: DA0088122/12
Kazakhstan:	EAC Model name: NR 0V Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Exporting country: Japan

Country/Area	
China:	1. ■使用频率：2.4 - 2.4835 GHz ■等效全向辐射功率(EIRP)： 天线增益＜10dBi 时：≤100 mW 或≤20 dBm ① ■最大功率谱密度： 天线增益＜10dBi 时：≤20 dBm / MHz(EIRP) ① ■载频容限：20 ppm ■带外发射功率(在 2.4-2.4835GHz 頻段以外) ≤-80 dBm / Hz (EIRP) ■杂散发射(辐射)功率(对应载波±2.5 倍信道带宽以外)： • ≤-36 dBm / 100 kHz (30 - 1000 MHz) • ≤-33 dBm / 100 kHz (2.4 - 2.4835 GHz) • ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (3.4 - 3.53 GHz) • ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (5.725 - 5.85 GHz) • ≤-30 dBm / 1 MHz (其它1 - 12.75 GHz) 2.不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率(包括额外加装射频功率放大器)，不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线； 3.使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有干扰现象时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用； 4.使用微功率无线电设备，必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰； 5.不得在飞机和机场附近使用。
Korea:	B 급 기기 (가정용 방송통신기자재) 이 기기는 가정용(B 급) 전자파적합기기로서 주로 가정에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 하며, 모든 지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다. 해당 무선설비는 전파혼신 가능성이 있으므로 인명안전과 관련된 서비스는 할 수 없습니다 .
Malaysia:	 This device has been certified under the Communications & Multimedia Act of 1998, Communications and Multimedia (Technical Standards) Regulations 2000. To retrieve your device's serial number, please visit (volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support]) and search for “SIRIM Label Verification”. Device category: Navigation equipment for vehicle (Bluetooth) Model: NR-0V Type Approval No.: RDBV/25A/1118/S(18-4228), RDBV/26A/1118/S(18-4229), RDBV/37A/0619/S(19-2241), RDBV/39A/0619/S(19-2240)
Mexico:	
EU:	 Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city. Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan Mitsubishi Electric Corporation hereby declares that this type of radio equipment [Audio Navigation Unit] conforms with directive 2014/53/EU. For more information, search support information at www.volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] .
Taiwan:	低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自 變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立停用，改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

MPEG4-AVC (H.264):

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM

VC-1:

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD (“VC-1 VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM

MPEG-4 VISUAL:

USE OF THE PRODUCT IN ANY MANNER THAT COMPLIES WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD IS PROHIBITED, EXCEPT FOR USE BY A CONSUMER ENGAGING IN PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITIES.

2.3.4. Type approval Radio Equipment Directive

Information on the Radio Equipment Directive is available at volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] .

2.3.5. Certificate for wireless charger

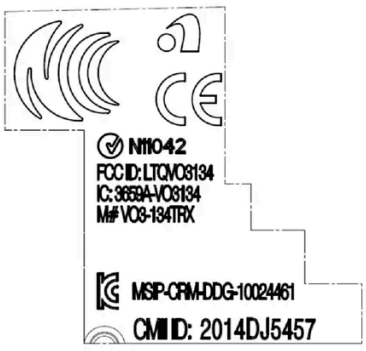
Country/Area	
China:	??????“????????????????????????”?? ?? ?? ????????????????????????ISM???????????????????????????????? ?? ?? ?? ????????????????????????5000???????????????????? ????????????????????????????
Mexico:	RCPVAPVO 18-1919 [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/VOLVO_Mexico_57442C.pdf]
Paraguay:	 2018-11-1-000541 [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/Volvo_Paraguay_57442C.pdf]
Taiwan:	??NCC????????????????? ??: ????? ?? ?? ????? ?? ???????????????????????? ??

Country/Area	
Ukraine:	Ци Діапазон частот: 107 кГц - 115 кГц Максимальна потужність радіосигналу: 5 Вт (сполучена), 63 Вт наномасштабів (випромінюється) Коефіцієнт викидів: N / A Модуляції: 2 кГц NFC Діапазон частот: 13,56 МГц, у межах +/- 0,01% Максимальна вихідна потужність РФ: 10 мВт – виробник: Ел-Джі Електронікс Інк.(LG Electronics Inc) 10, Магок'юнганг 10-ро, Гангсео-гу, Сеул, 07796, Корея Frequency range 111 кГц / Максимальна потужність РЧ: 42 дБмк А / м справжнім Ел-Джі Електронікс Інкзаявляє, що тип радіообладнання WC510MVV20 відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою:https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc. імпортер : Віннер Імпортс Україна Вул. Дачна, 5-А, с.Капітанівка, Київська область, 08112, Україна Тел.: +38(044) 585 63 00 Контактна особа : Alla Haidai (ahaidai@winner.ua)
USA/Canada	FCC ID : BEJWC510MVV20 IC : 2703H-WC510MVV20 This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-Gen,RSS-216 rules of Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Any changed or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment. FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 15cm between the radiator and your body. – IDéclaration d'avertissement ISED Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) Cet appareil ne doit pas provoquerd'interferences nuisibles, et (2) Cet appareil doit accepter toute interference recue, y compris les interferences pouvant entrainerun fonctionnement indesirable. Les changements ou modifications non expressement approuves par LG Vehicle Components Company pourraient annuler l'autorite de l'utilisateura utilizer l'equipement. Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations RF de l'ISED: Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements RF de l'ISED définies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet appareil et son antenne ne doivent pas être situés ou fonctionner conjointement avec une autre antenne ou un autre émetteur. Cet équipement doit être installé pour fonctionner avec une distance minimale de 10cm entre le radiateuret le corps de l'utilisateur final.

2.3.6. Type approval for the remote control key system

Type approval for the car's remote key system can be seen in the following tables.

Lock system keyless start (Passive Start) and keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry*)



CEM marking for the remote control key system. For supplementary type approval numbers, see following tables.

Country/Area	Type approval	
Argentina	CNC ID: C-14771	
Brazil	ICC 03.040/2024 Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.	ANATEL 04691-16-06830
Europe	Delphi Deutschland GmbH, 42367 Wuppertal hereby declares that this CV1-134TRX conforms to the essential property requirements and other relevant provisions contained in directive 2014/53/EU (RED).	
The United Arab Emirates	ER37847/15 DA0062437/11	
Indonesia	Nomor: 38301/SDPPI/2015	
Israel		See Illustration 1 below the table.
Jordan	TRC/LPD/2014/250	
Malaysia		
Mexico	IFETEL: RLVDEVO15-0396	
Namibia	TA-2016-02	CRAN Communications Regulatory Authority of Namibia
Russia		EAC
Serbia	P1614120100	
South Africa	TA-2014-1868	ICASA

Israel

Illustration 1

1. מספר אישור התאמה מטעם משרד התקשורת: 56-03586
2. חל איסור לבצע פעולות במכשיר שיש בהן כדי לשנות את תכונותיו האלחוטיות של המכשיר, ובכלל זה שינויי תוכנה, החלפת אנטנה מקורית או הוספת אפשרות לחיבור לאנטנה חיצונית, בלא קבלת אישור משרד התקשורת, בשל החשש להפרעות אלחוטיות.

Remote control key

Country/Area	Type approval	
Europe	Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co KG hereby declares that this type of radio equipment HUF8423MS conforms to directive 2014/53/EU. Wavelength: 433.92 MHz Maximum radiated transmission power: 10 mW Manufacturer: Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG, Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany	
Argentina		See the illustration below the table.
Brazil	Anatel: 06768-19-06643 Modelo: HUF8423MS Este equipomento opera em caráter secundário isto é não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.	ANATEL
Philippines	ESD-1919938C	NTC Type Approved No.: ESD-1919938C
The United Arab Emirates		TRA REGISTERED No: ER72465/19 DEALER No: DA36976/14
Ghana	NCA Approved: ZRO-M8-7E3-138	
Indonesia [1]	Sertifikat Nomor: 65073/SDPPI/2019 PLG ID: 8093	
CU (Customs Union) Kazakhstan, Russia		EAC
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 20402 ANRT 2019 Date d'agrément: 10/07/2019	
Moldova		024
Nigeria	Connection and use of this communication equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	
Oman		OMAN - TRA R/7757/19 D172249
Paraguay	HUF8423MS	HUF8423MS CONATEL NR:2019-08-I-0447
Serbia		005 19

Country/Area	Type approval	
Singapore	Complies with IMDA Standards DA103787	
South Africa	TA-2019/772	
Taiwan	本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條、第十四條等條文規定 .1 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不 • 得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能 .2 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾 • 現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用 • 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設 • 備之干擾	
Ukraine	.Справжнім Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co KG заявляє, що тип радіообладнання відповідає Технічному[HUF8423MS] регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст -декларації про відповідність доступний на веб :сайті за такою адресою Робоча частота: 433,92 ГГц	
Vietnam		ICT
Belarus		
Zambia		ZICTA ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/7/105

Argentina

H-23694

Key Tag

Country/Area	Type approval	
Europe	Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co KG hereby declares that this type of radio equipment HUF8432MS conforms to directive 2014/53/EU. Wavelength: 433.92 MHz Maximum radiated transmission power: 10 mW Manufacturer: Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG, Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany	

Country/Area	Type approval	
Argentina		See the illustration below the table.
Brazil	Anatel: 04362-16-06643 Modelo: HUF8432MS Este equipo opera em caráter secundário isto é não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.	
Ghana	NCA Approved: ZRO-M8-7E3-139	
Philippines	ESD-1919939C	
The United Arab Emirates		
CU (Customs Union) Kazakhstan, Russia		
Indonesia [1]	Sertifikat Nomor: 65072/SDPPI/2019 PLG ID: 8093	
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 20403 ANRT 2019 Date d'agrément: 10/07/2019	
Moldova		
Nigeria	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	
Oman		
Paraguay	HUF8432MS	
Serbia		
Singapore	Complies with IMDA Standards DA103787	
South Africa	TA-2019-773	
Taiwan	本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條、第十四條等條文規定 .1 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不 • 得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能 .2 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾 • 現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用 • 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設 • 備之干擾	

Country/Area	Type approval	
Ukraine	.Справжнім Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co KG заявляє, що тип радіообладнання відповідає Технічному[HUF8432MS] регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст -декларації про відповідність доступний на веб :сайті за такою адресою Робоча частота: 433,92 ГГц	
Vietnam		ICT
Belarus		TP BY
Zambia		ZICTA ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/7/121

Argentina

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

H-23695

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only applies to Indonesia.

2.3.7. Customer Privacy Policy

Volvo respects and safeguards the personal integrity of everyone visiting our website.

This policy regards to the handling of customer data and personal information. The purpose is to give current, past and potential customers a general understanding of:

- The circumstances in which we gather and process your personal data.
- The types of personal data we gather.
- The reason we gather your personal data.
- How we handle your personal data.

For more information on the policy, search support information at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] .

2.3.8. Terms & Conditions for Services

Volvo offers services that help to enhance car safety and comfort.

These services include everything from assistance in emergencies to navigation and various maintenance services.

Before using the services, it is important for you to read the support information relating to the Terms & Conditions for Services at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] .

2.3.9. Navigation license agreements*

A license[1] is an agreement granting a right to conduct some activity or to make use of another person's right under the terms and conditions of the agreement.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THE HERE DATABASE.

NOTICE TO THE USER

THIS IS A LICENSE AGREEMENT - AND NOT AN AGREEMENT FOR SALE – BETWEEN YOU AND HERE EUROPE B.V. (“HERE”) FOR YOUR COPY OF THE HERE NAVIGABLE MAP DATABASE, INCLUDING ASSOCIATED COMPUTER SOFTWARE, MEDIA AND EXPLANATORY PRINTED DOCUMENTATION PUBLISHED BY HERE (JOINTLY ”THE DATABASE”). BY USING THE DATABASE, YOU ACCEPT AND AGREE TO ALL TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (”AGREEMENT”). IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY RETURN THE DATABASE, ALONG WITH ALL OTHER ACCOMPANYING ITEMS, TO YOUR SUPPLIER FOR A REFUND.

OWNERSHIP

The Database and the copyrights and intellectual property or neighboring rights therein are owned by HERE and its licensors. Ownership of the media on which the Database is contained is retained by HERE and/or your supplier until you have paid in full any amounts due to HERE and/or your supplier pursuant to this Agreement or similar agreement(s) under which the Database is provided to you.

LICENSE GRANT

HERE grants you a non-exclusive license to use the Database for your personal use or, if applicable, for use in your business’ internal operations. This license does not include the right to grant sub-licenses.

LIMITATIONS ON USE

The Database is restricted for use in the specific system for which it was created. Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory laws (e.g. national laws based on the European Software Directive (91/250) and the Database Directive (96/9)), you may not extract or reutilize substantial parts of the contents of the Database nor reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, reverse engineer any portion of the Database. If you wish to obtain interoperability information as meant in (the national laws based on) the European Software Directive, you shall grant HERE reasonable opportunity to provide said information on reasonable terms, including costs, to be determined by HERE.

The Database includes information provided under license to HERE from third parties and is subject to the supplier terms and copyright notices set forth at the following URL:

Here.com/supplierterms

TRANSFER OF LICENSE

You may not transfer the Database to third parties, except when installed in the system for which it was created or when you do not retain any copy of the Database, and provided that the transferee agrees to all terms and conditions of this Agreement and confirms this in writing to HERE. Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided by HERE and not as subset thereof.

LIMITED WARRANTY

HERE warrants that, subject to the warnings set out below, for a period of 12 months after acquisition of your copy of the Database, it will perform substantially in accordance with HERE's Criteria for Accuracy and Completeness existing on the date you acquired the Database; these criteria are available from HERE at your request. If the Database does not perform in accordance with this limited warranty, HERE will use reasonable efforts to repair or replace your non-conforming copy of the Database. If these efforts do not lead to performance of the Database in accordance with the warranties set out herein, you will have the option to either receive a reasonable refund of the price you paid for the Database or to rescind this Agreement. This shall be HERE's entire liability and your sole remedy against HERE. Except as expressly provided in this section, HERE does not warrant nor make any representations regarding the use of results of the use of the Database in terms of its correctness, accuracy, reliability, or otherwise. HERE does not warrant that the Database is or will be error free. No oral or written information or advice provided by HERE, your supplier or any other person shall create a warranty or in any way increase the scope of the limited warranty described above. The limited warranty set forth in this Agreement does not affect or prejudice any statutory legal rights that you may have under the legal warranty against hidden defects.

If you did not acquire the Database from HERE directly, you may have statutory rights against the person from whom you have acquired the Database in addition to the rights granted by HERE hereunder according to the law of your jurisdiction. The above warranty of HERE shall not affect such statutory rights and you may assert such rights in addition to the warranty rights granted herein.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

The price of the Database does not include any consideration for assumption of risk of consequential, indirect or unlimited direct damages which may arise in connection with your use of the Database. Accordingly, in no event shall HERE be liable for any consequential or indirect damages, including without limitation, loss of revenue, data, or use, incurred by you or any third party arising out of your use of the Database, whether in an action in contract or tort or based on a warranty, even if HERE has been advised of the possibility of such damages. In any event HERE's liability for direct damages is limited to the price of your copy of the Database.

THE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY, SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, DO NOT AFFECT OR PREJUDICE YOUR STATUTORY RIGHTS WHERE YOU HAVE ACQUIRED THE DATABASE OTHERWISE THAN IN THE COURSE OF A BUSINESS.

WARNINGS

The Database may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results. The Database does not include or reflect information on - inter alia - travel time and may not include neighborhood safety; law enforcement; emergency assistance; construction work; road or lane closures; road slope or grade; bridge height, weight or other limits; road conditions; special events depending on the navigation system brand you possess.

GOVERNING LAW

This Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the jurisdiction, in which you reside at the date of acquisition of the Database. Should you at that moment reside outside the European Union or Switzerland, the law of the jurisdiction within the European Union or Switzerland where you acquired the Database shall apply. In all other cases, or if the jurisdiction where you acquired the Database cannot be defined, the laws of the Netherlands shall apply. The courts competent at your place of residence at the time you acquired the Database shall have jurisdiction over any dispute arising out of, or relating to this Agreement, without prejudice to HERE' right to bring claims at your then current place of residence.

* Option/accessory.

[1] EULA = End User License Agreement

2.3.10. Candidate List Substance Information (CL) in accordance with the Reach Regulation, Article 33.1

In accordance with Article 33.1 of the REACH Regulation (Reg. EC 1907/2006),[1] professional customers must be informed of Substances of Very High Concern (SVHC[2]) in products supplied by Volvo Cars. The intention is to facilitate the safe handling of the constituent components affected in order to protect people and the environment.
Volvo Cars supports the underlying goals of the REACH regulation in general, and Article 33 in particular, which are consistent with our own commitment to promote the responsible manufacturing, handling and use of our products.

Presence of Candidate List Substances

The articles in the "Candidate List Substances Table" below contain substances at greater than 0.1% w/w in the candidate list (CL) for the specific car. The information on substances in the candidate list (CL) is based on the data obtained from our suppliers and our own product data.

General Safe Use Information for Articles

Every car from Volvo Cars is provided with an owner's manual, which includes safe use information for owners/drivers/users of the car. Volvo Cars information on repair and servicing of cars and genuine parts also includes safe use information for service personnel.

Where present in parts of this car, the Candidate List substances shown on the relevant "Candidate List Substances Table" for the specific car are incorporated in such a way that potential exposure to customers as well as risks for people or the environment can be minimised as long as the car and its parts are used as intended, and any repairs, servicing and maintenance are carried out following technical instructions for those activities, and industry standard good practices.

An end-of-life vehicle may only be disposed of legally in the European Union at an Authorised Treatment Facility (ATF). Vehicle parts should be disposed in accordance with locally applicable laws and local authority guidance.

Candidate List Substances Table

More details are available in a pdf file, see Support / Information about the car / Rules and regulations.

We hereby inform that almost all product areas contain lead (CAS No 7439-92-1), primarily as alloying elements in steel, aluminium and copper.

[1] REACH - The European Union's chemicals legislation, which entered into force on 1 June 2007, Regulation (EC) No. 1907/2006 concerning the Registration, Evaluation, Authorisation and Restriction of Chemicals (REACH).

[2] SVHC - Substances of Very High Concern, which are included in the current candidate list (CL).

2.3.11. Spotify License agreement

Volvo provides a wide range of services, apps and programmes with the aim of making it more convenient, more pleasant and safer for you to use your Volvo. Several of the apps and programs are produced by third-party companies and contain software licensed by the third-party producer.

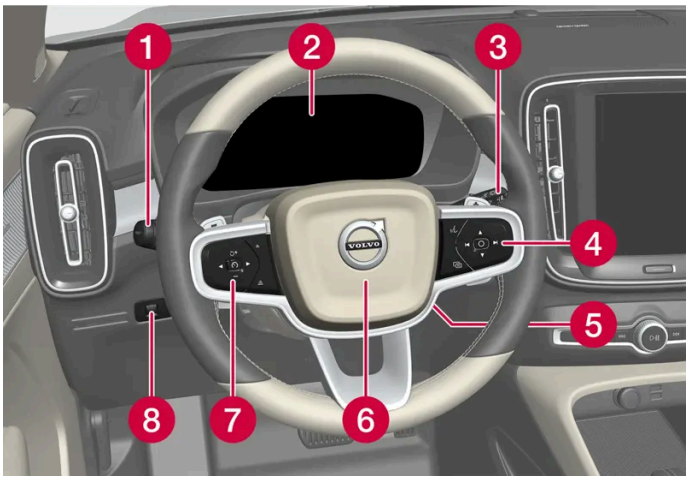
Spotify License agreement

This product contains third-party software licensed by Spotify: www.spotify.com/connect/third-party-licenses [https://www.spotify.com/connect/third-party-licenses] .

2.4. Displays and controls by the driver in a left-hand drive car

The overviews show where the displays and controls near the driver are located.

Steering wheel and instrument panel



1. Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, front fog lamps/cornering lights*, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter
2. Driver display
3. Wipers and washing, rain sensor*

4 Right-hand steering wheel keypad

5 Steering wheel adjustment

6 Horn

7 Left-hand steering wheel keypad

8 Display lighting, unlocking/opening*/closing* of tailgate

Roof console

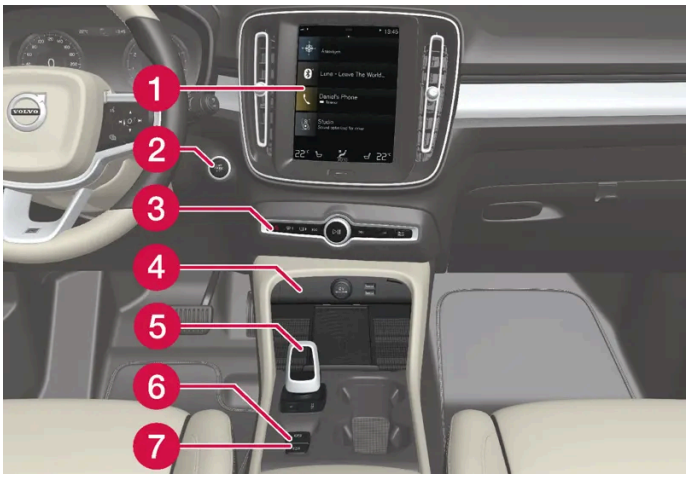
1 Front reading lamps and interior lighting

2 Panoramic roof*

3 Display in roof console, ON CALL button*

4 Manual dimming of interior rearview mirror* [1]

Centre and tunnel console



1 Centre display

2 Start button

3 Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media, drive mode button*

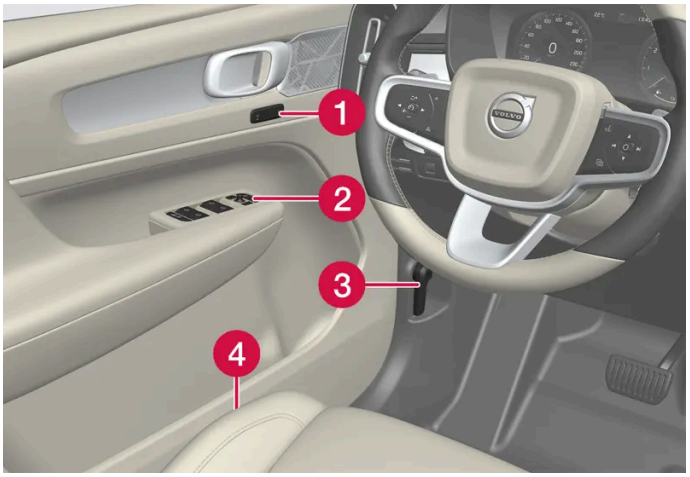
4 Electrical socket, USB port, wireless phone charger*

5 Gear selector

6 Parking brake

7 Automatic braking when stationary

Driver's door



1 Memory for settings for power front seat*, door mirrors

2 Central locking, power windows, door mirrors and child locks*

3 Bonnet opening

4 Adjusting front seat

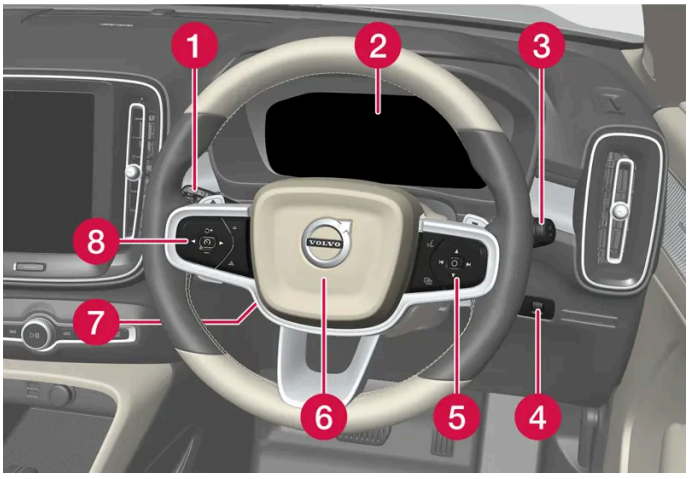
* Option/accessory.

[1] There are no controls for manual dimming for cars with automatic dimming.

2.5. Displays and controls by the driver in a right-hand drive car

The overviews show where the displays and controls near the driver are located.

Steering wheel and instrument panel

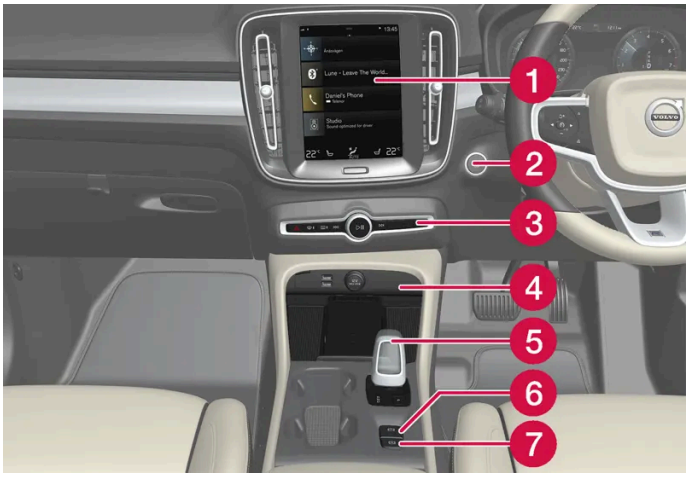


1. Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, front fog lamps/cornering lights*, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter
2. Driver display
3. Wipers and washing, rain sensor*
4. Display lighting, unlocking/opening*/closing* of tailgate
5. Right-hand steering wheel keypad
6. Horn
7. Steering wheel adjustment
8. Left-hand steering wheel keypad

Roof console

1. Front reading lamps and interior lighting
2. Panoramic roof*
3. Display in roof console, ON CALL button*
4. Manual dimming of interior rearview mirror

Centre and tunnel console



1. Centre display
2. Start button

3 Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media, drive mode button*

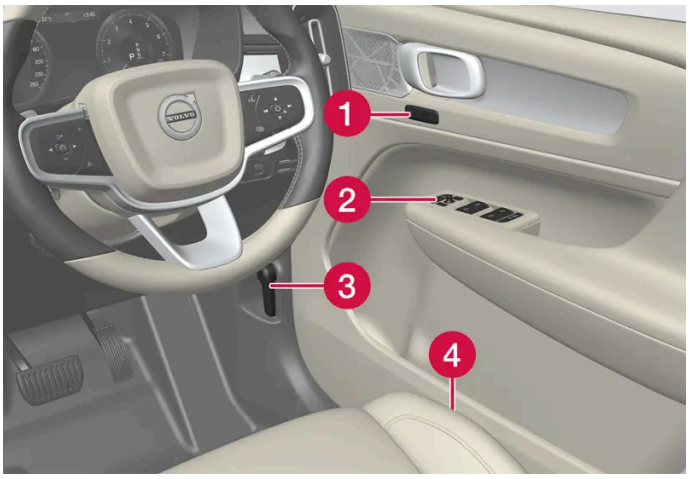
4 Electrical socket, USB port, wireless phone charger*

5 Gear selector

6 Parking brake

7 Automatic brake when stationary

Driver's door



1 Memory for settings for power front seat*, door mirrors

2 Central locking, power windows, door mirrors, electric child lock*

3 Bonnet opening

4 Adjusting front seat

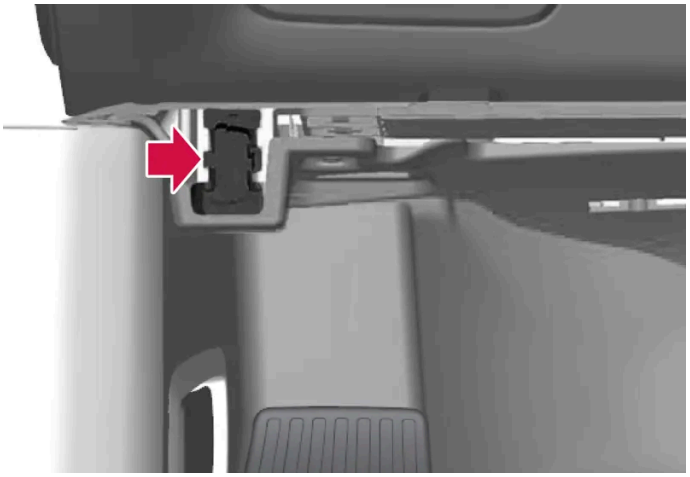
* Option/accessory.

2.6. Connection of equipment to the car's diagnostic socket

Incorrect connection and installation of software or diagnostic tools may have a negative effect on the car's electronic system.

Volvo strongly recommends that Volvo owners only install Volvo approved original accessories, and that installation of accessories is only carried out by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians. Certain accessories only function when associ-

ated software is installed in the car's computer system.



Data link connector (On-board Diagnostic, OBDII) is under the instrument panel on the driver's side.

Note

Volvo Cars accepts no liability for the consequences if unauthorised equipment is connected to the On-board Diagnostic socket (OBDII). This socket should only be used by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians.

2.7. Driver distraction

The driver is responsible for doing everything possible to ensure the safety of themselves, their passengers and other road users. Part of this responsibility is avoiding distractions such as carrying out an activity that is not related to operating the car in a driving environment.

Your new Volvo is equipped with content-rich entertainment and communications systems. You may also have other portable electronic devices for your own convenience. Use these systems and devices in a safe manner in order to avoid distraction.

We wish to give the following warnings regarding such systems, to indicate Volvo's concern for your safety. Never use a device or function in the car in such a way that it will distract you from the task of driving safely. Distractions can lead to serious accidents. Apart from these general warnings, we offer the following advice regarding the new functions that may be in the car:

Warning

- Never use a hand-held mobile phone while driving. In some areas it is forbidden for the driver to use a mobile phone while the car is moving.
- If the car is equipped with a navigation system you must only set and change the itinerary when the car is parked.
- Never program the audio system while the car is moving. Program the radio's presets when the car is parked and then use the programmed presets for faster and simpler use of the radio.
- Never use laptops or hand-held computers while the car is moving.

2.8. Change of market when importing or relocating

When you import a car or relocate a car to another country, it is important that you register the car in the new market in order, for example, for the online services to work correctly, as well as to ensure that the car complies with local requirements and laws.

Visit an authorised Volvo dealer

To get help to register the car, visit an authorised Volvo dealer.

If you do not do this then you may experience that apps, Volvo On Call[1], software downloads and other online services are affected and do not work correctly.

Creating a new Volvo ID in your new home market

When you relocate to another country you should create a Volvo ID in the new country.

If you have already created a Volvo ID in another country and want to use the same email address, you must first delete your Volvo ID in the region you originally created it. Alternatively, you can create a new Volvo ID using another e-mail address.

For cars with Volvo On Call[1]

Download the Volvo Cars app from the country where the car will be used and pair the app with your car.

> **Note**
>
> Visit an authorised Volvo dealer if you have imported or relocated with your car to a new country.
>
> Available services may vary depending on market and car model.

> **Note**
>
> If the car is exported to another market, Volvo is not responsible for any adaptations to the car in order to comply with requirements or laws that apply in the importing market. Read more in Service and Warranty or contact your Volvo workshop for more information.

[1] Applicable only to markets that have access to Volvo On Call.

2.9. Showing the car's identification number

All cars have a unique identification number, VIN[1]. This is required, among other things, for contacting a Volvo dealer if you have questions on Volvo On Call, for example.

1 Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.

2 Continue to **System → System Information → Vehicle Identification Number**.

> The car's identification number is shown.

Another way of finding VIN is:

- on the first page of the Service and warranty booklet
- in the car's registration document
- look on the dashboard through the car's windscreen.

VIN is positioned in a similar place on all models.

[1] Vehicle Identification Number

2.10. Recording data

As part of Volvo's safety and quality assurance, certain information about the vehicle's operation, functionality and incidents are recorded in the car.

Event Data Recorder (EDR)

This vehicle is equipped with an "Event Data Recorder" (EDR). Its primary purpose is to register and record data related to traffic accidents or collision-like situations, such as times when the airbag deploys or the vehicle strikes an obstacle in the road. The data is recorded in order to increase understanding of how vehicle systems work in these types of situations. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short time, usually 30 seconds or less.

The EDR in this vehicle is designed to record data related to the following in the event of traffic accidents or collision-like situations:

- how the various systems in the car worked
- whether the driver and passenger seatbelts were fastened/tensioned
- the driver's use of the accelerator or brake pedal

- the travel speed of the vehicle.

This information can help us understand the circumstances in which traffic accidents, injuries and damage occur. The EDR only records data when a non-trivial collision situation occurs. The EDR does not record any data during normal driving conditions. Similarly, the system never registers who is driving the vehicle or the geographic location of the accident or near-miss situation. However, other parties, such as the police, could use the recorded data in combination with the type of personally identifiable information routinely collected after a traffic accident. Special equipment and access to either the vehicle or the EDR is required to be able to interpret the registered data.

In addition to the EDR, the car is equipped with a number of computers designed to continually check and monitor the function of the car. They can record data during normal driving conditions, but in particular register faults affecting the vehicle's operation and functionality, or upon activation of the vehicle's driver support function (e.g.City Safety and the auto brake function).

Some of the recorded data is required to enable service and maintenance technicians to diagnose and remedy any faults that occurred in the vehicle. The registered information is also needed to enable Volvo to satisfy legal requirements laid out in laws and by government authorities. Information registered in the vehicle is stored in its computers until the vehicle is serviced or repaired.

In addition to the above, the registered information can be used in aggregate form for research and product development with the aim of continuously improving the safety and quality of Volvo cars.

Volvo will not contribute to the above-described information being disclosed to third parties without the vehicle owner's consent. To comply with national legislation and regulations, Volvo may be forced to disclose information of this nature to the police or other authorities who may assert a legal right to access such. Special technical equipment which Volvo and workshops that have entered into agreements with Volvo have access to is required to be able to read and interpret the recorded data. Volvo is responsible that the information, which is transferred to Volvo during servicing and maintenance, is securely stored and managed and that its management complies with relevant legal requirements. For further information - contact a Volvo retailer.

Vehicle Connectivity Module (VCM High)

Vehicles equipped with VCM High can collect data on the vehicle's safety functions as well as other functions in the vehicle. Data are collected for product development, quality follow-up and safety work, as well as to improve and monitor the vehicle's quality and its safety functions. The purpose of data collection is also to manage Volvo Car Corporation's warranty undertakings, as well as to meet legal requirements related to engine emissions data.

> **Note**
>
> In conjunction with data collection, Volvo may use a small part of the vehicle's data plan of up to 10 MB/month.

2.11. Installation of accessories

We strongly recommend that Volvo owners only install Volvo approved original accessories, and that installation of accessories is only carried out by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians. Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system.

- Volvo original accessories are tested to ensure that they function with the car systems for performance, safety and emissions control. In addition, a trained and qualified Volvo service technician knows where accessories may or may not be

safely installed in your Volvo. Always seek the advice of a trained and qualified Volvo service technician before installing any accessories in or on your car.

- Accessories that are not approved by Volvo may not have been specifically tested for use with your car.
- Some of the car's performance or safety systems can be negatively affected if you install accessories that have not been tested by Volvo, or if you permit someone without experience of the car to install accessories.
- Damage that is caused by accessories installed in a non-approved or incorrect way is not covered by any new car warranty. More warranty information can be found in the Service and Warranty Booklet. Volvo does not accept any liability for deaths, personal injury or costs arising as a result of the installation of non-original accessories.

2.12. Software updates

So that you as a Volvo customer get the best experience of your car, Volvo continuously develops the systems in the cars and the services that you are offered.

In connection with service at an authorised Volvo dealer, the software in your Volvo will be updated to the latest version. The latest software update allows you to benefit from available improvements, including improvements from earlier software updates.

> **Note**
>
> Functionality after updating may vary depending on market, model, model year and options.

2.13. Important information on accessories and auxiliary equipment

The incorrect connection and installation of accessories and extra equipment can negatively affect the car's electronic system.

Volvo strongly recommends that Volvo owners only install Volvo approved original accessories, and that installation of accessories is only carried out by trained and qualified Volvo service technicians. Certain accessories only function when associated software is installed in the car's computer system.

The equipment described in the owner's manual is not available in all cars - they have different equipment depending on adaptations for the needs of different markets and national or local laws and regulations.

Options or accessories described in this manual are marked with an asterisk. In the event of uncertainty over what is standard or an option/accessory, contact a Volvo dealer.

Warning

The driver always bears the ultimate responsibility that the car is used safely and that laws and regulations in force are followed.

It is also important that the car has maintenance and service according to Volvo's recommendations, the owner's information and the Service and Warranty Booklet.

If the on-board information differs from the printed owner's manual then the printed information always has precedence.

---

3. Safety

3.1. Seatbelts

3.1.1. Seatbelts

Heavy braking can have serious consequences if the seatbelts are not used.

It is important that the seatbelt lies against the body so it can provide good protection. Do not lean the backrest too far back. The seatbelt is designed to protect in a normal seating position.

> **Warning**
>
> Remember not to clip or hook the seatbelt to hooks or other interior fittings, as this prevents the belt from tightening properly.

> **Warning**
>
> The seatbelts and airbags interact. If a seatbelt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

> **Warning**
>
> Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.
>
> If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

3.1.2. Putting on and taking off seatbelts

Make sure that all passengers have fastened their seatbelts before starting to drive.

Putting on seatbelts

1 Pull out the seatbelt slowly and make sure it is not twisted or damaged.

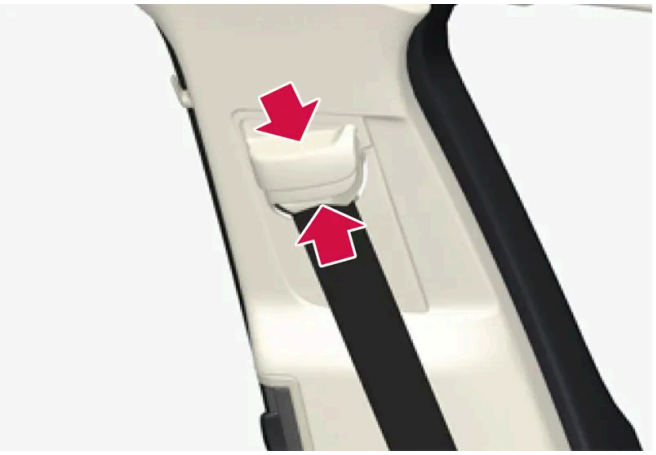
> **Note**
>
> The seatbelt is equipped with an inertia reel that is locked in the following situations:
>
> - if the belt is extended too quickly.
> - during braking and acceleration.
> - if the car leans heavily.
> - when driving in sharper bends.

2 Lock the belt by inserting the locking tab in the intended buckle.

> A loud "click" indicates that the belt has locked.

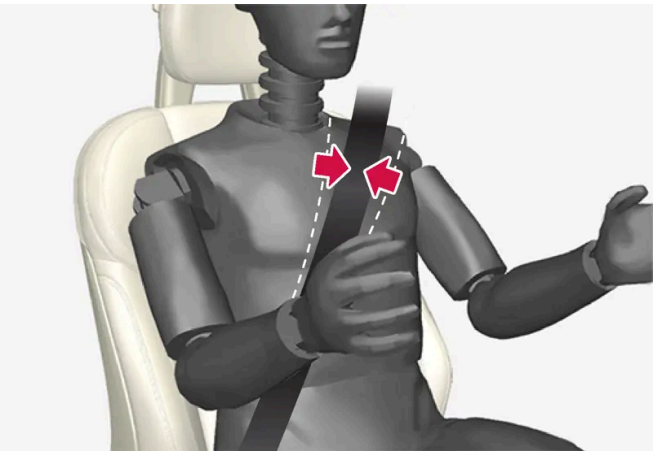
> **Warning**
>
> Always insert the tongue of the seatbelt into the buckle on the correct side. The seatbelts and buckles would otherwise possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serious injury.

3 In the front seats the seatbelt can be adjusted for height.



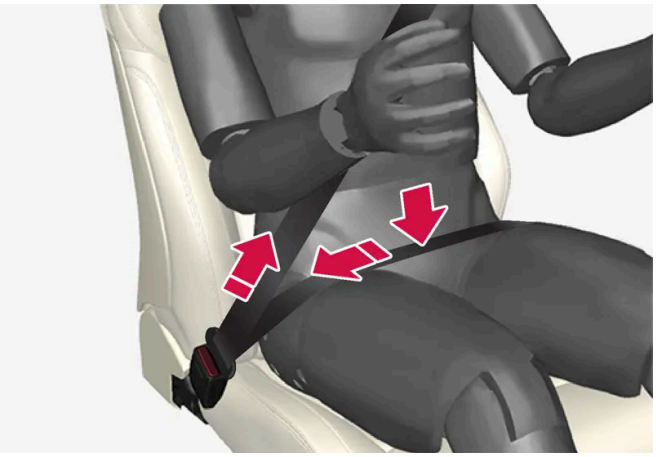
Press together the seat mounting and move the seatbelt up or down.

Position the belt as high as possible without it chafing against your throat.



The seatbelt must pass over the shoulder (not down over the arm).

4 Tension the hip strap over the lap by pulling the diagonal shoulder belt up towards the shoulder.



The hip strap must be positioned low down (not over the abdomen).

Warning

Each seatbelt is designed for only one person.

Warning

Remember not to clip or hook the seatbelt to hooks or other interior fittings, as this prevents the belt from tightening properly.

Warning

Do not make any damages on seatbelts nor insert any foreign objects into a buckle. The seatbelts and buckles would then possibly not function as intended in the event of a collision. There is a risk of serous injury.

Taking off seatbelts

1 Press the red button on the seatbelt buckle and then let the belt retract.

2 If the seatbelt does not retract fully, feed it in by hand so that it does not hang loose.

3.1.3. Seatbelt tensioner

The car is fitted with standard seatbelt tensioners and electric* seatbelt tensioners that can tension the seatbelts in critical situations and collisions.

Standard seatbelt tensioner

The seatbelts in the front seat and at the outer seats in the rear are equipped with a standard belt pretensioner.

The seatbelt tensioner tensions the seatbelt in the event of a collision with sufficient force in order to more effectively restrain the occupant.

Electric seatbelt tensioner*

The driver and front passenger seatbelts are equipped with an electric seatbelt tensioner.

The seatbelt pretensioner works together and can be activated together with the driver support systems for assistance at risk of collision and Rear Collision Warning*. In critical situations, such as panic braking, driving off the road (e.g. the car rolls into a ditch, lifts off the ground or hits something in the terrain), skidding, or risk of collision, the seatbelt can be tensioned by the seatbelt tensioner's electric motor.

The electric seatbelt tensioner helps to adjust the occupant to a better position, reducing the risk of striking the car's interior and improving the effect of safety systems, such as the car's airbags.

When the critical situation has come to an end, the seatbelt and the electric seatbelt pretensioner are restored automatically, but they can also be restored manually.

Important

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the electric seatbelt tensioner on the passenger side will also be deactivated.

Warning

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

* Option/accessory.

3.1.4. Resetting the electric seatbelt tensioner*

The electric seatbelt tensioner is designed to be reset automatically, but the seatbelt tensioner can be reset manually if the belt remains extended.

1 Stop the car at a safe place.

2 Unfasten the seatbelt and then refasten it.

> The seatbelt and electric seatbelt tensioner are reset.

Warning

Never modify or repair the seatbelts yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

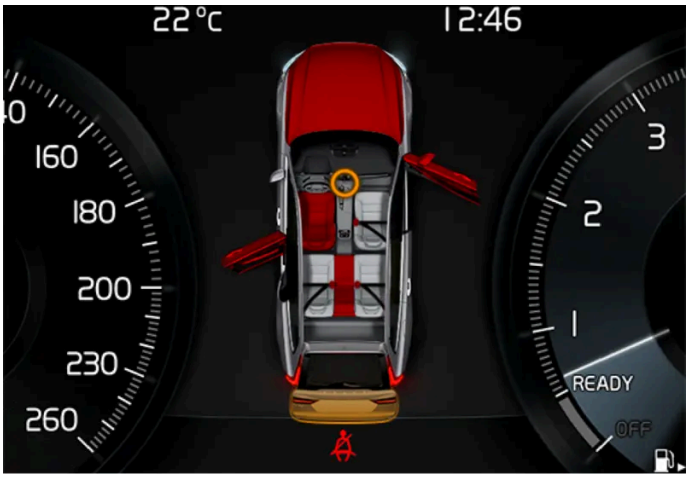
If the seatbelt has been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the entire seatbelt must be replaced. Some of the seatbelt's protective properties may have been lost even if the seatbelt does not appear damaged. The seatbelt must also be replaced if it shows signs of wear or damage. The new seatbelt must be type-approved and designed for installation at the same location as the replaced seatbelt.

* Option/accessory.

3.1.5. Door and seatbelt reminder

The system reminds unbelted occupants to wear a seatbelt, and also warns about an open door, bonnet or lid.

Driver display graphics



Graphics in the driver display with different types of warnings. The warning colour on the door and tailgate is dependent on the vehicle's speed.

The driver display's graphics show which seats in the car are occupied by belted and unbelted passengers.

The same graphic is also shown if the bonnet, tailgate or any door is open.

The graphic can be acknowledged by pressing the O button on the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

As soon as the graphic has been acknowledged, or after a while if the graphic is not acknowledged, it can switch to a smaller format that appears at the top edge of the driver display.

Seatbelt reminder

Visual reminder in the roof console.

A visual reminder is given in the roof console and by means of the warning symbol in the driver display.

The acoustic reminder is dependent on speed, driving time and distance.

The belt status of the driver and passengers is shown in the driver display's graphic when a belt is buckled or unbuckled.

Child seats are not covered by the seatbelt reminder system.

Front seat

A visual and acoustic reminder remind the driver and front seat passenger to use a seatbelt if either of them is not wearing one.

Rear seat

The seatbelt reminder in the rear seat has two subfunctions:

- Provides information on which seatbelts are being used in the rear seat. The driver display's graphics are shown when the seatbelts are in use.
- Reminding that a seatbelt in the rear seat is unfastened during a journey by means of a visual and acoustic reminder. The reminder will cease once the seatbelt has been put on again.

Reminder for doors, bonnet, tailgate and fuel filler flap

If the bonnet, tailgate, fuel filler flap or a door is not closed properly, the driver display's graphic shows what is open. Stop the car in a safe place as soon as possible and close the source of the warning.

If the car is driven at a speed lower than approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) then the driver display's information symbol illuminates.

If the car is driven at a speed higher than approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) then the driver display's warning symbol illuminates.

3.2. Airbags

3.2.1. Airbags

The car is equipped with a number of different airbags in order to assist in protecting driver and passengers.

Note

The detectors react differently depending on the nature of the collision and whether or not the seatbelts are fastened. Applies to all belt positions.

It is therefore possible that only one (or none) of the airbags may inflate in a collision. The detectors sense the force of the collision on the vehicle and the action is adapted accordingly so that none, one or more airbags are deployed.

Warning

The airbag system's control module is located in the centre console. If the centre console is drenched with water or other liquid, disconnect the cables to the starter battery. Do not attempt to start the car since the airbags may deploy. Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

Deployed airbags

If any of the airbags have deployed, the following is recommended:

- Recovering the car. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop. Do not drive with deployed airbags.
- Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to handle the replacement of components in the car's safety systems.
- Seek medical attention if necessary.

Warning

Never drive with deployed airbags. They can make steering difficult. Other safety systems may also be damaged. The smoke and dust created when the airbags are deployed can cause skin and eye irritation/injury after intensive exposure. In case of irritation, wash with cold water. The rapid deployment sequence and airbag fabric may cause friction and skin burns.

3.2.2. Driver airbags

As a supplement to the seatbelts, the car is equipped with steering wheel airbag and knee airbag[1] on the driver's side.

Steering wheel airbag and knee airbag[1] on the driver's side in the front seat.

In the event of a frontal collision, the airbags help to protect the head, neck, face and chest of the driver as well as the knees and legs.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag/airbags is inflated. The airbag cushions the initial collision impact for the occupant. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

Warning

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest.

Warning

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

Steering wheel airbag location

This airbag is fitted into the centre of the steering wheel. The steering wheel is marked AIRBAG.

Knee airbag[1] location

The airbag is folded up in the lower part of the instrument panel on the driver's side. Its cover panel is marked AIRBAG.

Warning

Do not place or attach any object on the top or front of the panel where the knee airbag is stowed.

[1] The car is only equipped with knee airbag in certain markets.

3.2.3. Passenger airbag

As a supplement to the seatbelts, the vehicle is equipped with an airbag on the passenger side in the front seat.

Passenger side front airbag.

In the event of a frontal collision, the airbag helps to protect the head, neck, face and chest of the passenger as well as the knees and legs.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the airbag is inflated. The airbag cushions the initial collision impact for the occupant. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. When this occurs, smoke escapes into the car. This is completely normal. The entire process, including inflation and deflation of the airbag, occurs within tenths of a second.

Warning

The seatbelts and airbags interact. If the belt is not used or is used incorrectly, this may diminish the protection provided by the airbag in the event of a collision.

To minimise the risk of injury if the airbag deploys, passengers must sit as upright as possible with their feet on the floor and backs against the backrest.

Warning

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

Passenger airbag location

The airbag is folded up into a compartment above the glovebox. Its cover panel is marked AIRBAG.

Warning

Do not put objects in front of or above the dashboard where the passenger airbag is located.

Label for passenger airbag

Label on the passenger side's sun visor.

The warning label for the passenger airbag is positioned as shown above.

Warning

If the car is not equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag, the airbag will always be activated.

Warning

Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

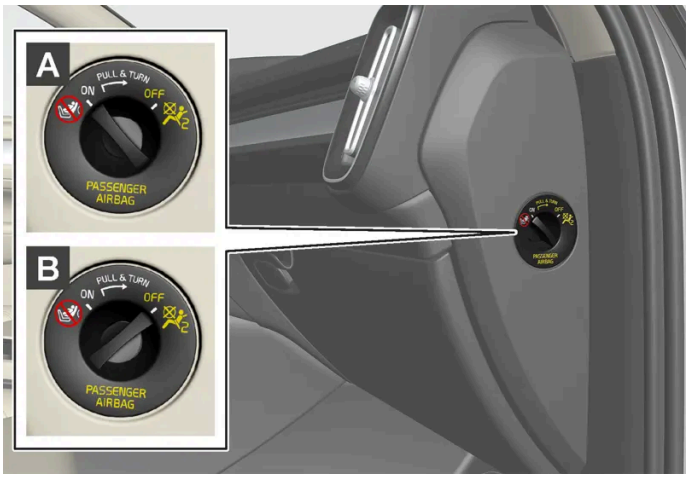
> **Warning**
>
> NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

3.2.4. Activating and deactivating passenger airbag*

The passenger airbag can be deactivated if the car is equipped with a switch, Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch (PACOS).

The switch for the passenger airbag is located on the passenger end of the instrument panel and is accessible when the passenger door is open.

Check that the switch is in the required position.



A ON - the airbag is activated and all front-facing passengers (children and adults) can sit safely on the passenger seat.

B OFF - the airbag is deactivated and children in rear-facing child seats can sit safely on the passenger seat.

> **Warning**
>
> If the car is not equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag, the airbag will always be activated.

Activating passenger airbag

1

1

Pull the switch outward and turn from OFF to ON.

> The driver display shows the message **Passenger airbag on Please acknowledge**.

> **Note**
>
> If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated with the car in ignition position **I** or lower, a message is shown in the driver display and the following indicator in the roof console approx. 6 seconds after the car's electrical system has been set in ignition position **II**.

2 Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.

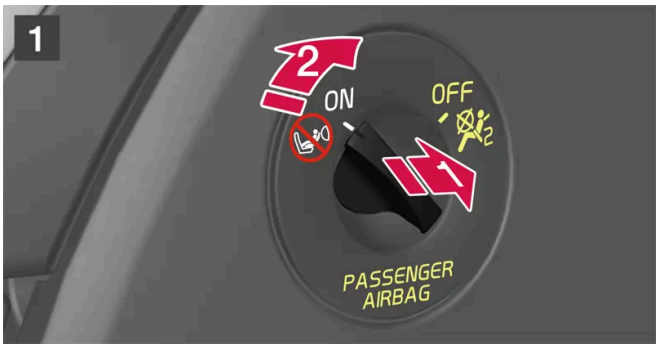
> A text message and a warning symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is activated.

> **Warning**
>
> Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the airbag is activated.
>
> The passenger airbag must always be activated when front-facing passengers (children and adults) are sitting in the front passenger seat.
>
> Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Deactivating passenger airbag

1



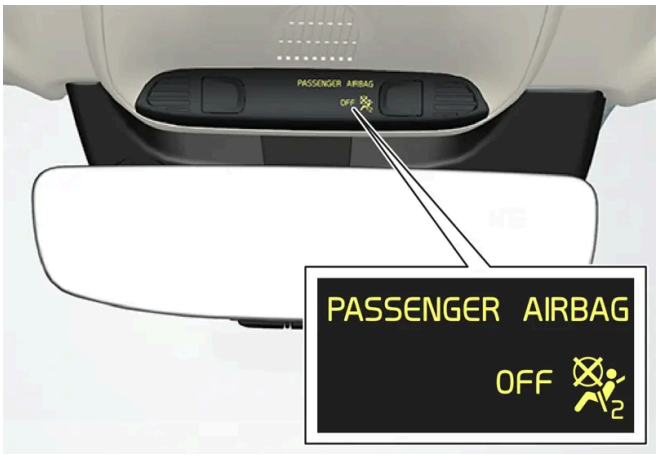
1

Pull the switch outward and turn from ON to OFF.

> The driver display shows the message **Passenger airbag off Please acknowledge**.

> **Note**
>
> If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated with the car in ignition position **I** or lower, a message is shown in the driver display and the following indicator in the roof console approx. 6 seconds after the car's electrical system has been set in ignition position **II**.

2 Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.



> A text message and a symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is deactivated.

> **Warning**
>
> Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the passenger seat when the airbag is deactivated.
>
> Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

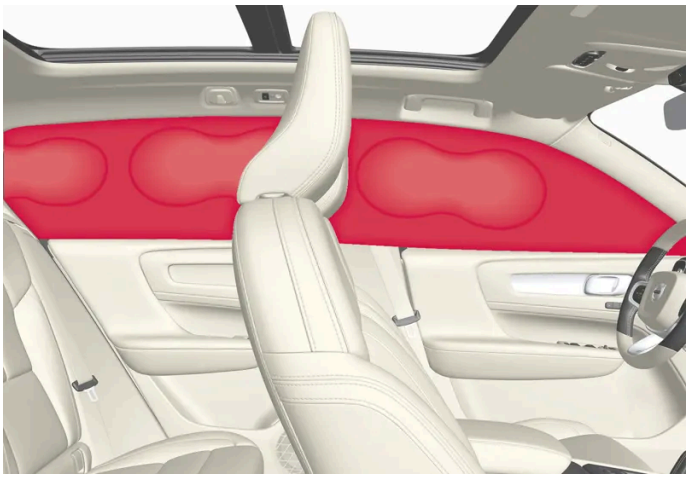
Important

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the electric seatbelt tensioner on the passenger side will also be deactivated.

* Option/accessory.

3.2.5. Inflatable curtains

The inflatable curtain, Inflatable Curtain (IC), helps to prevent the driver and passengers from striking their heads on the inside of the car during a collision.



The inflatable curtain is mounted along both sides of the headlining and helps protect the driver and outer seat passengers of the car. The panels are labelled with IC AIRBAG.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the inflatable curtain is inflated.

Warning

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the inflatable curtain system can cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

Warning

Never hang or attach heavy items onto the handles in the roof. The hooks are only designed for light coats and jackets (not for solid objects such as umbrellas).

Do not screw or install anything onto the car's headlining, door pillars or side panels. This could compromise the intended protection. Volvo recommends only using Volvo genuine parts that are approved for fitting within these areas.

Warning

Leave 10 cm (4 inches) space between the load and the side windows if the car is loaded to above the top edge of the door windows. Otherwise, the intended protection of the inflatable curtain, which is concealed in the headlining, may be compromised.

Warning

The inflatable curtain is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

3.2.6. Side airbags

The side airbags on the driver's and passenger seats act to protect the chest and hips in the event of a collision.

The side airbags are fitted in the outer backrest frames of the front seats and help to protect the driver and passengers in the front seat.

A sufficiently violent collision trips the sensors and the side airbags are inflated. The airbag inflates between the occupant and the door panel and thereby cushions the initial impact. The airbag deflates when compressed by the collision. The side airbag is normally only deployed on the side of the collision.

Warning

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair. Defective work in the side airbag system could cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury.

Warning

Do not put objects in the area between the outside of the seat and the door panel, since this area is required by the side airbag.

Volvo recommends the use only of car seat covers approved by Volvo. Other seat covers may impede the operation of the side airbags.

Warning

Side airbags are a supplement the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Side airbags and child seats

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by the side airbag.

3.3. Child safety

3.3.1. Mounting points for child seats

3.3.1.1. Lower mounting points for child seats

The car is equipped with lower mounting points for child seats in the front seat* and the rear seat.

The lower mounting points are designed to be used in conjunction with certain rear-facing child seats.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the lower mounting points.

The location of the mounting points

Mounting point locations in the front seat.

The mounting points in the front seat are located on the sides of the passenger seat's legroom.

The mounting points in the front seat are only mounted if the vehicle is equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag*.

Mounting point locations in the rear seat.

The mounting points in the rear seat are located on the rear section of the front seat's floor rails.

> **Note**
>
> Never store loose objects around a child restrain system's support leg. Make sure that loose parts of the child restrain system (e.g. fastening straps) are anchored as specified in the child restrain system's mounting instructions.

* Option/accessory.

3.3.1.2. i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats

The car is equipped with i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points for child seats in the rear seat.

i-Size/ISOFIX[1] is a fixture system for car child seats that is based on an international standard.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the i-Size/ISOFIX mounting points.

The location of the mounting points

Mounting point locations for the rear seat are indicated by symbols[1] on the upholstery of the backrest.

The mounting points for i-Size/ISOFIX for the rear seat are located behind covers in the lower section of the rear seat's backrest, in the outer seats.

To access the mounting points, push the seat cushion down if necessary and then lift the covers. Locate the mounting points that may be positioned some way in behind the covers.

[1] Names and symbols change depending on market.

3.3.1.3. Upper mounting points for child seats

The car is equipped with upper mounting points for child seats on the rear seat's outer seats.

The upper mounting points are primarily intended for use with front-facing child seats.

Always follow the manufacturer's installation instructions when connecting a child seat to the upper mounting points.

The location of the mounting points

Mounting point locations for the rear seat are indicated by symbols on the rear of the backrest.

The mounting points for the rear seat are located on the rear of the rear seat's outer seats.

Warning

The child seat's upper straps must be routed through the hole in the head restraint leg before they are tensioned at the mounting point. If this is not possible, follow the recommendations from the child seat manufacturer.

Note

Fold the head restraints in order to facilitate fitting this type of child seat in cars with folding head restraints on the outer seats, raise the head restraint after fitting.

The head restraint must always be raised when the child restraint system is used.

Note

The parcel shelf must be removed before child restraint systems can be installed in the mounting points.

3.3.2. Child seat location

3.3.2.1. Table for location of child seats using the car's seatbelts

The table gives a recommendation for which child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

Note

Always read the owner's manual section on installing a child seat before installing one in the car.

Weight	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)[1]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)[1]	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 0 max 10 kg	U[2], [3]	X	U[3]	U[3]
Group 0+ max 13 kg	U[2], [3]	X	U[3]	U[3]
Group 1 9-18 kg	L[4]	UF[2], [5]	U[5], L[4]	U[5]
Group 2 15-25 kg	L[4]	UF[2], [6]	U[6], L[4]	U[6]
Group 3 22-36 kg	X	UF[2], [6]	U[6]	U[6]

U: Suitable for universal category restraints approved for use in this mass group.
UF: Suitable for front-facing universally approved child seats.
L: Suitable for particular child restraints. These restraints may be of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.
X: The seat is not suitable for children in this mass group.

Warning

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

[1] The seat cushion extension must always be retracted for the installation of child seats.

[2] Adjust the seat to a more elevated position.

[3] Volvo recommends: Volvo infant seat (type approval E1 000008).

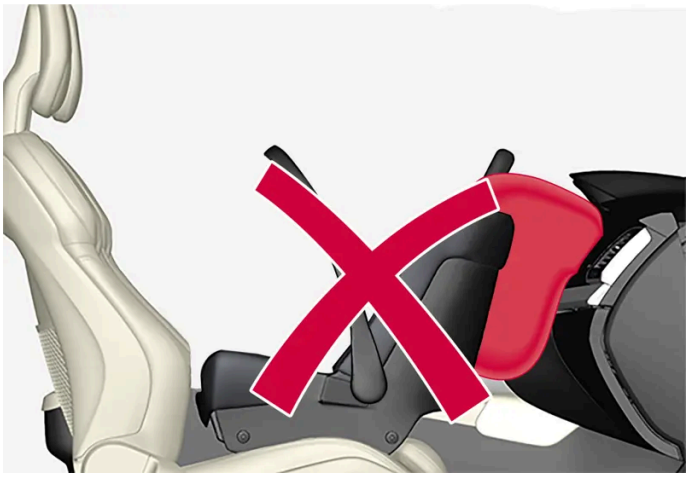
[4] Volvo recommends: Volvo rear-facing seat (type approval E5 04212).

[5] Volvo recommends rear-facing child seat for children in this mass group.

[6] Volvo recommends: Booster cushion with and without back (type approval E5 04216); Volvo booster seat (type approval E1 04301312).

3.3.2.2. Child seat positioning

It is important to position the child seat in the right place in the car. The choice of location depends, amongst other things, on the type of child seat and whether the passenger airbag is activated.



Rear-facing child seat and airbag are not compatible.

Always fit rear-facing child seats in the rear seat if the passenger airbag is activated. If a child is sitting on the front passenger seat then he/she could suffer serious injury if the airbag deploys.

If the passenger airbag is deactivated then rear-facing child seats can be fitted on the front passenger seat.

Note

Regulations regarding the placement of children in cars vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

Warning

Never allow anybody to stand or sit in front of the front passenger seat.

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the airbag is activated.

Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Warning

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Label for passenger airbag

Label on the passenger side's sun visor.

The warning label for the passenger airbag is positioned as shown above.

3.3.2.3. Child seat mounting

It is important to remember a number of things when a child restraint system is mounted and used, which depend on where the child restraint system is positioned.

Warning

Booster cushions/child seats with steel braces or some other design that could rest on the seatbelt buckle's opening button must not be used, as they could cause the seatbelt buckle to open accidentally.

Do not secure the straps for the child seat into the seat's horizontal adjustment bar or in springs, rails or beams under the seat. Sharp edges may damage the straps.

Do not allow the upper section of the child seat to rest against the windscreen.

Note

When using child safety equipment, it is important to read the installation instructions included.

In the event of questions when fitting child safety equipment, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

Note

Never leave a child seat loose in the car. Always secure it according to the instructions for the child seat, even when it is not in use.

Note

Observe caution when fitting child restraint systems so that sharp edges or protruding parts of the child restraint system do not scratch the interior of the car.

Long-term installation and use of child seats may cause wear and tear on the car's fittings. Volvo recommends using the kick guard accessory to protect the car's fittings.

Installation in the front seat

- When using front-facing booster seats and loose booster cushions where the child uses the car's seatbelt, raise the front seat if necessary so that the seatbelt strap can be tensioned around the child's hips.
- When fitting rear-facing child seats, check that the passenger airbag is deactivated.
- When fitting front-facing child seats, check that the passenger airbag is activated.
- When fitting rear-facing child restraint systems, lower the front seat to its lowest position unless otherwise specified in the relevant table for the location of child restraint systems.
- When fitting rear-facing child restraint systems, slide the front seat forward so that the child restraint system is in contact with or comes as close as possible to the instrument panel.
- When fitting adjustable child seats, the child seat must be adjusted so that the older the child is, the more upright the position is.
- Only use child seats that are recommended by Volvo, are universally approved or are semi-universal, and where the car is included on the manufacturer's vehicle list.
- ISOFIX child seats can only be fitted when the car is equipped with the ISOFIX console[1] accessory.
- If the child seat is equipped with lower straps, Volvo recommends that the lower mounting points are used with these[1].
- If the child seat is equipped with support legs, always fit the support leg/support legs directly to the floor. Never fit a support leg to a footrest or other object.
- The ISOFIX guide can be used in order to facilitate child seat installation.

Installation in the rear seat

- When fitting adjustable child seats, the child seat must be adjusted so that the older the child is, the more upright the position is.
- Only use child seats that are recommended by Volvo, are universally approved or are semi-universal, and where the car is included on the manufacturer's vehicle list.
- A child seat with support legs must not be fitted in the centre seat.
- The outer seats are equipped with the ISOFIX fixture system and are approved for i-Size[1].
- The outer seats are equipped with upper mounting points. Volvo recommends that child seat's upper straps should be pulled through the hole in the head restraint before being tensioned at the mounting point. If this is not possible, follow the recommendations from the child seat manufacturer.
- If the child seat is equipped with lower straps, never adjust the position of the seat in front after the straps have been fitted in the lower mounting points. Always remember to remove the lower straps when the child seat is not installed.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

- If the child seat is equipped with support legs, always fit the support leg/support legs directly to the floor. Never fit a support leg to a footrest or other object.

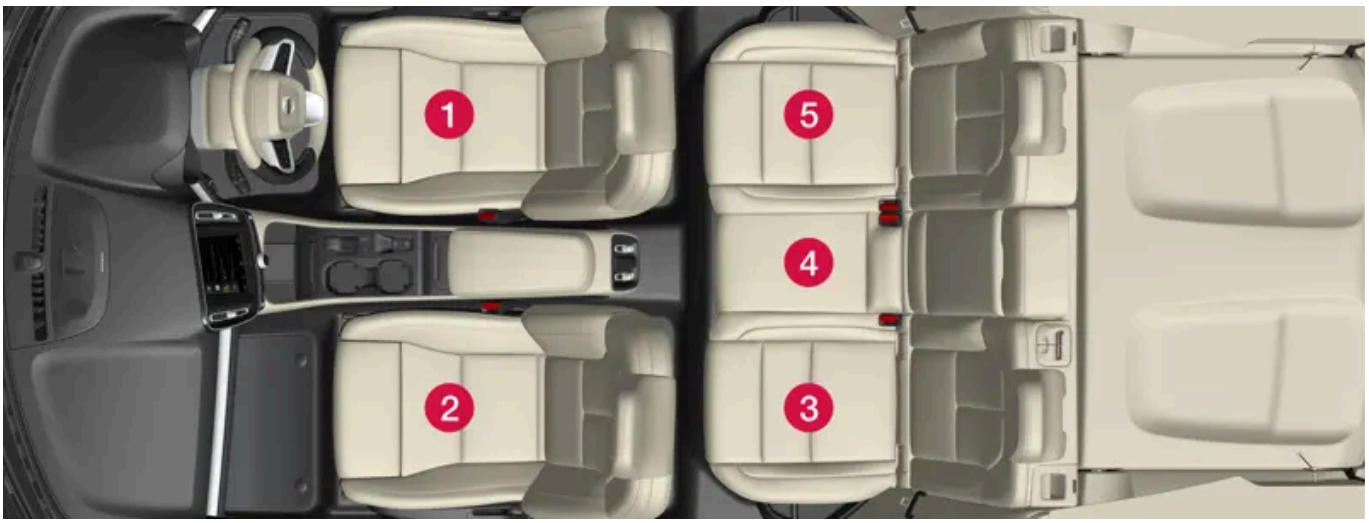
With the installation of an infant seat in the rear seat, Volvo recommends a distance of at least 50 mm (2 tum) from the front part of the infant seat to the rearmost part of the seat in front.

[1] Varies depending on market.

3.3.2.4. Overview table for location of child seats

The table gives an overview of the types of child seats suitable for the car's seats.

Seat positions in left-hand drive cars.



Seat positions in right-hand drive cars.

	i-Size child seats	Universally approved child seats secured using the car's seatbelt	Other child seat categories [1]
Seat position [2]	3, 5	2 [3], 3, 4, 5	2 [3], 3, 5

[1] For more information, contact the child seat manufacturer.

[2] According to the numbering above.

[3] Activated airbag for front-facing child seats. Deactivated airbag for rear-facing child seats.

3.3.2.5. Table for location of ISOFIX child seats

The table gives a recommendation for which ISOFIX child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

The child seat must be approved in accordance with UN Reg R44 and the car model must be included in the manufacturer's vehicle list.

> **Note**
>
> Always read the owner's manual section on installing a child seat before installing one in the car.

Weight	Size class [1]	Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats) [2], [3]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats) [2], [3]	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 0 max 10 kg	E	Rear-facing infant seat	IL [2], [4], X [5]	X	IL [4]	X

Weight	Size class [1]	Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats) [2], [3]	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats) [2], [3]	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
Group 0+ max 13 kg	E	Rear-facing infant seat	IL [2], [4], [6], X [5]	X	IL [4]	X
	C	Rear-facing child seat				
	D	Rear-facing child seat				
Group 1 9-18 kg	A	Front-facing child seat	X	IL [2], [6], [7], X [5]	IL [7], IUF [7]	X
	B	Front-facing child seat				
	B1	Front-facing child seat				
	C	Rear-facing child seat	IL [2], [6], X [5]	X	IL	X
	D	Rear-facing child seat				
Group 2/3 15-36 kg	–	Front-facing child seat	X	IL	IL	X

IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems. These child restraint systems are those of the specific vehicle, restricted or semi-universal categories.
IUF: Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraint systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.
X: Not suitable for ISOFIX child restraint systems.

Warning

Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat if the passenger airbag is activated.

Note

If an i-Size/ISOFIX child seat has no size classification, the car model must be included on the vehicle list for the child seat.

Note

Volvo recommends contacting an authorised Volvo dealer for information about which i-Size/ISOFIX child seats Volvo recommends.

[1] For child seats with the ISOFIX fixture system there is a size classification to help users choose the right type of child seat. The size class can be read on the child seat's label.

[2] Works for the installation of ISOFIX child seats that are semi-universally approved (IL) if the car is equipped with the ISOFIX console accessory (the accessory range varies depending on market). There are no upper mounting points for child seats here.

[3] The seat cushion extension must always be retracted for the installation of child seats.

[4] Volvo recommends: Volvo infant seat secured using the ISOFIX fixture system (type approval E1 000008).

[5] Applicable if the car is not fitted with an ISOFIX bracket.

[6] Adjust the backrest so that the head restraint does not interfere with the child seat.

[7] Volvo recommends rear-facing child seat for children in this mass group.

3.3.2.6. Table for location of i-Size child seats

The table gives a recommendation for which i-Size child seats suit which locations, and for what size of child.

The child seat must be approved in accordance with UN Reg R129.

> **Note**
>
> Always read the owner's manual section on installing a child seat before installing one in the car.

Type of child seat	Front seat (with deactivated airbag, only rear-facing child seats)	Front seat (with activated airbag, only front-facing child seats)	Outer rear seat	Centre rear seat
i-Size child seats	X	X	i-U [1], [2]	X
i-U: Suitable for i-Size "universal" child seat, front-facing and rear-facing. X: Not suitable for universally approved child seats.				

[1] Volvo recommends that children travel in a rear-facing child seat until as late an age as possible, at least until 4 years of age.

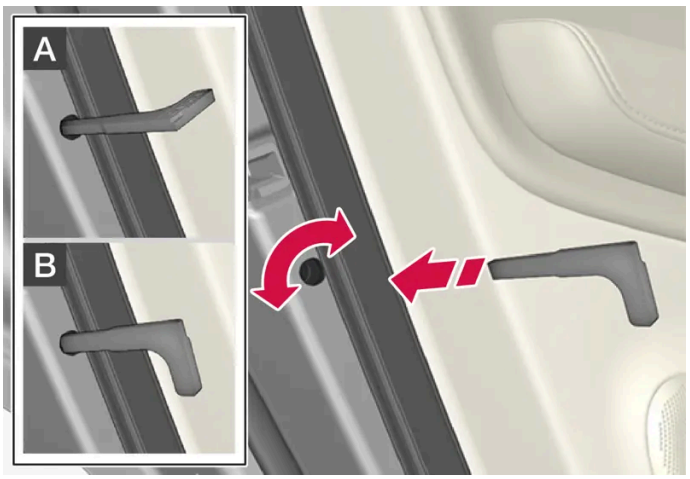
[2] Volvo recommends: Volvo Easy access rear-facing child seat i-Size (type approval E1-010016) and BeSafe iZi Kid X2 i-Size (type approval E4-129R-000002).

3.3.3. Activating and deactivating child safety locks

The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from inside. With electric child safety locks, power window operation from the rear seat is also prevented.

The child lock can be either manual or electrical*.

Manual child lock



Manual child lock. Not to be confused with manual door locks.

1 Use the key's detachable key blade to turn the knob.

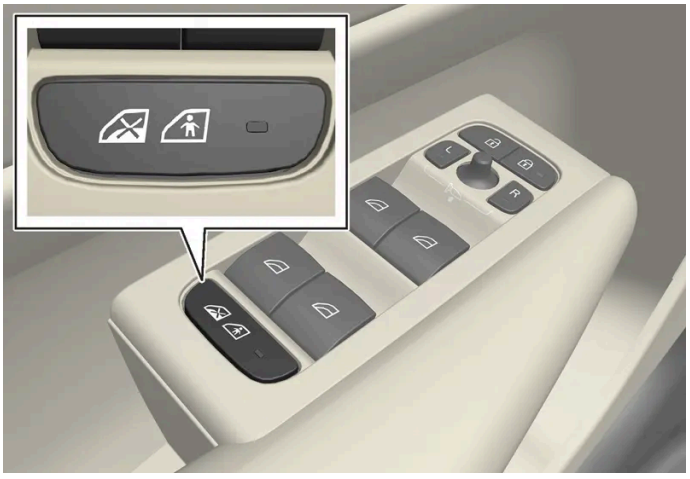
A The door is blocked against opening from the inside.

B The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

> **Note**
>
> - A door's knob control only blocks that particular door - not both rear doors simultaneously.
> - Cars with an electric child safety lock do not have a manual child lock.

Electric child lock*

The electric child lock can be activated and deactivated in all ignition positions above **0**. Activation and deactivation can be performed up to 2 minutes after switching off the car, provided that no door is opened.



Activation and deactivation button.

Rear child safety lock enabled

When the lamp in the button is illuminated, the child safety lock is enabled.

If the child lock is activated when the car is switched off, it will remain activated the next time the car is started.

- Rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- Rear power windows can only be operated from the driver's door.

Rear child safety lock disabled

When the lamp in the button is extinguished, the child safety lock is inactivated.

- Rear doors can be opened from the inside and power windows operated from the rear seat.

Symbols and messages

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Rear child lock Activated	The child lock is activated.
	Rear child lock Deactivated	The child lock is deactivated.

* Option/accessory.

3.3.4. Child safety

Children must always sit secure while travelling in the car.

Volvo has child safety equipment (child seats and attachment devices) which is designed for fitting in this particular car. Using Volvo's child safety equipment, you obtain good conditions for a child to travel safely in the car. In addition, the child safety equipment fits in well and is simple to use.

The equipment that should be used is selected taking account of the weight and size of the child.

Volvo recommends that children travel in a rear-facing child seat until as late an age as possible, at least until 4 years of age, and then in a front-facing child seat until the child is 140 cm (4 feet 7 inches) tall.

> **Note**
>
> Legal provisions about the type of child seat that must be used for children of different ages and heights vary from country to country. Check what does apply.

Note

When using child safety equipment, it is important to read the installation instructions included.

In the event of questions when fitting child safety equipment, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

Children of all ages and sizes must always sit correctly secured in the car. Never allow a child to sit on the knee of a passenger.

3.3.5. Child seats

Suitable child seats should always be used when children are travelling in the car.

Children should sit comfortably and safely. Make sure that the child seat is positioned, mounted and used correctly.

Look in the installation instructions for the child seat for the correct fitting.

Note

When using child safety equipment, it is important to read the installation instructions included.

In the event of questions when fitting child safety equipment, contact the manufacturer for clearer instructions.

Note

Never leave a child seat loose in the car. Always secure it according to the instructions for the child seat, even when it is not in use.

Note

Observe caution when fitting child restraint systems so that sharp edges or protruding parts of the child restraint system do not scratch the interior of the car.

Long-term installation and use of child seats may cause wear and tear on the car's fittings. Volvo recommends using the kick guard accessory to protect the car's fittings.

Note

For child restraint systems where the child uses the car's integrated seatbelt, read the owner's manual's recommendations about seatbelts.

3.3.6. Type lists for Volvo's child restraint systems

The type lists contain information about which car models and seating positions in the car that the child restraint systems are approved for.

Type lists for Volvo's semi-universal child restraint systems approved in accordance with UN R44

A number of child restraint systems are what is known as semi-universally approved in accordance with UN regulation 44-04. This means that they are approved for use in certain car models and on certain seats as prescribed. Information about the car models and which of the seats in the car are suitable is available in a type list that is included with the child restraint system. The type list is updated continuously as new car models come out on the market. You can find the latest version of the list in the links below.

- Volvo Infant seat ISOFIX base/BABY-SAFE ISOFIX BASE [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/19w11-childseats/19-01-09_infant_seat_ISOFIX_base_International.pdf]
- Volvo Rearward facing child seat/MAX-WAY [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/19w11-childseats/19-01-11_rearward_facing_international.pdf]
- Volvo Booster seat/KIDFIX SL [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/19w11-childseats/19-01-11_booster_seat_International.pdf]

Type list for Volvo's child restraint system approved according to UN R129 (i-Size)

i-Size has been part of the new regulation since 2013 (UN R129) which includes child restraint systems installed with ISOFIX. i-Size means fewer installation options for child restraint systems and reduced risk of incorrect installation. An i-Size approved child restraint system ensures that the restraint system can be used universally in cars with i-Size approved seat positions. Information about the car models and which of the seats in the car are suitable is available in a type list that is included with the child restraint system. The type list is updated continuously as new car models come out on the market. You can find the latest version of the list in the link below.

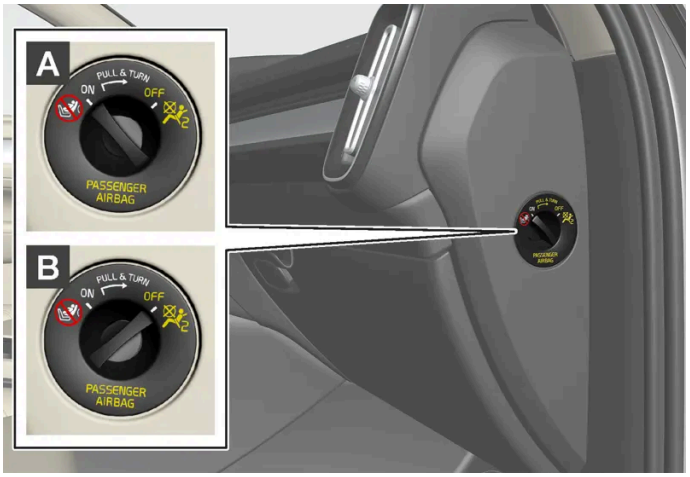
- Volvo Easy access rearward facing i-Size/SWINGFIX I-SIZE [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/NOTE-PROD-32204750-02-1.pdf]

3.3.7. Activating and deactivating passenger airbag*

The passenger airbag can be deactivated if the car is equipped with a switch, Passenger Airbag Cut Off Switch (PACOS).

The switch for the passenger airbag is located on the passenger end of the instrument panel and is accessible when the passenger door is open.

Check that the switch is in the required position.



A ON - the airbag is activated and all front-facing passengers (children and adults) can sit safely on the passenger seat.

B OFF - the airbag is deactivated and children in rear-facing child seats can sit safely on the passenger seat.

> **Warning**
>
> If the car is not equipped with a switch to activate/deactivate the passenger airbag, the airbag will always be activated.

Activating passenger airbag

1

1

Pull the switch outward and turn from OFF to ON.

> The driver display shows the message **Passenger airbag on Please acknowledge**.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Note

If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated with the car in ignition position **I** or lower, a message is shown in the driver display and the following indicator in the roof console approx. 6 seconds after the car's electrical system has been set in ignition position **II**.

2 Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.

> A text message and a warning symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is activated.

Warning

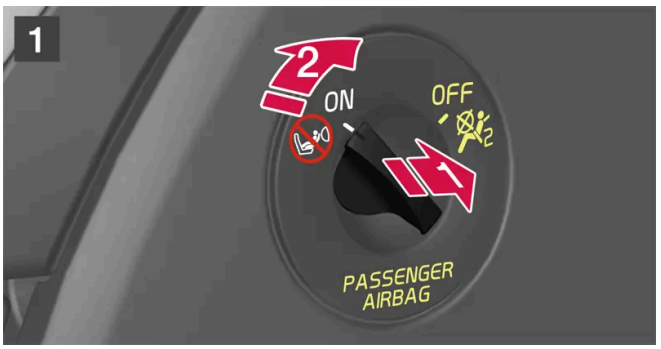
Never use a rear-facing child seat on the front passenger seat when the airbag is activated.

The passenger airbag must always be activated when front-facing passengers (children and adults) are sitting in the front passenger seat.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Deactivating passenger airbag

1



1

Pull the switch outward and turn from ON to OFF.

> The driver display shows the message **Passenger airbag off Please acknowledge**.

Note

If the passenger airbag has been activated/deactivated with the car in ignition position **I** or lower, a message is shown in the driver display and the following indicator in the roof console approx. 6 seconds after the car's electrical system has been set in ignition position **II**.

2 Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.

> A text message and a symbol in the roof console indicate that the airbag for the front passenger seat is deactivated.

Warning

Front-facing passengers (children and adults) must never sit on the passenger seat when the airbag is deactivated.

Failure to follow the advice given above can endanger life or lead to serious personal injury.

Important

If the passenger airbag is deactivated, the electric seatbelt tensioner on the passenger side will also be deactivated.

* Option/accessory.

3.4. Safety mode

3.4.1. Traffic accident

If your car is involved in a traffic accident, activate the hazard warning flashers and move the car into a safer position if possible.
Do not attempt to restart the car if there is a smell of fuel when the driver display shows the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual**. If so, leave the car at once!

Call the emergency services or roadside assistance as necessary.

Depending on the car's equipment, the car itself can detect an accident and contact the nearest emergency call centre. If the car does not have Volvo On Call*, there is a European legal requirement, Pan-European eCall, that provides access to an automatic collision alarm and urgent assistance in emergency situations[1].

- Think about safety when exiting the car!
- Use a reflective vest and position the warning triangle so that other road users are warned.

If you collide with a wild animal

Be careful, injured animals can feel trapped and then defend themselves.

Call the police to get help with humane killing if the animal is seriously injured, or move a dead animal away from the road so that it is not a danger to other road users.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

3.4.2. Safety mode

Safety mode is a protective state that is triggered when a collision may have damaged any of the car's vital functions, such as the fuel lines, sensors for any of the safety systems, or the brake system.

If the car has been in a collision, the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** may be shown on the driver display with a warning symbol as long as the display is not damaged and the car's electrical system is still in working order. This message means that the car has reduced functionality.

> **Warning**
>
> Never, under any circumstances, attempt to restart the car if it smells of fuel when the **Safety mode See Owner's manual** message is shown in the driver display. Leave the car at once.

If the car is in safety mode, it is possible to attempt to reset the system in order to start and move the car for a short distance, if in a dangerous traffic situation for example.

> **Warning**
>
> Never attempt to repair your car or reset the electronics yourself if the car has been in safety mode. This could result in personal injury or the car not functioning as normal. Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to check and restore the car to normal status after **Safety mode See Owner's manual** has been shown.

> **Warning**
>
> If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

3.4.3. Starting and moving the car after safety mode

If the car is in safety mode, it is possible to attempt to reset the system in order to start and move the car for a short distance, if in a dangerous traffic situation for example.

Reset and start the car after safety mode

1. Check the general damage situation of the car and whether any fuel has been leaking. There must be no smell of fuel either.

   If there is only minor damage and a check has revealed no fuel leaks, starting can be attempted.

   > **Warning**
   >
   > Never, under any circumstances, attempt to restart the car if it smells of fuel when the **Safety mode See Owner's manual** message is shown in the driver display. Leave the car at once.

2. Switch off the car.
3. Then try to start the car.

> The car's electronics carry out a systems check and then try to resume normal status.

> **Important**
>
> If the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** is still shown on the display the car must not be driven or towed but a vehicle recovery service must then be used instead. Even if the car appears to be driveable, hidden damage may make the car impossible to control once moving.

Moving the car after safety mode

1. If the driver display shows the message **Normal mode The car is now in normal mode** after a start attempt, the car can be carefully moved if standing in a dangerous position.
2. Do not move the car further than necessary.

> **Warning**
>
> If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

3.5. Safety

The vehicle is equipped with several safety systems that work together to protect the vehicle's driver and passengers in the event of an accident.

The car is equipped with a number of sensors that react in the event of an accident and activate different safety systems, such as different types of airbags and seatbelt tensioners. Depending on the specific accident situation, such as collisions at different angles, roll-over or driving off the road, the systems react in different ways to provide good protection.

There are also mechanical safety systems such as Whiplash Protection System. The car is also constructed so that a large part of the force of a collision is distributed to beams, pillars, floor, roof and other parts of the body.

The car's safety mode may be activated after a collision if an important function in the car has been damaged.

Warning symbol in driver display

The warning symbol is illuminated in the driver display when the car's electrical system is set in ignition position **II**. The symbol is extinguished after approx. 6 seconds if the car's safety system is fault-free.

> **Warning**
>
> If the warning symbol remains illuminated or is switched on during driving and the message **SRS airbag Service urgent Drive to workshop** is shown in the driver display, it means that part of one of the safety systems does not have full functionality. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted as soon as possible.

Warning

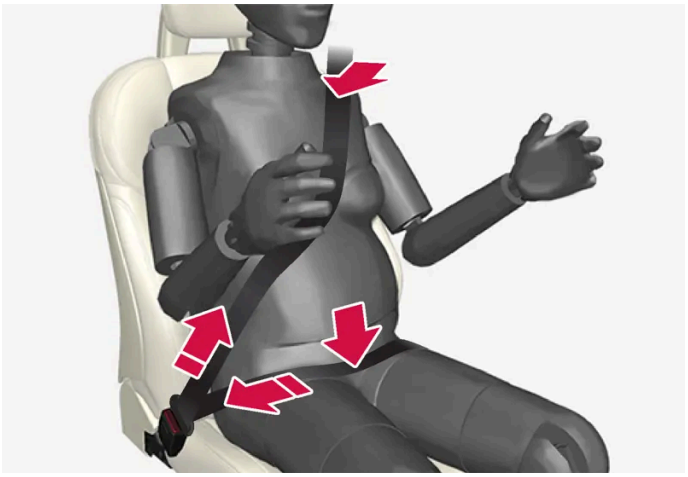
Never modify or repair the car's various safety systems yourself. Defective work in one of the systems can cause malfunction and result in serious personal injury. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the specific warning symbol is broken then the general warning symbol is illuminated instead and the driver display shows the same message.

3.6. Safety during pregnancy

It is important that the seatbelt is used correctly during pregnancy, and that pregnant drivers adjust their seating position.

Seatbelt



The diagonal section should wrap over the shoulder then be routed between the breasts and to the side of the abdomen.

The lap section should lay flat over the thighs and as low as possible under the abdomen. – It must never be allowed to ride upward. Remove the slack from the seatbelt and ensure that it fits as close to the body as possible. In addition, check that there are no twists in the seatbelt.

Seating position

As the pregnancy progresses, pregnant drivers must adjust the seat and steering wheel such that they can easily maintain control of the vehicle as they drive (which means that they must be able to easily operate the foot pedals and steering wheel). The aim should be to position the seat with as large a distance as possible between abdomen and steering wheel.

3.7. Whiplash Protection System

Whiplash Protection System (WHIPS) reduces the risk of whiplash injuries. The system consists of energy absorbing backrests and seat cushion, as well as a specially designed head restraint in the front seats.

WHIPS is deployed in the event of a rear-end collision, where the angle and speed of the collision and the nature of the colliding vehicle all have an influence.

When WHIPS is deployed, the front seat backrests are lowered backward and the seat cushions move downward to change the seating position of the driver and front seat passenger. Its movement helps to absorb some of the forces that can arise and cause whiplash.

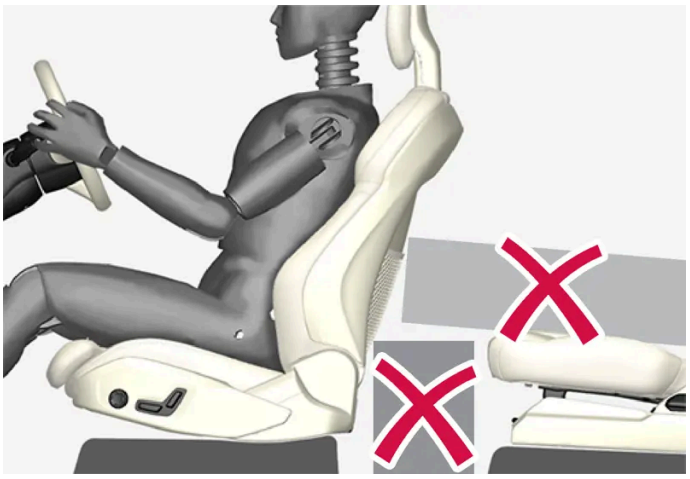
Warning

WHIPS is a supplement to the seatbelts. Always use a seatbelt.

Warning

Never modify or repair the seat or WHIPS yourself. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted.

If the front seats have been subjected to a major load, such as in conjunction with a collision, the seats must be replaced. Some of the seats' protective properties may have been lost even if they do not appear damaged.



Do not leave any objects on the floor behind or under the front seats or in the rear seat that may prevent WHIPS from functioning.

Warning

Do not squeeze rigid objects between the rear seat cushion and the front seat's backrest.

If a backrest in the rear seat is lowered then any load must be secured to prevent it from sliding up to the front seat backrest in the event of a collision.

Warning

If a backrest in the rear seat is lowered or a rear-facing child seat is used in the rear seat, the corresponding front seat must be moved forward so that it does not make contact with the lowered backrest or child seat.

Seating position

For good protection from WHIPS the driver and passenger must have the correct seating position and make sure that the system's function is not obstructed.

Set the correct seating position in the front seat before driving starts.

Driver and front seat passenger should sit in the centre of the seat with as little space as possible between the head and the head restraint.

WHIPS and child seats

The protection provided by the car to children seated in a child seat or on a booster cushion is not diminished by WHIPS.

---

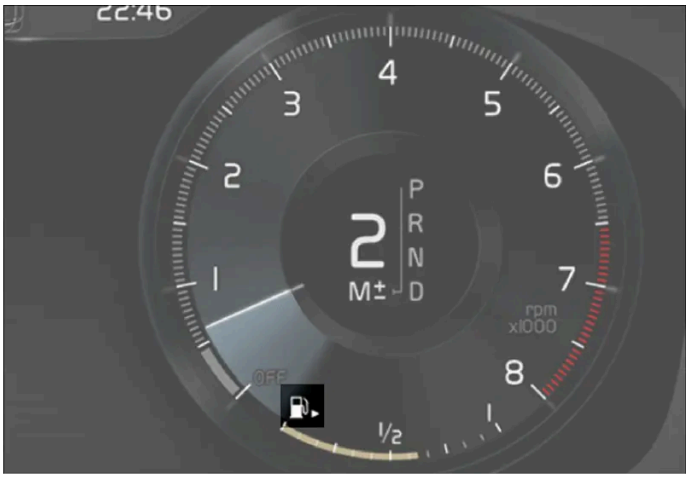
4. Displays and voice control

4.1. Driver display

4.1.1. Gauges and indicators in driver display

4.1.1.1. Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge in the driver display shows the fuel level in the tank.



The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

The beige zone in the fuel gauge indicates the quantity of fuel in the tank.

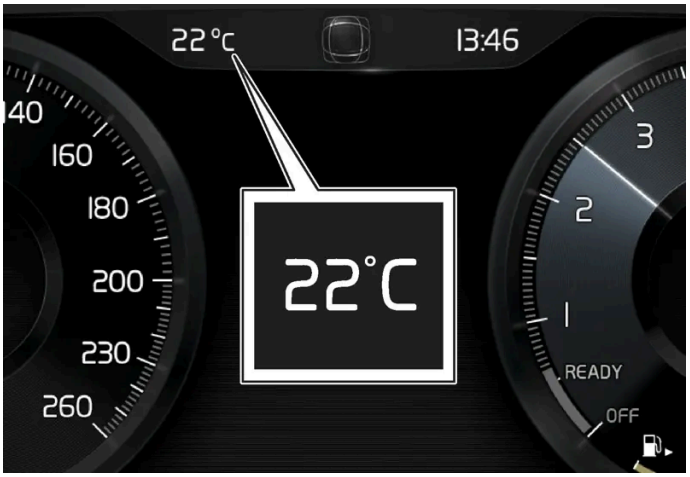
When the fuel level is low, the fuel pump symbol illuminates and turns amber colour. The trip computer also shows the distance to empty tank.

4.1.1.2. Outside temperature gauge

The outside temperature is shown in the driver display.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

A sensor detects the temperature outside of the car.



If the car has been stationary, the gauge may display a temperature reading that is too high.

When the outside temperature is in the range –5 °C to +2 °C (23 °F to 36 °F), a snowflake symbol lights up that warns of potentially slippery conditions.

Change the unit for the temperature gauge, etc. via system settings in the centre display's top view.

4.1.1.3. Gear shift indicator

The gear shift indicator in the driver display shows the current gear during manual gearshifting and when it is appropriate to engage the next gear for optimum fuel economy.

For eco-driving during manual gear changing, it is important to drive in the right gear and to change gear in good time.

With manual gearbox

An up-arrow indicates a recommended change to a higher gear, and a down-arrow a recommended change to a lower gear.

With automatic gearbox

The gear shift indicator shows the current gear in the driver display and indicates recommended shifting to a higher gear by a flashing plus sign.

4.1.2. Trip computer

4.1.2.1. Trip computer

The car's trip computer records vales such as e.g. distance, fuel consumption and average speed whilst driving.

In order to facilitate fuel-efficient driving, information is recorded about both instantaneous and average fuel consumption. The information from the trip computer can be shown in the driver display.

Examples of trip computer information in the driver display. The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

The following meters are included in the trip computer:

- Trip meter
- Odometer
- Instantaneous fuel consumption
- Distance to empty tank
- Tourist - alternative speedometer

Units for distance, speed, etc. can be changed via system settings in the centre display.

Trip meter

There are two trip meters, TM and TA.

TM can be reset manually and TA is reset automatically if the car is not used for at least four hours.

The following information is registered while driving:

- Mileage
- Driving time
- Average speed
- Average fuel consumption

The values apply from the trip meter's latest reset.

Odometer

The odometer records the car's total mileage. This value cannot be reset to zero.

Instantaneous fuel consumption

This gauge shows the fuel consumption that the car has at the moment. The value is updated approximately every second.

Distance to empty tank

The trip computer calculates the remaining mileage with the fuel available in the tank.

The calculation is based on the average fuel consumption over the last 30 km (20 miles) and the remaining drivable fuel quantity.

When the gauge shows "----", there is not enough fuel left to be able to calculate the remaining mileage. Refuel as soon as possible.

> **Note**
>
> There may be a slight deviation if the driving style has been changed.

An economic driving style generally results in a longer driving distance.

Alternative speedometer with tourist mode

The alternative speedometer makes it easier to drive in countries where speed limit signs are in a different unit than that normally shown in the car.

The digital speed is then shown in the opposite unit to that shown in the analogue speedometer. If the analogue speedometer is graduated in mph, the digital speedometer shows the corresponding speed in km/h and vice versa.

4.1.2.2. Show trip data in driver display

The trip computer's recorded and calculated values can be shown in the driver display.

The values are saved in a trip computer app. Via the app menu, you can choose which information is shown on the driver display.

Open and navigate in the app menu [1] using the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

1. App menu
2. Left/right
3. Up/down
4. Confirm

1 Open the app menu in the driver display by pressing (1).

(It is not possible to open the app menu while there is an unacknowledged message in the driver display. The message first has to be confirmed by pressing the O button (4) before the app menu can be opened.)

2 Navigate to the trip computer app to left or right with (2).

> The top four menu rows show measured values for trip meter TM. The next four menu rows show measured values for trip meter TA. Scroll up or down in the list with (3).

3 Scroll down to the option buttons to select which information to show in the driver display:

- Odometer
- Distance to empty tank
- Tourist (alternative speedometer)
- Mileage for trip meter TM, TA, or no display of mileage
- Instantaneous fuel consumption, average consumption for TM or TA, alternatively, no display of fuel consumption

Select or deselect an option with the O button (4). The change is made immediately.

[1] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

4.1.2.3. Resetting the trip meter

Reset the trip meter using the left-hand stalk switch.

1 Reset all information in trip meter TM (i.e. mileage, average consumption, average speed and driving time) with a long press on the RESET button on the left-hand stalk switch.

Pressing the RESET button resets only the mileage.

The trip meter TA can only be reset automatically when the car has not been used for four or more hours.

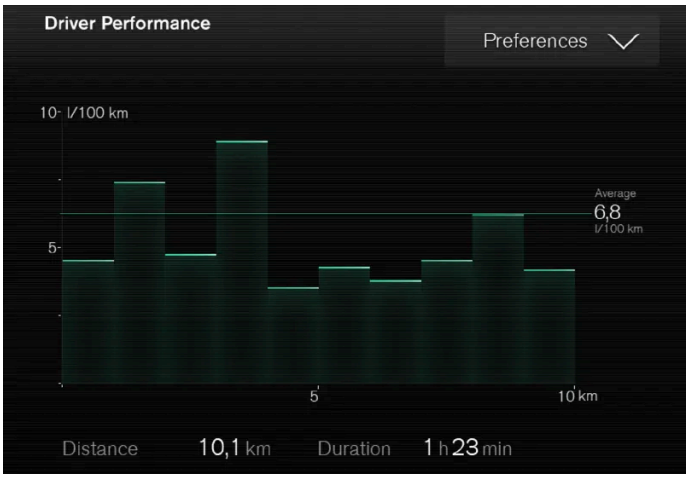
4.1.2.4. Show trip statistics in centre display

Trip statistics from the trip computer are displayed graphically in the centre display and provide an overview that facilitates more fuel-efficient driving.

Open the **Driver performance** app in app view in order to show the trip statistics.

Each bar in the diagram symbolises a distance of 1, 10 or 100 km, alternatively miles. The bars are filled in from the right as driving progresses. The bar on the far right shows the value for the current distance.

The average fuel consumption and total driving time are calculated since the last time the trip statistics were reset.



Trip statistics from the trip computer[1].

[1] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

4.1.2.5. Settings for trip statistics

Reset or adjust settings for trip statistics.

1. Open the **Driver performance** app in app view in order to show the trip statistics.

2. Press **Preferences** to
   - change graph scale. Select resolution 1, 10 or 100 km/miles for the bar.
   - reset data after every trip. Performed when the car has been stationary for more than 4 hours.
   - reset data for the current trip.

   Trip statistics, calculated average consumption and total driving time are always reset simultaneously.

Units for distance, speed, etc. can be changed via system settings in the centre display.

4.1.3. Driver display

The driver display shows information about the car and driving.

The driver display contains gauges, indicators and indicator and warning symbols. The content of the driver display depends on the car's equipment, settings and which functions are active at that time.

The driver display is activated as soon as a door is opened, i.e. in ignition position 0. The driver display extinguishes after a while if it is not used. To reactivate it, proceed with one of the following:

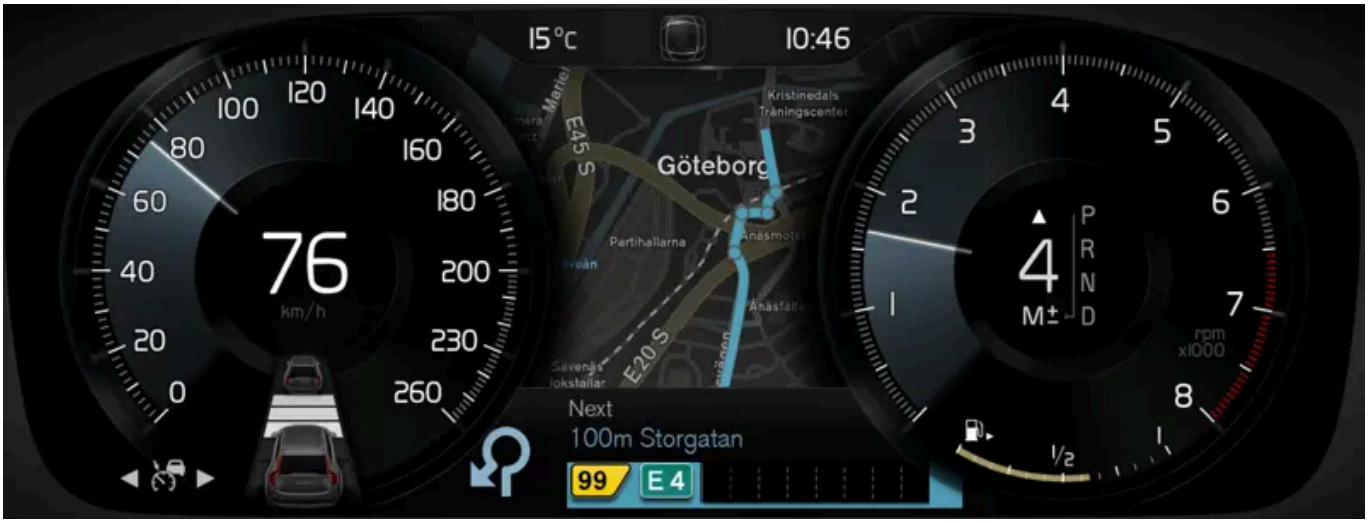
- Activate ignition position I.
- Open one of the doors.

Warning

If the driver display should extinguish, not illuminate on activation/start or be fully or partially illegible, the car must not be used. You should visit a workshop immediately. Volvo recommends an authorised Volvo workshop.

Warning

In the event of a fault in the driver display the information on e.g. brakes, airbags or other safety systems may not be shown. In which case, the driver cannot check the status of the car's systems or receive current warnings and information.



The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

Location in the driver display:		
On the left	**In the middle**	**On the right**
Speedometer	Indicator and warning symbols	Tachometer/ECO gauge [1]
Trip meter	Outside temperature gauge	Gear shift indicator

On the left	In the middle	On the right
Odometer[2]	Clock	Drive mode
Cruise control and speed limiter information	Messages, in some cases with graphics	Fuel gauge
Road Sign Information*	Door and seatbelt information	Start/stop function status
–	Media player	Distance to empty tank
–	Navigation map*	Instantaneous fuel consumption
–	Phone	App menu (activated via steering wheel keypad)
–	Voice control	–
–	Compass[1]	–

Dynamic symbol

The dynamic symbol in its basic form.

The centre of the driver display contains a dynamic symbol that changes appearance for different types of message. An amber or red marker around the symbol indicates the degree of severity of a control or warning message.

Examples of indicator symbol.

With an animation, the basic shape can be turned into a graphic showing where a problem is situated, or in order to clarify information.

The symbol in the driver display changes shape.

[1] Depends on drive mode selected.

[2] Accumulated mileage.

* Option/accessory.

4.1.4. Driver display settings

Settings for the driver display's display options can be made via the driver display's app menu and via the centre display's settings menu.

Settings via the driver display's app menu

The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

The app menu is opened and controlled using the right-hand keypad on the steering wheel.

In the app menu, you can choose which information is shown on the driver display from:

- trip computer
- media player
- phone
- navigation system*.

Settings via the centre display

Selecting information type

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Displays** → **Driver Display Information**.

3 Select what should be shown in the background:

- **Show no information in background**
- **Show information for current playing media**
- **Show navigation even if no route is set**

Selecting theme

1 Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.

2 Tap on **My Car** → **Displays** → **Display Themes**.

3 Select a theme (appearance) for the driver display:

- **Glass**
- **Minimalistic**
- **Performance**
- **Chrome Rings**

Selecting language

1 Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.

2 Tap on **System** → **System Languages and Units** → **System Language** to select language.

> A change will affect the language in all displays.

These settings are personal and are saved automatically to the active driver profile.

* Option/accessory.

4.1.5. License agreement for driver display

A license is an agreement for the right to operate a certain activity or the right to use someone else's entitlement according to the terms and conditions in the agreement. The following text is Volvo's agreement with the manufacturer or developer.

Freetype Project License

 2006-Jan-27 Copyright 1996-2002, 2006 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg.

Introduction

The FreeType Project is distributed in several archive packages; some of them may contain, in addition to the FreeType font engine, various tools and contributions which rely on, or relate to, the FreeType Project. This license applies to all files found in such packages, and which do not fall under their own explicit license. The license affects thus the FreeType font engine, the test programs, documentation and makefiles, at the very least. This license was inspired by the BSD, Artistic, and IJG (Independent JPEG Group) licenses, which all encourage inclusion and use of free software in commercial and freeware products alike. As a consequence, its main points are that: o We don't promise that this software works. However, we will be interested in any kind of bug reports. (`as is' distribution) o You can use this software for whatever you want, in parts or full form, without having to pay us. (`royalty-free' usage) o You may not pretend that you wrote this software. If you use it, or only parts of it, in a program, you must acknowledge somewhere in your documentation that you have used the FreeType code. (`credits') We specifically permit and encourage the inclusion of this software, with or without modifications, in commercial products. We disclaim all warranties covering The FreeType Project and assume no liability related to The FreeType Project. Finally, many people asked us for a preferred form for a credit/disclaimer to use in compliance with this license. We thus encourage you to use the following text:

"Portions of this software are copyright © 2013 The FreeType Project (www.freetype.org). All rights reserved."

Legal Terms

0. Definitions – Throughout this license, the terms `package', `FreeType Project', and `FreeType archive' refer to the set of files originally distributed by the authors (David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg) as the `FreeType Project', be they named as alpha, beta or final release. `You' refers to the licensee, or person using the project, where `using' is a generic term including compiling the project's source code as well as linking it to form a `program' or `executable'. This program is referred to as `a program using the FreeType engine'. This license applies to all files distributed in the original FreeType Project, including all source code, binaries and documentation, unless otherwise stated in the file in its original, unmodified form as distributed in the original archive. If you are unsure whether or not a particular file is covered by this license, you must contact us to verify this. The FreeType Project is copyright (C) 1996-2000 by David Turner, Robert Wilhelm, and Werner Lemberg. All rights reserved except as specified below.

1. No Warranty – THE FREETYPE PROJECT IS PROVIDED `AS IS' WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. IN NO EVENT WILL ANY OF THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DAMAGES CAUSED BY THE USE OR THE INABILITY TO USE, OF THE FREETYPE PROJECT. '

2. Redistribution – This license grants a worldwide, royalty-free, perpetual and irrevocable right and license to use, execute, perform, compile, display, copy, create derivative works of, distribute and sublicense the FreeType Project (in both source and object code forms) and derivative works thereof for any purpose; and to authorize others to exercise some or all of the rights granted herein, subject to the following conditions: o Redistribution of source code must retain this license file (`FTL.TXT') unaltered; any additions, deletions or changes to the original files must be clearly indicated in accompanying documentation. The copyright notices of the unaltered, original files must be preserved in all copies of source files. o Redistribution in binary form must provide a disclaimer that states that the software is based in part of the work of the FreeType Team, in the distribution documentation. We also encourage you to put an URL to the FreeType web page in your documentation, though this isn't mandatory. These conditions apply to any software derived from or based on the FreeType Project, not just the unmodified files. If you use our work, you must acknowledge us. However, no fee need be paid to us.

3. Advertising – Neither the FreeType authors and contributors nor you shall use the name of the other for commercial, advertising, or promotional purposes without specific prior written permission. We suggest, but do not require, that you use one or more of the following phrases to refer to this software in your documentation or advertising materials: `FreeType Project', `FreeType Engine', `FreeType library', or `FreeType Distribution'. As you have not signed this license, you are not required to ac-

cept it. However, as the FreeType Project is copyrighted material, only this license, or another one contracted with the authors, grants you the right to use, distribute, and modify it. Therefore, by using, distributing, or modifying the FreeType Project, you indicate that you understand and accept all the terms of this license.

4. Contacts – There are two mailing lists related to FreeType: o freetype@nongnu.org. Discusses general use and applications of FreeType, as well as future and wanted additions to the library and distribution. If you are looking for support, start in this list if you haven't found anything to help you in the documentation. o freetype-devel@nongnu.org. Discusses bugs, as well as engine internals, design issues, specific licenses, porting, etc. Our home page can be found at http://www.freetype.org

HarfBuzz / UCDN License

- Copyright © 2010,2011,2012 Google, Inc.
- Copyright © 2012 Mozilla Foundation
- Copyright © 2011 Codethink Limited
- Copyright © 2008,2010 Nokia Corporation and/or its subsidiary(-ies)
- Copyright © 2009 Keith Stribley
- Copyright © 2009 Martin Hosken and SIL International
- Copyright © 2007 Chris Wilson
- Copyright © 2006 Behdad Esfahbod
- Copyright © 2005 David Turner
- Copyright © 2004,2007,2008,2009,2010 Red Hat, Inc.
- Copyright © 1998-2004 David Turner and Werner Lemberg

For full copyright notices consult the individual files in the package. Permission is hereby granted, without written agreement and without license or royalty fees, to use, copy, modify, and distribute this software and its documentation for any purpose, provided that the above copyright notice and the following two paragraphs appear in all copies of this software. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER BE LIABLE TO ANY PARTY FOR DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE AND ITS DOCUMENTATION, EVEN IF THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE. THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER SPECIFICALLY DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE SOFTWARE PROVIDED HEREUNDER IS ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, AND THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER HAS NO OBLIGATION TO PROVIDE MAINTENANCE, SUPPORT, UPDATES, ENHANCEMENTS, OR MODIFICATIONS.

Libunibreak License

This library is released under an open-source licence, the zlib/libpng licence. Please check the file LICENCE for details. Apart from using the algorithm, part of the code is derived from the data provided under http://www.unicode.org/Public. And the Unicode Terms of Use may apply: URL:http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html

LICENSE:

- Copyright (C) 2008-2012 Wu Yongwei <wuyongwei at gmail dot com>
- Copyright (C) 2012 Tom Hacohen <tom dot hacohen at samsung dot com>

This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the author be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software. Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgement in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Unicode Inc. License Agreement

EXHIBIT 1 UNICODE, INC. LICENSE AGREEMENT - DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE Unicode Data Files include all data files under the directories http://www.unicode.org/Public/, http://www.unicode.org/reports/, and http://www.unicode.org/cldr/data/ . Unicode Software includes any source code published in the Unicode Standard or under the directories http://www.unicode.org/Public/, http://www.unicode.org/reports/, and http://www.unicode.org/cldr/data/. NOTICE TO USER: Carefully read the following legal agreement. BY DOWNLOADING, INSTALLING, COPYING OR OTHERWISE USING UNICODE INC.'S DATA FILES ("DATA FILES"), AND/OR SOFTWARE ("SOFTWARE"), YOU UNEQUIVOCALLY ACCEPT, AND AGREE TO BE BOUND BY, ALL OF THE TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS AGREEMENT. IF YOU DO NOT AGREE, DO NOT DOWNLOAD, INSTALL, COPY, DISTRIBUTE OR USE THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE. COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE Copyright © 1991-2010 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Unicode data files and any associated documentation (the "Data Files") or Unicode software and any associated documentation (the "Software") to deal in the Data Files or Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Data Files or Software, and to permit persons to whom the Data Files or Software are furnished to do so, provided that (a) the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear with all copies of the Data Files or Software, (b) both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in associated documentation, and (c) there is clear notice in each modified Data File or in the Software as well as in the documentation associated with the Data File(s) or Software that the data or software has been modified. THE DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in these Data Files or Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

ZLIB Data Compression Library License Agreement

(C) 1995-2010 Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler This software is provided 'as-is', without any express or implied warranty. In no event will the authors be held liable for any damages arising from the use of this software. Permission is granted to anyone to use this software for any purpose, including commercial applications, and to alter it and redistribute it freely, subject to the following restrictions:

1. The origin of this software must not be misrepresented; you must not claim that you wrote the original software. If you use this software in a product, an acknowledgment in the product documentation would be appreciated but is not required.
2. Altered source versions must be plainly marked as such, and must not be misrepresented as being the original software.
3. This notice may not be removed or altered from any source distribution.

Jean-loup Gailly Mark Adler jloup@gzip.org madler@alumni.caltech.edu If you use the zlib library in a product, we would appreciate *not* receiving lengthy legal documents to sign. The sources are provided for free but without warranty of any kind. The library has been entirely written by Jean-loup Gailly and Mark Adler; it does not include third-party code. If you redistribute

modified sources, we would appreciate that you include in the file ChangeLog history information documenting your changes. Please read the FAQ for more information on the distribution of modified source versions.

GLEW Licence (Modified BSD Licence)

The OpenGL Extension Wrangler Library

- Copyright (C) 2002-2008, Milan Ikits <milan.ikits@ieee org>
- Copyright (C) 2002-2008, Marcelo E. Magallon <mmagallo@debian.org>
- Copyright (C) 2002, Lev Povalahev

All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. * Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. * The name of the author may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

4.1.6. App menu in the driver display

The app menu in the driver display provides quick access to commonly used functions for certain apps.

The figure is schematic.

The app menu in the driver display can be used instead of the centre display and is controlled using the right-hand keypad on the steering wheel. The app menu makes it easier to switch between different apps or functions within the apps without having

to let go of the steering wheel.

App menu functions

Different apps give access to different types of functions. The following apps and their associated functions can be controlled from the app menu:

App	Functions
Trip computer	Selection of trip meter, selection of what to show in the driver display, etc.
Media player	Selection of active source for the media player.
Phone	Calling a contact from the call list.
Navigation	Guide to destination, etc.

4.1.7. Managing the app menu in the driver display

The app menu in the driver display is operated with the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

The app menu and the steering wheel's right-hand keypad. The figure is schematic.

1. Open/close
2. Left/right
3. Up/down
4. Confirm

Opening/closing the app menu

1 Press on open/close (1).

> The app menu opens/closes.

> **Note**
>
> It is not possible to open the app menu while there is an unacknowledged message in the driver display. The message has to be confirmed first before the app menu can be opened.

The app menu closes automatically after a period of inactivity or after certain options have been selected.

Navigating and selecting in the app menu

1. Navigate between the apps by pressing on the left or right (2).
> Functions for previous/next app are shown in the app menu.
2. Browse through the functions for the selected app by tapping on up or down (3).
3. Confirm or highlight an option for the function by pressing on confirm (4).
> The function is activated and for some options the app menu then closes.

If the app menu is opened again, the functions of the most recently selected app are shown first.

4.1.8. Indicator and warning symbols

The indicator and warning systems alert the driver to the fact that a function is activated, a system is working, or a defect or serious error has occurred.

Red symbols

	Warning The red warning symbol illuminates when a fault has been detected which could affect the safety or drivability of the car. An explanatory text is shown on the driver display at the same time. The warning symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.
	Seatbelt reminder Illuminates or flashes when someone in the car is not wearing a seatbelt.
	Airbags An error has been detected in any of the car's safety systems. Read the message on the driver display and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	Fault in brake system An error has occurred on the braking system. Read the message on the driver display and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	Parking brake Light illuminated permanently: The parking brake is activated. Flashing: an error has occurred with the parking brake. Read the message in the driver display.
	Faults in the electrical system An error has occurred on the electrical system. Read the message on the driver display and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	High engine temperature The engine temperature is too high. Read the message in the driver display.
	Collision risk City Safety warns of a risk of collision with other vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists or large animals.
	Low oil pressure The engine oil pressure is too low. Switch off the engine immediately and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary. If the symbol lights up and the oil level is normal, read the message on the display and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.

Amber symbols

	Information A fault has occurred in one of the car's systems. Read the message in the driver display. The information symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.
	Fault in brake system An error has occurred on the braking system. Read the message in the driver display.
	ABS fault The system is disengaged. The car's regular brake system continues to work, but without the ABS function.
	Emissions system Emissions systems fault. Drive to a workshop for checking. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	Rear fog lamp The rear fog lamp is illuminated.
	Tyre pressure system Low tyre pressure. If there is a fault in the tyre pressure system, the symbol will flash for approx. 1 minute and then illuminate with a constant glow. This may be because the system cannot detect or warn of low tyre pressure as intended.
	Fault in the headlamp system A fault has occurred on the headlamp system. Read the message in the driver display.

	Lane assistance Lane assistance warns/intervenes.
	Stability system Light on permanently: a fault has occurred in the system. Flashing: the system is working.
	Stability system, sport mode Sport mode is selected.

Blue symbols

	Active main beam Active main beam is activated and switched on.
	Main beam Main beam is switched on.

Green symbols

	Automatic brake The function is activated and the service brake or parking brake is operating.
	Front fog lamps The front fog lamp is switched on.
	Position lamps The position lamps are switched on.
	Left and right-hand direction indicator The direction indicator is being used.

White/grey symbols

	Active main beam Active main beam is activated, but does not come on.
	Preconditioning Engine and compartment heater/air conditioning pre-condition the car.
	Lane assistance White symbol: Lane assistance is on and road lines are detected. Grey symbol: Lane assistance is on but road lines are not detected.
	Rain sensor The rain sensor is activated.

4.1.9. Messages in the driver display

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The driver display can show messages to inform or assist the driver in the event of different events.

Example of message in the 8-inch driver display. The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

Examples of messages in the driver display. The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

The driver display shows messages that are of high priority for the driver.

Messages can be shown in different parts of the driver display depending on what other information is currently being displayed. After a while, or when the message has been acknowledged/action taken if required, the message disappears from the driver display. If a message needs to be saved, it is placed in the **Car Status** app, which is opened from the app view in the centre display.

Message composition may vary and they can be shown together with graphics, symbols or buttons for acknowledging the message or accepting a request, for example.

Service messages

Shown below is a selection of important service messages and their meanings.

Message	Specification
Stop safely [1]	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop [2].
Turn off engine [1]	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop [2].
Service urgent Drive to workshop [1]	Contact a workshop [2] to check the car immediately.

Message	Specification
Service required[1]	Contact a workshop[2] to check the car as soon as possible.
Regular maintenance Book time for maintenance	Time for regular service - contact a workshop[2]. Shown before the next service date.
Regular maintenance Time for maintenance	Time for regular service - contact a workshop[2]. Shown at the next service date.
Regular maintenance Maintenance overdue	Time for regular service - contact a workshop[2]. Shown when the service date has passed.
Temporarily off[1]	A function has been temporarily switched off and is reset automatically while driving or after starting again.

[1] Part of message, shown together with information on where the problem has arisen.

[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

4.1.10. Date and time

The clock is shown in both the driver display and the centre display.

Clock location

In certain situations, messages and information may cover the clock in the driver display.

In the centre display, the clock is located at the top right of the status bar.

Date and time settings

1 Select **Settings** → **System** → **Date and Time** in the centre display's top view to change settings for time and date format.

Adjust the date and time by pressing the up or down arrow on the touch screen.

Automatic time for cars with GPS

When the car is equipped with a navigation system, **Auto Time** can be selected. The time zone is then adjusted automatically based on the location of the car. For certain types of navigation systems, the current location (country) must also be set to obtain the right time zone. If **Auto Time** is not selected, time and data are adjusted with arrow up or arrow down on the touch screen.

Summer time

In certain countries, it is possible to select the **Auto Daylight Saving Time** setting for automatic setting of summer time. For other countries, the **Daylight Saving Time** setting can be selected manually.

If the battery has been disconnected

If the clock has been reset following disconnection of the car's battery after a visit to a service workshop, for example, you may need to reset the time on the clock. If the clock is not set, this may affect the car's Internet connection.

4.2. Centre display

4.2.1. Settings

4.2.1.1. Resetting user data for change of ownership

In the event of a change of ownership, user data and system settings should be restored to factory settings.

The settings in the car can be reset at different levels. Restore all user data and system settings to the original factory settings in the event of a change of ownership. In the event of a change of ownership it is also important to change the owner of the Volvo On Call* service.

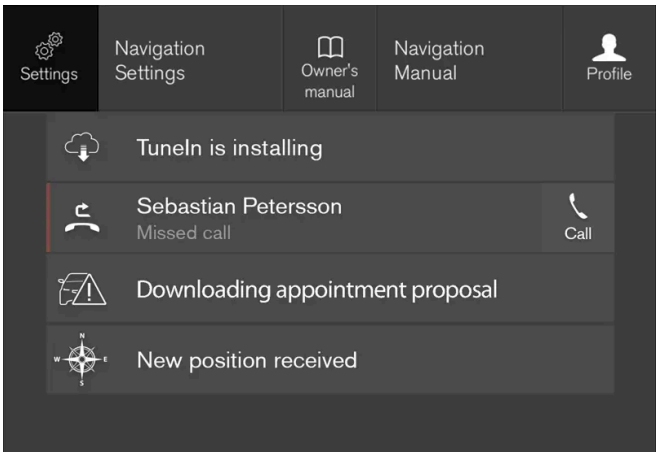
* Option/accessory.

4.2.1.2. Other settings in the centre display's top view

You can change settings and information for many of the car's functions via the centre display.

1 Open the top view by pressing on the tab at the top or by dragging/swiping from the top downwards across the screen.

2 Press **Settings** to open the settings menu.

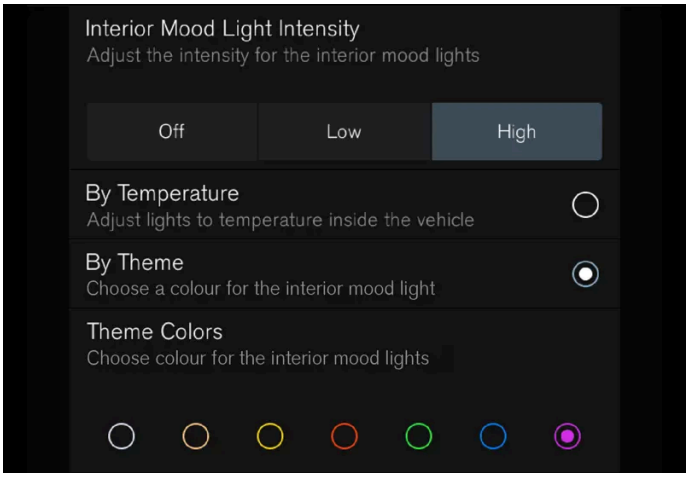


Top view with button for **Settings**.

3 Press on one of the categories and the subcategories to navigate to the required setting.

4 Change one or more settings. Different types of setting are changed in different ways.

> The changes are saved immediately.



A subcategory in the settings menu with different types of settings (here, a multi-selector button and radio buttons).

4.2.1.3. Resetting settings in the centre display

It is possible to reset the defaults for all settings defined in the centre display settings menu.

Two types of reset

There are two different types of restore operation in the settings menu:

- **Factory reset** - clears all data and files and resets all settings to their default values.
- **Reset Personal Settings** - clears personal data and resets personal settings to their default values.

Resetting settings

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Follow these instructions to reset your settings.

> **Note**
>
> **Factory reset** is only possible when the car is stationary.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Continue to **System** → **Factory reset**.
3. Select the required reset type.

> A pop-up window is shown.

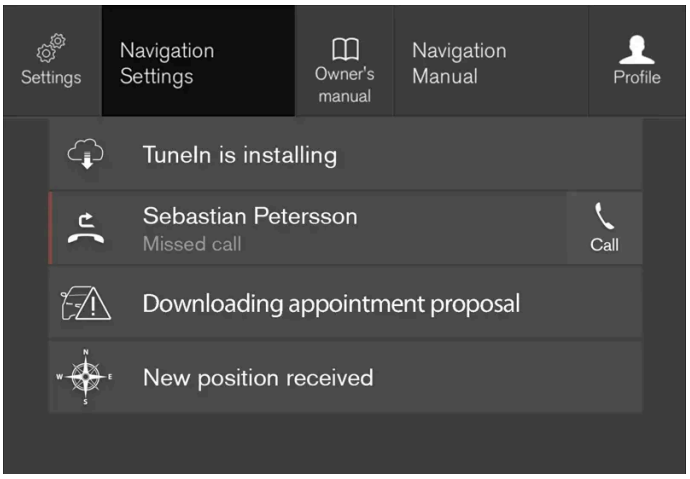
4. Press **OK** to confirm the reset.

   For **Reset Personal Settings**, the reset must be confirmed by pressing **Reset for the active profile** or **Reset for all profiles**.

> Selected settings are reset.

4.2.1.4. Open contextual setup in the centre display

It is possible to use contextual setup for most of the car's basic apps so that you can change settings directly in the top view in the centre display.



Top view with button for contextual setting.

Contextual setting is a shortcut for accessing a specific setting relating to the active function shown on screen. The apps installed in the car from the beginning, e.g. **FM radio** and **USB**, are a part of Sensus and are part of the car's embedded functions. The settings for these apps can be changed directly via contextual setting in the top view.

When contextual setup is available:

1. Drag down top view when an app is in expanded mode, e.g. **Navigation**.
2. Press **Navigation Settings**.

> A navigation settings page opens.

3. Change settings as desired and confirm the selections.

Press **Close** or the physical home button beneath the centre display to close setup view.

Most of the car's basic apps have this contextual setting option, but not all.

Third party apps

Third party apps are not included in the car's system from the beginning, but are the type that can be downloaded e.g. **Volvo ID**. Here the settings are always made inside the app and not from the top view.

4.2.1.5. Changing system units

Units settings are defined in the centre display's **Settings** menu.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Continue to **System** → **System Languages and Units** → **Units of Measurement**.
3. Select a unit standard:
   - **Metric** - kilometres, litres and degrees Celsius.
   - **Imperial** - miles, gallons and degrees Celsius.
   - **US** - miles, gallons and degrees Fahrenheit.

> The units in the driver display and centre display are changed.

4.2.1.6. Switching off and changing system sound volume in the centre display

The centre display can be used to change the volume of the system sound or switch off the system sound altogether.

1 Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.

2 Press **Sound** → **System Volumes**.

3 Under **Touch Sounds**, drag the control to change the volume/switch off screen touch sounds. Drag the control to the desired volume.

4.2.1.7. Changing system language

Language settings are defined in the centre display menu **Settings**.

> **Note**
>
> Changing the language in the centre display may mean that some owner's information is not compliant with national or local laws and regulations. Do not switch to a language that is difficult to understand as this may make it difficult to find your way back through the screen structure.

1 Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.

2 Continue to **System** → **System Languages and Units**.

3 Select **System Language**.

Languages that support voice control have a voice control symbol.

> The language in the driver display and centre display are changed.

4.2.1.8. Changing appearance in the centre display

The appearance of the screen in the centre display can be changed by selecting a theme.

1 Press **Settings** in the top view.

2 Press **My Car** → **Displays** → **Display Themes**.

3 Then select a theme, e.g. **Minimalistic** or **Chrome Rings**.

As a supplement to these appearances, it is possible to choose between **Normal** and **Bright**. With **Normal**, the screen background is dark and the text is light. This alternative is the default for all themes. A light variant can also be selected, in which the background is light and the text is dark. This alternative can be useful in e.g. strong daylight.

This alternative is always available for the user and is not affected by the surrounding lighting.

4.2.1.9. Show trip data in driver display

The trip computer's recorded and calculated values can be shown in the driver display.

The values are saved in a trip computer app. Via the app menu, you can choose which information is shown on the driver display.

Open and navigate in the app menu[1] using the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

1 App menu

2 Left/right

3 Up/down

4 Confirm

1 Open the app menu in the driver display by pressing (1).

(It is not possible to open the app menu while there is an unacknowledged message in the driver display. The message first has to be confirmed by pressing the O button (4) before the app menu can be opened.)

2 Navigate to the trip computer app to left or right with (2).

> The top four menu rows show measured values for trip meter TM. The next four menu rows show measured values for trip meter TA. Scroll up or down in the list with (3).

3 Scroll down to the option buttons to select which information to show in the driver display:

- Odometer
- Distance to empty tank
- Tourist (alternative speedometer)
- Mileage for trip meter TM, TA, or no display of mileage
- Instantaneous fuel consumption, average consumption for TM or TA, alternatively, no display of fuel consumption

Select or deselect an option with the O button (4). The change is made immediately.

[1] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

4.2.1.10. Settings for trip statistics

Reset or adjust settings for trip statistics.

1 Open the **Driver performance** app in app view in order to show the trip statistics.

2 Press **Preferences** to

- change graph scale. Select resolution 1, 10 or 100 km/miles for the bar.
- reset data after every trip. Performed when the car has been stationary for more than 4 hours.
- reset data for the current trip.

Trip statistics, calculated average consumption and total driving time are always reset simultaneously.

Units for distance, speed, etc. can be changed via system settings in the centre display.

4.2.1.11. Driver display settings

Settings for the driver display's display options can be made via the driver display's app menu and via the centre display's settings menu.

Settings via the driver display's app menu

The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

The app menu is opened and controlled using the right-hand keypad on the steering wheel.

In the app menu, you can choose which information is shown on the driver display from:

- trip computer
- media player
- phone
- navigation system*.

Settings via the centre display

Selecting information type

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Displays** → **Driver Display Information**.
3. Select what should be shown in the background:
   - **Show no information in background**
   - **Show information for current playing media**
   - **Show navigation even if no route is set**

Selecting theme

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Tap on **My Car** → **Displays** → **Display Themes**.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

3 Select a theme (appearance) for the driver display:

- **Glass**
- **Minimalistic**
- **Performance**
- **Chrome Rings**

Selecting language

1 Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.

2 Tap on **System** → **System Languages and Units** → **System Language** to select language.

> A change will affect the language in all displays.

These settings are personal and are saved automatically to the active driver profile.

* Option/accessory.

4.2.1.12. Date and time

The clock is shown in both the driver display and the centre display.

Clock location

In certain situations, messages and information may cover the clock in the driver display.

In the centre display, the clock is located at the top right of the status bar.

Date and time settings

1 Select **Settings** → **System** → **Date and Time** in the centre display's top view to change settings for time and date format.

Adjust the date and time by pressing the up or down arrow on the touch screen.

Automatic time for cars with GPS

When the car is equipped with a navigation system, **Auto Time** can be selected. The time zone is then adjusted automatically based on the location of the car. For certain types of navigation systems, the current location (country) must also be set to obtain the right time zone. If **Auto Time** is not selected, time and data are adjusted with arrow up or arrow down on the touch screen.

Summer time

In certain countries, it is possible to select the **Auto Daylight Saving Time** setting for automatic setting of summer time. For other countries, the **Daylight Saving Time** setting can be selected manually.

If the battery has been disconnected

If the clock has been reset following disconnection of the car's battery after a visit to a service workshop, for example, you may need to reset the time on the clock. If the clock is not set, this may affect the car's Internet connection.

4.2.1.13. User terms and conditions and data sharing

The first time certain services and apps are started, a pop-up window with the headings **Terms and conditions** and **Data sharing** may be shown.

The purpose is to inform about Volvo's user terms and conditions and policy for data sharing. By accepting data sharing, the user accepts that certain information is sent from the car. This is required so that certain services and apps can have full functionality.

The data sharing function for online services and apps is deactivated as default[1]. Data sharing needs to be activated so that certain online services and apps in the car can be used. Data sharing can be set from the centre display's settings menu or in connection with the services or apps being started in the centre display.

Privacy and data sharing

With the software update made available November 2017, privacy and data sharing settings were introduced for online services and downloaded apps. The settings can be found under **Privacy and data** in the settings menu in the car's centre display.

There you can select the online services which are allowed to share data. Data sharing for downloaded apps can also be deactivated there. Note that services and apps cannot be used as intended if data sharing is deactivated.

After a factory reset or e.g. a workshop visit or software update, the data sharing settings may have been reset to their default settings. In which case, reactivate data sharing for online services and for downloaded apps.

> **Note**
>
> Privacy and data sharing settings are unique for every driver profile.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Does not apply to Volvo On Call*.

4.2.1.14. Activating and deactivating data sharing

Data sharing for services and apps required can be set in the centre display's settings menu.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **System** → **Privacy and data**.
3. Select activation or deactivation of data sharing for individual services and all apps.

If data sharing has not been activated for an online service or downloaded apps, this can be done when they are started in the centre display. If this is the first time a service is started, or e.g. after a factory reset or certain software updates, Volvo's terms and conditions for online services need to be approved. Note that data sharing will then also be activated for other services or apps for which sharing has already been approved.

> **Note**
>
> After a visit to a Volvo workshop, you may need to reactivate data sharing so that the online services and apps shall work again.

4.2.1.15. Settings for unlocking

You can change the setting for unlocking using the button on the key. Either all doors are unlocked with one press on the button, or only the driver door is unlocked with one press on the button and the remaining doors with two presses on the button.

The settings made here also affect central unlocking via opening handles from the inside.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.

2 Press **My Car** → **Locking** → **Remote and Interior Unlock**.

3 Select option:

- **All Doors** - unlocks all doors simultaneously.
- **Single Door** - unlocks the driver's door. Unlocking all of the doors requires two presses on the key's unlock button.

4.2.1.16. Settings for Care Key

Changes to the Care Key profile in the centre display can only be made using another key.

Setting options

The following limitations are available to be set:

- Speed interval: 50-180 km/h (30-112 mph)
- Increments: 1 km/h (1 mph)

Setting

1 Unlock the car using a key other than a Care Key.

2 Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.

3 Press **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Care Key**.

4 Tick the box for activating limitation and set the required limitation.

4.2.1.17. Lock indication setting

You can select how the car shows whether it has been locked or unlocked in the settings menu in the centre display.

Different types of lock response

1 Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.

2 Press **My Car** → **Locking**.

3 Press **Visible Locking Feedback** to select when the car is to give a visible response:

- **Lock**
- **Unlock**
- **Both**

Or switch off the function by selecting **Off** .

Automatic retraction of rearview mirrors* when locking

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Mirrors and Convenience**.
3. Select **Fold Mirror When Locked** to activate or deactivate the function.

* Option/accessory.

4.2.1.18. Settings for Keyless entry*

You can choose which doors are unlocked when using the keyless unlocking function.

To change setting:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Tap on **My Car** → **Locking** → **Keyless Unlock**.
3. Select option:
   - **All Doors** - unlocks all doors simultaneously.
   - **Single Door** - unlocks selected door.

* Option/accessory.

4.2.1.19. Automatic parking brake activation setting

Choose whether the parking brake is to be activated automatically when the car is switched off.

To change setting:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Parking Brake and Suspension** to select or deselect the function **Auto Activate Parking Brake**.

4.2.2. Driver profiles

4.2.2.1. Driver profiles

Many of the settings made in the car can be adapted according to the driver's personal preferences and can be saved in one or more driver profiles.

The number of driver profiles in the car is the same as the number of keys, plus one extra guest profile. The personal settings are automatically saved in the active driver profile. Every key, apart from Care Key, can be linked to a personal driver profile. When the linked key is used, the car is adapted to the settings of that specific driver profile. Care Key is always linked to the Care Key profile, as well as the speed limit set for it. This profile cannot be protected as personal. This also applies to the guest profile, which cannot be protected or linked to a key.

What settings are saved in the driver profiles?

Many of the settings defined in the car will be saved automatically in the active driver profile unless the profile is protected. In the car, the settings defined are either personal or global. Only personal settings are saved in driver profiles.

Settings that can be saved in a driver profile include, amongst other things, screens, mirrors, front seats, navigation*, audio and media system, language and voice control.

Some settings, referred to as global settings, can be changed but are not saved to a specific driver profile. Changes to global settings affect all profiles.

Global settings

The global settings are not changed when changing between driver profiles. They remain the same regardless of which driver profile is active.

Keyboard layout settings are an example of global settings. If driver profile X is used to add additional languages to the keyboard, these remain available for use even if driver profile Y is used. The keyboard layout settings are not saved to a specific driver profile - the settings are global.

Personal preferences

If driver profile X was used to e.g. set centre display brightness, driver profile Y is not affected by this setting. It has been saved to driver profile X - the brightness setting is a personal setting.

* Option/accessory.

4.2.2.2. Renaming a driver profile

It is possible to change the name of the different driver profiles used in the car. A profile that is linked to Care Key cannot be renamed.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System** → **Driver Profiles**.
3. Select **Edit Profile**.

> A menu opens, where the profile can be edited.

4. Tap in the box **Profile Name**.

> A keyboard appears, and it is possible to change the name. Tap on ▽ to close the keyboard.

5. Save the name change by pressing **Back** or **Close**.

> The name has now been changed.

> **Note**
>
> A profile name cannot start with a space, as the profile name will not then be saved.

4.2.2.3. Link key to driver profile

It is possible to link your key to a driver profile. The driver profile along with all of its settings will then be automatically selected every time the car is used with that specific key.

The first time the key is used, it is not linked to any specific driver profile. When the car is started, the **Guest** profile will automatically be activated.

A driver profile can be selected manually without linking it to the key. When the car is unlocked, the last active driver profile is activated. Once the key has been linked to a driver profile, a driver profile does not need to be selected when that specific key is used.

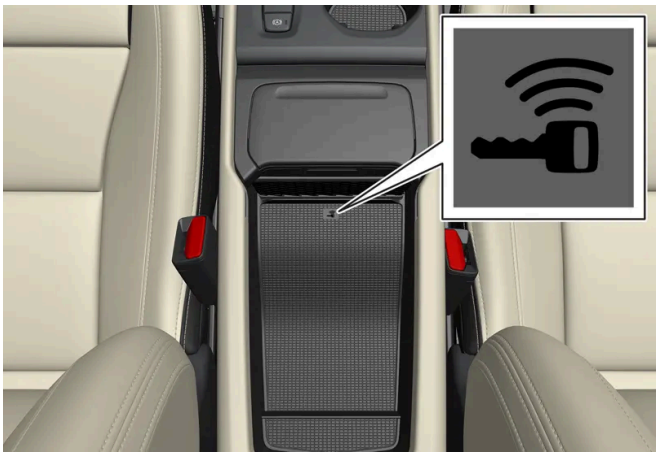
Link key to a driver profile

> **Note**
>
> A key can only be linked to a driver profile when the car is stationary.

First select the profile to be linked to the key, if the profile to be linked is not already active. The active profile can then be linked to the key.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System** → **Driver Profiles**.
3. Select the desired profile. The display returns to the home view. The **Guest** profile cannot be linked to a key.
4. Drag down the top view again and tap on **Settings** → **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Edit Profile**.
5. Select **Connect key** to link the profile with the key. It is not possible to link a driver profile to a different key than the one currently being used in the car. If there are multiple keys in the car, the message **More than one key is found, put the key**

you want to connect on backup reader will be displayed.



The backup reader's location in the storage compartment.

> When the message **Profile connected to key** is shown, the key and the driver profile are linked.

6 Press **OK**.

> This key is now linked to the driver profile and will remain linked as long as the **Connect key** box is not unticked.

4.2.2.4. Protect driver profile

In some cases it is preferable not to save various settings defined in the car to the active driver profile. In this case, it is possible to protect the driver profile. A profile that is linked to Care Key cannot be protected.

> **Note**
>
> Protecting a driver profile is only possible when the car is stationary.

To protect a driver profile:

1 Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.

2 Press **System** → **Driver Profiles**.

3 Select **Edit Profile**.

> A menu opens, where the profile can be edited.

4 Select **Protect Profile** to protect the profile.

5 Save your profile protection option by pressing **Back**/**Close**.

> When the profile is protected, settings defined in the car will not be saved automatically to the profile. Instead, your changes must be saved manually under **Settings** → **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Edit Profile** by pressing **Save current settings to the profile**. When the profile is unprotected, on the other hand, your settings will be saved automatically to the

profile. Changes can be saved to a protected profile by dragging down the top view in the centre display, tapping **Driver Profiles** and then tapping the Save icon.

4.2.2.5. Selecting driver profile

When the centre display has been started, the selected driver profile is shown at the top of the screen. The driver profile last used is the one that will be active next time the car is unlocked. It is possible to change to another driver profile after the car has been unlocked. However, if the key has been linked to a driver profile then this is what is selected when the car is started.

There are three options for changing to another driver profile.

Option 1:

1. Tap on the name of the driver profile shown in the top of the centre display when the display has been started.

> A list of selectable driver profiles is shown.

2. Select the driver profile required.
3. Press **Confirm**.

> The driver profile is selected and the system loads the settings for the new driver profile.

Option 2:

1. Drag down the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Profile**.

> The same list as for Option 1 is shown.

3. Select the driver profile required.
4. Press **Confirm**.

> The driver profile is selected and the system loads the settings for the new driver profile.

Option 3:

1. Drag down the top view in the centre display.

2 Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.

3 Press **System** → **Driver Profiles**.

> A list of selectable driver profiles is shown.

4 Select the driver profile required.

> The driver profile is selected and the system loads the settings for the new driver profile.

4.2.2.6. Resetting settings in the driver profiles

Settings that have been saved to one or more driver profiles can be reset if the car is stationary.

> **Note**
>
> **Factory reset** is only possible when the car is stationary.

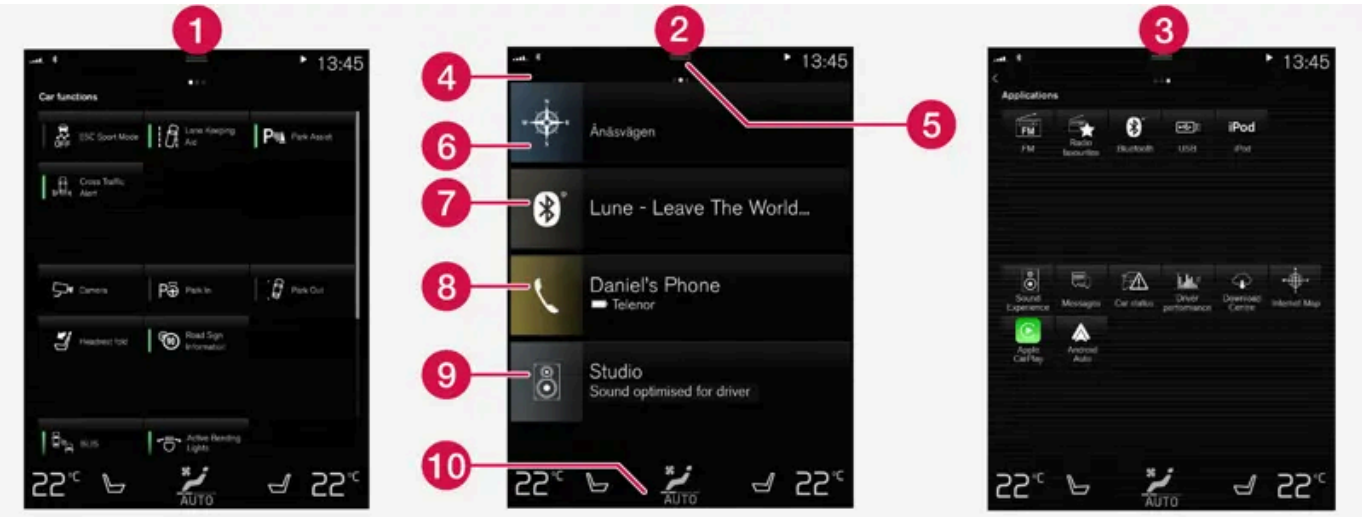
1 Press **Settings** in the top view.

2 Press **System** → **Factory reset** → **Reset Personal Settings**.

3 Select one of the options **Reset for the active profile**, **Reset for all profiles** or **Cancel**.

4.2.3. Overview of centre display

Many of the car's functions are controlled from the centre display. Presented here is the centre display and its options.



Three of the centre display's basic views. Swipe right or left to access the function or app view respectively[1].

1. Function view - car functions that are activated or deactivated with a press. Certain functions are also so-called trigger functions, which means they open a window with setting options. Examples of these include **Camera**.
2. Home view - the first view that is shown when the screen is started.
3. Application view (app view) - apps that have been downloaded (third-party apps) and apps for embedded functions, such as **FM radio**. Tap on an app icon to open the app.
4. Status bar - the activities in the car are shown right at the top of the screen. Network and connection information is shown on the left-hand side of the status bar, while media-related information, the clock and indication about on-going background activity are shown on the right.
5. Top view - drag the tab down in order to access the top view. **Settings**, **Owner's manual**, **Profile** and the car's saved messages are accessed from here. In some cases contextual settings (e.g. **Navigation Settings**) and the contextual owner's manual (e.g. **Navigation Manual**) can also be accessed in the top view.
6. Navigation - leads to map navigation, with e.g. Sensus Navigation*. Tap on the subview to expand it.
7. Media - recently used apps associated with media. Tap on the subview to expand it.
8. Phone - the phone function can be reached from here. Tap on the subview to expand it.
9. Extra subview - recently used apps or car functions that do not belong in any of the other subviews. Tap on the subview to expand it.
10. Climate row - information and direct interaction to set temperature and seat heating for example*. Tap on the symbol in the centre of the climate row in order to open the climate view with more setting options.

> **Note**
>
> If necessary, the climate control can be used to cool the media system in the centre display. In these cases, the message **Climate system Cooling the infotainment system** is shown in the driver display.

[1] The views are reversed for right-hand drive cars.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

4.2.4. Activating and deactivating centre display

The centre display can be dimmed and reactivated using the home button beneath the screen.

Home button for the centre display.

The effect of using the home button that the screen dims and the touchscreen no longer reacts to touch. The climate row will still be shown. All functions connected to the screen are still running, such as climate, audio, navigation* and apps. When the centre display is dimmed, it is a good opportunity to clean the screen.

The dimming function can also be used to fade the screen so that it does not disturb while driving.

1 Give a long press on the physical home button below the screen.

> The screen goes dark except for the climate row, which continues to be shown. All functions connected to the screen are still running.

2 Reactivate the screen - briefly tap on the home button.

> The view that was displayed before the screen was switched off will be shown again.

Note

The screen cannot be deactivated when a prompt to perform an action is shown on the screen.

Note

The centre display deactivates automatically when the engine is off and the driver's door is opened.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

4.2.5. Managing the centre display

Many of the car's functions are controlled and regulated from the centre display. The centre display is a touch screen that reacts to touch.

Using the touch screen functionality in the centre display

The screen reacts differently depending on whether it is touched by dragging, swiping, or tapping. Actions such as browsing between different views, marking objects and scrolling in a list can be performed by touching the screen in different ways.

An infrared light curtain just above the surface of the screen enables the screen to detect a finger that is just in front of the screen. This technology makes it possible to use the screen even with gloves on.

Two people can interact with the screen at the same time, e.g. to adjust the climate for the driver and passenger side respectively.

> **Important**
>
> Do not use sharp objects on the screen as they may scratch it.

The table below presents the different procedures for operating the screen:

Procedure	Execution	Result
	Press once.	Highlights an object, confirms a selection or activates a function.
	Press twice in quick succession.	Zooms in on a digital object, such as the map.
	Press and hold.	Grabs an object. Can be used to move apps or map points on the map. Press and hold your finger against the screen and at the same time drag the object to the desired location.
	Tap once with two fingers.	Zooms out from a digital object, such as the map.
	Drag	Changes between different views, scrolls a list, text or view. Hold depressed and drag in order to move apps or map points on the map. Drag horizontally or vertically across the screen.
	Swipe/drag quickly	Changes between different views, scrolls a list, text or view. Drag horizontally or vertically across the screen. Note that touching the upper section of the screen may cause the top view to open.
	Drag apart	Zooms in.
	Drag together	Zooms out.

Returning to home view from another view

1 Briefly press the home button below the centre display.

> The last position of the home view is shown.

2 Briefly press again.

> All subviews of the home view are set to their default mode.

Note

In home view standard mode - briefly press the home button. An animation that describes access to the different views is shown on the screen.

Scrolling in a list, article or view

When a scroll indicator is visible in the screen, it is possible to scroll downward or upward in the view. Swipe downwards/upwards anywhere in the view.

The scroll indicator appears in the centre display when it is possible to scroll in the view.

Using the controls in the centre display

Temperature control.

The control is used for many of the car's functions. Regulate e.g. temperature by means of one of the following:

- drag the control to the desired temperature,

- tap on + or – in order to raise or lower the temperature gradually, or
- tap on the desired temperature on the control.

4.2.6. Navigating in the centre display's views

There are five different basic views in the centre display: home view, top view, climate view, app view and function view. The screen is started automatically when the driver's door is opened.

Home view

Home view is the view that is shown when the screen is started. It consists of four subviews: **Navigation**, **Media**, **Phone** and an extra subview.

An app or car function selected from the app or function view starts in the respective subview of the home view. E.g. **FM radio** starts in the **Media** tile.

The extra tile shows the last used app or car function that is not associated with any of the other three areas.

The subviews show brief information about each different app.

> **Note**
>
> When the car is started, the home view's various sub-views show information on the current status of apps.

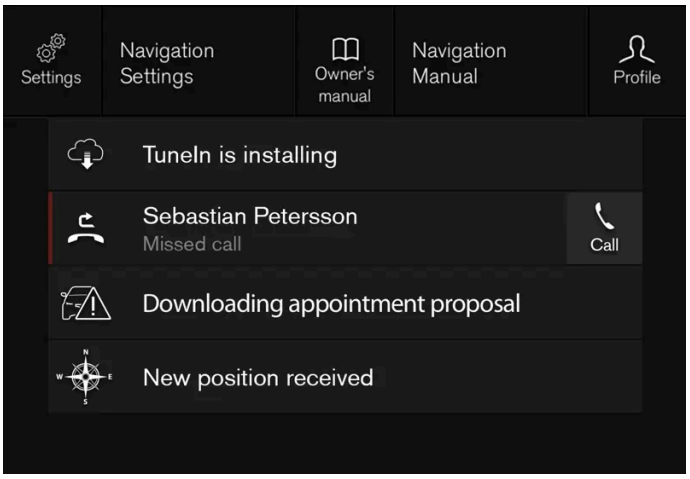
Note

In home view standard mode - briefly press the home button. An animation that describes access to the different views is shown on the screen.

Status bar

The activities in the car are shown at the top of the screen. Network and connection information is shown on the left-hand side of the status bar, while media-related information, the clock and indication that background activity is in progress are shown on the right.

Top view



Top view dragged down.

A tab is located in the centre of the status bar at the top of the screen. Open the top view by pressing on the tab or by dragging/swiping from the top downwards across the screen.

In the top view, access is always available to:

- **Settings**
- **Owner's manual**
- **Profile**
- The car's saved messages.

In the top view, access is given to the following in some cases:

- Contextual setting (e.g. **Navigation Settings**). Change settings directly in the top view when an app (e.g. navigation) is running.
- Contextual Owner's Manual (e.g. **Navigation Manual**). Gain access directly in the top view to articles in the digital owner's manual that are related to the content displayed on screen.

Exit the top view - press outside the top view, on the home button or at the bottom of the top view and drag upward. The underlying view is then visible and available for use again.

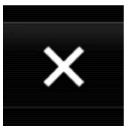
The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

> **Note**
>
> The top view is not available during starting/shutdown or when a message is shown on the screen. It is also not available when climate view is shown.

Climate view

The climate row is always visible at the bottom of the screen. The most common climate settings can be made directly there, such as setting temperature and seat heating*.

Press the symbol in the centre of the climate row to open the climate view and gain access to more climate settings.



Press the symbol to close the climate view and return to the previous view.

App view

App view with the car's apps.

Swipe from right to left[1] across the screen in order to access the app view from the home view. Apps that have been downloaded (third-party apps) and apps for embedded functions, such as **FM radio**, are found here. Certain apps show brief information directly in the app view, such as the number of unread text messages for **Messages**.

Tap on an app to open it. The app then opens in the tile to which it belongs, e.g. **Media**.

You can scroll down in the app view, depending on the number of apps. Do this by swiping/dragging from the bottom and up.

Go back to the home view again by swiping from left to right[1] across the screen, or by pressing the home button.

Function view

The function view with buttons for different car functions.

Swipe from left to right[1] across the screen in order to access the function view from the home view. From here you can activate or deactivate different car functions, e.g. **BLIS***, **Lane Keeping Aid*** and **Park Assist***.

Depending on the amount of functions, it is also possible here to scroll down in the view. Do this by swiping/dragging from the bottom and up.

Unlike in app view, where an app is opened with a press, a function is activated or deactivated by pressing the relevant function button. Some functions (trigger functions) open in a new window when pressed.

Go back to the home view again by swiping from right to left[1] across the screen, or by pressing the home button.

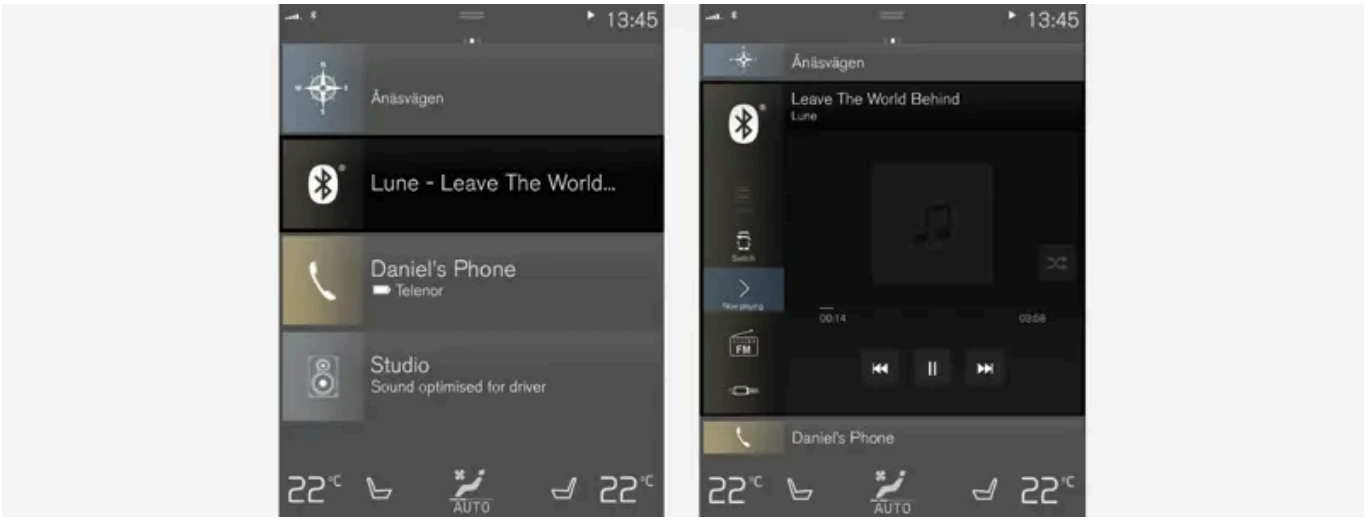
* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

4.2.7. Managing subviews in centre display

Home view consists of four subviews: **Navigation**, **Media**, **Phone** and an extra subview. These views can be expanded.

Expanding a subview from default mode



Standard mode and expanded mode of a subview in the centre display.

Expanding a subview:

1 For tiles **Navigation**, **Media** and **Phone**: Press anywhere on the subview. When a tile is expanded, the extra tile in the home view is temporarily forced away. The other two tiles are minimised and only certain information is shown. When the extra tile is tapped, the other three tiles are minimised and only certain information is displayed.

   The expanded view provides access to the basic functions of the app.

Closing an expanded subview:

1 The subview can be closed in three different ways.
   - Tap on the upper part of the expanded subview.
   - Tap on another tile (this tile will then open in expanded mode instead).
   - Briefly press the physical home button below the centre display.

Opening or closing a subview in full screen mode

The extra tile[1] and the tile for **Navigation** can be opened out in full screen mode, with even more information and more setting options.

When a new subview is opened in full-screen mode, no information from the other subviews is shown.

In expanded mode, open the app in full screen - press on the symbol.

Press on the symbol to go back to the expanded mode, or press the home button at the bottom of the screen.

Home button for the centre display.

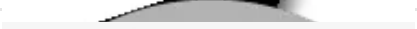
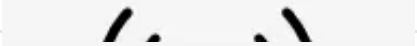
There is always the option to go back to home view by pressing the home button. To go back to the home view's standard view from full screen mode – press twice on the home button.

[1] Does not apply to all apps or car functions opened via the extra tile.

4.2.8. Symbols in the centre display's status bar

Overview of the symbols that can be shown in the centre display's status bar.

The status bar shows activities in progress and, in some cases, their status. Not all symbols are shown all the time due to the limited space in the status bar.

Symbol	Specification
	Connected to the Internet.
	Roaming activated.
	Signal strength in mobile phone network.
	Bluetooth device connected.
	Bluetooth activated but no device connected.
	Information sent to and from GPS.
	Connected to Wi-Fi network.
	Tethering activated (Wi-Fi hotspot). The car then shares the available connection.
	Car modem activated.
	USB sharing active.
	Phone charging wirelessly.
	Process in progress.
	Timer for preconditioning active.
	Audio source being played back.
	Audio source stopped.
	Phone call in progress.
	Audio source muted.
	News is received from the radio channel.
	Traffic information is received.
	Clock.

4.2.9. Function view in centre display

All the buttons for car functions are located in the function view, one of the centre display's basic views. Navigate to the function view from home view by swiping from left to right across the screen [1].

Different types of buttons

There are three different types of buttons for car functions; see below:

Type of button	Property	Affects car function
Function buttons	Have on/off positions. When a function is running, an LED indicator illuminates to the left of the icon for the button. Press the button to activate/deactivate a function.	Most buttons in function view are function buttons.
Trigger buttons	Do not have on/off positions. When a trigger button is depressed, a window for the function is opened. For example, it may be a window to change seat position.	• Camera • Headrest Fold

Type of button	Property	Affects car function
Parking buttons	Have on, off and scan modes. Similar to the function buttons but with an extra position for parking scanning.	• Park In • Park Out

The buttons' different modes

When the LED indicator illuminates in green on a function or parking button, the function is activated. When a function is activated, extra text with an explanation for certain functions is shown. The text is shown for a few seconds and then the button is shown with the LED indicator illuminated.

For **Lane Keeping Aid**, the text **Works only at certain speeds** is shown, for example, when the button is depressed.

Press the button once briefly to activate or deactivate the function.

The function is deactivated when the LED indicator is extinguished.

When a warning triangle is shown in the right-hand section of the button there is something not working as intended.

[1] Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

4.2.10. Moving apps and buttons in centre display

The apps and buttons for car functions in the app view and function view respectively can be moved and organised as desired.

1. Swipe from right to left[1] to access the app view, or swipe from left to right[1] to access the function view.
2. Tap on an app or button and hold it down.

> The app or button changes size and becomes slightly transparent. It is then possible to move it.

3. Drag the app or button to a vacant space in the view.

The maximum number of rows available for use in order to position apps or buttons is 48. To move an app or button outside the visible view, drag it to the bottom of the view. New rows are then added, where the app or button can be located.

An app or button can thus be located further down and is then not visible in the normal mode for the view.

Swipe across the screen to scroll up or down in the view.

Note

Hide the apps that you rarely or never use by moving them to the bottom, off the visible screen. This way it will be easier to find the apps you use more often.

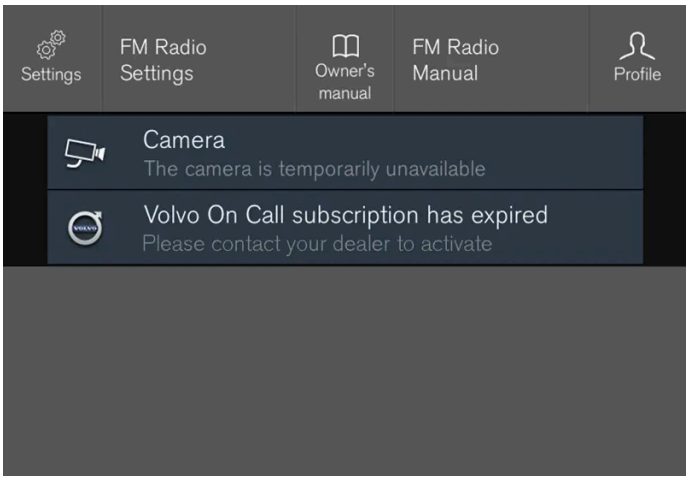
Note

Apps and car function buttons cannot be added to locations that are already occupied.

[1] Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

4.2.11. Message in centre display

The centre display can show messages to inform or assist the driver in the event of different events.



Example of a message in the centre display's top view.

The centre display shows messages that are of lower priority for the driver.

Most messages are shown above the centre display's status bar. After a while, or when any required action related to the message has been taken, the message disappears from the status bar. If a message needs to be saved, it is positioned in the top view in the centre display.

Message composition may vary and they can be shown together with graphics, symbols or a button for activating/deactivating a function linked to the message.

Pop-up messages

In some cases, a message is shown in the form of a pop-up window. Pop-up messages have higher priority than messages shown in the status bar and require acknowledgement/action before they disappear.

4.2.12. Keyboard in the centre display

The centre display keyboard makes it possible make entries using keys. It is also possible to "draw in" letters and characters on the screen by hand.

The keyboard can be used to enter characters, letters and numbers, e.g. to write text messages from the car, enter passwords or search for articles in the digital owner's manual.

The keyboard is only shown when entries can be made on the screen.

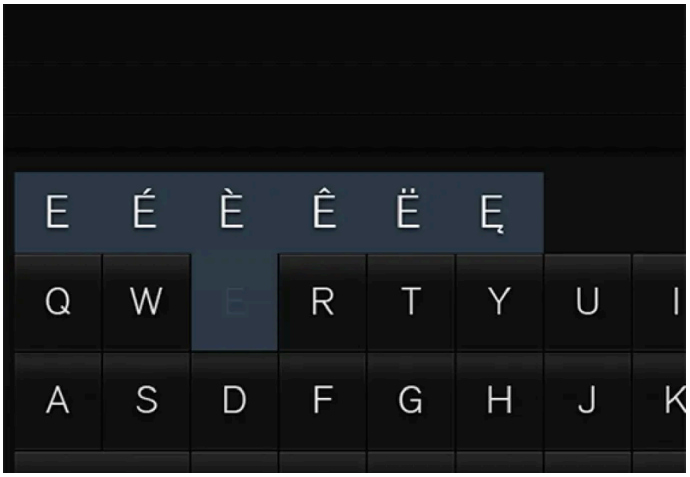
The image shows an overview of some of the buttons which may be shown in the keyboard. The appearance varies depending on language settings and the context in which the keyboard is being used.

1. Row of suggested words or characters[1]. The suggested words are adjusted as new letters are being entered. Browse among the suggestions by pressing on the right and left arrows. Tap on a suggestion to select it. Note that this function is not supported by all language selections. If not available, the row will not be shown on the keyboard.
2. The characters available on the keyboard depend on which language was selected (see point 7). Tap on a character to enter it.
3. The button works in different ways, depending on the context in which the keyboard is used - either to enter **@** (when an email address is entered) or to **create a new row** (for normal text input).
4. Hides the keyboard. If this is not possible, the button is not shown.
5. Used to enter capital letters. Press again to enter one capital letter and then continue with lower-case letters. Another press makes all letters capital letters. The next press restores the keyboard to lower-case letters. In this mode, the first letter after a full stop, exclamation mark or question mark is a capital letter. The first letter in the text field is also a capital letter. In text fields intended for names or addresses, each word automatically starts with a capital letter. In text fields for password, web address or email address entry, all letters are automatically lower case unless otherwise set with the button.
6. Number entry. The keyboard (2) is then shown with numbers. Press ABC, which in number mode is shown instead of 123, to return to the letter keyboard, or #\~ to open the keyboard with special characters.
7. Changes text input language, e.g. **EN**. The available characters and word suggestions (1) vary depending on the selected language. To make it possible to change languages for the keyboard, the languages must first be added under Settings.
8. Space.
9. Undoes entered text. Pressing briefly deletes one character at a time. Hold the button depressed to delete characters more quickly.
10. Changes keyboard mode to write letters and characters by hand instead.

Pressing the confirmation button above the keypad confirms the entered text. The appearance of the button differs depending on context.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Variants of a letter or character



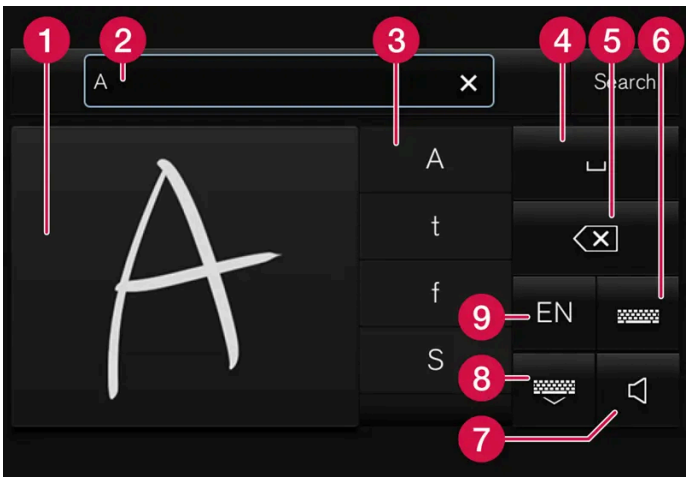
Variants of a letter or character, e.g. **é** or **è**, can be entered by holding down the letter or character. A box is displayed showing possible variants of letters or characters. Press the required variant. If no variant is selected, the original letter/character is entered.

[1] Applies to Asiatic languages.

4.2.13. Enter the characters, letters and words manually in the centre display

The centre display keyboard allows you to enter characters, letters and words on the screen by "drawing" by hand.

Press the button on the keyboard to change from typing with the keys to entering letters and characters by hand.



1 Area for writing characters/letters/words/parts of word.

2 The text field where the characters or word suggestions [1] appear as they are written on screen (1).

3 Suggestions for characters/letters/word/part of word. It is possible to scroll through the list.

4 Space. A space can also be created by entering a dash (-) in the area for hand-written letters (1). See the heading "Entering a space in the free text field with handwriting recognition" below.

5 Undo entered text. Press briefly to delete one character/one letter at a time. Wait a moment before pressing again to delete the next character/letter, etc.

6 Return to the keyboard with regular character input.

7 Switch off/on sound when entering.

8 Hide the keyboard. If this is not possible, the button is not shown.

9 Change text input language.

Writing characters/letters/words by hand

1 Write a character, a letter, a word or parts of a word in the area for hand-written letters. Write a word or parts of a word above each other or on a line.

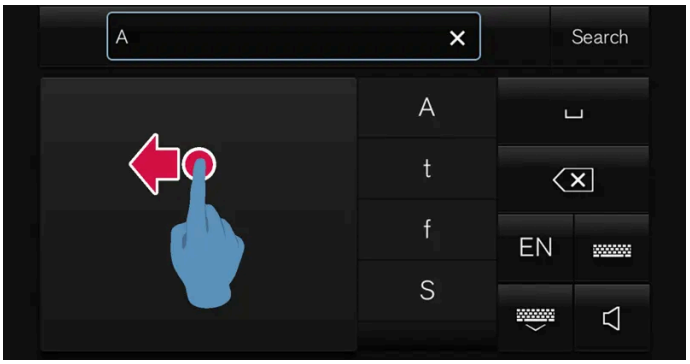
> A number of suggested characters, letters or words is shown. The most likely choice is found at the top of the list.

> **Important**
>
> Do not use sharp objects on the screen as they may scratch it.

2 Enter the character/letters/word by waiting a moment.

> The character/letter/word at the top of the list is entered. It is also possible to select a different character by pressing the required character, letter or word in the list.

Deleting/changing characters/letters written by hand



Delete all characters in the text field (2) by swiping across the handwriting field (1).

1 There are several options for deleting/changing characters/letters:

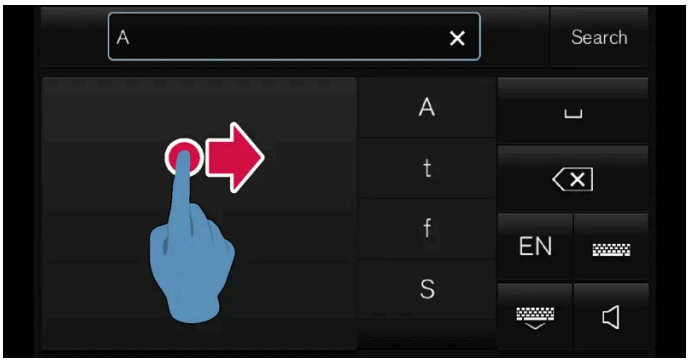
- Press the intended letter or word in the list.

- Press the text undo button to delete the letter and begin again.
- Swipe horizontally from right to left[2] over the area for handwritten letters. Delete multiple letters by swiping over the area several times.
- Pressing the X in the text field deletes all of the entered text.

Changing row in the free text field with handwriting

Change row by hand by drawing the above character in the handwriting field[3].

Entering a space in the free text field with handwriting recognition



Enter a space by drawing a dash from left to right[4].

OMRON SOFTWARE

compactWnn © OMORON SOFTWARE Co.,Ltd. 2021 All Rights Reserved.

[1] Applies to certain system languages.

[2] For Arabic keyboard - swipe in the opposite direction. Swiping from right to left creates a space.

[3] For Arabic keyboards - draw the same character, but reversed.

[4] For Arabic keyboard - draw the dash from right to left.

4.2.14. Changing keyboard language in centre display

To make it possible to switch between different languages for the keyboard, the languages must first be added under **Settings**.

Adding or deleting languages in settings

The keyboard is automatically set to the same languages as the system language. The keyboard language can be manually adapted without affecting the system language.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **System** → **System Languages and Units** → **Keyboard Layouts**.
3. Select one or more languages from the list.

> It is now possible to switch between the selected languages directly from the keyboard for text input.

If no languages have been actively selected under **Settings**, the keyboard retains the same language as the car's system language.

Switching between different languages in the keyboard

When a number of languages have been selected in **Settings**, the button in the keyboard is used to switch between the different languages.

To change keyboard language with list:

1. Give a long press on the button.

> A list opens.

2. Select the required language. If more than four languages have been selected under **Settings**, it is possible to scroll in the list from the keyboard.

> The keyboard is adapted to the selected language and other word suggestions are given.

To change the keyboard language without displaying the list:

1. One short press of the button.

> The keyboard is adapted to the next language in the list without displaying the list.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

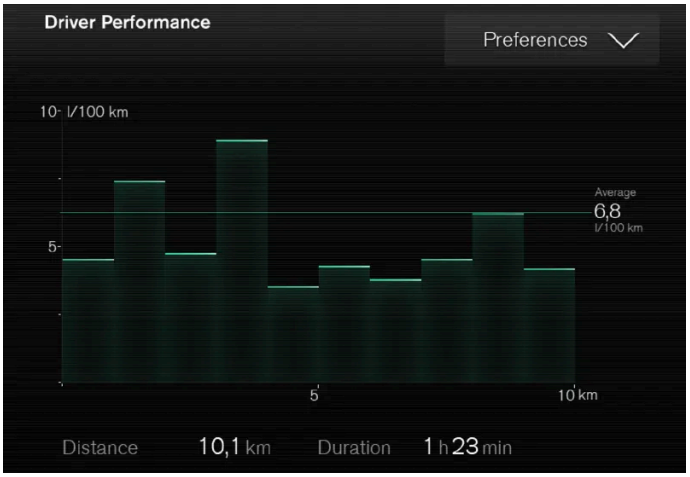
4.2.15. Show trip statistics in centre display

Trip statistics from the trip computer are displayed graphically in the centre display and provide an overview that facilitates more fuel-efficient driving.

Open the **Driver performance** app in app view in order to show the trip statistics.

Each bar in the diagram symbolises a distance of 1, 10 or 100 km, alternatively miles. The bars are filled in from the right as driving progresses. The bar on the far right shows the value for the current distance.

The average fuel consumption and total driving time are calculated since the last time the trip statistics were reset.



Trip statistics from the trip computer[1].

[1] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

4.2.16. Owner's manual in centre display

The owner's manual is available in the car's centre display[1].

> **Important**
>
> To learn about important safety instructions, and for as good an experience as possible, Volvo recommends that you read throughout all of the owner's information under each category in the centre display before driving for the first time.

> **Important**
>
> The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven safely in traffic and that applicable laws and regulations are followed. It is also important that the car is maintained and handled in accordance with Volvo's recommendations in the owner's information.

Finding information in the car's centre display

You can access the owner's manual in the following ways:

1. Swipe from the top and down on the centre display in order to open the top view.
2. Tap on **Owner's manual**.

Find information by:

- using the search function
- navigating visually using exterior and interior images
- clicking through categories.

> **Note**
>
> The digital owner's manual is not available while driving.

Changing the language in the centre display may mean that some owner information does not match national or local laws and regulations. Do not switch to a language that is difficult to understand, as this may make it difficult to find your way back through the structure on screen.

Shortcut to related owner's information

There is a shortcut in the top view that opens an article in the owner's manual that is related to the content shown on the screen. For example, **Navigation Manual** – is a shortcut to an article concerning navigation.

This only applies to some of the apps in the car. For downloaded third party apps, for example, it is not possible to access app-specific articles.

Printed information and support site

Depending on equipment level selected, market, etc. additional owner's information may also be available in printed format in the car.

The associated supplement can be ordered. Contact a Volvo dealer to order.

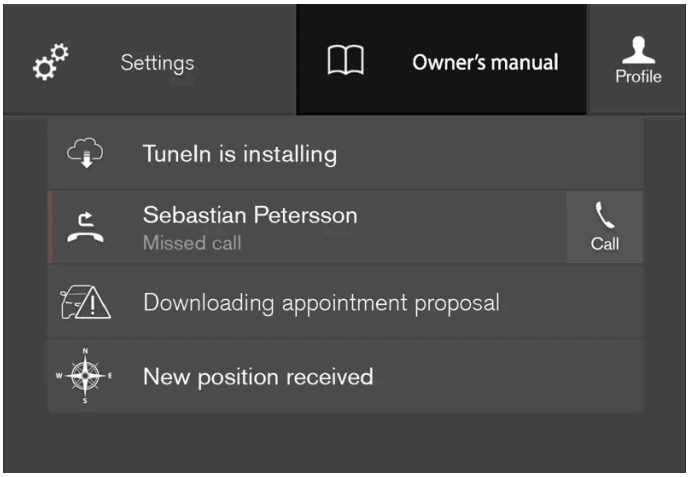
The owner's manual is also at volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] .

> **Note**
>
> If the information in the digital owner's manual and the printed supplement **Featured articles from the owner's manual** differ, the printed information takes precedence.

[1] Applies for most markets.

4.2.17. Navigate in the owner's manual in the centre display

The digital owner's manual can be accessed from the centre display top view in the car. The content is searchable, and the various sections are designed to facilitate navigation.



The owner's manual is accessed from the top view.

1 To open the owner's manual - drag down the top view in the centre display and tap on **Owner's manual**.

There is a range of different options for finding information in the owner's manual. The options can be accessed from the owner's manual homepage and from the top menu.

Opening the menu in the top menu

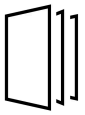
1 Press ☰ in the upper list in the owner's manual.

> A menu with different options for finding information is opened:

Homepage

Tap on the symbol to go back to the start page in the owner's manual.

Categories



The articles in the owner's manual are structured into main categories and subcategories. The same article can be found in several appropriate categories so that it can be found more easily.

Press **Categories**.

1
> The main categories are shown in a list.

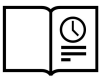
2 Tap on a main category ( ).

> A list of subcategories ( ) and articles ( ) is shown.

3 Tap on an article to open it.

To go back, press the back arrow.

Quick Guide



Press the symbol to access a page with links to a selection of articles that can be useful to read in order to get to know the more common functions of the car. The articles can also be accessed via categories, but are collected here for faster access. Tap on an article in order to read it in its entirety.

Hotspots for exterior and interior

Exterior and interior overview images of the car. Different parts are designated with hotspots that lead to articles about those parts of the car.

1 Press **Exterior** or **Interior**.

> Exterior or interior images are shown with so-called hotspots in place. The hotspot leads to articles about the corresponding part of the car. Swipe horizontally over the screen to browse among the images.

2 Tap on a hotspot.

> The title of the article about the area is shown.

3 Tap on the title to open the article.

To go back, press the back arrow.

Favourites

Press the symbol to access the articles saved as favourites. Tap on an article in order to read it in its entirety.

Saving or deleting articles as favourites

Save an article as favourite by pressing ☆ at the top right when an article is open. When an article has been saved as a favourite the star is filled in: ★.

To remove an article as a favourite, press the star again in the current article.

Video

Press the symbol to view brief instruction videos for various functions in the car.

Information

Tap on the symbol to obtain information about which version of the owner's manual is available in the car as well as other useful information.

Using the search function in the top menu

1. Tap on Q in the top menu of the owner's manual. A keyboard appears in the lower part of the screen.
2. Type in a keyword, such as "seatbelt".

> Suggestions for articles and categories are shown while letters are being entered.

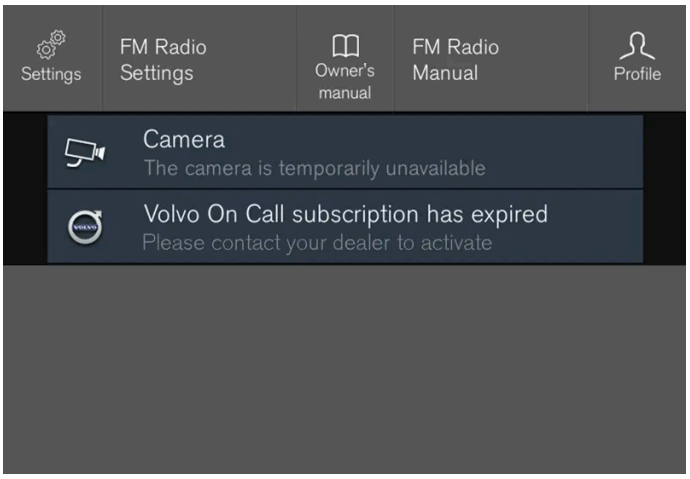
3. Tap on the article or category to access it.

4.3. Symbols and messages

4.3.1. Message handling

4.3.1.1. Message in centre display

The centre display can show messages to inform or assist the driver in the event of different events.



Example of a message in the centre display's top view.

The centre display shows messages that are of lower priority for the driver.

Most messages are shown above the centre display's status bar. After a while, or when any required action related to the message has been taken, the message disappears from the status bar. If a message needs to be saved, it is positioned in the top view in the centre display.

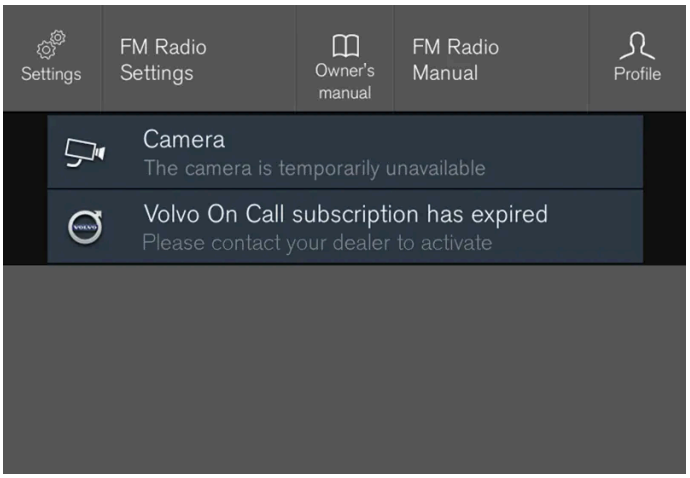
Message composition may vary and they can be shown together with graphics, symbols or a button for activating/deactivating a function linked to the message.

Pop-up messages

In some cases, a message is shown in the form of a pop-up window. Pop-up messages have higher priority than messages shown in the status bar and require acknowledgement/action before they disappear.

4.3.1.2. Managing messages in the centre display

Messages in the centre display are handled in centre display views.



Example of a message in the centre display's top view.

Some messages in the centre display have a button (or several buttons in pop-up messages) for e.g. activating/deactivating a function linked to the message.

Managing a new message

For messages with buttons:

1 Press the button to perform the action or allow the message to close automatically after a while.

> The message disappears from the status bar.

For messages without buttons:

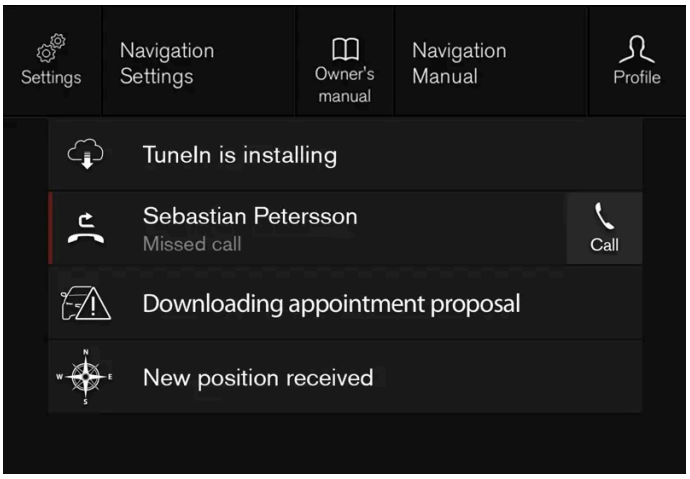
1 Close the message by tapping on it, or allow the message to close automatically after a while.

> The message disappears from the status bar.

If a message needs to be saved, it is positioned in the top view in the centre display.

4.3.1.3. Handling a message saved from the centre display

Whether saved from the driver display or the centre display, messages are managed in the centre display.



Examples of saved messages and possible options in the top view.

Messages that are shown in the centre display that need to be saved are added in the top view of the centre display.

Reading a saved message

Open the top view in the centre display.

1 A list of saved messages is shown. Messages with an arrow to the right can be maximised.

2 Tap on a message to expand/minimise.

> More information on the message is shown in the list and the image to the left in the app shows information about the message graphically.

Managing a saved message

Some messages have a button for e.g. activating/deactivating a function linked to the message.

1 Press the button to perform the action.

Saved messages in the top view are deleted automatically when the car is switched off.

4.3.1.4. Messages in the driver display

The driver display can show messages to inform or assist the driver in the event of different events.

Example of message in the 8-inch driver display. The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

Examples of messages in the driver display. The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

The driver display shows messages that are of high priority for the driver.

Messages can be shown in different parts of the driver display depending on what other information is currently being displayed. After a while, or when the message has been acknowledged/action taken if required, the message disappears from the driver display. If a message needs to be saved, it is placed in the **Car Status** app, which is opened from the app view in the centre display.

Message composition may vary and they can be shown together with graphics, symbols or buttons for acknowledging the message or accepting a request, for example.

Service messages

Shown below is a selection of important service messages and their meanings.

Message	Specification
Stop safely [1]	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop [2].
Turn off engine [1]	Stop and switch off the engine. Serious risk of damage - consult a workshop [2].
Service urgent Drive to workshop [1]	Contact a workshop [2] to check the car immediately.
Service required [1]	Contact a workshop [2] to check the car as soon as possible.
Regular maintenance Book time for maintenance	Time for regular service - contact a workshop [2]. Shown before the next service date.
Regular maintenance Time for maintenance	Time for regular service - contact a workshop [2]. Shown at the next service date.
Regular maintenance Maintenance overdue	Time for regular service - contact a workshop [2]. Shown when the service date has passed.
Temporarily off [1]	A function has been temporarily switched off and is reset automatically while driving or after starting again.

[1] Part of message, shown together with information on where the problem has arisen.

[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

4.3.1.5. Managing messages in the driver display

Messages in the driver display are handled using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Examples of messages in the driver display[1] and the steering wheel's right-hand keypad. The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

Examples of messages in the driver display[2] and the steering wheel's right-hand keypad. The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

1 Left/right

2 Confirm

Some messages in the driver display contain one or more buttons for acknowledging the message or accepting a request, for example.

Managing a new message

For messages with buttons:

1. Navigate between the buttons by pressing on the left or right (1).
2. Confirm the selection by pressing on confirm (2).

> The message disappears from the driver display.

For messages without buttons:

1 Close the message by pressing on confirm (2), or allow the message to close automatically after a while.

> The message disappears from the driver display.

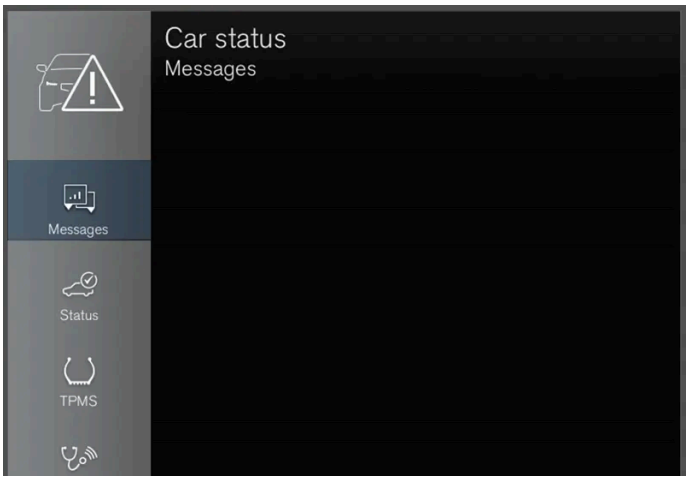
If a message needs to be saved, it is placed in the **Car Status** app, which is opened from the app view in the centre display. The message **Car message stored in Car Status application** is shown in the centre display in conjunction with this.

[1] With 8-inch driver display.

[2] With 12-inch driver display.

4.3.1.6. Handling a message saved from the driver display

Whether saved from the driver display or the centre display, messages are managed in the centre display.



Saved messages can be seen in the **Car Status** app.

Messages that are shown in the driver display and that need to be saved are added in the **Car Status** app in the centre display. The message **Car message stored in Car Status application** is shown in the centre display in conjunction with this.

Reading a saved message

To read a saved message immediately:

1 Press the button to the right of the **Car message stored in Car Status application** message in the centre display.

> The saved message is shown in the **Car Status** app.

To read a saved message later:

1. Open the **Car Status** app from the app view in the centre display.

> The app is opened in the bottom subview of the home view.

2. Select the **Messages** tab in the app.

> A list of saved messages is shown.

3. Tap on a message to expand/minimise.

> More information on the message is shown in the list and the image to the left in the app shows information about the message graphically.

Managing a saved message

In maximised mode, some messages have two buttons available to book service or read the owner's manual.

To book service for a saved message:

1. In maximised mode for the message, press **Request appoint.**/**Call to make Appointment**[1] for help in booking service.

> With **Request appoint.**: The **Appointments** tab opens in the app and creates a request to book service and repair work.
> With **Call to make Appointment**: The phone app is initiated and calls a service centre to book service and repair work.

To read the owner's manual for a saved message:

1. In maximised mode for the message, press **Owner's manual** to read about the message in the owner's manual.

> The owner's manual opens in the centre display and shows information linked to the message.

Saved messages in the app are deleted automatically each time the engine is started.

[1] Market dependent. Volvo ID and selected workshop also need to be registered.

4.3.2. Messages for BLIS*

A number of messages regarding BLIS[1] can be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Message	Specification
Blind spot sensor Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[2].
Blind spot system off Trailer attached	BLIS and Cross Traffic Alert* have been deactivated as a trailer has been connected to the car's electrical system.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Blind Spot Information

[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

4.3.3. Messages for City Safety

A number of messages regarding City Safety can be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Message	Specification
City Safety Automatic intervention	When City Safety brakes or has done an automatic braking, several of the driver display symbols may be illuminated in connection with a text message being shown.
City Safety Reduced functionality Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[1].

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message persists, contact a workshop[1].

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

4.3.4. Messages for Cross Traffic Alert*

A number of messages regarding Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) can be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Message	Specification
Blind spot sensor Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[1].
Blind spot system off Trailer attached	BLIS[2] and CTA have been deactivated as a trailer has been connected to the car's electrical system.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[2] Blind Spot Information System

4.3.5. Symbols and messages for electronic stability control

A number of symbols and messages regarding electronic stability control (ESC[1]) can be shown on the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Constant glow for approx. 2 seconds	System check when the engine is started.
	Flashing light	The system is being activated.
	Constant glow	Sport mode is activated. **NOTE:** The system is not deactivated in this mode – it is partly reduced.
–	Traction control Temporarily off	The system has been temporarily reduced due to excessive brake temperature - the function is reactivated automatically when the brakes have cooled.
	ESC Service required	The system is disengaged. Stop the car in a safe place, switch off the engine and start it again.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Electronic Stability Control

4.3.6. Symbols and messages for adaptive cruise control*

A number of symbols and messages regarding the adaptive cruise control[1] (ACC[2]) can be shown. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	The symbol is lit	The car is maintaining the stored speed.
	Adaptive Cruise Contr. Unavailable The symbol is extinguished	Adaptive cruise control is set to standby mode.
	Adaptive Cruise Contr. Service required The symbol is extinguished	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
	Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual	Clean the windscreen in front of the camera and radar unit's detectors.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

[2] Adaptive Cruise Control

4.3.7. Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist*

A number of symbols and messages regarding Pilot Assist[1] can be shown. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Steering wheel symbol extinguished	Indicates deactivated steering assistance. When Pilot Assist provides steering assistance, the steering wheel is lit up.
	Symbol for hands on the steering wheel	The system cannot detect whether the driver has his/her hands on the steering wheel. Place your hands on the steering wheel and actively steer the car.
	Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual	Clean the windscreen in front of the camera and radar unit's detectors.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

4.3.8. Symbols and messages for lane assistance

A number of symbols and messages regarding lane assistance (LKA[1]) can be shown on the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Driver support system Reduced functionality Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[2].
	Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual	The ability of the camera to scan the roadway in front of the car is reduced.
	Lane Keeping Aid Apply steering	The LKA steering assistance does not function if the driver does not have his/her hands on the steering wheel. Follow the instruction and steer the car.
	Lane Keeping Aid Standby until steering applied	LKA is set in standby mode until the driver starts to steer the car again.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

4.3.9. Display mode for lane assistance

Lane assistance (LKA[1]) is visualised by symbols in the driver display depending on the situation.

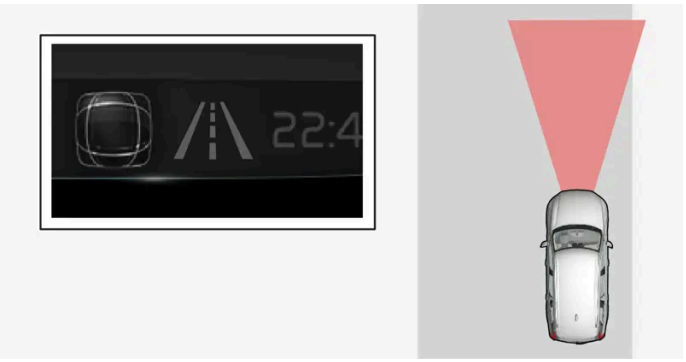
Here are some examples of symbols and the situations in which they are shown:

Available

Available – the lane lines in the symbol are white.

Lane assistance is scanning one or both lane lines.

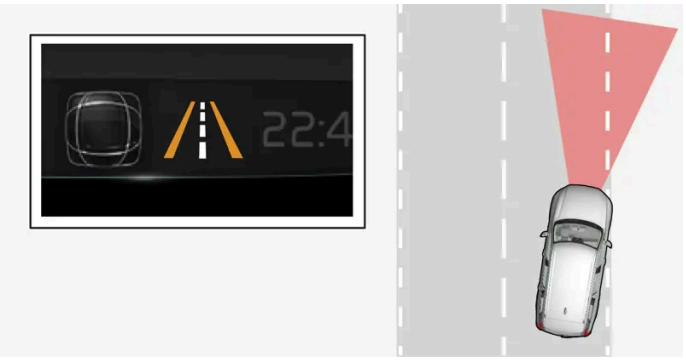
Unavailable



Unavailable – the lane lines in the symbol are extinguished.

The Lane assistance cannot detect the lane lines, the speed is too low or the road is too narrow.

Indication of steering assistance/warning



Steering assistance/warning – the lane lines in the symbol are coloured.

Lane assistance indicates that the system is giving a warning and/or attempting to steer the car back into the lane.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

4.3.10. Messages for Park Assist Pilot*

Messages for Park Assist Pilot (PAP[1]) can be shown in the driver display and/or the centre display. Here are some examples.

Message	Specification
Park Assist System **Sensors blocked, cleaning needed**	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
Park Assist System **Unavailable Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[2].

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Park Assist Pilot

[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

4.3.11. Symbols and messages for Park Assist Pilot

Symbols and messages for Park Assist Pilot can be shown in the driver display and/or the centre display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
		The rearward parking assistance sensors are **deactivated**, so there are no acoustic warnings for obstacles/objects.
	Park Assist System **Sensors blocked, cleaning needed**	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
	Park Assist System **Unavailable Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[1].

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

4.3.12. Symbols and messages for park assist camera*

Symbols and messages for Park assist camera can be shown in the driver display and/or the centre display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
		The rearward parking assistance sensors are **deactivated**, so there are no acoustic warnings and field marks for obstacles/objects.
		The camera is disengaged.
	Park Assist System Sensors blocked, cleaning needed	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
	Park Assist System Unavailable Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[1].

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

4.3.13. Symbols and messages for steering assistance upon risk of collision

A number of symbols and messages regarding steering assistance may be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Collision avoidance Automatic intervention	When the function is activated, a message is shown to the driver indicating that the system has been activated.
	Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual	The ability of the camera to scan the roadway in front of the car is reduced.

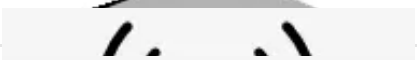
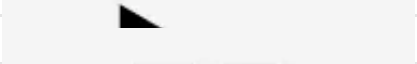
A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

4.3.14. Symbols in the centre display's status bar

Overview of the symbols that can be shown in the centre display's status bar.

The status bar shows activities in progress and, in some cases, their status. Not all symbols are shown all the time due to the limited space in the status bar.

Symbol	Specification
	Connected to the Internet.
	Roaming activated.
	Signal strength in mobile phone network.
	Bluetooth device connected.
	Bluetooth activated but no device connected.
	Information sent to and from GPS.
	Connected to Wi-Fi network.
	Tethering activated (Wi-Fi hotspot). The car then shares the available connection.
	Car modem activated.
	USB sharing active.
	Phone charging wirelessly.
	Process in progress.
	Timer for preconditioning active.
	Audio source being played back.
	Audio source stopped.
	Phone call in progress.
	Audio source muted.
	News is received from the radio channel.
	Traffic information is received.
	Clock.

4.3.15. Indicator and warning symbols

The indicator and warning systems alert the driver to the fact that a function is activated, a system is working, or a defect or serious error has occurred.

Red symbols

	Warning The red warning symbol illuminates when a fault has been detected which could affect the safety or drivability of the car. An explanatory text is shown on the driver display at the same time. The warning symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.
	Seatbelt reminder Illuminates or flashes when someone in the car is not wearing a seatbelt.
	Airbags An error has been detected in any of the car's safety systems. Read the message on the driver display and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	Fault in brake system An error has occurred on the braking system. Read the message on the driver display and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	Parking brake Light illuminated permanently: The parking brake is activated. Flashing: an error has occurred with the parking brake. Read the message in the driver display.
	Faults in the electrical system An error has occurred on the electrical system. Read the message on the driver display and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	High engine temperature The engine temperature is too high. Read the message in the driver display.
	Collision risk City Safety warns of a risk of collision with other vehicles, pedestrians, cyclists or large animals.
	Low oil pressure The engine oil pressure is too low. Switch off the engine immediately and check the engine oil level, top up if necessary. If the symbol lights up and the oil level is normal, read the message on the display and contact a workshop. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.

Amber symbols

	Information A fault has occurred in one of the car's systems. Read the message in the driver display. The information symbol can also illuminate in conjunction with other symbols.
	Fault in brake system An error has occurred on the braking system. Read the message in the driver display.
	ABS fault The system is disengaged. The car's regular brake system continues to work, but without the ABS function.
	Emissions system Emissions systems fault. Drive to a workshop for checking. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.
	Rear fog lamp The rear fog lamp is illuminated.
	Tyre pressure system Low tyre pressure. If there is a fault in the tyre pressure system, the symbol will flash for approx. 1 minute and then illuminate with a constant glow. This may be because the system cannot detect or warn of low tyre pressure as intended.
	Fault in the headlamp system A fault has occurred on the headlamp system. Read the message in the driver display.

	Lane assistance Lane assistance warns/intervenes.
	Stability system Light on permanently: a fault has occurred in the system. Flashing: the system is working.
	Stability system, sport mode Sport mode is selected.

Blue symbols

	Active main beam Active main beam is activated and switched on.
	Main beam Main beam is switched on.

Green symbols

	Automatic brake The function is activated and the service brake or parking brake is operating.
	Front fog lamps The front fog lamp is switched on.
	Position lamps The position lamps are switched on.
	Left and right-hand direction indicator The direction indicator is being used.

White/grey symbols

	Active main beam Active main beam is activated, but does not come on.
	Preconditioning Engine and compartment heater/air conditioning pre-condition the car.
	Lane assistance White symbol: Lane assistance is on and road lines are detected. Grey symbol: Lane assistance is on but road lines are not detected.
	Rain sensor The rain sensor is activated.

4.3.16. Symbols and messages for parking climate control*

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

A number of symbols and messages regarding parking climate control can be shown in the driver display.

Messages relating to parking climate control can also be displayed in a device which has the Volvo Cars app*.

This symbol illuminates in the driver display when the parking heater is active.[1]

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Parking climate Service required	Parking climate control is disengaged. Contact a workshop[2] to check the function as soon as possible.
	Parking climate Temporarily unavailable	Parking climate control is temporarily disengaged. If the problem persists for some time, contact a workshop[2] to check the function.
	Parking climate Unavailable Fuel level too low	Parking climate control cannot be activated when the fuel level is too low to start the parking heater*. Fill the vehicle's fuel tank.
	Parking climate Unavailable Charge level too low	Parking climate control cannot be activated if the charge level of the starter battery is too low to start the parking heater*. Start the car.
	Parking climate Limited Charge level too low	The running time for parking climate control is limited when the state of charge in the starter battery is low. Start the car.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to fuel-driven heater.

[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

4.3.17. Overheating in the engine and drive system

Under certain conditions, e.g. hard driving in hilly terrain and hot climate, there is an increased risk of overheating the engine and drive system – in particular with a heavy load.

- In the event of overheating, the engine's power may be limited temporarily.
- Remove any auxiliary lamps from in front of the grille when driving in hot climates.
- If the temperature in the engine's cooling system becomes too high then a warning symbol is illuminated and the driver display shows the message **Engine temperature High temperature Stop safely**. Stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for several minutes and cool down.
- If the message **Engine temperature High temperature Turn off engine** or **Engine coolant Level low, turn off engine** is shown, stop the car and switch off the engine.
- In the event of overheating in the gearbox, an alternative gear shift program will be selected[1]. In addition, a built-in protection function is activated that, amongst other things, illuminates a warning symbol and the driver display shows the message **Transmission warm Reduce speed to lower temperature** or **Transmission hot Stop safely, wait for cooling**. Follow the recommendation given, reduce speed or stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for several minutes to enable the gearbox to cool down.

- If the car overheats, the air conditioning may be switched off temporarily.
- Do not turn the engine off immediately you stop after hard driving.

> **Note**
>
> It is normal for the engine's cooling fan to operate for a time after the engine has been switched off.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	High engine temperature. Follow the recommendation given.
	Low level, coolant. Follow the recommendation given.
	Gearbox hot/overheated/cooled. Follow the recommendation given.

[1] Applies to automatic gearbox.

4.3.18. Symbols and messages for automatic gearbox

If a fault should occur in the gearbox, a symbol and a message are shown in the driver display.

> **Important**
>
> To prevent damage to any drive system components, the working temperature of the gearbox is checked. If there is a risk of overheating, a warning symbol illuminates in the driver display and a text message is shown - follow the recommendation given.

Symbol	Specification
	An error has occurred in the transmission. Read the message in the driver display.
	Hot or overheated gearbox. Read the message in the driver display.
	Temporary fault on drivetrain. Read the message in the driver display.

4.4. Voice control

4.4.1. Controlling climate control with voice control[1]

Commands for voice control of the climate control system in order to e.g. change temperature, activate a heated seat* or change fan level.

Tap on and say one of the following commands:

- "**Climate**" - starts a dialogue for climate control and shows examples of commands.
- "**Set temperature to X degrees**" - sets the desired temperature.
- "**Raise temperature**"/"**Lower temperature**" - raise/lower the temperature setting one step.
- "**Sync temperature**" - synchronises the temperature* for all climate zones in the car with the temperature set for the driver's side.
- "**Air on feet**"/"**Air on body**" - opens the desired air flow.
- "**Air on feet off**"/"**Air on body off**" - closes the desired air flow.
- "**Set fan to max**"/"**Turn off fan**" - changes the air flow to **Max**/**Off**.
- "**Raise fan speed**"/"**Lower fan speed**" - raises/lowers the fan level one step.
- "**Turn on auto**" - activates automatic climate regulation.
- "**Air condition on**"/"**Air condition off**" - activates/deactivates the air conditioning.
- "**Recirculation on**"/"**Recirculation off**" - activates/deactivates the air circulation.
- "**Turn on defroster** "/"**Turn off defroster**" - activates/deactivates defrosting of windows and door mirrors.
- "**Turn on max defroster**"/"**Turn max defroster off**" - activates/deactivates the max defroster.
- "**Turn on electric defroster**"/"**Turn off electric defroster**" - activates/deactivates the heated windscreen*.
- "**Turn on rear defroster**"/"**Turn off rear defroster**" - activates/deactivates the heated rear window and door mirrors.
- "**Turn steering wheel heat on**"/"**Turn steering wheel heat off**" - activates/deactivates the heated steering wheel*.
- "**Raise steering wheel heat**"/"**Lower steering wheel heat**" - raises/lowers the setting for the heated steering wheel* one step.
- "**Turn on seat heat**"/"**Turn off seat heat**" – activates/deactivates the heated driver seat*.
- "**Raise seat heat**"/"**Lower seat heat**" - raises/lowers the setting level for the heated driver seat* one step.

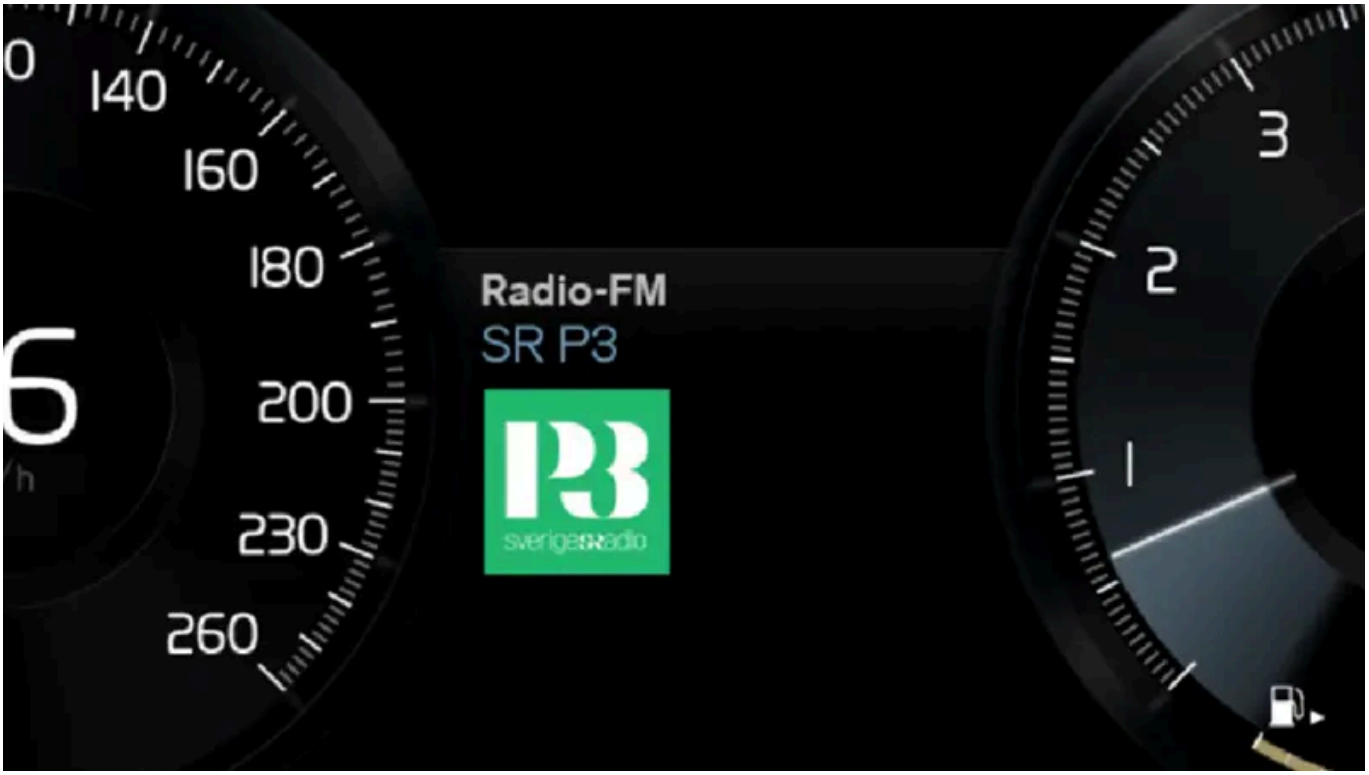
> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

* Option/accessory.

4.4.2. Voice control of radio and media

Commands for radio and media player voice control are shown below[1].



Tap on and say one of the following commands:

- "**Media**" - starts a dialogue for media and radio and shows examples of commands.
- "**Play [artist]**" - plays back music by the selected artist.
- "**Play [song title]**" - plays back the selected song.
- "**Play [song title] from [album]**" - plays back the selected song from the selected album.
- "**Play [radio station]**" - starts playing back the selected radio channel.
- "**Tune to [frequency]**" - starts the selected radio frequency in the current frequency band. If no radio source is active, the FM band is started by default.
- "**Tune to [frequency] [wavelength]**" - starts the selected radio frequency in the selected frequency band.
- "**Radio**" - starts FM radio.
- "**Radio FM**" - starts FM radio.
- "**DAB** " - starts DAB radio*.
- "**USB**" - starts playback from USB.
- "**iPod**" - starts playback from iPod.
- "**Bluetooth**" - starts playback from a Bluetooth-connected media source.
- "**Similar music**" — plays back music similar to the music currently playing back from USB devices.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Note

Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

* Option/accessory.

4.4.3. Voice control

Voice control[1] allows you to control functions in the car, e.g. climate system, radio or a Bluetooth-connected phone with spoken commands. In cars equipped with Sensus Navigation*, the navigation system can also be controlled with voice control.

What is voice control?

Voice control is an aid that can facilitate the use of different functions in your car. In order to use voice control, certain specific commands must be used. It may therefore be a good idea to learn how, and in what order, a voice command should be spoken in order to achieve the desired result.

The voice control system allows you to control certain infotainment and climate functions using voice commands. The system can respond with speech and by showing information in the driver display.

Warning

The driver always holds overall responsibility for driving the vehicle in a safe manner and complying with all applicable rules of the road.

Voice control system microphone

System updating

The voice control system is continuously improved. It is recommended to always have the latest version installed.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

* Option/accessory.

4.4.4. Using voice control

It is possible to voice-control a range of different functions in the car. Below is an introduction to what is needed to get started as well as examples of different commands.

Start voice control [1]

To give commands via the voice control system, you have a "dialogue" with the system. Depress the steering wheel button for voice control to activate the system and initiate a dialogue using voice commands. After you have pressed the button, a beep tone can be heard and the voice control symbol is shown in the driver display.

This shows that the system has started to listen and you can start to say the commands. As soon as you start to talk, the system is trained to recognise and understand your voice. This takes several seconds and is done automatically, which means that you do not need to start any voice training manually.

Remember the following:

- Speak after the tone with a normal voice at a normal tempo.
- Do not speak while the system is replying (the system cannot understand commands during this time).
- Avoid background noise in the passenger compartment by having the doors, windows and panoramic roof* closed.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

In general, the system works by listening for a basic command which is followed by more detailed commands that specify what you want the system to do.

To change the system audio volume, turn the rotary volume knob when the voice speaks. It is possible to use other buttons during voice control. However, other sounds will be silenced during dialogue with the system, which means that it is not possible to execute any functions linked with audio using the buttons.

Cancel voice control

Voice control can be cancelled in different ways:

- Tap briefly on and say "**Cancel**".
- Give a long press on the steering wheel button for voice control until you hear two beeps. This stops voice control even when the system is speaking.

Voice control is also cancelled if you do not reply during a dialogue. The system will first ask for a reply three times and if there is still no response then voice control will be cancelled automatically.

To speed up communication and skip the prompts from the system, press the steering wheel button for voice control . This cancels the system voice and you can say the next command.

Example of voice control

1. Press .
2. Say "**Call [Forename] [Surname] [number category]**", e.g. "**Call Robin Smith Mobile**".

> The system dials the selected contact from the phonebook. If the contact has several phone numbers (e.g. home, mobile, work), the right category must be referred to.

Commands/phrases

The following commands can generally be used, regardless of the situation:

- "**Repeat**" - repeats the last voice instruction in the ongoing dialogue.
- "**Cancel**" - discontinue the dialogue.[2]
- "**Help**" - starts a help dialogue. The system replies with the commands available in the current situation, a prompt or an example.

Commands for specific functions such as phone and radio are described in specific sections.

Digits

The number commands are stated differently depending on the function to be controlled:

- **Phone numbers and postcodes** must be spoken individually, number by number, e.g. "zero, three, one, two, two, four, four, three" (03122443).
- **House numbers** can be spoken individually or in groups, e.g. "two, two" or "twenty-two" (22). For English and Dutch, several groups can be said in sequence, e.g. "twenty-two, twenty-two" (22 22). For English, double or triple can be used, e.g. "double zero" (00). Numbers can be given within the range 0-2300.
- **Frequencies** can be spoken as "ninety eight point eight" (98.8), "a hundred and four point two" or "hundred four point two" (104.2).

Speed and repetition mode

It is possible to adjust the speed if the system is speaking too quickly.

Repetition mode can be enabled so that the system repeats what you have said.

To change the speed or activate/deactivate repetition mode:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **System** → **Voice Control** and select settings.
   - **Repeat Voice Command**
   - **Speech Rate**

[1] Applies to certain markets.

* Option/accessory.

[2] Note that this only stops the dialogue when the system is not speaking. To stop the dialogue when the system is speaking, give a long press on until two beep tones are heard.

4.4.5. Updating voice control

Volvo is working constantly on improving voice control in your car. You can download files yourself for updating your car's voice control. Updating occurs in two stages using an empty USB memory.

Preparations

The new voice control files can be downloaded to an empty USB memory stick of at least 8 GB. The memory must have one of the following formats: FAT32, NTFS or exFAT.

Download

You can find current updates under the tab for download of software on the support site. You access the information for the relevant car by selecting your car and model year. Click on the update that you want to install, then follow the instructions below. Downloads for voice control files are carried out using a program that is installed on your computer.

Instructions

1. Depending on which system you have, select the download link for either Windows or Mac.
2. Select **Run** to install the download program.
3. Click on **New download** to download the file to a USB memory stick.
4. You can verify that the download/copying to the USB memory stick has worked correctly before you install the file in the car by repeating steps 1-2 and then pressing on **Check download** in the download program.
5. Take the USB memory with the downloaded file to your car and start the infotainment system.
6. Insert the USB memory in the USB port. If there are two USB ports, the second one must not be used at the same time.
7. The system automatically detects that an update is available and during the update the screen shows how much of the process remains, counted as a percentage.
8. When the installation is complete a notification is shown advising that the updated file is available after the next restart. The USB memory can now be removed.

   If there are any problems with the update, contact your customer support or Volvo dealer.

Updating tips

- An update takes about half an hour and the infotainment system must be on. Use a battery charger or keep the car's engine running while the update is in progress, for example during a journey.
- New voice control files for download are launched twice a year.

4.4.6. Tips for improving voice control

A few tips that might be useful to bear in mind when using voice control are listed here.

If the voice control system does not respond as you expect, this may be due to a number of factors. Examples of these include:

- Make sure you are speaking the language that is selected as system language, and that the language you have selected is supported by voice control.
- Try saying "**Help**". You will then receive guidance about what is possible to say. It is possible that the system does not support the phrase that you think the system does not understand.
- Speak at a natural pace and using a normal conversational tone. Do not speak more slowly because the system does not understand you, this impairs recognition.
- Remember that in certain situations, the system has to search through a large database in order to give you the right feedback. In these situations it is more difficult to give you exactly the right response. A list of possible responses is then often shown in the car's display.
- The voice control system in your car is under continuous improvement. You can download update files yourself.

4.4.7. Settings for voice control

Settings for the voice control system[1] are selected here.

Settings → System → Voice Control

Settings can be made within the following areas:

- **Repeat Voice Command**
- **Gender**
- **Speech Rate**

Sound settings

Select sound settings under:

Settings → Sound → System Volumes → Voice Control

Language settings

Voice control is not possible for all languages. Languages available for voice control are marked with an icon in the language list - «ε.

Changing the language also affects menu, message and help texts.

Settings → System → System Languages and Units → System Language

[1] Applies to certain markets.

4.4.8. Command list for voice control of the navigation system*

Several navigation system functions can be activated with voice commands. A list of them follows below.

Press on the right-hand keypad on the steering wheel and say one of the following commands:

- "**Navigation**" - Initiates a navigation dialogue and shows examples of commands.
- "**Take me home**" - Guidance is given to the **Home** position.
- "**Go to [City]**" - Specifies a city as a destination. Example "Drive to London".
- "**Go to [Address]**" - Specifies an address as a destination. An address must contain city and street. Example "Drive to 5 King's Road, London".

- "**Add intersection**" - Starts a dialogue where two streets must be specified. The intersection point of the specified streets then becomes the destination.

- "**Go to [Post code]**" - Specifies a post code as a destination. Example "Drive to 1 2 3 4 5".
- "**Go to [contact]**" - Specifies an address from the phone book as a destination. Example "Drive to Robyn Smith"[1].
- "**Search [POI category]**" - Searches for adjacent points of interest (POI) within a certain category (e.g. restaurants)[2]. To have the list sorted along the route - say "**Along the route**" when the results list is shown.
- "**Search [POI category]** in **[City]**" - Searches for points of interest (POI) within a certain category and city. The list of results is sorted according to the city's central point. Example "Search for restaurant in London".
- "**Search [POI name]**". Example "Search Kielder Forest".
- "**Change country/Change state**[3],[4]" - Changes the search area for navigation.
- "**Show favourites**" - Shows saved positions in the driver display.
- "**Clear itinerary**" - Erases all the stored intermediate destinations and final destination in an itinerary.
- "**Repeat voice guidance**" - Repeats the last spoken guidance.
- "**Turn off voice guidance**" - Switches off voice guidance.
- "**Turn on voice guidance**" - Starts the switched-off voice guidance.

The following commands can generally be used, regardless of the situation:

- "**Repeat**" - repeats the last voice instruction in the ongoing dialogue.
- "**Help**" - starts a help dialogue. The system replies with the commands available in the current situation, a prompt or an example.
- It is possible to stop voice control both when the system is silent and when it is speaking.
  - "**Cancel**" – stops the dialogue when the system is silent.
  - Give a long press on until two beep tones are heard – the dialogue stops, even if the system is speaking.

Addresses

When an address is entered, the search area is defined as the search area preset in the navigation system. It is possible to switch to a different search area. If the new search area uses a different language to the selected system language, the system will automatically switch to a different recognition engine. Therefore, state the address in the language used in the new search area.

Note

Note that addresses can only be searched for the country or state that the navigation system is preset for. To search for addresses in another country or state you first need to change search area.

Note

Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

* Option/accessory.

[1] In order to find addresses in the map database, they must have been entered correctly in the phone book, e.g. without spelling mistakes and abbreviations. Go to wego.here.com [https://wego.here.com] for spell checking.

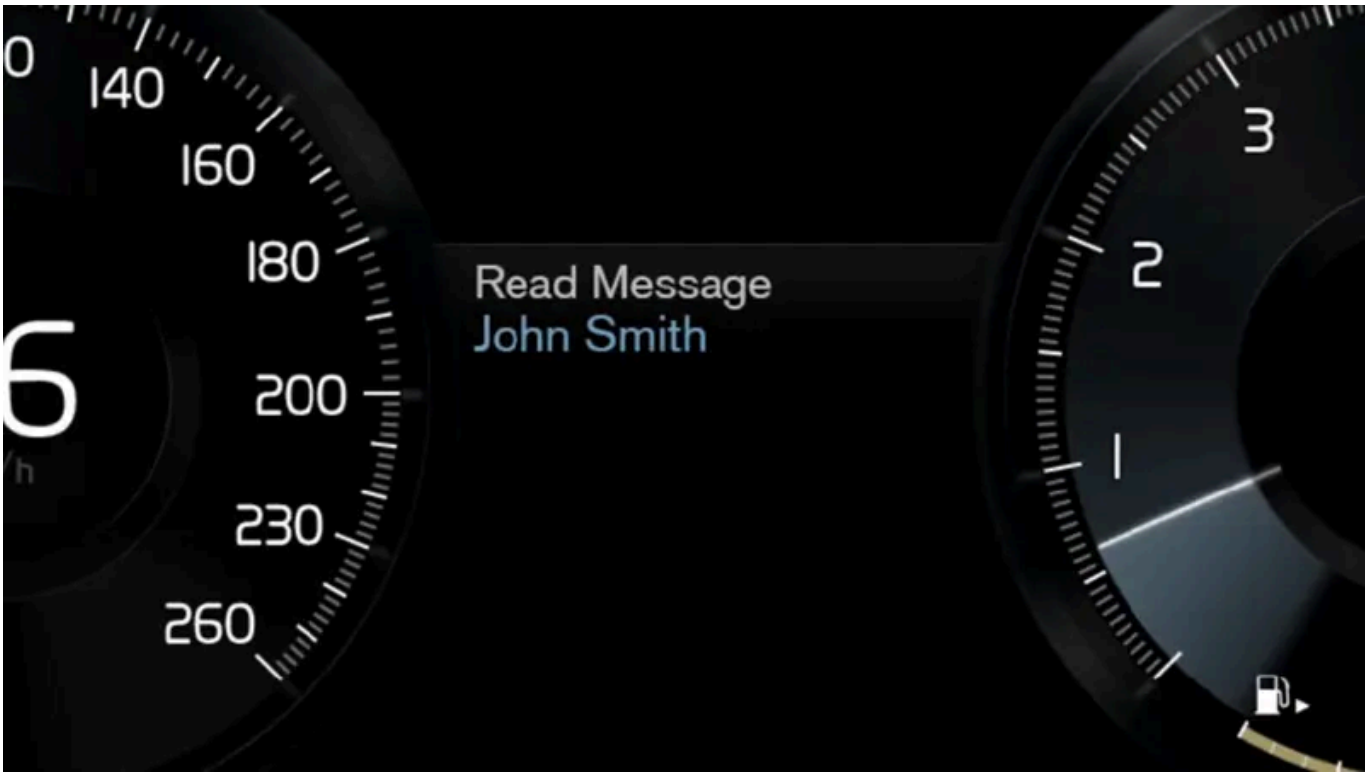
[2] The user has the option of calling the POI or specifying it as a destination.

[3] In European countries, “Country” is used instead of “State”.

[4] For Brazil and India, the search area is changed via the centre display.

4.4.9. Controlling a telephone with voice control

Call a contact, have messages read aloud or dictate brief messages with voice control commands to a Bluetooth connected telephone. [1]



To specify a contact in the phone book, the voice control command must include contact information that is entered in the phone book. If a contact, e.g. **Robyn Smith**, has several phone numbers then the number category can also be stated, e.g. **Home** or **Mobile**: "**Call Robin Smith Mobile**".

Press and say one of the following commands:

- "**Call [contact]**" - dials the selected contact from the phone book.
- "**Call [phone number]**" - dials the phone number.
- "**Recent calls**" - displays the call list.
- "**Read message**" - message is read out. If there are several messages - select which message should be read out.
- "**Message to [contact]**" - the user is prompted to speak a short message. The message is then repeated aloud and the user can choose to send [2] or revise the message. For this function to work, the car must be connected to the Internet.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

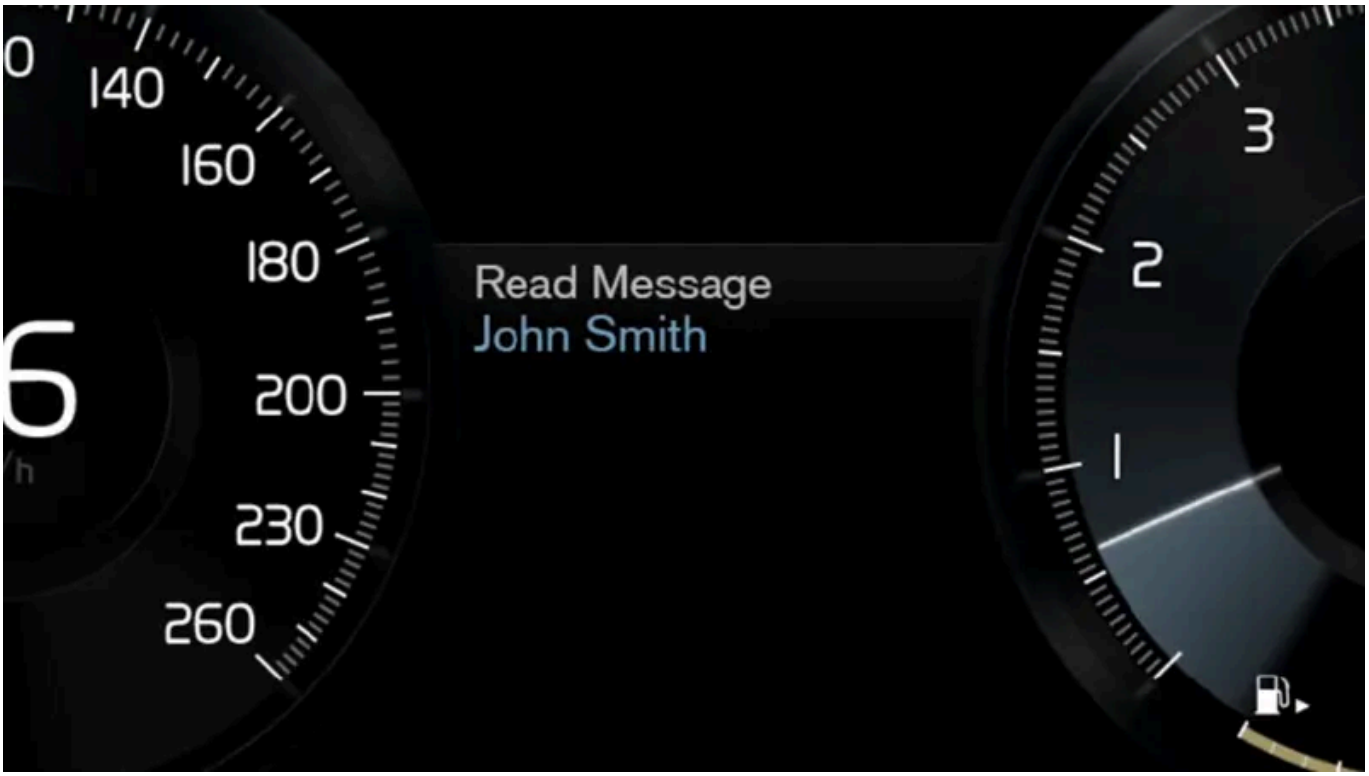
[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] Only certain phones can send messages via the car.

4.4.10. Voice control of text messages

Voice control allows you to control functions in the car, e.g. reading out text messages from a connected mobile phone.

Reading out text messages



Settings and menus in the centre display vary depending on software version.

You need to connect a mobile phone to the car before you can use voice commands for a mobile phone's functions (text messages, phone calls and media player).

To read out a text message, press the voice control button on the right-hand side of the steering wheel and say "**Read message**".

Reading out text messages from an iPhone

To read out text messages from an iPhone, you need to change a setting on your phone so that messages can be sent from the phone to the car.

1. Go to **Settings**.
2. Select **Bluetooth**.
3. Click on the info symbol (i) for the connection to your car.
4. Switch on **Show notes**.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

4.4.11. Control the navigation system* with voice control

If your car is equipped with Sensus Navigation you can use voice control to give spoken commands in order to control parts of your navigation system.

Start navigation

Here you can find an introduction on how to start to use voice control in order to control the navigation system in the car.

To activate a navigation command

1 Press the voice control button on the steering wheel .

> You can now give commands, e.g. "**Navigation**" that start a navigation dialogue and show examples of commands.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

Use voice control to get directions to an address

To get directions to a specific address, use the spoken command **Go to** followed by the address. The order in which the address is given is important. To get directions to an address via voice control, the address must be given in the following order: (1) street address; (2) street number; (3) city; according to the following example:

1 Give the **Go to** command.

> Now you can give the address you want directions to.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

2 Give the street address, e.g. "King Street"

3 Give the street number, e.g. "Five"

4 Give the city, e.g. "Gothenburg"

> In this case, the combined command will then be: "**Go to** King Street Five, Gothenburg". Provided the address is found in the system, you will now get directions to the address via your navigation system.

Use voice control to get directions to an address in another country or another county

Your navigation system installs sets of maps for the country or county where the car recognises its location. This means that in order to get correct directions across country or county borders, you need to first tell the system the country or county in which your desired destination address is located. You do this by using the **Change country** or **Change state** command. (The **Change state** command is primarily used in USA. The **Change country** command is used in the example below.)

1 Give the **Change country** command.

> Now you can give the country for the address to which you want directions, e.g. "Norway".

2 Now give the address to which you want directions by following the same procedure as in "Use voice control to get directions to an address".

> In this scenario, the combined command will be divided into 2 subcommands:

1. "**Change country**, Norway"
2. "**Go to** Karl Johans gate twenty two, Oslo"

Provided the address is found in the system, you will now get directions to Karl Johans gate 22, Oslo, Norway via your navigation system

> **Note**
>
> After changing country, try to pronounce the address you want directions to in the language of the destination country. This is necessary since the system's recognition changes automatically to the language of the selected country.

Use voice control to get directions to an address given as **Home** position

If you have given an address in your navigation system as a **Home** position, you can use a spoken command to get directions to the position.

1 Give the **Take me home** command.

> If the navigation system has a home position saved, you will now get directions to the position.

Use voice control to get directions to a place, shop or other specific business without giving an exact address

You can use your navigation system to get directions to special places or a specific type of business, so-called points of interest (POI [1]). Examples of points of interest are, for example, restaurants, hotels, petrol stations, museums or sights and landmarks.

You use the **Search** command to search for a point of interest. You can search for both a specific point of interest as well as point of interest categories.

> **Note**
>
> It is important which command you choose to use for obtaining directions to different alternatives. Please note that when you want directions to a point of interest, use the **Search** command. This is different from when you want directions to specific addresses. Then the **Go to** command must be used instead.

Search for a specific place or business

[POI name] here refers to a specific place or business, a so-called point of interest, e.g. a hotel, a restaurant, a municipal park, etc.

1. Give the **Search** command.

> Now you can specify a specific point of interest you want directions to.

2. State **[POI name]**, e.g. "Castle Forest"

> In this case, the combined command will then be: "**Search** Castle Forest". Provided the place is found in the system, you will now get directions to the place via your navigation system.

Search for a point of interest category e.g. shops, hotels, restaurants, museums or other sights and landmarks or businesses

[POI category] here refers to specific types of place or business, so-called points of interest, e.g. hotels, restaurants, museums, etc.

1. Give the **Search** command.

> Now you can specify the type of point of interest you want to find and get directions to.

2. State **[POI category]**, e.g. "restaurant"

> In this case, the combined command will then be: "**Search** restaurant". The navigation system will now search for restaurants located near and around the car, which results in a list in your driver display. The list that appears consists of suggestions the system has produced based on your command. Categories and close results are at the top, and the lower the relevance a suggestion is deemed to have, the lower down the list it appears.
> Since you are looking for a category in this example, it may be a good idea to choose the category option closest to your search.

3. Select the category most appropriate for your search target in the list, in this case "restaurant(s)", by speaking the number of the row in which the option appears in the driver display.

> Now you can see your search results and select an option that suits you.

Use voice control to stop directions

If you want to stop directions and all of the intermediate destinations and the final destination, this can be done with a spoken command.

1 Give the **Clear itinerary** command.

> The navigation system stops the directions and deletes all of the intermediate destinations and the final destination along the travel itinerary.

How to give postcode and house number

The number commands are stated differently depending on the function to be controlled:

- **Postcodes** must be spoken individually, number by number, e.g. zero three one two two four four three (03122443).
- **House numbers** can be spoken individually or in groups, e.g. two two or twenty-two (22). For some languages, it is also possible to state them with hundreds, e.g. 19 hundred 22 (1922). For English and Dutch, several groups can be said in sequence, e.g. twenty-two twenty-two (22 22). For English, double or triple can be used, e.g. double zero (00). Numbers can be given within the range 0-2300.

Set destination using the phone book's contact list

If you want to set the address for a contact in the phone's phone book as destination then you can do this with the "**Go to [contact]**" command. However, for the address to be found in the database requires that the address is entered with the correct spelling and without abbreviations.

To spell check addresses in HEREs database, go to wego.here.com [https://wego.here.com]

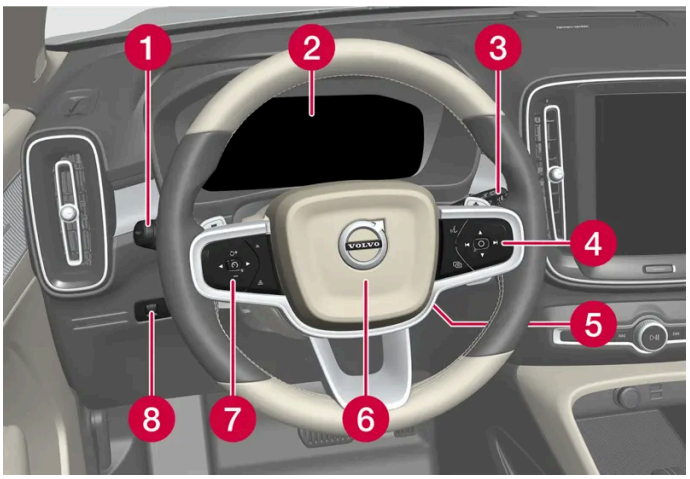
* Option/accessory.

[1] Point Of Interest

4.5. Displays and controls by the driver in a left-hand drive car

The overviews show where the displays and controls near the driver are located.

Steering wheel and instrument panel

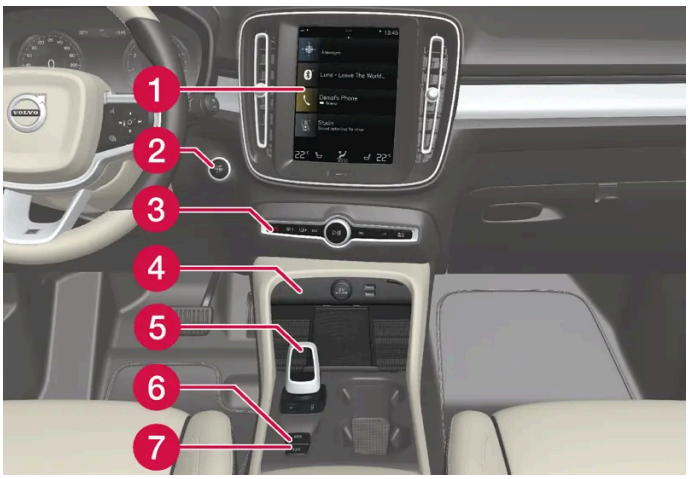


1. Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, front fog lamps/cornering lights*, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter
2. Driver display
3. Wipers and washing, rain sensor*
4. Right-hand steering wheel keypad
5. Steering wheel adjustment
6. Horn
7. Left-hand steering wheel keypad
8. Display lighting, unlocking/opening*/closing* of tailgate

Roof console

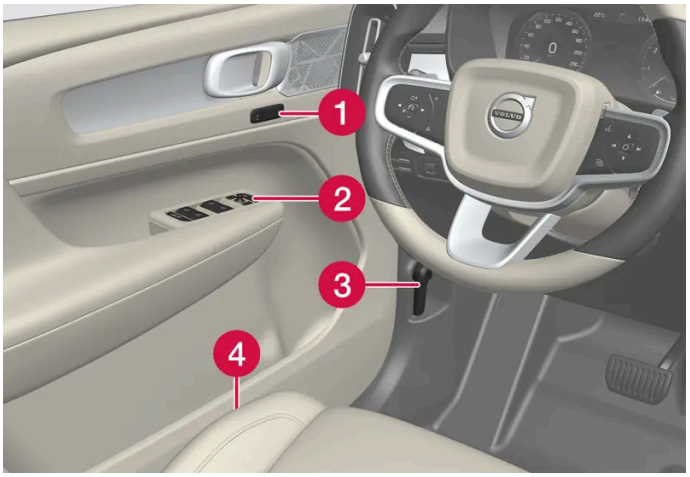
1. Front reading lamps and interior lighting
2. Panoramic roof*
3. Display in roof console, ON CALL button*
4. Manual dimming of interior rearview mirror* [1]

Centre and tunnel console



1. Centre display
2. Start button
3. Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media, drive mode button*
4. Electrical socket, USB port, wireless phone charger*
5. Gear selector
6. Parking brake
7. Automatic braking when stationary

Driver's door



1. Memory for settings for power front seat*, door mirrors
2. Central locking, power windows, door mirrors and child locks*
3. Bonnet opening
4. Adjusting front seat

* Option/accessory.

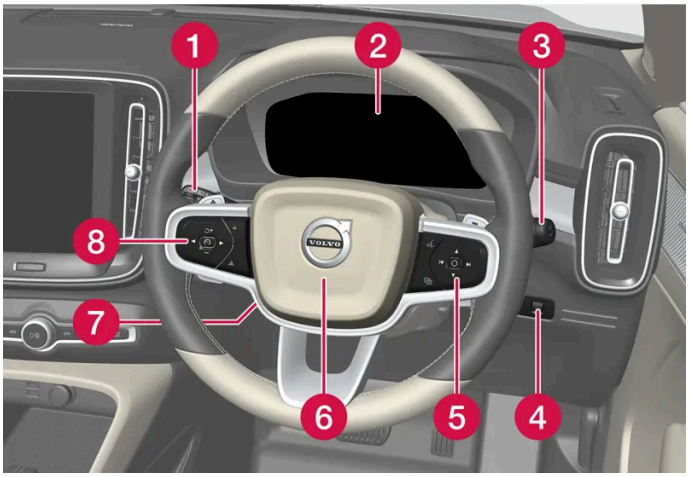
[1] There are no controls for manual dimming for cars with automatic dimming.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

4.6. Displays and controls by the driver in a right-hand drive car

The overviews show where the displays and controls near the driver are located.

Steering wheel and instrument panel



1. Position lamps, daytime running lights, dipped beam, main beam, direction indicators, front fog lamps/cornering lights*, rear fog lamp, resetting the trip meter
2. Driver display
3. Wipers and washing, rain sensor*
4. Display lighting, unlocking/opening*/closing* of tailgate
5. Right-hand steering wheel keypad
6. Horn
7. Steering wheel adjustment
8. Left-hand steering wheel keypad

Roof console

1. Front reading lamps and interior lighting

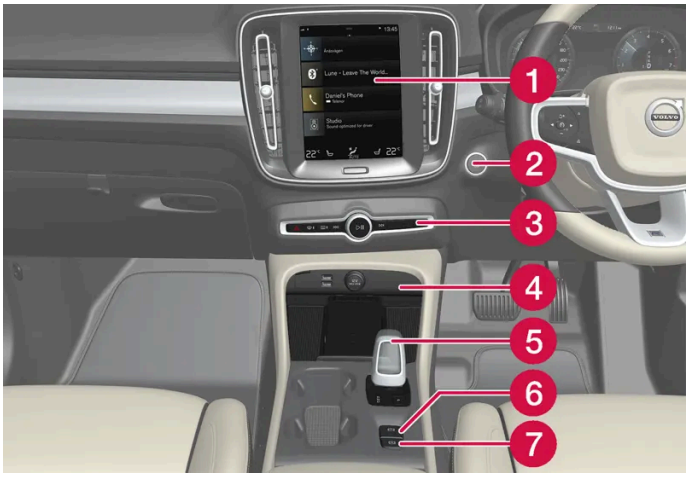
The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

2 Panoramic roof*

3 Display in roof console, ON CALL button*

4 Manual dimming of interior rearview mirror

Centre and tunnel console



1 Centre display

2 Start button

3 Hazard warning flashers, defrosting, media, drive mode button*

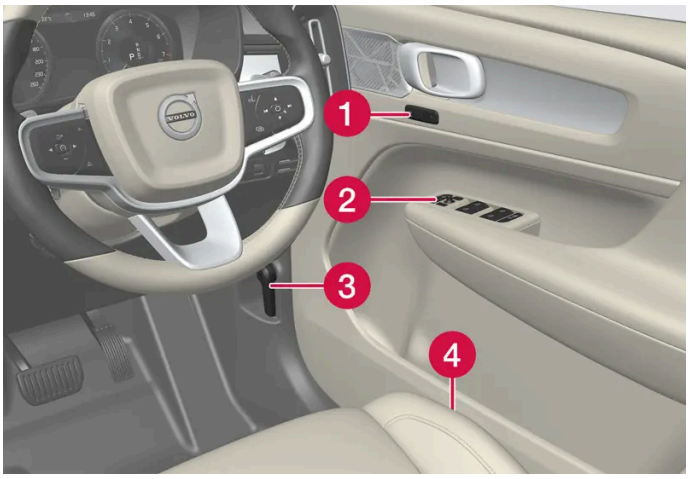
4 Electrical socket, USB port, wireless phone charger*

5 Gear selector

6 Parking brake

7 Automatic brake when stationary

Driver's door



1 Memory for settings for power front seat*, door mirrors

2 Central locking, power windows, door mirrors, electric child lock*

3 Bonnet opening

4 Adjusting front seat

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

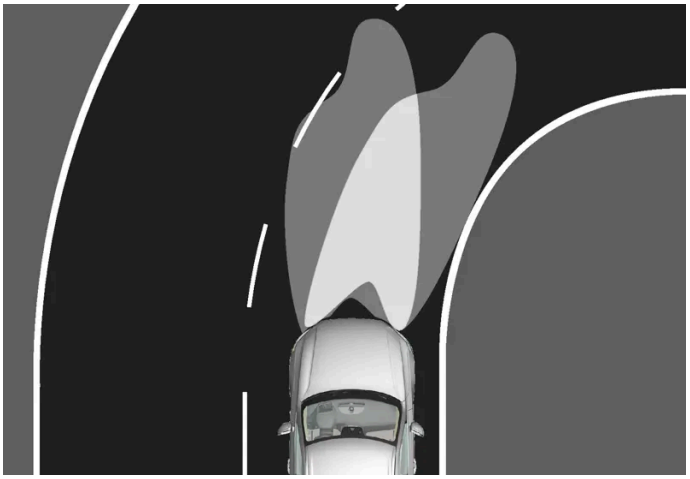
* Option/accessory.

5. Lighting

5.1. Exterior lighting

5.1.1. Active bending lights*

Active bending lights are designed to provide additional illumination in bends and junctions. Cars with LED[1] headlamps* can have active bending lights, depending on the car's equipment level.



Headlamp pattern with function deactivated (left) and activated (right) respectively.

Active bending lights follow steering wheel movements to provide additional illumination in bends and junctions and can thereby provide the driver with improved visibility.

The function is activated automatically when the car is started. In the event of a fault in the function, the symbol illuminates in the driver display at the same time as the driver display shows an explanatory text.

The active bending lights are only switched on in weak daylight or in darkness as well as when the stalk switch's rotating ring is in AUTO position. The car also needs to be in motion with dipped beam activated.

Deactivating/activating the function

The function is activated when the car is supplied from the factory and can be deactivated/activated via the centre display's function view.

Press the **Active Bending Lights** button.

* Option/accessory.

[1] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

5.1.2. Active main beam

Active main beam is a function which uses a camera sensor at the top edge of the windscreen to detect the headlamp beams from oncoming traffic or the rear lights of vehicles in front, and then switches from main beam to dipped beam.

The symbol represents active main beam.

The function can start while driving in the dark when the car's speed is approx. 20 km/h (approx. 12 mph) or higher. The function can also take streetlights into account. When the camera sensor no longer detects any oncoming car or car in front, main beam is switched on again after about a second.

Activate active main beam

Active main beam is activated and deactivated by turning the left-hand stalk switch to position . The rotating ring then returns to position AUTO. When active main beam is activated, the symbol illuminates with a white glow in the driver display. When main beam is activated, the symbol shines blue.

If active main beam is deactivated while main beam is on, the lighting is immediately reset to dipped beam.

Active main beam does not need to be reactivated every time the car is started.

Limitations for active main beam

The camera sensor on which the function is based has limitations.

If this symbol is shown in the driver display, together with the message **Active High Beam Temporarily unavailable**, then switching between main and dipped beam must be performed manually.

The same applies if this symbol is shown together with the message **Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**.

Active main beam may be temporarily unavailable e.g. in situations with dense fog or heavy rain. When active main beam becomes available again, or the windscreen sensors are no longer blocked, the message is extinguished and active main beam is reactivated.

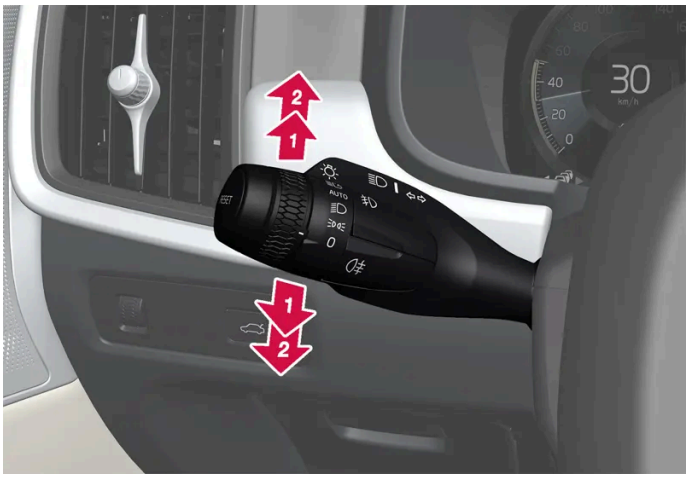
Warning

Active main beam is an aid for using the optimum beam pattern when conditions are favourable.

The driver always bears responsibility for manually switching between main and dipped beam when traffic situations or weather conditions so require.

5.1.3. Using direction indicators

The car's direction indicators are operated with the left-hand stalk switch. The direction indicator lamps flash three times or continuously, depending on how far up or down the stalk switch is moved.



Direction indicators.

Short flash sequence

1 Move the stalk switch up or down to the first position and release. The direction indicator lamps flash three times. If the function is deactivated via the centre display, the lamps will flash once.

Note

- This automatic flashing sequence can be stopped by moving the stalk switch immediately in the opposite direction.
- If the symbol for direction indicators in the driver display flashes more quickly than normal - see the message in the driver display.

Continuous flash sequence

2 Move the stalk switch up or down to its end position.

The stalk switch remains in its position and is moved back manually, or automatically by the steering wheel movement.

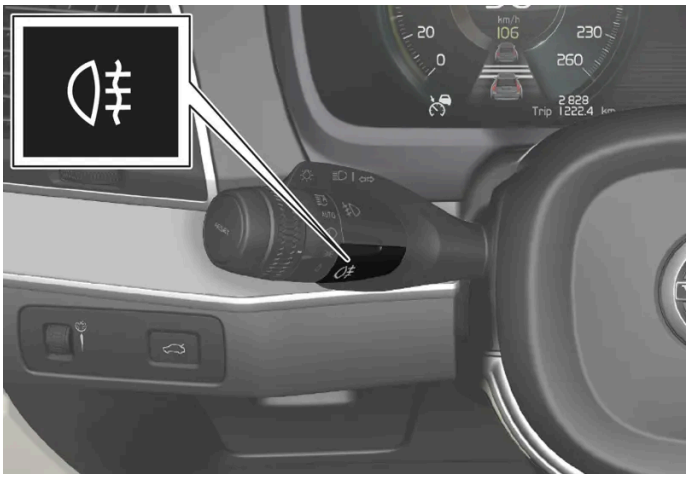
5.1.4. Brake lights

The brake light automatically comes on during braking.

The brake light is illuminated when the brake pedal is depressed and when the car is braked automatically by one of the driver support systems.

5.1.5. Rear fog lamp

The rear fog lamp is considerably stronger than the normal rear lights and should only be used in reduced visibility due to fog, snow, smoke or dust so that other road users have an early warning of a vehicle ahead.



Button for rear fog lamp.

The rear fog lamp is a lamp at the rear of the car, on the driver's side.

The rear fog lamp can only be switched on when:

- ignition position II is active and the rotating ring on the stalk switch is in position AUTO or
- the stalk switch's rotating ring is in position and the front fog lamps are switched on.

Press the button to switch the lights on/off. The symbol in the driver display illuminates when the rear fog lamp is switched on.

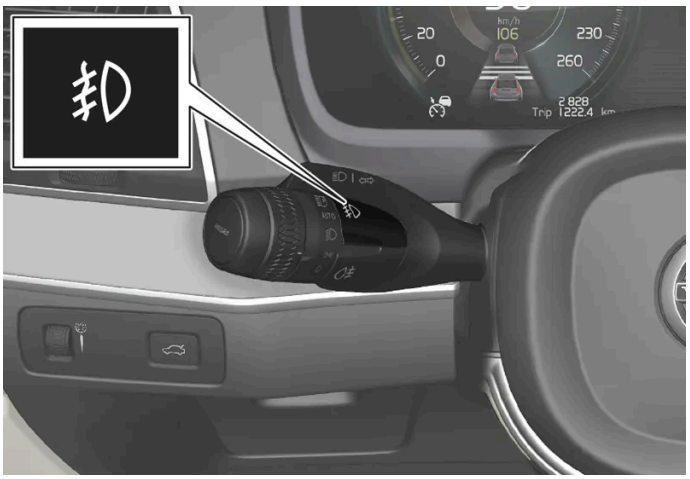
The rear fog lamp is switched off automatically when:

- the car is switched off or when the rotating ring on the stalk switch is set to the 0 position
- the stalk switch's rotating ring is in position and the front fog lamps are switched off.

> **Note**
>
> Regulations on the use of rear fog lamps vary from country to country.

5.1.6. Front fog lamps/cornering lights*

The front fog lamps are activated manually when driving in fog and automatically when reversing in order to complement the reversing light.
If the car is fitted with cornering lights*, the front fog lamps come on automatically in dull daylight or darkness in order to light up the area diagonally in front of the car.



Button for front fog lamps.

The front fog lamps can only be switched on when the car's electrical system is in ignition position II and the rotating ring on the stalk switch is in position AUTO, or .

Press the button to activate and deactivate. The symbol illuminates in the driver display when the front fog lamps are switched on.

The front fog lamps switch off automatically when the car is switched off or when the rotating ring on the stalk switch is set to the 0 position.

> **Note**
>
> Regulations on the use of fog lamps vary from country to country.

Cornering lights*

The front fog lamps can include the cornering lights function, which temporarily illuminates the area diagonally in front of the car in the direction the steering wheel is turned on a sharp bend, or in the direction shown by the direction indicators.

The function is activated in weak daylight or darkness when the stalk switch's rotating ring is in the AUTO or position and the speed of the car is lower than approx. 30 km/h (approx. 20 mph).

In addition, both cornering lights are switched on as a supplement to the reversing lamp during reversing.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The function is activated when the car is supplied from the factory and can be activated and deactivated via the centre display.

* Option/accessory.

5.1.7. Dipped beam

When driving with the stalk switch's rotating ring in the AUTO position, dipped beam is activated automatically in weak daylight or darkness or when the car's electrical system is in ignition position II.

Stalk switch rotating ring in AUTO position.

With the stalk switch's rotating ring in AUTO position, dipped beam is also activated automatically if:

- the front fog lamps* are activated
- the rear fog lamp is activated
- the front and rear fog lamps are activated

With the stalk switch's rotating ring in the position, dipped beam is always activated when the car's electrical system is in ignition position II.

Tunnel detection

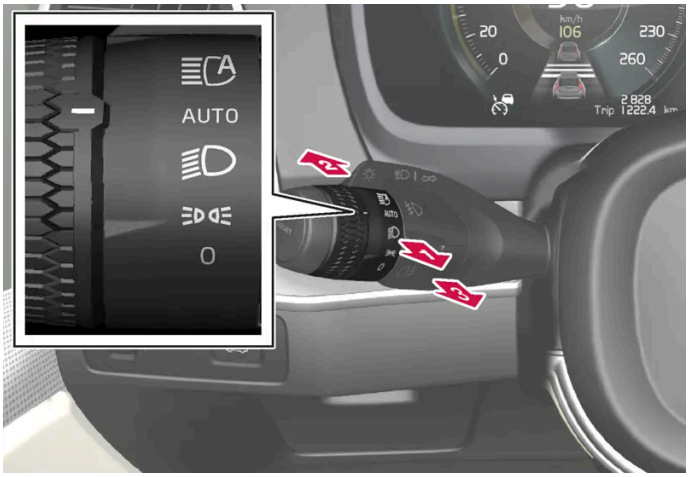
The car detects when it is driven into a tunnel and switches from daytime running lights to dipped beam.

Note that the rotating ring in the left-hand stalk switch must be in AUTO mode for tunnel detection to work.

* Option/accessory.

5.1.8. Using main beam

Main beam is operated with the left-hand stalk switch. Main beam is the car's strongest lighting and should be used when driving in the dark for better visibility, as long as it does not dazzle other road users.



Steering wheel stalk switch with rotating ring.

Main beam flash

1. Move the stalk switch backwards slightly to main beam flash position. Main beam comes on until the stalk switch is released.

Main beam

2. Main beam can be activated when the steering wheel stalk switch's rotating ring is in position AUTO [1] or . Activate main beam by moving the stalk switch forwards.
3. Deactivate by moving the stalk switch backwards.

> **Note**
>
> When main beam has been activated, it can be deactivated by moving the stalk switch backwards to either 1 position or 3 position.

When main beam has been activated the symbol illuminates in the driver display.

[1] When dipped beam is activated.

5.1.9. Using home safe lighting

Some of the exterior lighting can be kept switched on to work as home safe lighting after the car has been locked.

To activate the function:

1. Switch off the car.
2. Move the left-hand stalk switch forward toward the instrument panel and release.
3. Get out of the car and lock the door.

> A symbol in the driver display is illuminated to indicate that the function is activated and outer lighting is switched on: Position lamps, headlamp beams, number plate lighting and lighting in outer handles*.

The length of time that home safe lighting remains on can be set via the centre display.

* Option/accessory.

5.1.10. Adapting the headlamp pattern from the headlamps

This car does not need to reset the headlamp pattern when changing from right to left-hand traffic, and vice versa.

5.1.11. Emergency brake lights

Emergency brake lights are activated to alert vehicles behind about heavy braking.
The function means that the brake light flashes instead of - as in normal braking - shining with a constant glow.

The emergency brake lights are activated during heavy braking or if the ABS system is activated at high speeds.

After the driver brakes to a low speed and then releases the brake, the brake light returns to normal function and is extinguished.

The car's hazard warning flashers are activated at the same time. These flash until the driver accelerates the car to a higher speed again or switches off the car's hazard warning flashers.

5.1.12. Position lamps

Position lamps can be used so that other road users can see the car if it stops or is parked. The position lamp is switched on with the rotating ring on the stalk switch.

Stalk switch rotating ring in position lamps position.

Turn the rotating ring to the position - the position lamps are switched on (number plate lighting is switched on at the same time).

If the car's electrical system is in ignition position II then the daytime running lights are switched on instead of the front position lamps. When the rotating ring is in this position, the rear position lamps are switched on regardless of the ignition position of the car's electrical system.

If the car is stationary but running, the rotating ring can be moved to the position lamp position from another position to switch on only the position lamps instead of other lighting.

When driving for more than 30 seconds at max. 10 km/h (approx. 6 mph), or if the speed exceeds 10 km/h (approx. 6 mph), the daytime running lights are switched on. The driver should turn to a position other than .

If the tailgate is opened when it is dark outside, the rear position lamps come on (if not already switched on) to warn road users approaching from behind. This takes place irrespective of the position of the rotating ring or the ignition position of the car's electrical system.

5.1.13. Guidance light

The guidance light is switched on when the car is unlocked and is used to switch on the car's lighting at a distance.

The function is activated when the car is unlocked. In daylight, position lamps, interior roof lamps, floor lights and cargo area lighting are activated. In weak daylight or darkness, number plate lighting and lighting in the outer handles are also activated* with their light source aimed towards the ground.

The lighting stays on for approx. 2 minutes if no doors are opened. If a door is opened within the activation time, the time for the interior lighting and lighting in the outer handles* will be extended.

The function can be activated and deactivated via the centre display.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

5.1.14. Hazard warning flashers

Hazard warning flashers warn other road users by means of all of the car's direction indicators being activated simultaneously. The function can be used to give a warning in the event of traffic hazards.

Button for hazard warning flashers.

Press the button to activate the hazard warning flashers.

The hazard warning flashers are automatically activated when the car brakes so powerfully that the emergency brake lights are activated and the speed is low. The hazard warning flashers start to flash after the emergency brake lights have stopped flashing and are then deactivated automatically when the car drives away again or are deactivated if the button is depressed.

The hazard warning flashers are automatically activated in the event of a collision.

> **Note**
>
> Regulations for the use of hazard warning flashers may vary between countries.

5.1.15. Daytime running lights

The car has sensors that detect the light conditions in the surroundings. The daytime running lights are switched on when the rotating ring on the stalk switch is in position 0 , ≡DC≡ or AUTO as well as when the

car's electrical system is in ignition position II. In position AUTO, the headlamps change automatically to dipped beam in weak daylight or darkness.

Stalk switch rotating ring in AUTO position.

If the stalk switch rotating ring is in the AUTO position, the daytime running lights (DRL[1]) are switched on when the car is driven in daylight. The car automatically changes lighting from daytime running light to dipped beam in weak daylight or darkness. Changing to dipped beam also takes place if the front fog lamp* and/or rear fog lamp are activated.

Warning

This system help to save energy - it cannot determine in all situations when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in mist and rain.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with the correct beam pattern for the traffic situation and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

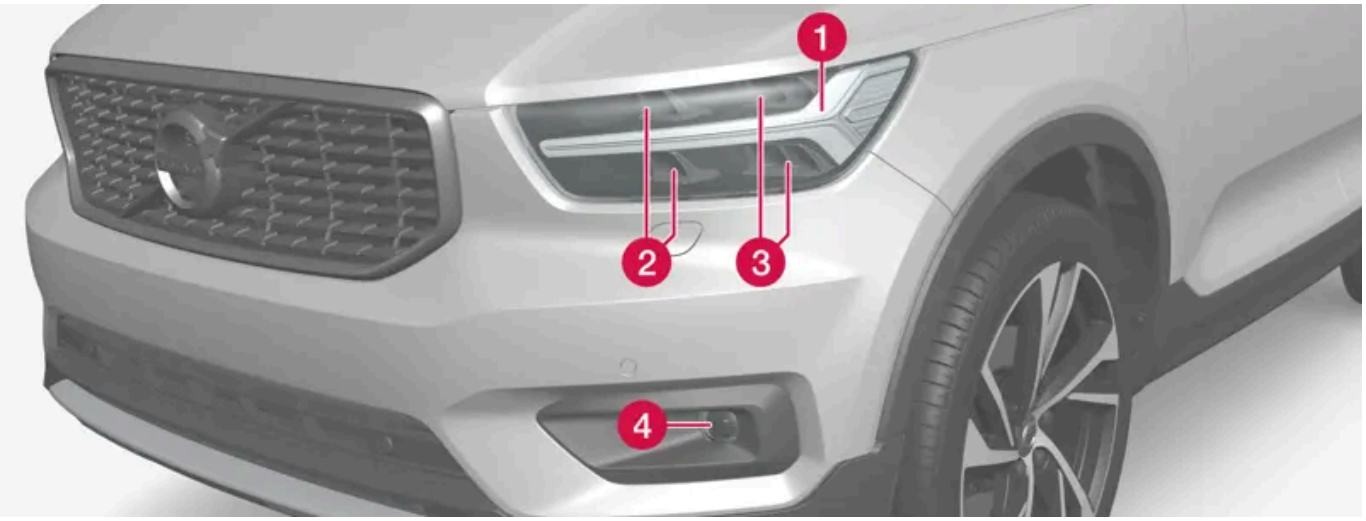
[1] Daytime Running Lights

* Option/accessory.

5.1.16. Exterior lamp positions

The exterior lighting of the car uses different lamps. An LED[1] type lamp must be replaced by a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Lamps, front



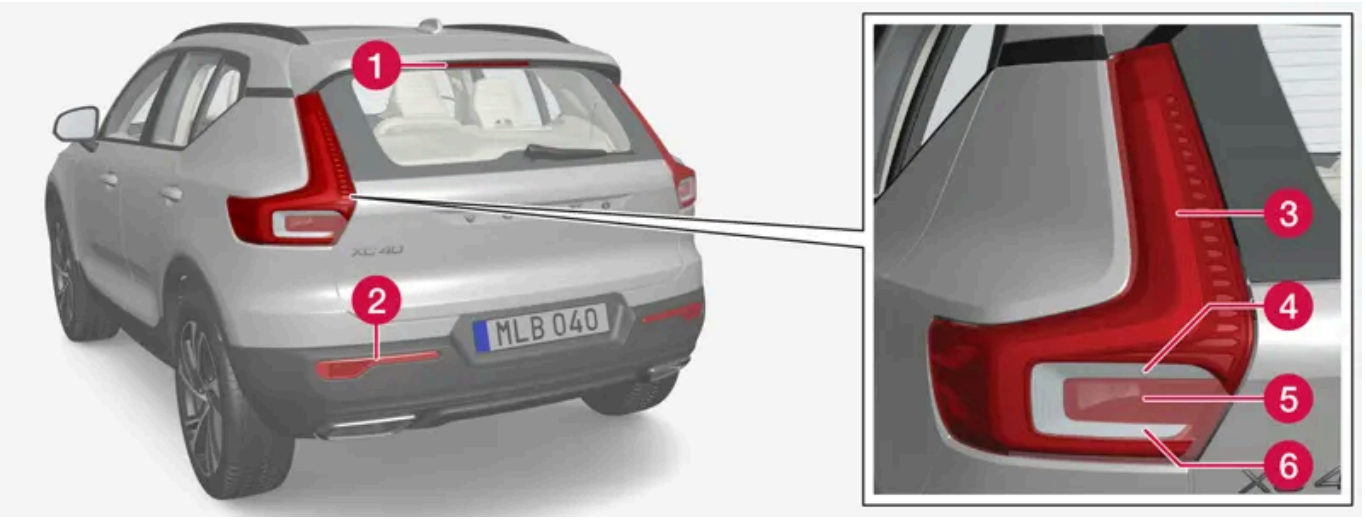
1 Daytime running lights/position lamps/direction indicators (LED)

2 Main beam (LED)

3 Dipped beam (LED)

4 Front fog lamps/cornering lights* (LED)

Lamps, rear



1 Brake light - central, high-level (LED)

2 Fog lamp

3 Position lamps (LED)

4 Direction indicators

5 Brake lights

6 Reversing lamps (LED)

[1] LED (Light Emmitting Diode)

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

5.1.17. Bulb specifications

Specifications for replaceable bulbs.
Contact a workshop[1] if faults occur in lamps other than bulbs. If a fault occurs in LED[2] lamps, the entire lamp unit usually must be replaced.

Function	W[3]	Type
Rear direction indicators	24	PY24W
Brake lights	21	H21W LL
Rear fog lamp	21	H21W LL

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[2] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

[3] Watt

5.1.18. Checking trailer lamps*

When connecting a trailer – check that the trailer lamps work before departure.

Checking trailer lamps*

Automatic checking

After a trailer is connected electrically, it is possible to check that the trailer lamps are working via an automatic lamp activation. The function helps the driver check that the trailer lamps are working before starting off.

The car must be switched off to perform the check.

1. When a trailer is connected to the towbar, the **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check** message is shown in the driver display.
2. Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.

> The lamp check starts.

3. Exit the car to check lamp functionality.

> All trailer lamps start to flash - then the lamps are switched on one at a time.

4. Visually check that all lamps available on the trailer are operational.
5. After a moment, all lamps on the trailer flash again.

> The check is complete.

Switching off automatic checking

The automatic checking function can be switched off in the centre display.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting**.
3. Deselect **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check**.

Manual checking

If the automatic checking is switched off then it is possible to start the check manually.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting**.
3. Select **Manual Trailer Lamp Check**.

> The lamp check starts. Exit the car to check lamp functionality.

Rear fog lamp on trailer

When connecting the trailer, the rear fog lamp may not light up on the car. In such cases, the rear fog lamp function switches to the trailer. Upon activation of the rear fog lamp, check therefore that the trailer is equipped with a rear fog lamp to travel safely.

Symbols and messages in the driver display

If one or more of the trailer's direction indicators or brake light bulbs is broken, the driver display shows a symbol and a message. Other lights on the trailer must be checked manually by the driver before setting off.

Symbol	Message
	• Trailer turn indicator Right turn indicator malfunction • Trailer turn indicator Left turn indicator malfunction
	• Trailer brake light Malfunction

If any lamp for the trailer's direction indicators is broken, the driver display symbol for direction indicators will also flash more quickly than normal.

* Option/accessory.

5.2. Interior lighting

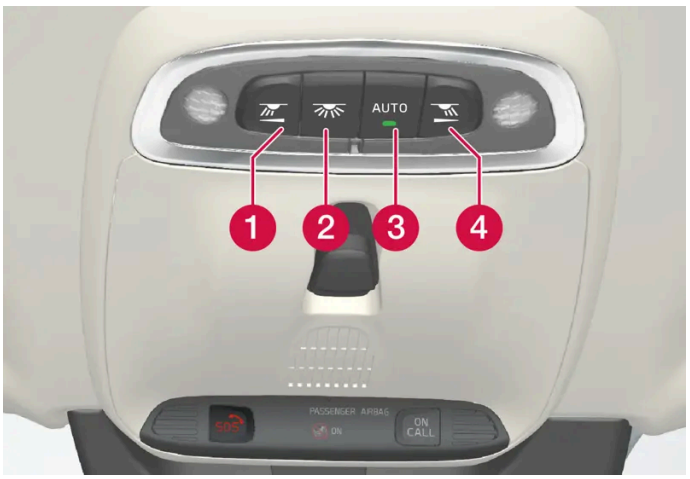
5.2.1. Interior lighting

The passenger compartment is equipped with several types of lighting, e.g. general interior lighting, adjustable decor illumination and reading lighting.

All lighting in the passenger compartment can be switched on and off manually at least 5 minutes from when:

- the car has been switched off and its electrical system is in ignition position 0
- the car has been unlocked but it has not yet been started.

Front roof lighting



Controls in roof console for the front reading lamps and passenger compartment lighting.

1 Reading lamp, left-hand side

2 Passenger compartment lighting

3 Auto function for passenger compartment lighting

4 Reading lamp, right-hand side

Reading lighting

The reading lamps on the right and left-hand sides can be turned on and off by briefly pressing the buttons in the roof console. Brightness is adjusted by holding the button pressed in.

Passenger compartment lighting

The floor lighting and interior roof lighting are switched on or off with a short press on the button in the roof console.

Auto function for passenger compartment lighting

The automatic function is activated by a short press on the AUTO button in the roof console. With the automatic system activated, the light indicator in the button illuminates and the passenger compartment lighting is switched on and off according to the following.

The passenger compartment lighting comes on when:

- The car is unlocked
- The car is switched off
- A side door is opened.

The passenger compartment lighting goes off when:

- The car is locked
- The car is started
- A side door is closed
- A side door has remained open for approx. 2 minutes.

Rear roof lighting*

The rear area of the car has reading lighting, which is also used as passenger compartment lighting.

Reading lamps above the rear seat.

In cars with panoramic roof* there are two lamp units, one on each side of the roof.

The reading lamps are switched on or off by briefly pressing the button on the lamp. Brightness is adjusted by holding the button pressed in.

Glovebox lighting

Glovebox lighting is switched on and off respectively when the lid is opened or closed.

Sun visor mirror lighting*

The lighting for the mirror in the sun visor is switched on and off respectively when the cover is opened or closed.

Ground lighting*

The ground lighting is switched on or off when the corresponding door is opened or closed.

Lighting in the cargo area

The lighting in the cargo area is switched on or off when the tailgate is opened or closed.

Decor lighting

The ambient light is switched on when you open the doors and is switched off when the car is locked. The intensity of the decor lighting can be adapted in the centre display and also precisely adjusted using the thumbwheel in the instrument panel.

Ambience lights*

The car is equipped with LEDs that make it possible to change the colour of the light. These lights are switched on when the car is running. The ambience light can be adapted in the centre display and also precisely adjusted using the thumbwheel in the instrument panel.

Lighting in storage compartments in doors

The lighting in the storage compartments in the doors is switched on when you open the doors and is switched off when the car is locked. The brightness can be precisely adjusted using the thumbwheel in the instrument panel.

Lighting in the tunnel console's front cup holder*

The lighting in the front cup holders is switched on when the car is unlocked and is switched off when the car is locked. The brightness can be precisely adjusted using the thumbwheel in the instrument panel.

* Option/accessory.

5.2.2. Adjusting interior lighting

The lamps inside the car come on differently depending on the ignition position used. The interior lighting can be adjusted with a thumbwheel in the instrument panel, and certain light functions can also be adjusted via the centre display.

The thumbwheel on the instrument panel, to the left of the steering wheel, is used to adjust the brightness of the display lighting, controls lighting, ambient decor illumination and ambience light*.

Adjusting ambient decor illumination

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting** → **Interior Lighting**.
3. Choose between the following settings:
   - Under **Ambient Light Intensity**, select from **Off**, **Low** and **High**.
   - Under **Ambient Light Level**, select from **Reduced** and **Full**.

Adjusting ambience light*

The car is equipped with a number of LEDs that make it possible to change the colour of the light. These lights are switched on when the car is running.

Changing the brightness of the lights

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting** → **Interior Lighting** → **Interior Mood Lighting**.
3. Under **Interior Mood Light Intensity**, select from **Off**, **Low** and **High**.

Changing the colour of the light

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting** → **Interior Lighting** → **Interior Mood Lighting**.
3. Choose between **By Temperature** and **By Colour** in order to change the colour of the light.

   With the **By Temperature** option, the light changes according to the set passenger compartment temperature.

   With the **By Colour** option, the **Theme Colours** subcategory can be used to adjust further.

* Option/accessory.

5.3. Adjusting light functions via the centre display

Several light functions can be adjusted and activated via the centre display. This applies to home safety light and guidance light, for example.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting**.
3. Select **Exterior Lights** or **Interior Lighting** and then select the function that needs to be adjusted.

5.4. Lighting control

The different lighting controls are used to control both exterior and interior lighting. The left-hand stalk switch activates and adjusts the exterior lighting. The interior brightness is adjusted using a thumbwheel on the instrument panel.

Exterior lighting

Rotating ring in the left-hand stalk switch.

When the car's electrical system is in ignition position II, the following functions are available for the rotating ring's different positions:

Position	Specification
0	Daytime running lights. Main beam flash can be used.
	Daytime running lights and position lamps. Position lamps when the car is parked.[1] Main beam flash can be used.
	Dipped beam and position lamps. Main beam can be activated. Main beam flash can be used.
AUTO	Daytime running lights and position lamps in daylight. Dipped beam and position lamps in weak daylight or darkness, or when the front fog lamp* and/or rear fog lamp are activated. The Active main beam function can be activated. Main beam can be activated when dipped beam is switched on. Main beam flash can be used.
	Active main beam on/off.

Volvo recommends that AUTO mode is used when the vehicle is driven.

Warning

The car's lighting system is not able to determine when daylight is too weak or sufficiently strong, e.g. in fog and rain, in all situations.

The driver is always responsible for ensuring that the car is driven with a beam pattern suitable for the traffic situation and in accordance with applicable traffic regulations.

Thumbwheel in instrument panel

Thumbwheel (to left) for adjusting interior brightness.

[1] If the car is stationary but running, the rotating ring can be moved to position from another position to switch on only the position lamps instead of other lighting.

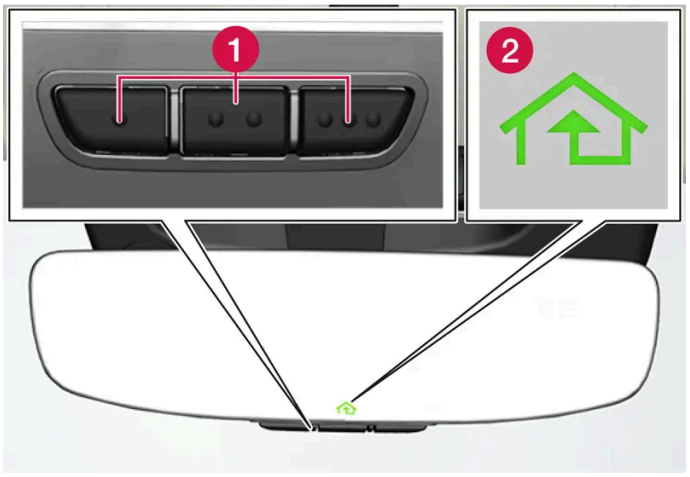
* Option/accessory.

6. Windows, glass and mirrors

6.1. Rearview mirrors

6.1.1. HomeLink® * [1]

HomeLink® [2] is a programmable remote control integrated into the car's electrical system.
It can control up to three different devices remotely, e.g. a garage door opener or alarm system, and hence replace the remote controls for these.



The figure is schematic - the version may vary.

1 Programmable buttons

2 Indicator lamp

HomeLink® is built into the interior rearview mirror and consists of three programmable buttons and one indicator lamp in the mirror glass.

> **Note**
>
> Save the original remote controls for future reprogramming (e.g. when changing to another car or for use in another vehicle).
>
> It is also recommended that the programming for the buttons should be deleted when the car is sold.

More information

Visit homelink.com or call 00 8000 466 354 65 (or premium charge number +49 6838 907 277) [3].

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] HomeLink and the HomeLink house symbol are registered trademarks of Gentex Corporation.

[3] Note that the toll-free number may not be available depending on operator.

6.1.2. Rearview and door mirrors

The rearview mirrors and door mirrors can be used to give the driver better visibility to the rear.

Interior rearview mirror

The interior rearview mirror is equipped with HomeLink*, automatic dimming* and compass*.

The interior rearview mirror is adjusted by angling it manually.

Door mirrors

> **Warning**
>
> Both mirrors are bent to provide optimal vision. Objects may appear to be further away than they actually are.

The door mirror positions are adjusted with the joystick in the driver's door control panel.

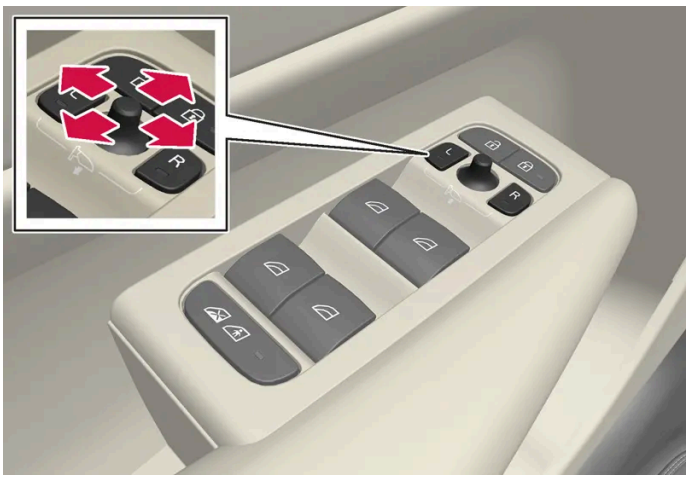
There are also a number of automatic settings that can be linked to the memory function buttons for the power seat*.

* Option/accessory.

6.1.3. Angling adjustment of the door mirrors

To ensure better visibility to the rear, the door mirrors need to be set to the preferences of the driver. There are a number of automatic settings that can also be linked to the memory function buttons for the power seat*.

Using controls for door mirrors



Controls for door mirrors.

The door mirror positions are adjusted with the joystick in the driver's door control panel. Ignition position must be at least I.

1. Press the L button for the left-hand door mirror or the R button for the right-hand door mirror. The light in the button illuminates.
2. Adjust the position with the joystick in the centre.
3. Press the L or R button again. The light should no longer be illuminated.

Folding in rearview mirrors electrically*

The mirrors can be retracted for parking/driving in narrow spaces.

1. Depress the L and R buttons simultaneously.
2. Release them after approximately 1 second. The mirrors automatically stop in the fully retracted position.

Fold out the mirrors by pressing down the L and R buttons simultaneously. The mirrors automatically stop in the extended position with the previous setting.

Resetting to neutral

Mirrors that have been moved out of position by an external force must be reset electrically to their original position for electric retracting/extending* to work correctly.

1. Fold in the door mirrors by pressing down the L and R buttons simultaneously.
2. Fold them out again by pressing the L and R buttons simultaneously.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

3 Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

The mirrors are returned to the original position.

Angling during parking [1]

A door mirror can be angled down for the driver to view the side of the road when parking, for example.

1 Engage reverse gear and press the L or R button.

Note that the button needs to be pressed twice. The button flashes when the door mirror is angled down. When reverse gear is engaged, the door mirror automatically returns to its original position.

Automatic angling during parking [1]

With this setting, the door mirror is automatically angled down when reverse gear is selected. The folded position is preset and cannot be adjusted.

1 Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.

2 Press **My Car** → **Mirrors and Convenience**.

3 Under **Exterior Mirror Tilt at Reverse**, select **Off**, **Driver**, **Passenger** or **Both** to activate/deactivate and to select which review mirror should be angled.

You can make the door mirror return to its original position by pressing the L or R button twice.

Automatic retraction when locking*

In the centre display, you can set all the rearview and door mirrors to retract/extend automatically when the car is locked/unlocked using the key.

1 Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.

2 Press **My Car** → **Mirrors and Convenience**.

3 Select **Fold Mirror When Locked** to activate/deactivate.

> **Note**
>
> If you manually fold the mirrors with the L and R buttons and then lock the car, they will not fold out automatically when you unlock the car, even if this setting has been made. Extending must then be done manually using the L and R buttons.

* Option/accessory.

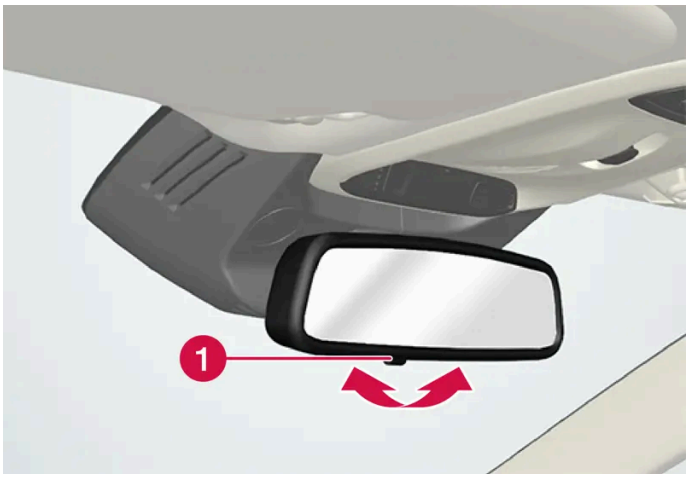
[1] Only in combination with power seat with memory buttons*.

6.1.4. Adjusting rearview mirror dimming

Bright light from behind could be reflected in the rearview mirrors and dazzle the driver. Use dimming when disturbed by light from behind.

Manual dimming

The interior rearview mirror can be dimmed with a control in the mirror's lower edge.



1 Control for manual dimming.

1 Use dimming by moving the control in towards the passenger compartment.

2 Return to normal mode by moving the control towards the windscreen.

The control for manual dimming is not available on mirrors with automatic* dimming.

Automatic dimming*

If bright light comes from behind, the rearview mirrors automatically dim when it is dark outside or when the light is limited, for example when driving in tunnels. Automatic dimming is always active while driving, apart from when gearbox reverse position is selected.

> **Note**
>
> When sensitivity is changed there is no immediately noticeable change in dimming, but the change takes place gradually.

Dimming sensitivity will affect both the interior rearview mirror and the door mirrors.

To change dimming sensitivity:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** → **Mirrors and Convenience**.
3. Under **Rearview Mirror Auto Dimming**, select **Normal**, **Dark** or **Light**.

Dimming is adjusted automatically using light sensors in the interior rearview mirror.

For the door mirrors to be equipped with automatic dimming, the interior rearview mirror must also be equipped with automatic dimming.

> **Note**
>
> If the sensors are obscured by e.g. parking permits, transponders, sun visors or objects in the seats or in the cargo area in such a way that light is prevented from reaching the sensors, then the dimming function of the interior rearview and door mirrors is reduced.

* Option/accessory.

6.1.5. Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors

If the positions for the power* seat and the door mirrors have been stored, they can be activated by using the memory buttons.

Using a stored setting

A stored setting can be used with the front door either open or closed:

Open front door

1 Depress one of the memory buttons 1 (2) or 2 (3) with a short press. Power seat and door mirrors move and then stop at the positions stored in the selected memory button.

Closed front door

1 Hold one of the memory buttons 1 (2) or 2 (3) depressed until seat and door mirrors stop in the positions that are stored in the selected memory button.

If the memory button is released, the movement of the seat and door mirrors will be stopped.

Warning

- Because the driver's seat can be adjusted with the ignition off, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.
- Movement of the seat can be STOPPED at any time by pressing any button on the power seat control panel.
- Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- Make sure there is nothing under the seats when they are being adjusted.

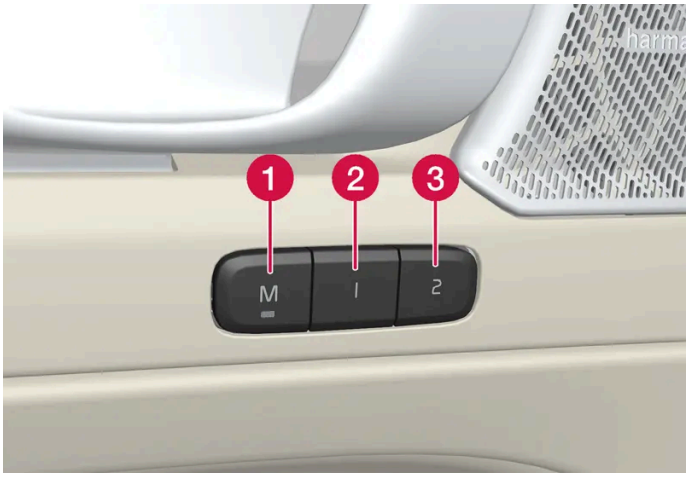
* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

6.1.6. Storing a position for seat and door mirrors

You can store the position for power* seat and door mirrors in the memory buttons.

Store two different positions for the power seat* and the door mirrors using the memory buttons. The buttons are located on the inside of one of the front doors or both*.



1 Button **M** for storing settings.

2 Memory button.

3 Memory button.

Storing a position

1. Adjust seat and door mirrors to the desired position.
2. Press and hold the M button depressed. The light indicator in the button illuminates.
3. Within three seconds, press and hold the 1 or 2 button.

> When the position has been stored in the selected memory button, an acoustic signal can be heard and the light indicator in the M button extinguishes.

If none of the memory buttons is depressed within three seconds then the M button extinguishes and no storing takes place.

The seat or the door mirrors must be readjusted before a new memory can be set.

* Option/accessory.

6.1.7. Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre console

In the centre console is a physical button for rapid access to the heated rear window and door mirrors.

Physical button in the centre console.

1 Press the button.

> Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre display

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2

Press **Rear**.

> Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

6.1.8. Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start when there is a risk of ice or misting on the windscreen/window. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice or misting is gone.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Rear Defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors.

6.2. Windscreen and rear window

6.2.1. Damaged windscreen

It is important to repair a damaged windscreen as soon as possible. Minor damage due to stone chips, for example, can often be repaired without replacing the entire windscreen. Volvo recommends that you contact an authorised Volvo workshop if the windscreen is damaged.

Minor glass damage

If possible, repair the damage within 24 hours in order to avoid it getting worse. If there is minor damage to the windscreen, a windscreen stone chip sticker can protect the area from dust and dirt until it is repaired.

Major glass damage

In the event of major damage to the windscreen, the entire windscreen will need to be replaced.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not drive the car if there is major damage to the windscreen. The damage can quickly get worse, obscure driver vision, and prevent the car from being driven safely.

Replacing the windscreen

It is important that the new windscreen and its installation meet Volvo's specifications for safety and compatibility with the car's functions. Volvo recommends an authorised Volvo workshop for windscreen replacement.

6.2.2. Wiper blades and washer fluid

Together with the washer fluid, the wipers aim to improve visibility as well as headlamp pattern.

The washer nozzles are heated* automatically in cold weather to prevent the washer fluid from freezing.

Information indicating that the washer fluid needs topping up appears in the driver display when there is approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remaining.

* Option/accessory.

6.2.3. Using automatic rear windscreen wiping when reversing

Engaging reverse gear while the windscreen wipers are switched on initiates rear window wiping. The function stops when reverse gear is disengaged.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **My Car** → **Wipers**.
3. Select **Auto Rear Wiper** to activate/deactivate wiping when reversing.

If the rear windscreen wiper is already operating at a constant speed then no change takes place when reverse gear is engaged.

> **Note**
>
> In low outside temperature, the automatic rear window wiping when reversing is deactivated in order to avoid damage to the wiper arm.

6.2.4. Using the rear window wiper and rear window washer

The rear window wiper and rear window washer are designed to clean the rear window. Washing/wiping is started and settings are changed by means of the right-hand steering wheel stalk switch.

Activating the rear window wiper and rear window washer

1 Select for intermittent wiping with the rear window wiper.

2 Select for continuous speed with the rear window wiper.

1 Move the right-hand steering wheel stalk switch forward to start rear window washing and wiping.

6.2.5. Using the rain sensor

The rain sensor automatically starts the windscreen wipers based on how much water it detects on the windscreen. Rain sensor sensitivity can be adjusted with the thumbwheel on the right-hand stalk switch.

Right-hand stalk switch.

1 Rain sensor button

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

2 Thumbwheel sensitivity/frequency

When the rain sensor is activated, the rain sensor symbol is shown in the driver display.

Activating the rain sensor

To activate the rain sensor, the windscreen wipers must be in position 0, or in the position for single sweep.

Activate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button .

Move the lever down to make the wipers move.

Turn the thumbwheel upward for higher sensitivity and downward for lower sensitivity. An extra sweep is made when the thumbwheel is turned upward.

Deactivating the rain sensor

Deactivate the rain sensor by pressing the rain sensor button or moving the stalk switch up to another wiper program.

The rain sensor is deactivated automatically when the car is switched off.

The rain sensor is deactivated automatically when wiper blades are set in service position. The rain sensor is reactivated when service mode has been deactivated.

> **Important**
>
> The windscreen wipers could start and be damaged in an automatic car wash. Switch off the rain sensor before washing the car. The symbol in the driver display extinguishes.

6.2.6. Activating and deactivating the rain sensor's memory function

The rain sensor automatically starts the windscreen wipers based on how much water it detects on the windscreen.

When the memory function is activated, the rain sensor button does not need to be pressed every time the vehicle is started:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Wipers**.
3. Select **Rain Sensor Memory** to activate/deactivate the memory function.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

6.2.7. Using windscreen and headlamp washers

Windscreen and headlamp washers are designed to clean the windscreen and headlamps. Windscreen and headlamp washers are started using the right-hand stalk switch.

Starting windscreen and headlamp washers

Washing function, right-hand stalk switch.

1 Move the right-hand stalk switch toward the steering wheel to start windscreen washing.

> The windscreen wipers will make several more sweeps once the stalk switch has been released.

Important

Avoid activating the washer system when it is frozen or the washer reservoir is empty, otherwise there is a risk of damaging the pump.

Headlamp washing*

The headlamps are cleaned automatically according to a defined interval when windscreen washing is activated. The headlamps are only washed if main or dipped beam is switched on.

Reduced washing

If only approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remains in the reservoir and the message **Washer fluid Level low, refill**, together with the symbol, is shown in the driver display, then the supply of washer fluid to the headlamps is switched off. This is to prioritise cleaning the windscreen and the visibility through it.

* Option/accessory.

6.2.8. Using windscreen wipers

The windscreen wipers are designed to clean the windscreen. Different settings for the windscreen wipers are set using the right-hand stalk switch.

Right-hand stalk switch.

1 The thumbwheel is used to set rain sensor sensitivity and wiper swipe frequency.

Single sweep

Lower the stalk switch and release to make one sweep.

Windscreen wipers off

0 Move the stalk switch to position 0 to switch off the windscreen wipers.

Intermittent wiping

INT Move the lever up to switch the wipers to intermittent wiping. Set the number of sweeps per time unit with the thumbwheel when intermittent wiping is selected.

Continuous wiping

Raise the stalk switch for the wipers to sweep at normal speed.

Raise the stalk switch further for the wipers to sweep at high speed.

> **Important**
>
> Before activating the wipers - ensure that the wiper blades are not frozen in, and that any snow or ice on the windscreen and rear window is scraped away.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

6.2.9. Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre console

In the centre console is a physical button for rapid access to the heated rear window and door mirrors.

Physical button in the centre console.

1 Press the button.

> Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre display

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2

Press **Rear**.

> Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

6.2.10. Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start when there is a risk of ice or misting on the windscreen/window. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice or misting is gone.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Rear Defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors.

6.2.11. Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen*

A heated windscreen is used to quickly remove mist and ice from the window.

Activating and deactivating heated windscreen from centre console

In the centre console is a physical button for rapid access to the heated windscreen.

Physical button in the centre console.

1. Press the button repeatedly in order to switch between the three levels:
   - Activated heated windscreen

- Activated heated windscreen and max defroster
- Deactivated.

> Heated windscreen and max defroster are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating heated windscreen from centre display

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2

Press **Electric**.

> Heated windscreen is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Note

A triangular area at the end of each side of the windscreen is not electrically heated, where de-icing may take longer.

Note

The heated windscreen may affect the performance of transponders and other communication equipment.

Note

If the heated windscreen is activated when the Start/Stop function has auto-stopped the engine then the engine will be restarted.

* Option/accessory.

6.2.12. Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated windscreen*

A heated windscreen is used to quickly remove mist and ice from the window.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated windscreen should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start when there is a risk of ice or misting on the windscreen/window. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice or misting is gone.

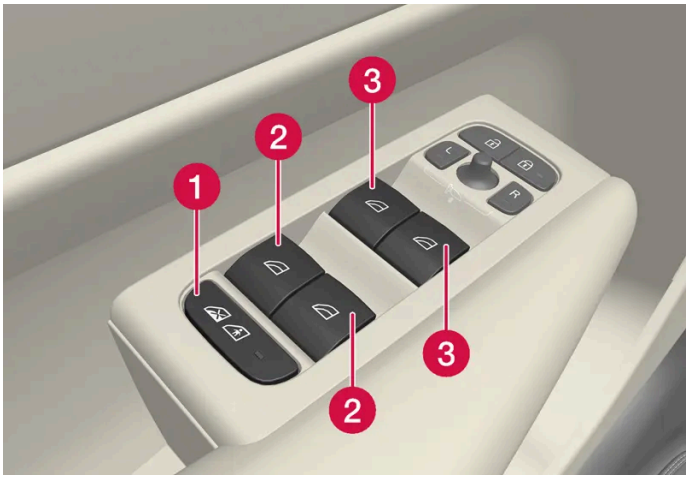
1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Front Defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated windscreen.

* Option/accessory.

6.3. Side windows and panoramic roof

6.3.1. Power windows

Each door has a control panel for the electrically-driven power windows. The driver's door has controls for operating all windows and also to activate the child safety locks.



Driver's door control panel.

1. Electric child safety locks* that deactivate the controls in the rear doors to prevent doors or windows from being opened from the inside.
2. Controls for rear windows.
3. Controls for front windows.

Warning

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by setting the car's electrical system in ignition position 0, and then take the key with you when leaving the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

* Option/accessory.

6.3.2. Operating power windows

Using the driver's door control panel, all power windows can be operated - using the control panels in the other doors operates the power window in the individual door.

The power windows are equipped with pinch protection. If any fault arises with the pinch protection, a reset sequence can be tested.

Warning

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by setting the car's electrical system in ignition position 0, and then take the key with you when leaving the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

Operating the power windows.

1 Operating without auto. Move one of the controls gently up or down. The power windows move up or down as long as the control is held in position.

2 Operating with auto. Move one of the controls up or down to the end position and release it. The window runs automatically to its end position.

In order for the power windows to be used, the ignition position must be I or II. The power windows can be operated for a few minutes after the car has been switched off and after the ignition has been switched off - although not after a door has been opened. It is only possible to operate one control at a time.

It can also be operated using a remote control key or keyless opening* with the door handle.

Warning

Check that children or other passengers are not at risk of crushing when all the windows are closed with a key or keyless opening* with a door handle.

Note

One way to reduce the pulsating wind noise when the rear windows are open is to also open the front windows slightly.

Note

The windows cannot be opened at speeds above approx. 180 km/h (approx. 112 mph), but they can be closed.

The driver always bears responsibility for following traffic regulations in force.

Note

It may not be possible to operate windows at low temperatures.

* Option/accessory.

6.3.3. Panoramic roof*

The panoramic roof is divided into two glass sections. The front section can be opened vertically at the rear edge (ventilation position) or horizontally (open position). The rear section is fixed roof glass.
The panoramic roof has a wind deflector and a sun blind made of perforated fabric and located under the glass roof to provide extra protection from factors such as strong sunlight.

The panoramic roof and sun blind are operated with a control located in the roof.

In order that the panoramic roof and the sun blind can be operated, the car's electrical system must be in ignition position I or II.

Warning

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by setting the car's electrical system in ignition position 0, and then take the key with you when leaving the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

Important

- Do not open the panoramic roof when load carriers are fitted.
- Do not place any heavy objects on the panoramic roof.

Important

- Remove ice and snow before opening the panoramic roof. Take care not to scratch surfaces or damage strips.
- Do not operate the panoramic roof if it has frozen closed.

Wind deflector

The panoramic roof has a wind deflector that is raised when the panoramic roof is in the open position.

* Option/accessory.

6.3.4. Operating the panoramic roof*

The panoramic roof and sun blind are operated with a control in the roof panel and both are equipped with pinch protection.

Warning

Children, other passengers or objects may be trapped by the moving parts.

- Always operate the windows with caution.
- Do not allow children to play with the controls.
- Never leave children alone in the car.
- Remember to always switch off the power supply to the power windows by setting the car's electrical system in ignition position 0, and then take the key with you when leaving the car.
- Never put an object or part of the body through the windows, even if the car's electrical system is fully disconnected.

Important

- Do not open the panoramic roof when load carriers are fitted.
- Do not place any heavy objects on the panoramic roof.

Important

- Remove ice and snow before opening the panoramic roof. Take care not to scratch surfaces or damage strips.
- Do not operate the panoramic roof if it has frozen closed.

In order that the panoramic roof and the sun blind can be operated, the car's electrical system must be in ignition position I or II.

It can also be operated using a remote control key or keyless opening* with the door handle.

Warning

Check that children or other passengers are not at risk of crushing when all the windows are closed with a key or keyless opening* with a door handle.

Important

Check that the panoramic roof is properly closed when closing.

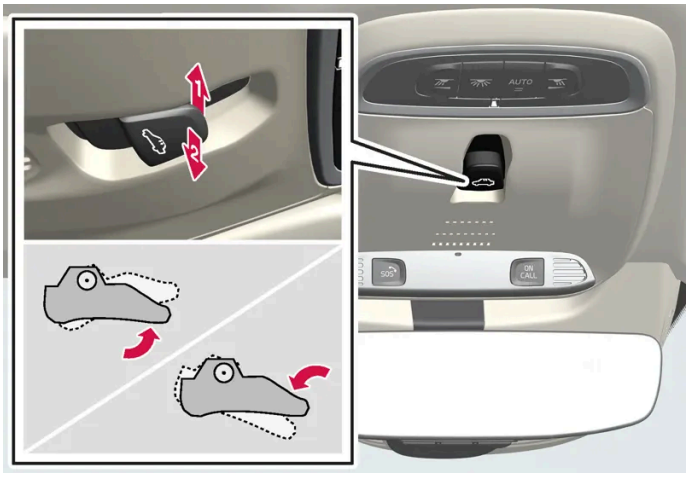
The movement of the roof is stopped if the control is released during manual operation, or when the glass reaches the comfort position [1] or the maximum opening or closing position. The movement of both panoramic roof and sun blind are also stopped if the roof control is operated again in the opposite direction to the current direction of movement.

The panoramic roof and the sun blind are also equipped with pinch protection. If any fault arises with the pinch protection, a reset sequence can be tested.

> **Note**
>
> For manual opening, the sun blind must be fully open before the panoramic roof can be opened. When the procedure is reversed, the panoramic roof must be fully closed before the sun blind can be fully closed.

> **Note**
>
> It may not be possible to operate windows at low temperatures.

Open and close the panoramic roof to/from ventilation position using the roof control



Ventilation position, vertically at the rear edge.

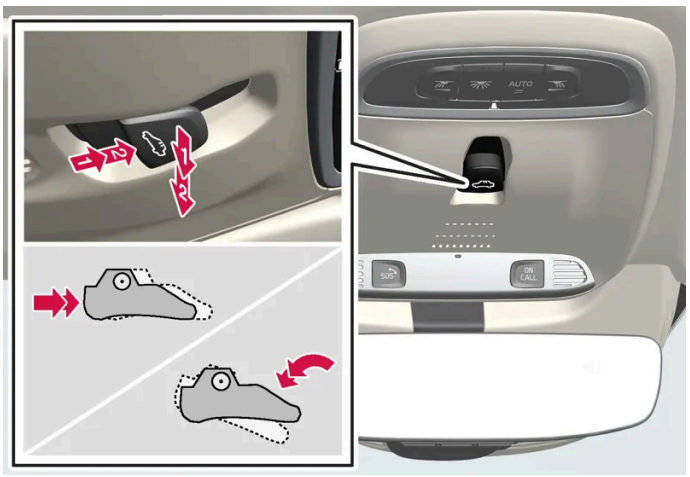
1 Open by pressing the control upward once.

2 Close by pressing the control downward once.

When the ventilation position is selected the front glass cover is raised at its rear edge. If the sun blind is fully closed when ventilation position is selected, then it opens automatically approx. 50 mm (approx. 2 inches).

The sun blind follows automatically if the panoramic roof is closed from ventilation position.

Fully open and close the panoramic roof using the roof control



1 Operation, manual mode

2 Operation, automatic mode

Manual operation

1 To open the sun blind - press the control backwards to the position for manual opening.

2 Open the panoramic roof to comfort position - press the control backwards a second time to the position for manual opening.

3 Open the panoramic roof to maximum position - press the control backwards a third time to the position for manual opening.

Close by repeating the preceding procedure in reverse order - press the control forward/downward to the manual closing position instead.

Automatic operation

1 Open the sun blind to maximum position - press the control backward to the position for automatic opening and release.

2 Open the panoramic roof to comfort position - press the control backwards a second time to the position for automatic opening and release.

3 Open the panoramic roof to maximum position - press the control backwards a third time to the position for automatic opening and release.

Close by repeating the preceding procedure in reverse order - press the control forward/downward to the automatic closing position instead.

Automatic operation - rapid opening or closing

The panoramic roof and sun blind can be opened or closed simultaneously:

1 To open - press the control rearward to the automatic operation position twice and release.

1 To close - press the control forward/downward to the automatic operation position twice and release.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Comfort position is a position where wind noise and resonance noise are at a comfortably low level while driving.

6.3.5. Automatic closing of the panoramic roof's* sun blind

With this function, the sun blind is closed automatically 15 minutes after the car has been locked if it is parked in hot weather. This is in order to lower the passenger compartment temperature and protect the car's upholstery from sun-fading.

The function is deactivated when the car is supplied from the factory and can be activated or deactivated in the centre display.

1 Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.

2 Press **My Car** → **Locking**.

Select **Auto Close Sunroof Curtain** to activate/deactivate.

> **Note**
>
> The sun blind is also closed when all windows are closed using the key or keyless opening* with a door handle.

* Option/accessory.

6.4. Windows, glass and mirrors

The car contains several different windows, glass panes and mirrors. Some of the windows in the car are laminated.

The windscreen has laminated glass, and laminated glass is available as an option for certain other glass areas. Laminated glass is reinforced, which provides better protection against break-ins and improved sound insulation in the passenger compartment.

The panoramic roof* also has laminated glass.

The symbol is shown on the windows where the glass is laminated. [1]

* Option/accessory.

[1] Does not apply to the windscreen or panoramic roof* which are always laminated and thus do not have this symbol.

6.5. Pinch protection for windows and sun blinds

All power windows and sun blinds* have pinch protection which is deployed if they are blocked by any object while opening or closing.

In the event of blocking, the movement stops and then reverses automatically to approx. 50 mm (approx. 2 inches) from the blocked position (or to full ventilation position).

It is possible to force pinch protection when closing has been cancelled, e.g. when ice is formed, by continuing to press the control in one and the same direction.

If any fault arises with the pinch protection, a reset sequence can be tested.

> **Warning**
>
> If the starter battery is disconnected, the automatic opening and closing function must be reset to work properly. A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

* Option/accessory.

6.6. Reset sequence for pinch protection

If a problem occurs with the electrical functions for the electric windows, a reset sequence can be tested.

> **Warning**
>
> If the starter battery is disconnected, the automatic opening and closing function must be reset to work properly. A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

In the event of problems with the panoramic roof, contact a workshop[1].

Reset the power window

1. Start with the window in closed position.
2. Then operate the controls in the manual position 3 times upwards to closed position.

> The system is initialised automatically.

If problems persist, contact a workshop.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

6.7. Activating and deactivating max defroster

Max defroster is used to quickly remove mist and ice from windows.

Max defroster deactivates auto-regulation of the climate and air recirculation, activates air conditioning and changes the fan level to **5** and the temperature to **HI**.

> **Note**
>
> Changing the fan level to **5** increases the noise level.

When max defroster is deactivated, the climate control system returns to the previous settings.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre console

There is a physical button in the centre console for quick access to max defroster.

With heated windscreen* the max defroster can only be activated individually from the climate view in the centre display.

Physical button in the centre console.

Cars without heated windscreen:

1 Press the button.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Cars with heated windscreen:

1 Press the button repeatedly in order to switch between the three levels:
   - Activated heated windscreen
   - Activated heated windscreen and max defroster
   - Deactivated.

> Heated windscreen and max defroster are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Note

Max defroster starts with a certain delay in order to avoid a short increase in fan level if the heated windscreen is deactivated by two quick presses of the button.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre display

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2

Press **Max**.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

7. Seats and steering wheel

7.1. Front seat

7.1.1. Climate controls for front seat

7.1.1.1. Activating and deactivating heated front seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

1

Press the left or right-hand side's steering wheel and seat button in the climate row in the centre display in order to open the controls for seat and steering wheel.

If the car is not equipped with ventilated seats or heated steering wheel (for the driver's side), the button for heated seats is immediately available in the climate row.

2

Repeatedly press the button for heated seats in order to change between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** and **Low**.

> The level changes and the button shows the set level.

Warning

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats.

* Option/accessory.

7.1.1.2. Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated seats should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start in the event of low ambient temperature.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Driver Seat Heating Level** and **Auto Passenger Seat Heating Level** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated driver's and passenger seat.

> An "A" is shown at each button for heated front seats in the climate row when automatic starting has been activated.

4. Select **Low**, **Medium** or **High** to select level after the function has been activated.

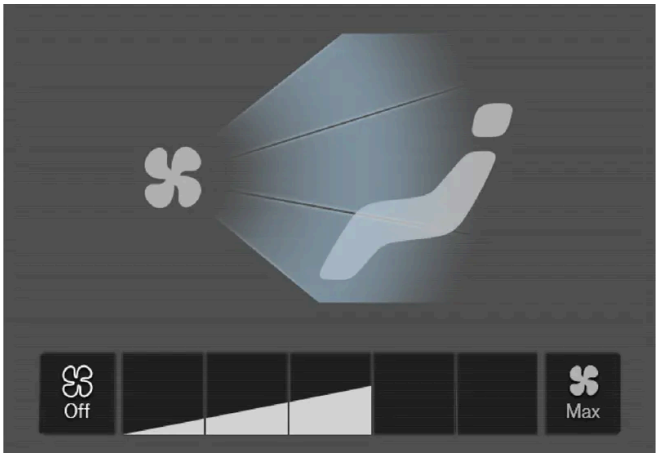
* Option/accessory.

7.1.1.3. Regulating fan level for front seat [1]

The fan can be set to several different automatically controlled fan speeds for the front seat.

1.

   Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2. 

Fan control buttons in the climate view.

Tap on the desired fan level, **Off**, **1-5** or **Max**.

> Fan level is changed and the buttons for the selected level illuminate.

> **Important**
>
> If the fan is fully switched off then the air conditioning is not engaged, which results in a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

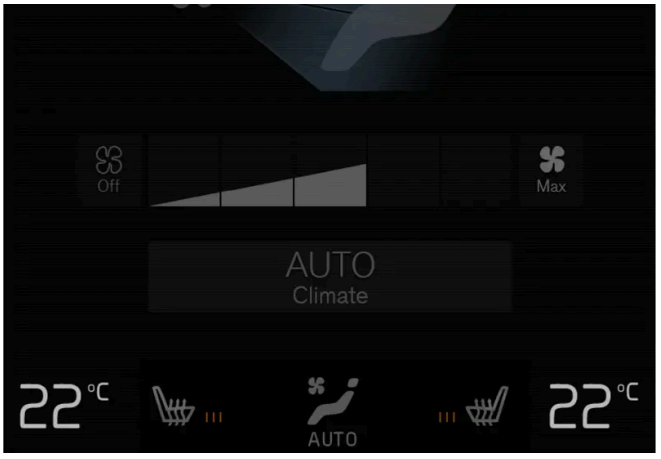
> **Note**
>
> The climate control system automatically adjusts the air flow within the selected fan level based on requirements. This means that the fan speed may change even though the fan level is the same.

[1] For 2-zone climate, also rear seat.

7.1.1.4. Regulating temperature for front seat [1]

The temperature can be set to the desired number of degrees for the front seat's climate zones.

1



Temperature buttons in the climate row. [2]

Press the left or right-hand side temperature button in the centre display's climate row to open the controls.

2

Temperature control. [3]

Regulate the temperature by either of the following:

- drag the control to the desired temperature, or
- press +/− to raise/lower the temperature gradually.

> The temperature changes and the button shows the set temperature.

Note

Heating or cooling cannot be hastened by selecting a higher or lower temperature than the actual desired temperature.

[1] For 2-zone climate, also rear seat.

[2] With 1-zone climate, the temperature button is to the right of the centre button.

[3] With 1-zone climate, the control is horizontal instead of vertical.

7.1.1.5. Synchronising temperature [1]

The temperature in the car's different climate zones can be synchronised with the temperature set on the driver's side.

1

Synchronisation button on the driver's side temperature controls.

Press the driver's side temperature button in the centre display's climate row in order to open the controls.

2 Press **Synchronise temperature**.

> The temperature for all zones in the car is synchronised with the temperature set for the driver's side and the synchronisation symbol is shown adjacent to the temperature button.

The synchronisation is stopped by means of a further press on **Synchronise temperature** or by means of changing the temperature settings for a climate zone other than the driver's.

[1] Not available with 1-zone climate.

7.1.2. Memory function for front seat

7.1.2.1. Using a stored position for seat and door mirrors

If the positions for the power* seat and the door mirrors have been stored, they can be activated by using the memory buttons.

Using a stored setting

A stored setting can be used with the front door either open or closed:

Open front door

1 Depress one of the memory buttons 1 (2) or 2 (3) with a short press. Power seat and door mirrors move and then stop at the positions stored in the selected memory button.

Closed front door

1 Hold one of the memory buttons 1 (2) or 2 (3) depressed until seat and door mirrors stop in the positions that are stored in the selected memory button.

If the memory button is released, the movement of the seat and door mirrors will be stopped.

Warning

- Because the driver's seat can be adjusted with the ignition off, children should never be left unattended in the vehicle.
- Movement of the seat can be STOPPED at any time by pressing any button on the power seat control panel.
- Do not adjust the seat while driving.
- Make sure there is nothing under the seats when they are being adjusted.

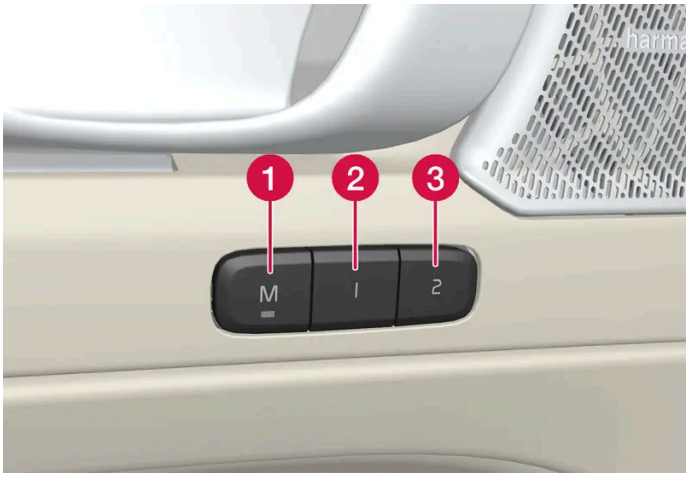
* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

7.1.2.2. Storing a position for seat and door mirrors

You can store the position for power* seat and door mirrors in the memory buttons.

Store two different positions for the power seat* and the door mirrors using the memory buttons. The buttons are located on the inside of one of the front doors or both*.



1 Button **M** for storing settings.

2 Memory button.

3 Memory button.

Storing a position

1. Adjust seat and door mirrors to the desired position.
2. Press and hold the M button depressed. The light indicator in the button illuminates.
3. Within three seconds, press and hold the 1 or 2 button.

> When the position has been stored in the selected memory button, an acoustic signal can be heard and the light indicator in the M button extinguishes.

If none of the memory buttons is depressed within three seconds then the M button extinguishes and no storing takes place.

The seat or the door mirrors must be readjusted before a new memory can be set.

* Option/accessory.

7.1.3. Front seats

The seat has a range of adjustment options to increase your comfort.

7.1.4. Power* front seat

The car's front seats have a range of setting options in order to enhance comfort. The power seat can be moved forwards/backwards and upwards/downwards. The front edge of the seat cushion can be raised/lowered and the backrest inclination can be changed. The lumbar support* can be adjusted upwards/downwards/forwards/backwards. Seat cushion length is adjusted manually*.

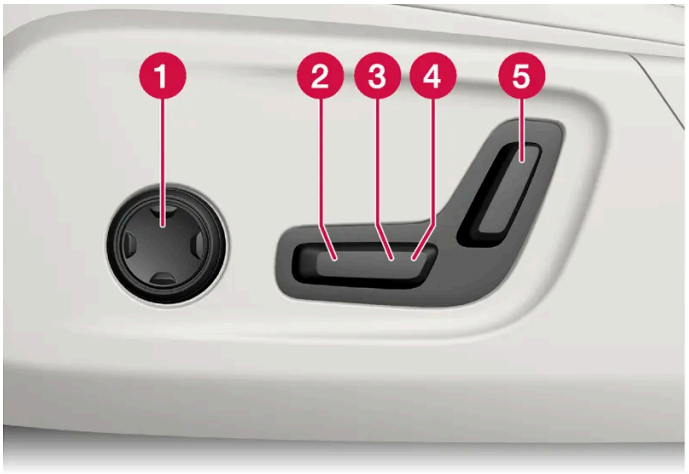
Seat adjustment can take place when the car is running and within a certain time after unlocking the door without the car running. Adjustment can also take place within a certain time after the car has been switched off.

> **Important**
>
> The power seats have overload protection that is triggered if any seat is blocked by an object. If this happens, remove the object and then move the seat again.

* Option/accessory.

7.1.5. Adjusting the power* front seat

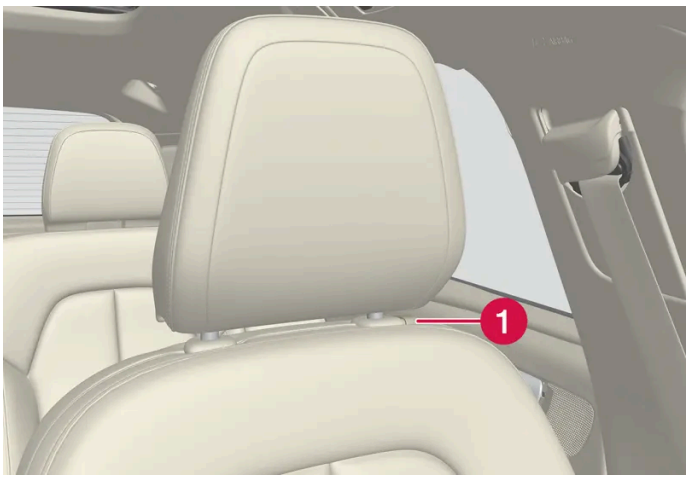
Set to desired sitting position using the control on the front seat's seating section. Activate the lumbar support* by pressing the four-way control.



1. Activate and use the lumber support control by pressing the four-way control up/down/forwards/back.
2. Raise/lower the seat cushion front edge by adjusting the control up/down.
3. Raise/lower the seat by means of adjusting the control up/down.
4. Move the seat forward/backward by adjusting the control forward/backward.
5. Change the backrest inclination by adjusting the control forward/backward.

Only one movement (forward/back/up/down) can be made at a time.

The backrests of the front seats cannot be lowered fully forward.



1 You can manually adjust the height of the head restraints by pressing in the button.

* Option/accessory.

7.1.6. Manual front seat

The car's front seats have a range of setting options in order to enhance comfort.

1 Adjust the seat forward/backward by lifting the handle and adjusting the distance to the steering wheel and pedals. Check that the seat is locked after the position has been adjusted.

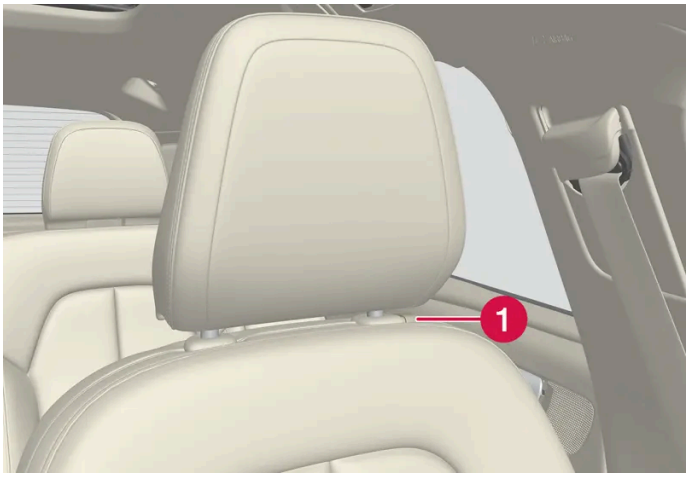
2 Change the length* of the seat cushion by pulling the lever up and moving the seat cushion forward/backward by hand.

3 Raise/lower the front edge of the seat cushion* by pumping up/down.[1]

4 Change the lumbar support* by pressing the button upward/downward/forward/back.

5 Raise/lower the seat by means of pumping the lever up/down.

6 Change the backrest inclination by turning the control knob.



1 You can manually adjust the height of the head restraints by pressing in the button.

> **Warning**
>
> Adjust the position of the driver's seat before setting off, never while driving. Make sure that the seat is in locked position in order to avoid personal injury in the event of heavy braking or an accident.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only applies to the driver's seat.

7.1.7. Adjusting* the length of the seat cushion in the front seat

For increased comfort, you can adjust the length of the seat cushion.

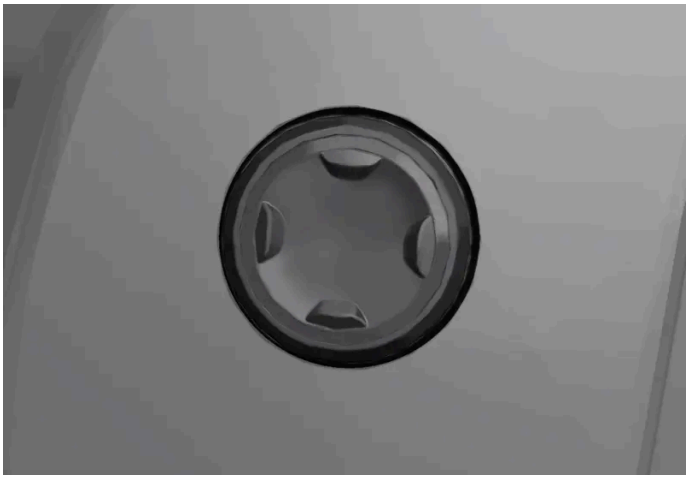
Control for seat cushion adjustment.

1. Grip the handle 1 on the front of the seat and pull upwards.
2. Adjust the length of the seat cushion.
3. Release the handle and make sure that the seat cushion has reached the correct position.

* Option/accessory.

7.1.8. Adjusting the lumbar support* in the front seat

The lumbar support is adjusted using a control on the side of the seat cushion.

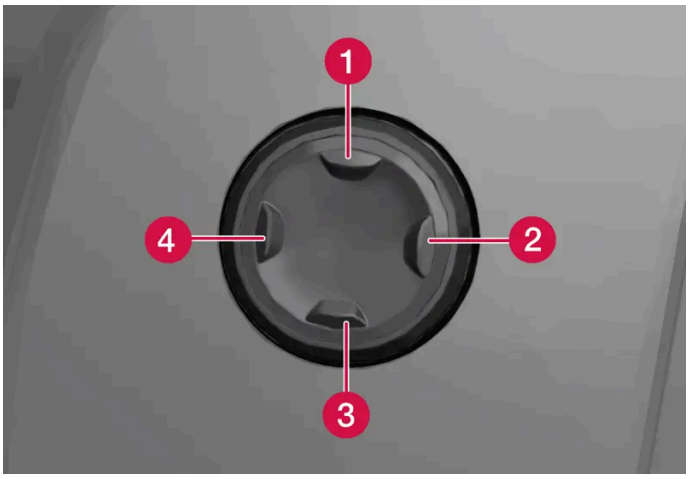


Four-way button, located on the side of the seat's seating section.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The four-way lumbar support is adjusted using the four-way button (the round one) which is located on the side of the seat's seating section. The lumbar support can be adjusted forwards/backwards and upwards/downwards.

Adjusting the lumbar support



- Press the four-way button up 1/down 3 to move the lumbar support upwards/downwards.
- Press the front section 4 of the four-way button to increase lumbar support.
- Press the rear section 2 of the four-way button to decrease lumbar support.

* Option/accessory.

7.2. Rear seat

7.2.1. Climate controls for rear seat

7.2.1.1. Activating and deactivating heated rear seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for the passengers when it is cold.

Activating and deactivating the heated rear seat from the rear seat

1

Buttons for heated seats at the rear of the tunnel console.

Press repeatedly on the left or right-hand side's physical buttons for heated seats at the rear of the tunnel console to switch between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** and **Low**.

> The level changes and the LEDs in the button show the set level.

Warning

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats.

* Option/accessory.

7.2.2. Rear seat

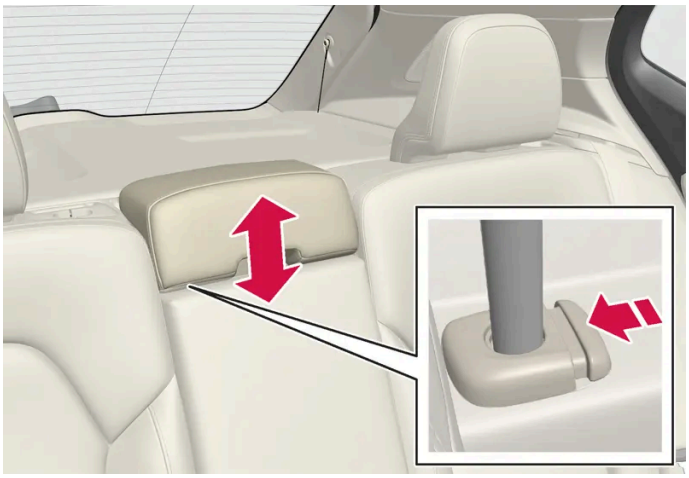
The car has five seats. The rear seat is divided into two folding parts, with one or two passenger seats respectively.

7.2.3. Adjusting the head restraints in the rear seat

Adjust the centre seat head restraint according to the height of the passenger. Fold down the outer seat head restraints* to improve rearward visibility.

Adjust the head restraint for the centre seat

The centre seat's head restraint must be adjusted according to the passenger's height so that, if possible, the whole of the back of the head is covered. Slide it up manually as required.



To lower the head restraint, the button (see illustration) must be depressed while the restraint is carefully moved down.

> **Warning**
>
> The centre seat head restraint must be in its lowest position when the centre seat is not used. When the centre seat is used, the head restraint must be correctly adjusted to the height of the passenger so that it covers the whole of the back of the head if possible.

Fold down the rear seat's outer head restraints via the centre display*

The outer head restraints can be retracted via the centre display's function view. You can lower the head restraints in ignition position 0.

Press the **Headrest Fold** button to activate lowering.

Move the head restraint back manually until a click is heard.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not lower the outer head restraints if there are passengers in any of the outer rear seats.

> **Warning**
>
> The head restraint must be in locked position after being folded up.

* Option/accessory.

7.2.4. Lowering the backrests in the rear seat

The rear seat's backrest is divided into two parts. The two parts can be folded forward individually.

Warning

- Adjust the seat and fix it before driving away. Take care when adjusting the seat. Uncontrolled or careless adjustment can lead to trapping injuries.
- When loading long objects, they must always be strapped in securely to avoid injury and damage during sudden braking.
- Always switch off the car and apply the parking brake when loading and unloading the car.
- For cars with automatic gearbox, set the gear selector in P to prevent it from being moved by mistake.

Important

There must be no objects on the rear seat when the backrest is to be folded down. The seat belts must not be connected either. Otherwise there is a risk of damaging the rear seat upholstery.

Important

The armrest* for the centre seat must be raised before lowering the seat.

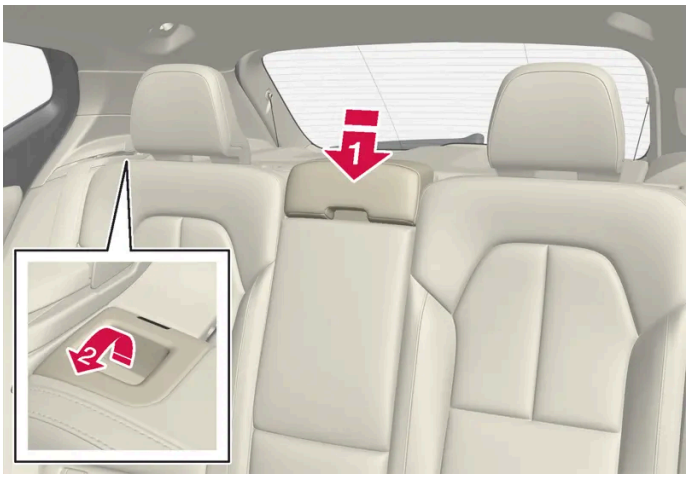
The through-load hatch* in the rear seat must be closed before lowering.

Note

The front seats may need to be pushed forwards, and the backrests adjusted upwards, in order that the rear backrests can be fully folded forward.

Lowering the backrest

To facilitate folding of the rear seat, the car must be stationary and at least one rear door open.



Ensure that there are no occupants or objects in the rear seat.

1

Lower the centre seat's head restraint manually.

2 2

Pull the handles located on the car's left and right-hand backrests forwards to fold down the left and right-hand part of the rear seat respectively.

3 The backrest disengages from the lock and needs to be lowered manually to the horizontal position.

Raising the backrest

Raising the backrest to upright position is carried out manually:

1 Move the backrest up/back.

2 Press the backrest until the lock engages.

3 Raise the head restraints manually.

4 If necessary, raise the centre seat's head restraint.

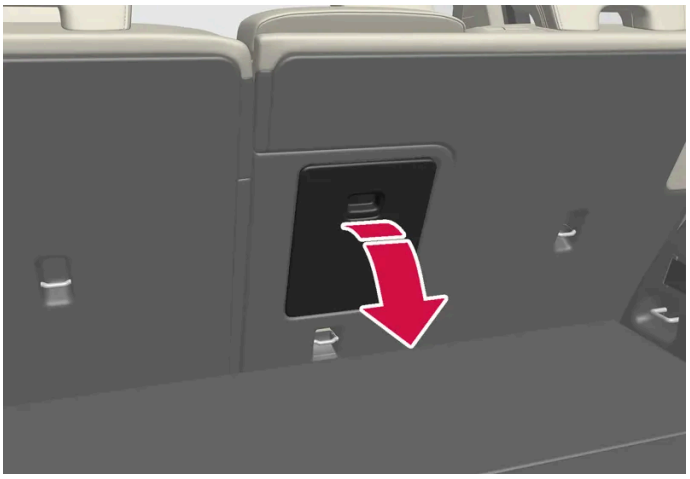
> **Warning**
>
> When the backrest has been raised, the red indicator should no longer be showing. If it is still showing then the backrest is not locked in place.

> **Warning**
>
> Check that the backrests and head restraints in the rear seat are locked properly after being folded up.
>
> The head restraints of the outer seats must always be raised when there are passengers on any of the rear seats.

* Option/accessory.

7.2.5. Through-load hatch in the rear seat*

The hatch in the rear seat's backrest can be opened to transport long narrow items, e.g. skis.



1. In the cargo area, grip the hatch's handle and fold down the hatch.
2. Fold forward the armrest in the rear seat.
3. Adjust the centre seat's head restraint upwards so that the steel tubes do not block the hatch opening.

If the private locking function is used then the through-load hatch must be closed.

* Option/accessory.

7.3. Steering wheel

7.3.1. Speed-dependent steering force

Speed related power steering causes the steering wheel force to increase with the speed of the car so as to be able to give the driver enhanced sensitivity. On motorways the steering is firmer. When parking and at low speed steering is light and requires less effort.

Reduced power

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

In rare situations, the power steering may need to work at reduced power, and turning the steering wheel may then seem slightly heavier. This may occur when the power steering becomes too hot and it then needs temporary cooling. It may also occur if the power supply is disrupted.

In the event of reduced power, the message **Power steering Assistance temporarily reduced** is shown, as well as this symbol in the driver display.

While the power steering is working at reduced power, the driver support functions and steering assistance systems are not available.

> **Warning**
>
> If the temperature increases too much, the servo may be forced to switch off completely. In such a situation, the driver display shows the **Power steering failure Stop safely** message, combined with a symbol.

Change the steering force level*

Steering wheel resistance can be adjusted when using INDIVIDUAL drive mode.

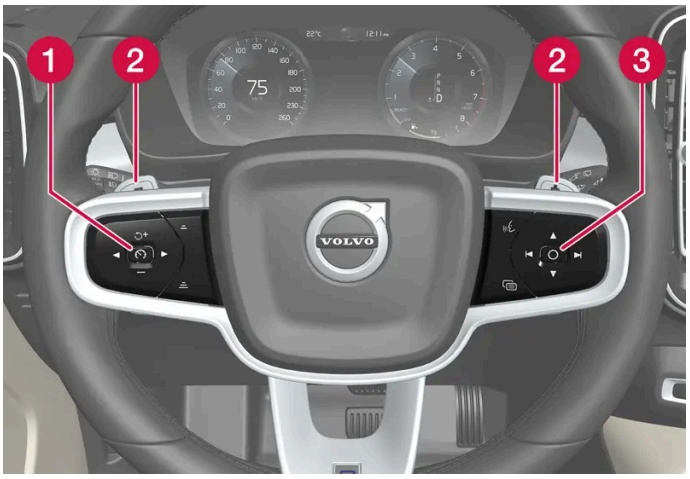
1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select **My Car** → **Drive Modes** → **Steering Force**.

Steering wheel resistance selection can only be accessed if the car is stationary or is moving at low speed and in a straight line.

* Option/accessory.

7.3.2. Steering wheel controls and horn

The steering wheel houses the horn and controls for e.g. the driver support systems and voice control.



Keypads and paddles* in the steering wheel.

1 Controls for driver support systems. [1]

2 Paddle shifter* for manual gear changing in an automatic gearbox.

3 Controls for voice control and menu, message and phone handling.

Horn

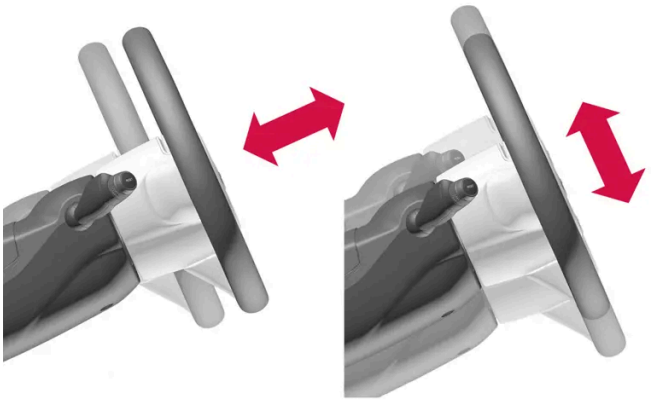
The horn is located in the centre of the steering wheel.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Speed Limiter, Cruise Control, Adaptive Cruise Control*, Distance Warning* and Pilot Assist.

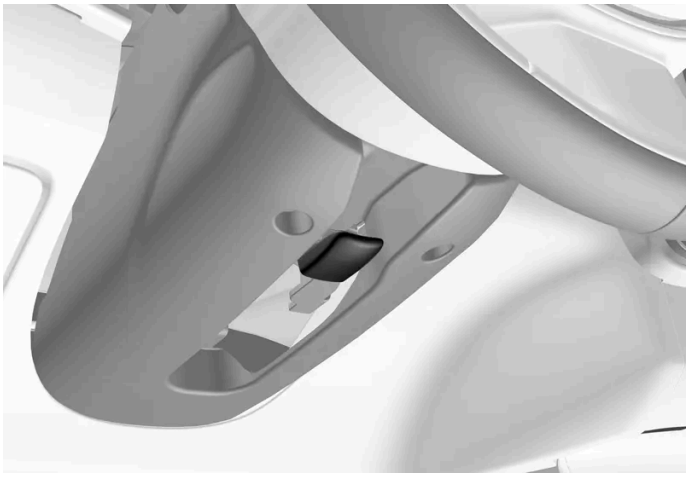
7.3.3. Adjusting the steering wheel

The steering wheel can be adjusted in different positions.



The steering wheel can be adjusted for height and for depth.

> **Warning**
>
> Adjust and secure the steering wheel before driving away. The steering wheel must never be adjusted while driving.



Lever for steering wheel adjustment.

1. Push the lever forwards to release the steering wheel.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the position that suits you.
3. Pull the lever back to fix the steering wheel in place. If the lever is stiff, press or raise the steering wheel slightly at the same time as you move the lever back.

7.3.4. Steering lock

Steering lock[1] makes it difficult to steer the car if it is stolen, for example. A mechanical noise can be perceived when the steering lock is locked or unlocked.

Activating the steering lock

The steering lock is activated when the car is locked from the outside and the car is switched off. If the car is left unlocked then the steering lock will be activated automatically after a while.

Deactivating the steering lock

The steering lock is deactivated when the car is unlocked from outside. If the car is not locked, the steering wheel lock will be deactivated as long as the remote control key is in the passenger compartment and the car is started.

[1] The steering lock is not available in all variants and markets.

7.3.5. Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated in order to increase comfort for the driver when it is cold.

1

Press the driver's side steering wheel and seat button in the climate row of the centre display in order to open the controls for seat and steering wheel.

If the car is not equipped with heated seats or ventilated seats, the button for heated steering wheel is immediately available in the climate row.

2

Repeatedly press the button for heated steering wheel in order to change between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** and **Low**.

> The level changes and the button shows the set level.

* Option/accessory.

7.3.6. Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated in order to increase comfort for the driver when it is cold.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated steering wheel should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start in the event of low ambient temperature.

1 Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.

2 Press **Climate**.

3 Select **Auto Steering Wheel Heating Level** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated steering wheel.

> An "A" is shown at the button for heated steering wheel in the climate row when automatic starting has been activated.

4 Select **Low**, **Medium** or **High** to select level after the function has been activated.

* Option/accessory.

8. Climate control

8.1. Climate system controls

8.1.1. Climate controls for passenger compartment

8.1.1.1. Activating auto climate control

With auto climate control activated, multiple climate functions are controlled automatically.

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2 Give a short or long press on **AUTO Climate**.

- Short press - air recirculation, air conditioning and air distribution are controlled automatically.
- Long press - air recirculation, air conditioning and air distribution are controlled automatically, temperature and fan speed are changed to standard settings: 22 °C (72 °F) and level **3**.

> Auto-regulation of the climate is activated and the button illuminates.

Note

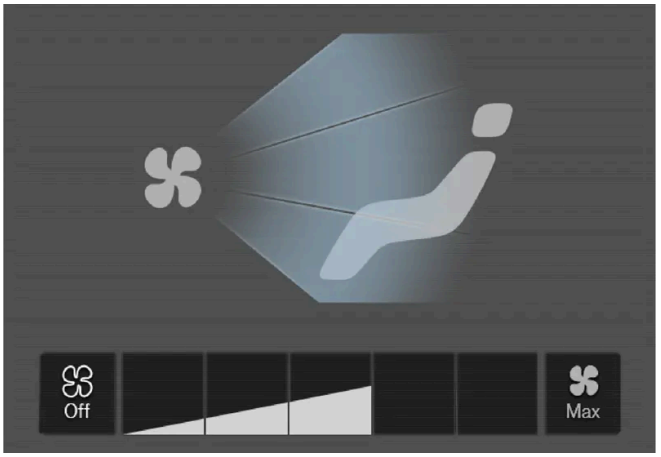
Temperature and fan speed can be changed without deactivating the automatically-regulated climate control system. The automatically-regulated climate control system is deactivated when the air distribution is changed manually or when maximum defroster is activated.

8.1.1.2. Regulating fan level for front seat [1]

The fan can be set to several different automatically controlled fan speeds for the front seat.

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2 

Fan control buttons in the climate view.

Tap on the desired fan level, **Off**, **1-5** or **Max**.

> Fan level is changed and the buttons for the selected level illuminate.

Important

If the fan is fully switched off then the air conditioning is not engaged, which results in a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

Note

The climate control system automatically adjusts the air flow within the selected fan level based on requirements. This means that the fan speed may change even though the fan level is the same.

[1] For 2-zone climate, also rear seat.

8.1.1.3. Activating and deactivating air conditioning

The air conditioning cools and dehumidifies incoming air as required.

When the air conditioning is activated, the climate control system automatically controls starting and switching off as required.

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2

Press **AC**.

> Air conditioning is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Note

It is not possible to activate the air conditioning when the fan control is in **Off** position.

8.1.1.4. Activating and deactivating air recirculation

Air recirculation shuts out bad air, exhaust gases, etc. from outside the car by the climate control system reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2

Press **Recirc**.

> Air recirculation is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Important

If the air in the car is recirculated for too long then there is a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

Note

It is not possible to activate air recirculation when max defroster is activated.

8.1.1.5. Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation

Air recirculation shuts out bad air, exhaust gases, etc. from outside the car by the climate control system reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

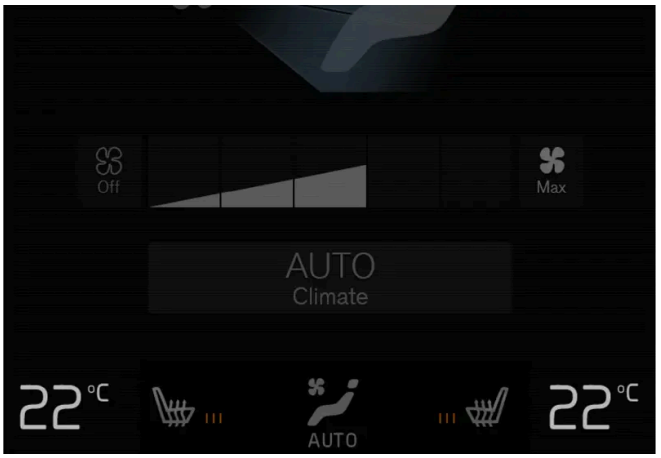
It is possible set whether the air recirculation timer should be activated/deactivated. When the timer is activated, air recirculation is automatically switched off after 20 minutes.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Recirculation Timer** to activate/deactivate the air recirculation timer.

8.1.1.6. Regulating temperature for front seat [1]

The temperature can be set to the desired number of degrees for the front seat's climate zones.

1



Temperature buttons in the climate row. [2]

Press the left or right-hand side temperature button in the centre display's climate row to open the controls.

2

Temperature control. [3]

Regulate the temperature by either of the following:

- drag the control to the desired temperature, or
- press +/− to raise/lower the temperature gradually.

> The temperature changes and the button shows the set temperature.

Note

Heating or cooling cannot be hastened by selecting a higher or lower temperature than the actual desired temperature.

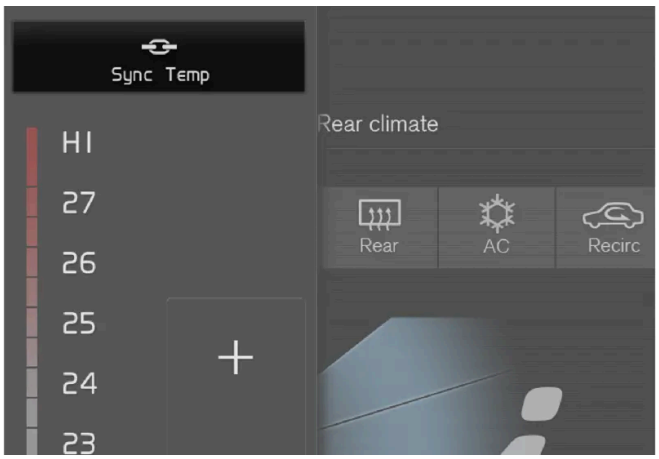
[1] For 2-zone climate, also rear seat.

[2] With 1-zone climate, the temperature button is to the right of the centre button.

[3] With 1-zone climate, the control is horizontal instead of vertical.

8.1.1.7. Synchronising temperature [1]

The temperature in the car's different climate zones can be synchronised with the temperature set on the driver's side.

1 

Synchronisation button on the driver's side temperature controls.

Press the driver's side temperature button in the centre display's climate row in order to open the controls.

2 Press **Synchronise temperature**.

> The temperature for all zones in the car is synchronised with the temperature set for the driver's side and the synchronisation symbol is shown adjacent to the temperature button.

The synchronisation is stopped by means of a further press on **Synchronise temperature** or by means of changing the temperature settings for a climate zone other than the driver's.

[1] Not available with 1-zone climate.

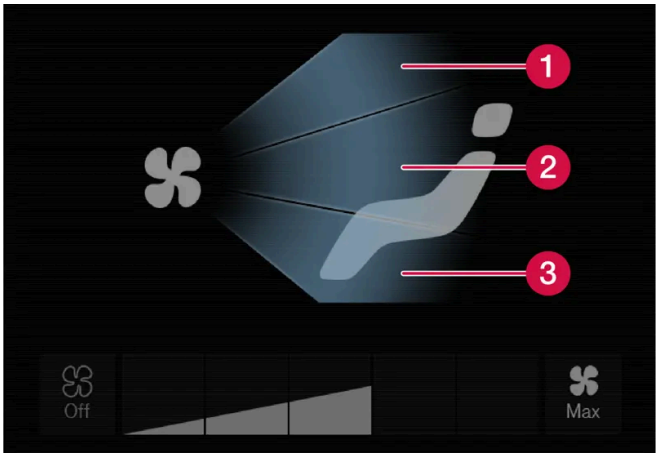
8.1.1.8. Changing air distribution

The air distribution can be changed manually if required.

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2



The air distribution buttons in the climate view.

1 Air distribution - windscreen defroster vents

2 Air distribution - air vents in instrument panel and centre console

3 Air distribution - air vents in the floor

Press one or more of the air distribution buttons in order to open/close the corresponding air flow.

> The air distribution is changed and the buttons illuminate/extinguish.

8.1.2. Climate controls for seat and steering wheel

8.1.2.1. Activating and deactivating the heated steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated in order to increase comfort for the driver when it is cold.

1

Press the driver's side steering wheel and seat button in the climate row of the centre display in order to open the controls for seat and steering wheel.

If the car is not equipped with heated seats or ventilated seats, the button for heated steering wheel is immediately available in the climate row.

2

Repeatedly press the button for heated steering wheel in order to change between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** and **Low**.

> The level changes and the button shows the set level.

* Option/accessory.

8.1.2.2. Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated steering wheel*

The steering wheel can be heated in order to increase comfort for the driver when it is cold.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated steering wheel should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start in the event of low ambient temperature.

1 Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.

2 Press **Climate**.

3 Select **Auto Steering Wheel Heating Level** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated steering wheel.

> An "A" is shown at the button for heated steering wheel in the climate row when automatic starting has been activated.

4 Select **Low**, **Medium** or **High** to select level after the function has been activated.

* Option/accessory.

8.1.2.3. Activating and deactivating heated rear seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for the passengers when it is cold.

Activating and deactivating the heated rear seat from the rear seat

1

Buttons for heated seats at the rear of the tunnel console.

Press repeatedly on the left or right-hand side's physical buttons for heated seats at the rear of the tunnel console to switch between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** and **Low**.

> The level changes and the LEDs in the button show the set level.

Warning

Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats.

* Option/accessory.

8.1.2.4. Activating and deactivating heated front seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

1

Press the left or right-hand side's steering wheel and seat button in the climate row in the centre display in order to open the controls for seat and steering wheel.

If the car is not equipped with ventilated seats or heated steering wheel (for the driver's side), the button for heated seats is immediately available in the climate row.

2

Repeatedly press the button for heated seats in order to change between the four levels: **Off**, **High**, **Medium** and **Low**.

> The level changes and the button shows the set level.

> **Warning**
>
> Heated seats must not be used by people who find it difficult to perceive an increase in temperature due to a lack of sensation or who otherwise have problems operating the controls for the heated seats.

* Option/accessory.

8.1.2.5. Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated front seat*

The seats can be heated in order to increase comfort for driver and passengers when it is cold.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated seats should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start in the event of low ambient temperature.

1 Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.

2 Press **Climate**.

3 Select **Auto Driver Seat Heating Level** and **Auto Passenger Seat Heating Level** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated driver's and passenger seat.

> An "A" is shown at each button for heated front seats in the climate row when automatic starting has been activated.

4 Select **Low**, **Medium** or **High** to select level after the function has been activated.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

8.1.3. Climate controls for windows and mirrors

8.1.3.1. Activating and deactivating the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre console

In the centre console is a physical button for rapid access to the heated rear window and door mirrors.

Physical button in the centre console.

1 Press the button.

> Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating heated rear window and door mirrors from centre display

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2

Press **Rear**.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

> Heated rear window and door mirrors are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

8.1.3.2. Activating and deactivating automatic starting of the heated rear window and door mirrors

The heated rear window and door mirrors are used to quickly remove mist and ice from the windows and mirrors.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start when there is a risk of ice or misting on the windscreen/window. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice or misting is gone.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Rear Defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated rear window and door mirrors.

8.1.3.3. Activating and deactivating the heated windscreen*

A heated windscreen is used to quickly remove mist and ice from the window.

Activating and deactivating heated windscreen from centre console

In the centre console is a physical button for rapid access to the heated windscreen.

Physical button in the centre console.

1 Press the button repeatedly in order to switch between the three levels:

- Activated heated windscreen
- Activated heated windscreen and max defroster
- Deactivated.

> Heated windscreen and max defroster are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Activating and deactivating heated windscreen from centre display

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2

Press **Electric**.

> Heated windscreen is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Note

A triangular area at the end of each side of the windscreen is not electrically heated, where de-icing may take longer.

Note

The heated windscreen may affect the performance of transponders and other communication equipment.

Note

If the heated windscreen is activated when the Start/Stop function has auto-stopped the engine then the engine will be restarted.

* Option/accessory.

8.1.3.4. Activating and deactivating automatic start of heated windscreen*

A heated windscreen is used to quickly remove mist and ice from the window.

It is possible to set whether automatic start of heated windscreen should be activated/deactivated when the engine is started. With automatic start activated, heating will start when there is a risk of ice or misting on the windscreen/window. The heating switches off automatically when the windscreen/window is sufficiently warm and the ice or misting is gone.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Auto Front Defroster** to activate/deactivate automatic start of heated windscreen.

* Option/accessory.

8.1.3.5. Activating and deactivating max defroster

Max defroster is used to quickly remove mist and ice from windows.

Max defroster deactivates auto-regulation of the climate and air recirculation, activates air conditioning and changes the fan level to **5** and the temperature to **HI**.

> **Note**
>
> Changing the fan level to **5** increases the noise level.

When max defroster is deactivated, the climate control system returns to the previous settings.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre console

There is a physical button in the centre console for quick access to max defroster.

With heated windscreen* the max defroster can only be activated individually from the climate view in the centre display.

Physical button in the centre console.

Cars without heated windscreen:

1 Press the button.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Cars with heated windscreen:

1 Press the button repeatedly in order to switch between the three levels:

- Activated heated windscreen
- Activated heated windscreen and max defroster
- Deactivated.

> Heated windscreen and max defroster are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

> **Note**
>
> Max defroster starts with a certain delay in order to avoid a short increase in fan level if the heated windscreen is deactivated by two quick presses of the button.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre display

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2

Press **Max**.

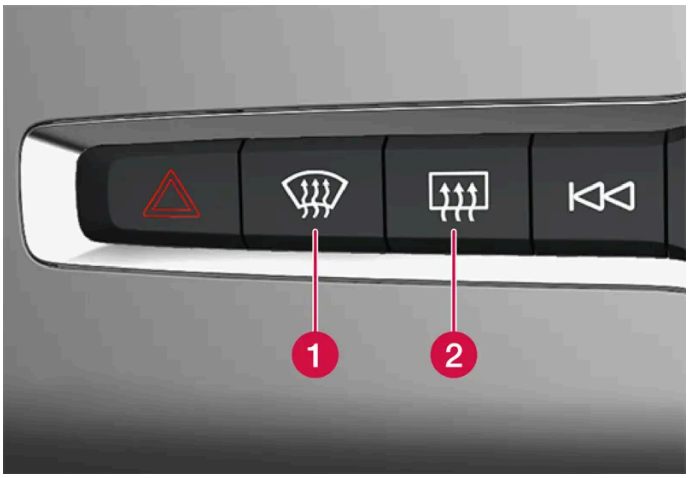
> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

* Option/accessory.

8.1.4. Climate controls

The climate control system's functions are controlled from physical buttons in the centre console, the centre display and the climate controls at the rear of the tunnel console*.

Physical buttons in centre console



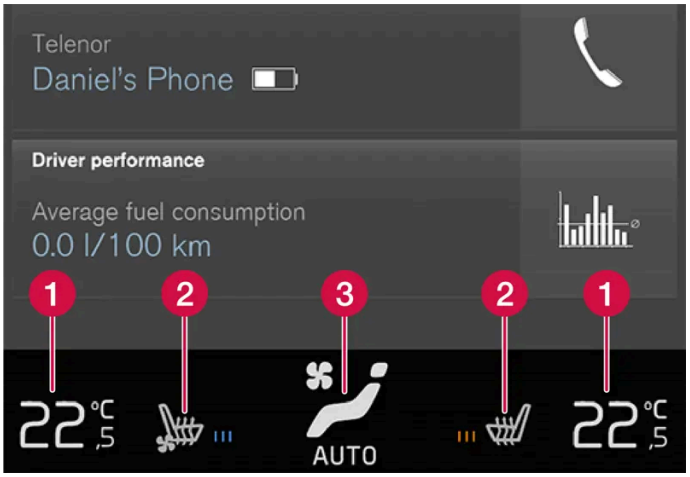
The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

1 Button for heated windscreen* and max defroster.

2 Button for heated rear window and door mirrors.

Climate row in centre display

The most common climate functions can be regulated from the climate row.



Climate row with 2-zone climate. Climate row with 1-zone climate has some differences regarding the location of the controls.

1 Temperature controls for driver and passenger side.[1]

2 Controls for heated* and ventilated* driver and front passenger seat, as well as heated steering wheel*.[2]

3 Button for access to the climate view. The graphic on the button shows activated climate settings.

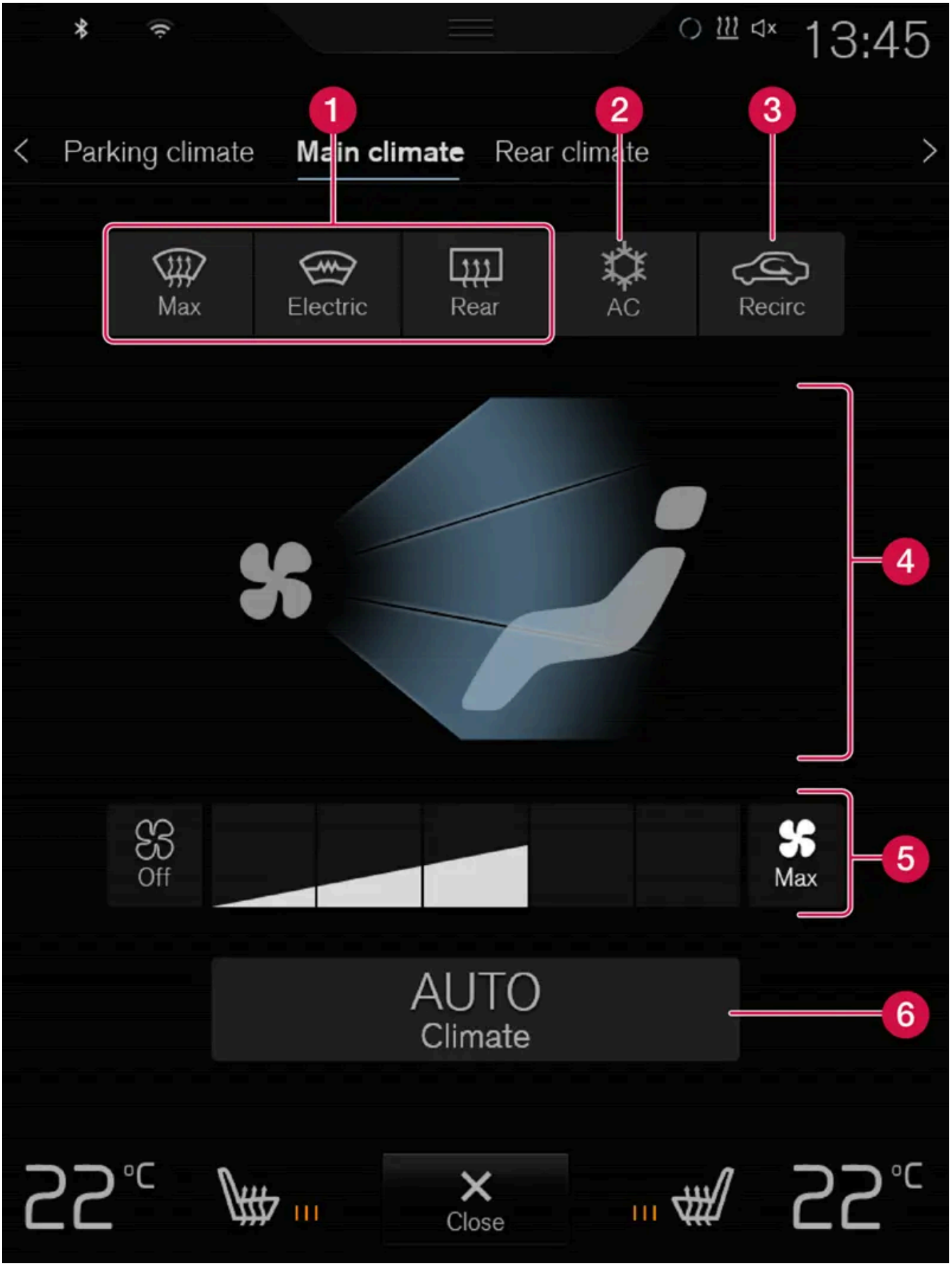
Climate view in centre display

Open climate view by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

Depending on equipment level, the climate view can be divided into several tabs. Change between the tabs by swiping left/right or by pressing the respective heading.

Main climate

In addition to the climate row's functions, other main climate functions can also be controlled in the **Main climate** tab.



1 **Max**, **Electric**, **Rear** - Controls for defrosting the windows and door mirrors.

2 **AC** - Controls for air conditioning.

3 **Recirc** - Controls for air recirculation.

4 Controls for air distribution.

5 Fan control.

6 **AUTO** - Auto regulating the climate.

Parking climate*

The car's parking climate control can be regulated in the **Parking climate** tab.

Climate controls at rear of tunnel console*

If the car is equipped with heated rear seats* there are physical buttons at the rear of the tunnel console for controlling this function.

* Option/accessory.

[1] With 1-zone climate, the control is to the right of the centre button.

[2] With 1-zone climate, the buttons are located to the far left and right in the climate row.

8.2. Air distribution

8.2.1. Activating and deactivating air recirculation

Air recirculation shuts out bad air, exhaust gases, etc. from outside the car by the climate control system reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2

Press **Recirc**.

> Air recirculation is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Important

If the air in the car is recirculated for too long then there is a risk of misting on the insides of the windows.

Note

It is not possible to activate air recirculation when max defroster is activated.

8.2.2. Activating and deactivating time setting for air recirculation

Air recirculation shuts out bad air, exhaust gases, etc. from outside the car by the climate control system reusing the air in the passenger compartment.

It is possible set whether the air recirculation timer should be activated/deactivated. When the timer is activated, air recirculation is automatically switched off after 20 minutes.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Recirculation Timer** to activate/deactivate the air recirculation timer.

8.2.3. Activating and deactivating max defroster

Max defroster is used to quickly remove mist and ice from windows.

Max defroster deactivates auto-regulation of the climate and air recirculation, activates air conditioning and changes the fan level to **5** and the temperature to **HI**.

Note

Changing the fan level to **5** increases the noise level.

When max defroster is deactivated, the climate control system returns to the previous settings.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre console

There is a physical button in the centre console for quick access to max defroster.

With heated windscreen* the max defroster can only be activated individually from the climate view in the centre display.

Physical button in the centre console.

Cars without heated windscreen:

1 Press the button.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Cars with heated windscreen:

1 Press the button repeatedly in order to switch between the three levels:

- Activated heated windscreen
- Activated heated windscreen and max defroster
- Deactivated.

> Heated windscreen and max defroster are activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Note

Max defroster starts with a certain delay in order to avoid a short increase in fan level if the heated windscreen is deactivated by two quick presses of the button.

Activating and deactivating max defroster from centre display

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2

Press **Max**.

> Max defroster is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

* Option/accessory.

8.2.4. Air distribution

The climate control system distributes the incoming air via a number of different vents in the passenger compartment.

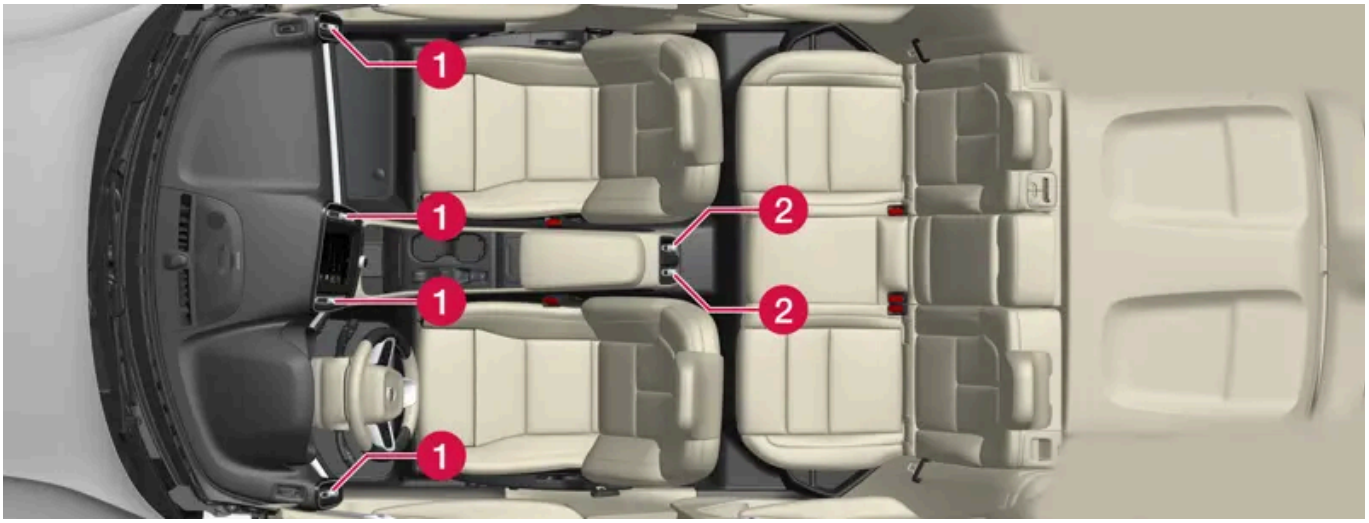
Automatic and manual air distribution

With auto-regulated climate running the air distribution takes place automatically. If necessary, the air distribution can be controlled manually.

Adjustable air vents

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Some of the air vents in the car are adjustable, which means that you can open/close the vent to aim the air flow.



Location of adjustable air vents in the passenger compartment.

1 With 1-zone climate - four on the instrument panel.

2 Addition with 2-zone climate* - two at the rear of the tunnel console.

> **Note**
>
> At low ambient temperatures, no air is distributed from the adjustable air vents on the rear of the tunnel console.

* Option/accessory.

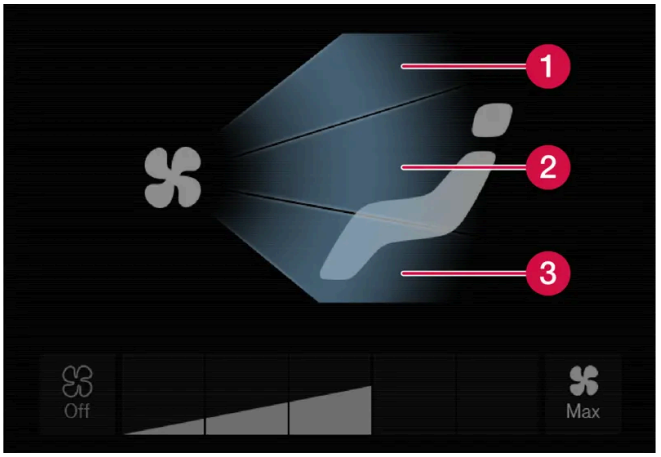
8.2.5. Changing air distribution

The air distribution can be changed manually if required.

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2



The air distribution buttons in the climate view.

1 Air distribution - windscreen defroster vents

2 Air distribution - air vents in instrument panel and centre console

3 Air distribution - air vents in the floor

Press one or more of the air distribution buttons in order to open/close the corresponding air flow.

> The air distribution is changed and the buttons illuminate/extinguish.

8.2.6. Table of air distribution options

The air distribution can be changed manually if required. The following options are available for setting.

	Air distribution	Purpose
	If all air distribution buttons are deselected in manual mode, the climate control system returns to automatically regulated climate control.	
	Main air flow from the defroster vents. Some air flows from other air vents.	Counteracts misting and icing in a cold and humid climate (to achieve this, fan level must not be low).
	Main air flow from the air vents in the instrument panel. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides efficient cooling in a hot climate.
	Main air flow from the air vents at the floor. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides heat or cooling to the floor.
	Main air from the defroster vents and air vents in the instrument panel. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides good comfort in hot and dry climates.
	Main air flow from the defroster vents and air vents at the floor. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides good comfort and good demisting in a cold or humid climate.
	Main air flow from the air vents in the instrument panel and air vents at the floor. Some air flows from other air vents.	Provides good comfort in sunny weather with cool outdoor temperatures.
	Main air flow from the defroster vents, from the air vents in the instrument panel and air vents at the floor.	Gives balanced comfort in the passenger compartment.

8.2.7. Opening, closing and aiming the air vents

Some air vents in the passenger compartment can be opened, closed and aimed individually.

If the car's outer vents are aimed at the side windows then misting can be eliminated.

If the car's outer vents are aimed inwards then, in a hot climate, a comfortable environment is obtained in the passenger compartment.

Opening and closing the air vents

1 Turn the rotary knob in the middle of the air vent to open/close the air flow from the vent.

The air flow is at maximum when the marking on the knob is in vertical position.

Aiming the air vents

1 Move the lever in the middle of the air vent horizontally/vertically to direct the air flow from the vent.

8.3. Parking climate

8.3.1. Preconditioning

8.3.1.1. Preconditioning*

Preconditioning is a climate function which, if possible, attempts to reach comfort temperature in the passenger compartment before departure.

Preconditioning can use direct start or be set via the timer.

The function utilises several systems in different cases:

- In a cold climate, the parking heater* warms up the passenger compartment to a comfortable temperature.
- When it is warm, the climate control ventilates the passenger compartment by blowing in air from outside the car.

> **Note**
>
> In temperatures immediately below comfort temperature, neither ventilation nor heating is activated and no preconditioning is started.

> **Warning**
>
> Never leave children alone in the car, or people unable to exit the car without assistance.

> **Note**
>
> During preconditioning of the passenger compartment, the car works to reach comfort temperature and not the temperature set in the climate control system.

* Option/accessory.

8.3.1.2. Start and switch off preconditioning*

Preconditioning heats* or ventilates the passenger compartment, if possible, prior to driving. The function can use direct start from the centre display or a mobile phone.

Start and switch off from car

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2 Select the **Parking climate** tab.

3 Press **Preconditioning**.

> Preconditioning is started/switched off and the button is illuminates/extinguishes.

Note

The car's doors and windows should be closed during the preconditioning of the passenger compartment.

Warning

Do not use preconditioning if the car is equipped with a heater*:

- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow under the front part of the car can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Start from the mobile app

Starting the pre-conditioning, as well as information on selected settings, can be managed from a device that has Volvo Cars app*. Preconditioning heats* the compartment to the comfort temperature or ventilates the compartment by blowing in air from outside.

The passenger compartment can also be preconditioned with the car remote start function (Engine Remote Start - ERS)[1] via the Volvo Cars app*.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Certain markets.

8.3.1.3. Preconditioning time setting*

The timer can be set so that the preconditioning is finished at a predetermined time.

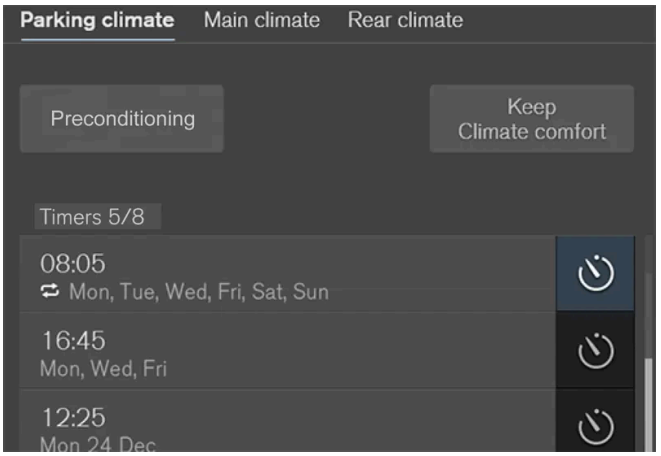
The timer can handle up to 8 different settings for

- a time on a single date
- a time on one or more days of the week, with or without repetition.

* Option/accessory.

8.3.1.4. Activating and deactivating time setting for preconditioning*

A time setting in the timer for preconditioning can be activated or deactivated based on need.

1 

The timer buttons in the **Parking climate** tab in the climate view.

Open the climate view in the centre display.

2 Select the **Parking climate** tab.

3 Activate/deactivate a time setting by tapping on the timer button to the right of the setting.

> The time setting is activated/deactivated and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Warning

Do not use preconditioning if the car is equipped with a fuel-driven heater*:

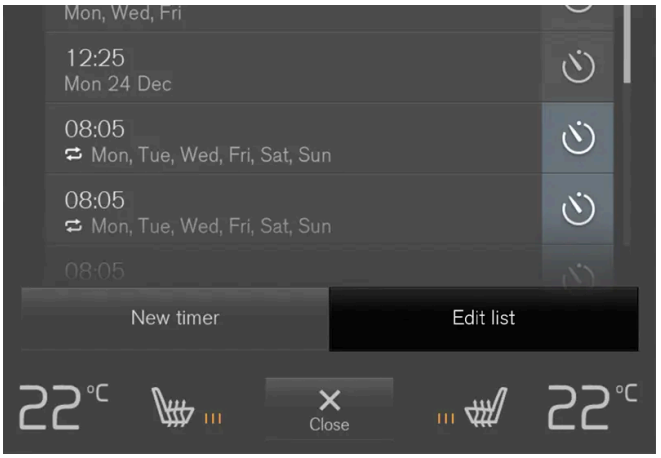
- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow under the front part of the car can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

* Option/accessory.

8.3.1.5. Removing time setting for preconditioning*

A time setting for preconditioning that is no longer required can be deleted.

1 

The button for editing the list/deleting the time setting in the tab **Parking climate** in the climate view.

Open the climate view in the centre display.

2 Select the **Parking climate** tab.

3 Press **Edit list**.

4 Press the delete icon to the right in the list.

> The icon changes to the text **Delete**.

5 Press **Delete** to confirm.

> The time setting is removed from the list.

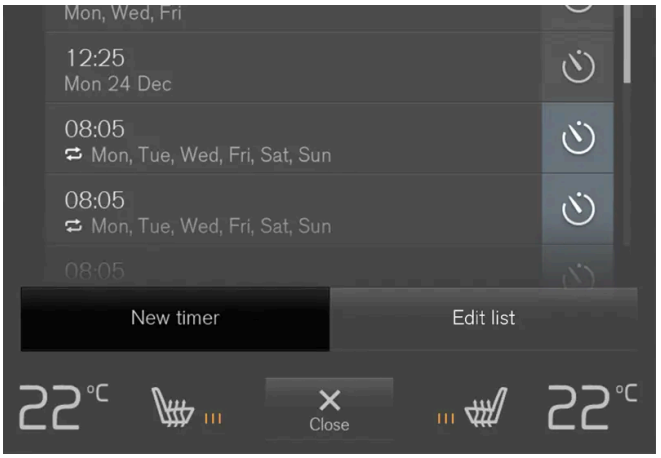
* Option/accessory.

8.3.1.6. Adding and editing time setting for preconditioning*

The timer for preconditioning can manage up to 8 time settings.

Adding a time setting

1



The button to add a time setting in the **Parking climate** tab in the climate view.

Open the climate view in the centre display.

2 Select the **Parking climate** tab.

3 Press **Add timer**.

> A pop-up window is shown.

> **Note**
>
> It is not possible to add a time setting if there already are 8 settings entered for the timer. Delete a time setting in order to be able to add a new one.

4 Tap on **Date** to set the time for a single date.

Tap on **Days** to set the time for one or more days of the week.

With **Days**: Activate/deactivate repetition by ticking/unticking the box for **Repeat weekly**.

5 With **Date**: Select the date for preconditioning by scrolling the date list with the arrows.

With **Days**: Select the days of the week for preconditioning by tapping on the buttons for the days of the week.

6 Set the time when the preconditioning should be finished by scrolling with the arrows.

7 Tap on **Confirm** in order to add the time setting.

> The time setting is added to the list and is activated.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Warning

Do not use preconditioning if the car is equipped with a fuel-driven heater*:

- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow under the front part of the car can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Editing a time setting

1. Open the climate view in the centre display.
2. Select the **Parking climate** tab.
3. Press the time setting that is to be changed.

> A pop-up window is shown.

4. Edit the time setting in the same way as described in "Adding a time setting" above.

* Option/accessory.

8.3.2. Climate comfort for parking

8.3.2.1. Climate comfort when parking*

The climate in the car's passenger compartment can be maintained while the car is parked, e.g. if the engine needs to be switched off but the driver or passenger(s) wants to remain in the car and maintain the level of climate comfort.

Starting climate comfort retention is only possible via direct start from the centre display.

The function utilises several systems in different cases:

- Residual heat from the engine, in a cold climate, heats the passenger compartment to comfort temperature.
- When it is warm, the ventilation cools the passenger compartment by blowing in air from outside the car.

Warning

Never leave children alone in the car, or people unable to exit the car without assistance.

Note

Climate comfort retention is switched off when the car is locked from the outside to avoid using residual heat unnecessarily. Use of the function is intended to maintain climate comfort when driver or passengers remain inside the car.

There is a limit to how long climate comfort can be maintained in a cold climate, which depends on the amount of residual heat available.

* Option/accessory.

8.3.2.2. Starting and switching off climate comfort when parking*

Climate comfort retention maintains the climate in the passenger compartment after driving. The function can use direct start from the centre display.

1

Open climate view in the centre display by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

2 Select the **Parking climate** tab.

3 Press **Keep climate comfort**.

> Climate comfort retention is started/switched off and the button illuminates/extinguishes.

Note

It is not possible to start climate comfort retention if there is not enough residual heat in the engine to maintain the passenger compartment climate, or if the outside temperature is above approx. 20°C (68°F).

Note

Climate comfort retention is switched off when the car is locked from the outside to avoid using residual heat unnecessarily. Use of the function is intended to maintain climate comfort when driver or passengers remain inside the car.

There is a limit to how long climate comfort can be maintained in a cold climate, which depends on the amount of residual heat available.

* Option/accessory.

8.3.3. Parking climate*

Parking climate control is a generic term for various functions that improve the passenger compartment climate when the car is parked, e.g. preconditioning.

Functions belonging to the parking climate control are controlled from the **Parking climate** in climate view in the centre display. Open climate view by pressing the symbol in the middle of the climate row.

* Option/accessory.

8.3.4. Symbols and messages for parking climate control*

A number of symbols and messages regarding parking climate control can be shown in the driver display.

Messages relating to parking climate control can also be displayed in a device which has the Volvo Cars app*.

This symbol illuminates in the driver display when the parking heater is active.[1]

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Parking climate Service required	Parking climate control is disengaged. Contact a workshop[2] to check the function as soon as possible.
	Parking climate Temporarily unavailable	Parking climate control is temporarily disengaged. If the problem persists for some time, contact a workshop[2] to check the function.
	Parking climate Unavailable Fuel level too low	Parking climate control cannot be activated when the fuel level is too low to start the parking heater*. Fill the vehicle's fuel tank.
	Parking climate Unavailable Charge level too low	Parking climate control cannot be activated if the charge level of the starter battery is too low to start the parking heater*. Start the car.
	Parking climate Limited Charge level too low	The running time for parking climate control is limited when the state of charge in the starter battery is low. Start the car.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to fuel-driven heater.

[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

8.3.5. Parking heater*

The parking heater heats the passenger compartment as necessary before driving if the car's preconditioning is activated.

The parking heater is one of two subfunctions of the car's heater. The heater is fitted inside the engine compartment.

When this symbol illuminates in the driver display, the parking heater may be active.

Note

When the heater is running, smoke may be emitted from under the front part of the car and a low hum may be heard. A ticking sound from the fuel pump may also be heard from the rear section of the car. This is perfectly normal.

The parking heater starts automatically if the parking climate's preconditioning* is activated and the passenger compartment needs to be heated up.

Depending on factors such as fuel availability, battery level, passenger compartment temperature and ambient temperature, the heater has different running times, but never longer than 30 minutes.

Note

Make sure there is enough fuel in the car's fuel tank if the parking heater needs to be used.

Make sure that there is enough charge in the starter battery if the parking heater needs to be used.

Important

Repeated use of the parking heater combined with short journeys may discharge the battery and impair starting.

If the heater is used on a regular basis, then the car should be driven for the same amount of time that the heater is used in order to ensure that the car's battery is recharged with the same amount of energy as consumed by the parking heater. In cold climates or if the battery is older, a longer mileage may be required to charge the battery.

Warning

Do not use preconditioning if the car is equipped with a fuel-driven heater*:

- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow under the front part of the car can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Warning

If there is a smell of fuel, unusual amounts of smoke, black smoke, or unusual sounds coming from the parking heater, switch off the heater and, if possible, pull out its fuse. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair.

* Option/accessory.

8.4. Heater

8.4.1. Heater*

The heater has two subfunctions that help to heat the passenger compartment or engine in different situations.

The heater has two subfunctions:

- Parking heater - heats the passenger compartment, if necessary, when the parking climate control's preconditioning is activated.
- Additional heater - heats the passenger compartment and engine, if necessary, during driving.

The heater is fuel-driven and is fitted inside the engine compartment.

> **Note**
>
> When the heater is running[1], smoke may be emitted from under the front part of the car and a low hum may be heard. A ticking sound from the fuel pump may also be heard from the rear section of the car. This is perfectly normal.

Battery and charging

The heater is powered by the car's starter battery. If the charge level of the starter battery is too low, then the heater is switched off automatically and the driver display shows a message.

> **Note**
>
> Make sure that there is enough charge in the battery if the heater needs to be used.

Fuel and refuelling

Warning label on fuel filler flap.

The heater uses fuel from the car's normal fuel tank.

If the car is parked on a steep incline, this may limit the supply of fuel to the heater.

If the level in the fuel tank is too low then the heater is switched off automatically and the driver display shows a message.

> **Note**
>
> Make sure there is enough fuel in the car's fuel tank if the heater needs to be used.

Warning

Fuel which spills out could be ignited. Switch off the fuel-driven heater before starting to refuel.

Check in the driver display that the heater is switched off. This symbol is lit when it is working as a parking heater.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applicable to fuel-driven auxiliary heater.

8.4.2. Parking heater*

The parking heater heats the passenger compartment as necessary before driving if the car's preconditioning is activated.

The parking heater is one of two subfunctions of the car's heater. The heater is fitted inside the engine compartment.

When this symbol illuminates in the driver display, the parking heater may be active.

Note

When the heater is running, smoke may be emitted from under the front part of the car and a low hum may be heard. A ticking sound from the fuel pump may also be heard from the rear section of the car. This is perfectly normal.

The parking heater starts automatically if the parking climate's preconditioning* is activated and the passenger compartment needs to be heated up.

Depending on factors such as fuel availability, battery level, passenger compartment temperature and ambient temperature, the heater has different running times, but never longer than 30 minutes.

Note

Make sure there is enough fuel in the car's fuel tank if the parking heater needs to be used.

Make sure that there is enough charge in the starter battery if the parking heater needs to be used.

Important

Repeated use of the parking heater combined with short journeys may discharge the battery and impair starting.

If the heater is used on a regular basis, then the car should be driven for the same amount of time that the heater is used in order to ensure that the car's battery is recharged with the same amount of energy as consumed by the parking heater. In cold climates or if the battery is older, a longer mileage may be required to charge the battery.

Warning

Do not use preconditioning if the car is equipped with a fuel-driven heater*:

- In unventilated spaces indoors. Exhaust gases are emitted if the heater starts.
- In locations with combustible or flammable material nearby. Fuel, gas, long grass, sawdust, etc. may ignite.
- When there is a risk that the heater's exhaust line may be blocked. For example, deep snow under the front part of the car can obstruct the heater's ventilation.

Warning

If there is a smell of fuel, unusual amounts of smoke, black smoke, or unusual sounds coming from the parking heater, switch off the heater and, if possible, pull out its fuse. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted for repair.

* Option/accessory.

8.4.3. Additional heater*

The auxiliary heater helps to heat the passenger compartment and engine while driving.

The additional heater is one of two subfunctions of the car's heater. The heater is fitted inside the engine compartment.

Note

When the heater is running, smoke may be emitted from under the front part of the car and a low hum may be heard. A ticking sound from the fuel pump may also be heard from the rear section of the car. This is perfectly normal.

The additional heater starts and is controlled automatically when heating is required while the car is being driven.

It switches off automatically when the car is switched off.

Note

Make sure there is enough fuel in the car's fuel tank if the auxiliary heater needs to be used.

* Option/accessory.

8.4.4. Activating and deactivating automatic start of auxiliary heater*

The auxiliary heater helps to heat the passenger compartment and engine while driving.

It is possible to set whether automatic start for the additional heater should be activated/deactivated.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Climate**.
3. Select **Additional Heater** to activate/deactivate automatic start of the additional heater.

Note

Volvo recommends that the automatic start for the additional heater should be switched off for short driving distances.

* Option/accessory.

8.5. Climate

The car is equipped with electronic climate control. The climate control system cools or heats as well as dehumidifies the air in the passenger compartment.

All climate control system functions are controlled from the centre display and physical buttons in the centre console.

Some functions for the rear seat can also be controlled from the climate controls* at the rear of the tunnel console.

> **Note**
>
> If necessary, the climate control can be used to cool the media system in the centre display. In these cases, the message **Climate system Cooling the infotainment system** is shown in the driver display.

* Option/accessory.

8.6. Controlling climate control with voice control[1]

Commands for voice control of the climate control system in order to e.g. change temperature, activate a heated seat* or change fan level.

Tap on and say one of the following commands:

- "**Climate**" - starts a dialogue for climate control and shows examples of commands.
- "**Set temperature to X degrees**" - sets the desired temperature.
- "**Raise temperature**"/"**Lower temperature**" - raise/lower the temperature setting one step.
- "**Sync temperature**" - synchronises the temperature* for all climate zones in the car with the temperature set for the driver's side.
- "**Air on feet**"/"**Air on body**" - opens the desired air flow.
- "**Air on feet off**"/"**Air on body off**" - closes the desired air flow.
- "**Set fan to max**"/"**Turn off fan**" - changes the air flow to **Max**/**Off**.
- "**Raise fan speed**"/"**Lower fan speed**" - raises/lowers the fan level one step.
- "**Turn on auto**" - activates automatic climate regulation.
- "**Air condition on**"/"**Air condition off**" - activates/deactivates the air conditioning.
- "**Recirculation on**"/"**Recirculation off**" - activates/deactivates the air circulation.
- "**Turn on defroster** "/"**Turn off defroster**" - activates/deactivates defrosting of windows and door mirrors.
- "**Turn on max defroster**"/"**Turn max defroster off**" - activates/deactivates the max defroster.
- "**Turn on electric defroster**"/"**Turn off electric defroster**" - activates/deactivates the heated windscreen*.
- "**Turn on rear defroster**"/"**Turn off rear defroster**" - activates/deactivates the heated rear window and door mirrors.
- "**Turn steering wheel heat on**"/"**Turn steering wheel heat off**" - activates/deactivates the heated steering wheel*.
- "**Raise steering wheel heat**"/"**Lower steering wheel heat**" - raises/lowers the setting for the heated steering wheel* one step.
- "**Turn on seat heat**"/"**Turn off seat heat**" – activates/deactivates the heated driver seat*.
- "**Raise seat heat**"/"**Lower seat heat**" - raises/lowers the setting level for the heated driver seat* one step.

Note

Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

* Option/accessory.

8.7. Servicing the climate control system

The air conditioning system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Troubleshooting and repair

The air conditioning system contains fluorescent tracing agents. Ultraviolet light is used for leak detection.

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.

The car's climate control system uses a freon-free refrigerant, either R1234yf or R134a depending on market. Information about which refrigerant the car's climate control system uses is printed on a decal located on the inside of the bonnet.

Warning

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. Service and repair of the system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians.

Warning

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R1234yf. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repair of the refrigerant system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

8.8. Climate control - sensors

The climate control system has a number of sensors to help control the climate in the car. Do not cover or block the sensors with clothing or other objects.

Sensor location

1 Sun sensor - on the upper side of the instrument panel.

2 Moisture sensor - in the casing by the interior rearview mirror.

3 Outside temperature sensor - in the right-hand door mirror.

4 Temperature sensor for the passenger compartment - by the physical buttons in the centre console.

With the Interior Air Quality System* there is also an air quality sensor that is fitted into the climate control system air intake.

* Option/accessory.

8.9. Climate zones

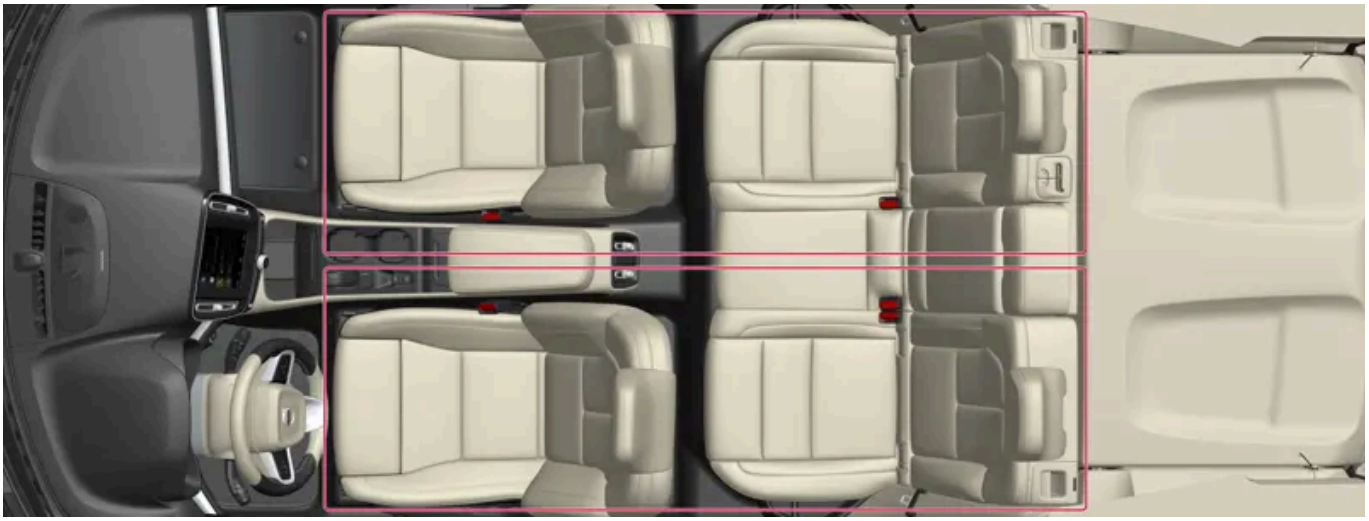
The number of climate zones that the car is divided into governs the options for setting different temperatures for different parts of the passenger compartment.

1-zone climate

Climate zones with 1-zone climate.

With 1-zone climate, the temperature in the passenger compartment is set jointly for the left and right-hand sides.

2-zone climate*



Climate zones with 2-zone climate.

With 2-zone climate, the temperature in the passenger compartment can be set separately for the left and right-hand sides.

* Option/accessory.

8.10. Perceived temperature

The climate control system regulates the climate in the passenger compartment based on the perceived temperature, not on actual temperature.

The temperature you select in the passenger compartment corresponds to the physically perceived temperature as affected by factors such as the ambient temperature, air speed, humidity, solar radiation, etc. in and around the car at the time.

The system includes a sun sensor which detects on which side the sun is shining into the passenger compartment. This means that the temperature can differ between the right and left-hand side's air vents despite the controls being set for the same temperature on both sides.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

9. Key, locks and alarm

9.1. Remote control key

9.1.1. Driver profiles

9.1.1.1. Driver profiles

Many of the settings made in the car can be adapted according to the driver's personal preferences and can be saved in one or more driver profiles.

The number of driver profiles in the car is the same as the number of keys, plus one extra guest profile. The personal settings are automatically saved in the active driver profile. Every key, apart from Care Key, can be linked to a personal driver profile. When the linked key is used, the car is adapted to the settings of that specific driver profile. Care Key is always linked to the Care Key profile, as well as the speed limit set for it. This profile cannot be protected as personal. This also applies to the guest profile, which cannot be protected or linked to a key.

What settings are saved in the driver profiles?

Many of the settings defined in the car will be saved automatically in the active driver profile unless the profile is protected. In the car, the settings defined are either personal or global. Only personal settings are saved in driver profiles.

Settings that can be saved in a driver profile include, amongst other things, screens, mirrors, front seats, navigation*, audio and media system, language and voice control.

Some settings, referred to as global settings, can be changed but are not saved to a specific driver profile. Changes to global settings affect all profiles.

Global settings

The global settings are not changed when changing between driver profiles. They remain the same regardless of which driver profile is active.

Keyboard layout settings are an example of global settings. If driver profile X is used to add additional languages to the keyboard, these remain available for use even if driver profile Y is used. The keyboard layout settings are not saved to a specific driver profile - the settings are global.

Personal preferences

If driver profile X was used to e.g. set centre display brightness, driver profile Y is not affected by this setting. It has been saved to driver profile X - the brightness setting is a personal setting.

* Option/accessory.

9.1.1.2. Renaming a driver profile

It is possible to change the name of the different driver profiles used in the car. A profile that is linked to Care Key cannot be renamed.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System** → **Driver Profiles**.
3. Select **Edit Profile**.

> A menu opens, where the profile can be edited.

4. Tap in the box **Profile Name**.

> A keyboard appears, and it is possible to change the name. Tap on ▽ to close the keyboard.

5. Save the name change by pressing **Back** or **Close**.

> The name has now been changed.

> **Note**
>
> A profile name cannot start with a space, as the profile name will not then be saved.

9.1.1.3. Link key to driver profile

It is possible to link your key to a driver profile. The driver profile along with all of its settings will then be automatically selected every time the car is used with that specific key.

The first time the key is used, it is not linked to any specific driver profile. When the car is started, the **Guest** profile will automatically be activated.

A driver profile can be selected manually without linking it to the key. When the car is unlocked, the last active driver profile is activated. Once the key has been linked to a driver profile, a driver profile does not need to be selected when that specific key is used.

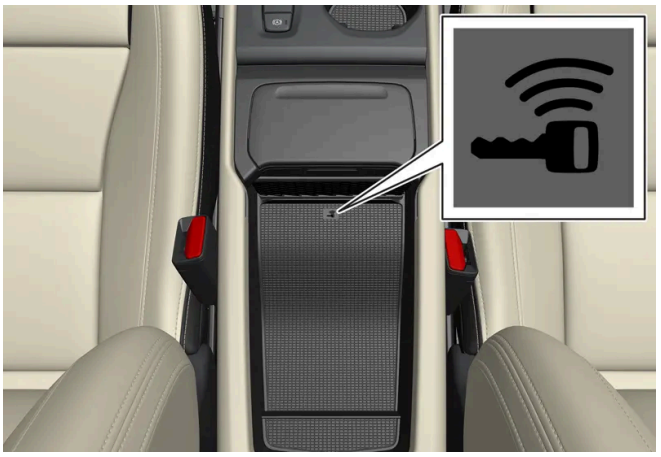
Link key to a driver profile

> **Note**
>
> A key can only be linked to a driver profile when the car is stationary.

First select the profile to be linked to the key, if the profile to be linked is not already active. The active profile can then be linked to the key.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System** → **Driver Profiles**.
3. Select the desired profile. The display returns to the home view. The **Guest** profile cannot be linked to a key.
4. Drag down the top view again and tap on **Settings** → **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Edit Profile**.
5. Select **Connect key** to link the profile with the key. It is not possible to link a driver profile to a different key than the one currently being used in the car. If there are multiple keys in the car, the message **More than one key is found, put the key**

you want to connect on backup reader will be displayed.



The backup reader's location in the storage compartment.

> When the message **Profile connected to key** is shown, the key and the driver profile are linked.

6 Press **OK**.

> This key is now linked to the driver profile and will remain linked as long as the **Connect key** box is not unticked.

9.1.1.4. Protect driver profile

In some cases it is preferable not to save various settings defined in the car to the active driver profile. In this case, it is possible to protect the driver profile. A profile that is linked to Care Key cannot be protected.

> **Note**
>
> Protecting a driver profile is only possible when the car is stationary.

To protect a driver profile:

1 Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.

2 Press **System** → **Driver Profiles**.

3 Select **Edit Profile**.

> A menu opens, where the profile can be edited.

4 Select **Protect Profile** to protect the profile.

5 Save your profile protection option by pressing **Back**/**Close**.

> When the profile is protected, settings defined in the car will not be saved automatically to the profile. Instead, your changes must be saved manually under **Settings** → **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Edit Profile** by pressing **Save current settings to the profile**. When the profile is unprotected, on the other hand, your settings will be saved automatically to the

profile. Changes can be saved to a protected profile by dragging down the top view in the centre display, tapping **Driver Profiles** and then tapping the Save icon.

9.1.1.5. Selecting driver profile

When the centre display has been started, the selected driver profile is shown at the top of the screen. The driver profile last used is the one that will be active next time the car is unlocked. It is possible to change to another driver profile after the car has been unlocked. However, if the key has been linked to a driver profile then this is what is selected when the car is started.

There are three options for changing to another driver profile.

Option 1:

1. Tap on the name of the driver profile shown in the top of the centre display when the display has been started.

> A list of selectable driver profiles is shown.

2. Select the driver profile required.
3. Press **Confirm**.

> The driver profile is selected and the system loads the settings for the new driver profile.

Option 2:

1. Drag down the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **Profile**.

> The same list as for Option 1 is shown.

3. Select the driver profile required.
4. Press **Confirm**.

> The driver profile is selected and the system loads the settings for the new driver profile.

Option 3:

1. Drag down the top view in the centre display.

2 Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.

3 Press **System** → **Driver Profiles**.

> A list of selectable driver profiles is shown.

4 Select the driver profile required.

> The driver profile is selected and the system loads the settings for the new driver profile.

9.1.1.6. Resetting settings in the driver profiles

Settings that have been saved to one or more driver profiles can be reset if the car is stationary.

> **Note**
>
> **Factory reset** is only possible when the car is stationary.

1 Press **Settings** in the top view.

2 Press **System** → **Factory reset** → **Reset Personal Settings**.

3 Select one of the options **Reset for the active profile**, **Reset for all profiles** or **Cancel**.

9.1.2. Link key to driver profile

It is possible to link your key to a driver profile. The driver profile along with all of its settings will then be automatically selected every time the car is used with that specific key.

The first time the key is used, it is not linked to any specific driver profile. When the car is started, the **Guest** profile will automatically be activated.

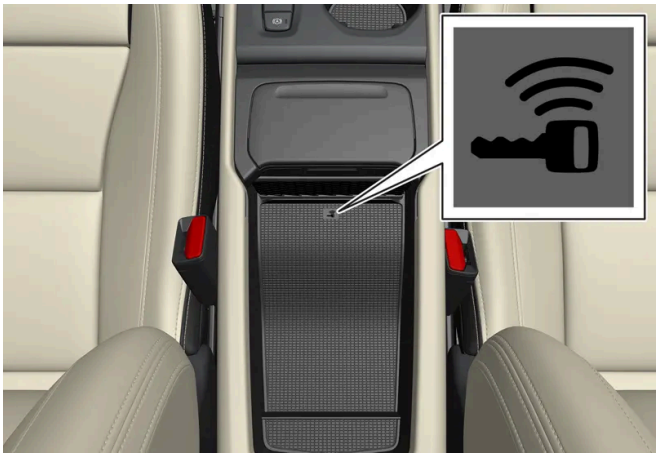
A driver profile can be selected manually without linking it to the key. When the car is unlocked, the last active driver profile is activated. Once the key has been linked to a driver profile, a driver profile does not need to be selected when that specific key is used.

Link key to a driver profile

> **Note**
>
> A key can only be linked to a driver profile when the car is stationary.

First select the profile to be linked to the key, if the profile to be linked is not already active. The active profile can then be linked to the key.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.
2. Press **System** → **Driver Profiles**.
3. Select the desired profile. The display returns to the home view. The **Guest** profile cannot be linked to a key.
4. Drag down the top view again and tap on **Settings** → **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Edit Profile**.
5. Select **Connect key** to link the profile with the key. It is not possible to link a driver profile to a different key than the one currently being used in the car. If there are multiple keys in the car, the message **More than one key is found, put the key you want to connect on backup reader** will be displayed.



The backup reader's location in the storage compartment.

> When the message **Profile connected to key** is shown, the key and the driver profile are linked.

6. Press **OK**.

> This key is now linked to the driver profile and will remain linked as long as the **Connect key** box is not unticked.

9.1.3. Immobiliser

The electronic immobiliser is a theft protection system that prevents starting the car without the correct key.

The following error message in the driver display is related to the electronic immobiliser:

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Car key not found	Error reading the key during starting - place the key on the key symbol in the centre console's storage compartment and try again.

9.1.4. Keys

The car's keys lock and unlock the car. When a key is within the front part of the passenger compartment, the car can be started.

Available key types are standard key, Key Tag*, and Care Key.[1]

The standard key and Care Key are equipped with buttons. Additional keys to the number included as standard can be ordered. For cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*, a slightly smaller, lighter and button-less key (Key Tag) can be purchased as an accessory.

To start the car, a key needs to be within the front part of the passenger compartment.

For cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking (Passive Entry)* the key can be anywhere in the car to start the car.

These keys can be linked to different driver profiles to save personal preferences in the car. Care Key is linked to a specific driver profile that is more restricted.

> **Warning**
>
> The key contains a button cell battery. Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children. If someone swallows a battery it may cause serious injury.
>
> If damage is discovered, e.g. if the battery cover cannot be closed properly, then the product should not be used. Keep defective products out of the reach of children.

Key buttons

The key has four buttons - one on the left-hand side and three on the right-hand side.

Locking - Pressing the button locks the doors, tailgate and fuel filler flap and also arms the alarm*.

A longer press closes all windows as well as the panoramic roof*.

A longer press closes all windows as well as the sunroof*.

Unlocking - Pressing the button unlocks the doors, tailgate and fuel filler flap and also deactivates the alarm.

A longer press opens all windows simultaneously. For example, it can be used to quickly air a hot car.

Tailgate - Unlocks the tailgate only and disarms its alarm. On cars with power operated tailgate*, the tailgate is opened automatically when the button is held depressed. The tailgate is also closed with a long press – acoustic warning signals sound.

Panic function - Used to attract attention in an emergency. Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press it twice within 3 seconds to activate the car's direction indicators and the horn. The function can be turned off with the same button once it has been active for at least 5 seconds. Otherwise the function switches off automatically after 3 minutes.

> **Warning**
>
> If anyone is left in the car, make sure the power windows and panoramic roof* are de-energised by always taking the key with you when you leave the car.

Note

A key that has been locked in the car is temporarily deactivated and cannot be used before the car has been unlocked using another valid key. The double lock function is also deactivated.

Button-less key (Key Tag)*

A Key Tag can be ordered as an accessory for cars equipped with the keyless locking and unlocking function. Starting as well as keyless locking and unlocking work in the same way as with the standard key. The key is waterproof to a depth of approx. 10 metres (30 feet) for up to 60 minutes. It does not have extending key blade, and the battery cannot be replaced.

Care Key restricted key

A Care Key makes it possible to set a limit for the speed of the car when that particular key is used. The limitation is intended to encourage the car to be driven in a safe manner, e.g. when being loaned out.

If the active key is removed from the car

If the key is removed from the car when the engine is running, the warning message, **Car key not foundRemoved from car**, is shown in the driver display and an acoustic reminder sounds when the last door is closed.

The message disappears when the key is returned to the car, followed by a press of the right-hand keypad's O button, or when all of the doors have been closed.

Interference

Key functions for keyless starting and keyless locking and unlocking* can be disrupted by electromagnetic fields and screening.

Note

Avoid storing the car's keys close to metal objects or electronics (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers). Preferably no closer than 10-15 cm (4-6 inches).

If there is still interference - use the key's detachable key blade to unlock. Then place the key in the back-up reader in the tunnel console's storage compartment to disarm the alarm and allow the car to be started.

Note

When the key shall be read by the back-up reader, make sure that the storage compartment is separate from other nearby car keys, metal objects and electronics (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers). These objects may disrupt the functions.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

9.1.5. Ordering additional keys

If a key is lost or you need more keys than the standard number, it is possible to order new keys. If the car is equipped with keyless locking and unlocking* a button-less key (Key Tag) can also be ordered.

A total of twelve keys can be programmed and used for one single car. If additional keys are ordered, additional driver profiles are added – one per new key. This also applies for the key tag.

If you lose a key

If you lose a key then a new one can be ordered through a Volvo dealer or an authorised Volvo workshop. The code of the missing key must be erased from the system as a theft prevention measure. Access to all remaining keys is required during a workshop visit.

The current number of keys registered to the car can be checked via driver profiles in the centre display's top view – select **Settings** → **System** → **Driver Profiles**.

* Option/accessory.

9.1.6. Replacing the battery in the key

The battery in the key can be replaced when it has discharged. The service life of the battery depends on how much the key is used. The Key Tag* battery cannot be replaced.

The key's battery needs to be replaced when the information symbol is illuminated and the **Car key battery low** message is shown in the driver display.

Another sign that the battery level is low is decreased range for the key.

The battery in the button-less key (Key Tag)* cannot be replaced - a new key can be ordered from an authorised Volvo workshop.

> **Important**
>
> Hand in a discharged Key Tag to an authorised Volvo workshop where it can be deleted from the car's system. The key can still be used to start the car via back-up start when the battery has been discharged.

Opening the key and changing its battery

> **Important**
>
> Avoid touching the contact surfaces of a new battery with your fingers. This impairs the battery's functionality.

Hold the key so that its front with the Volvo logotype is facing up, and with the keyring bracket facing you.

There is a catch on the left of the keyring bracket. If it is on the wrong side then the front and rear have been mixed up when the battery was replaced on an earlier occasion.

1 **1**

Slide the catch by the keyring bracket to the side, and slide the front shell away from the bracket.

> The shell detaches and can be lifted off.
> There is a further catch under the shell to detach the rear.

2 **2**

Slide the catch that was behind the front shell to the side, and slide the rear shell away from the key ring bracket.

> The shell detaches and can be lifted off.
> The battery cover is under the shell.

3 **3**

Turn the battery cover anticlockwise to OPEN position. Use a screwdriver or a coin, for example.

Lift off the battery cover. If it is difficult to detach, you can prize it upward using a narrow tool.

4 4

The battery (+) side is facing upwards. Loosen the battery by pressing on its edge and then lifting it out.

5 5

Install a new battery with the (+) side up. Avoid touching the key's battery contacts with your fingers.

Position the edge of the battery under the two outer plastic catches.

Then press down on the battery so that it is held in place by the upper plastic catch.

> **Note**
>
> Use batteries with the designation CR2032, 3 V.

> **Note**
>
> Volvo recommends that replacement batteries for the key meet UN Manual of Test and Criteria, Part III, sub-section 38.3. The batteries that are included or the batteries used for replacement by an authorised Volvo workshop will meet the same criterion.

6 6

Refit the battery cover and turn clockwise to CLOSE position.

7 7

Refit the rear shell in reverse order to how it was removed. There is no logotype on the rear shell. Press in the shell until you hear a click, and then slide it the last few millimetres to its original position.

> A further click will indicate that the shell is properly positioned and securely attached.
There must be no gaps remaining.

8 8

Turn the key and refit the front shell in the same way as for the rear.

Warning

Check that the battery is fitted correctly with the correct polarity. If the key shall not been used for a long time, remove the battery to avoid battery leakage and damage. Batteries with damage or leaks may cause corrosive injury on contact with the skin. Therefore, use protective gloves when handling damaged batteries.

- Keep batteries out of the reach of children.
- Do not leave batteries lying around since they can be swallowed by children or pets.
- Batteries must not: be dismantled, short-circuited or thrown into open flames.
- Do not try to charge non-rechargeable batteries. They may explode.
- Check battery operated products for signs of damage on a regular basis.

The key should not be used if anything indicates that the key or its battery has been damaged or has started to leak. Keep defective products out of the reach of children.

Important

Used batteries must be recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

* Option/accessory.

9.1.7. Locking and unlocking using the key's buttons

The buttons on the key can be used to lock and unlock all doors, the tailgate and the fuel filler flap simultaneously.

Locking using the key's buttons

The figure is schematic.

1 Press the button to lock the car.

The driver's door must be closed in order for the lock sequence to be activated[1]. If any of the other doors or the tailgate is open, then these are not locked and their alarms armed* until they are closed. The alarm's movement detectors* are activated when all the doors and the tailgate are closed and locked.

> **Note**
>
> A key that has been locked in the car is temporarily deactivated and cannot be used before the car has been unlocked using another valid key. The double lock function is also deactivated.

Locking when the tailgate is open

> **Note**
>
> If the car has been locked while the tailgate is open, be careful not to leave the key in the cargo area when the tailgate is closed[1].

Unlocking using the key's buttons

1 Press the button to unlock the car.

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within 2 minutes of unlocking, they are locked automatically. This function prevents the car from being left unlocked unintentionally.

If the key is not working

If it is not possible to lock or unlock with the key, the battery may be discharged - in which case, lock or unlock the driver's door with the detachable key blade.

* Option/accessory.

[1] If the car is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking* then all side doors must be closed.

9.1.8. Care Key – restricted key

A Care Key makes it possible for the owner of the car to limit the maximum speed of the car. The limitation is intended to encourage the car to be driven in a safe manner such as when being loaned out, for example.

The button functions for a Care Key are the same as for the standard key but the key is linked to a particular Care Key driver profile with pre-selected settings. Another key needs to be used to change the settings linked to the Care Key and to change to another driver profile.

The restriction that can be set using a Care Key is intended to increase security if the car is entrusted to, for example, a young or inexperienced driver, valet parking or a workshop.

Using Care Key

The restricted profile is activated when the car is unlocked using Care Key, or when the driver door is opened and the car detects a Care Key on the driver's side. The Care Key profile can also be activated via the menu when you choose a driver profile. This way, the standard key does not need to be removed.

To then activate a normal driver profile, the car must be unlocked using a key without restrictions.

Indication in driver display

A symbol in the driver display indicates when a Care Key is being used. A red dash on the speedometer shows the selected speed limitation.

Symbol	Specification
	Speed limitation is active.

9.1.9. Settings for Care Key

Changes to the Care Key profile in the centre display can only be made using another key.

Setting options

The following limitations are available to be set:

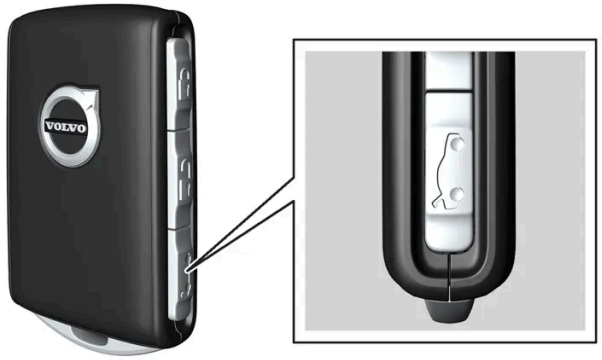
- Speed interval: 50-180 km/h (30-112 mph)
- Increments: 1 km/h (1 mph)

Setting

1. Unlock the car using a key other than a Care Key.
2. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
3. Press **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Care Key**.
4. Tick the box for activating limitation and set the required limitation.

9.1.10. Unlocking the tailgate with a key button

There is a button on the key to unlock the tailgate only.



1 Press the key's button.

> The tailgate is unlocked and can be opened from the outside.
The side doors are still locked and the alarm is armed*. The lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel extinguishes in order to show that the entire car is not locked.
If the tailgate is not opened within 2 minutes then it is relocked and the alarm is re-armed.

Power operated tailgate*

1 Hold the key's button depressed for a couple of seconds.

> The tailgate is unlocked and opened, while the side doors remain locked and their alarm functions armed*.

Note

If the system for the power operated tailgate* works continuously for a long time, it is deactivated in order not to overload it. It can be used again after a few minutes.

* Option/accessory.

9.1.11. Detachable key blade

The standard key contains a detachable key blade in metal with several different functions.

The key blade's unique code is provided by authorised Volvo workshops, which are recommended when ordering new key blades.

The key blade's application areas

Using the key's detachable key blade, the following are possible:

- the left-hand[1] front door can be opened manually if central locking cannot be activated by pressing a button
- all doors are emergency-locked
- the rear doors' mechanical child lock can be activated and deactivated.

If the key blade has been used to unlock the car, the alarm can be disarmed and the car started by placing the key in the back-up reader in the tunnel console's storage compartment.

The Key Tag accessory does not have a detachable key blade.

Taking out the key blade

Hold the key so that its front with the Volvo logotype is facing up, and with the keyring bracket facing you.

There is a catch on the left of the keyring bracket. If it is on the wrong side then the front and rear have been mixed up when they were assembled on an earlier occasion.

1 1

Slide the catch by the keyring bracket to the side, and slide the front shell away from the bracket.

> The shell detaches and can be lifted off.

2 2

Remove the key blade.

3 3

Refit the front shell in reverse order to how it was removed. Press in the shell until you hear a click, and then slide it the last few millimetres to its original position.

> A further click will indicate that the shell is properly positioned and securely attached.
There must be no gaps remaining.

[1] This applies whether the car is left-hand drive or right-hand drive.

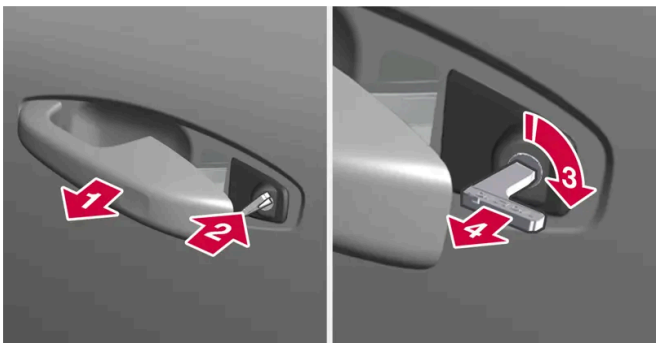
9.1.12. Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade

The detachable key blade can be used to unlock one of the car's doors from the outside – such as if the battery in the key is discharged.

Unlocking with the key blade

> **Note**
>
> When the door is unlocked using the key blade and is then opened, the alarm is triggered. The alarm must be deactivated manually – it may be a good idea to read that section before opening the car.

1



1

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Pull out the front door's handle on the left-hand side of the car to its end position.[1]

> The keyhole should now be visible inside the handle.

2 2
Insert the key.

3 3
Turn clockwise 45 degrees so that the key is pointing straight back.

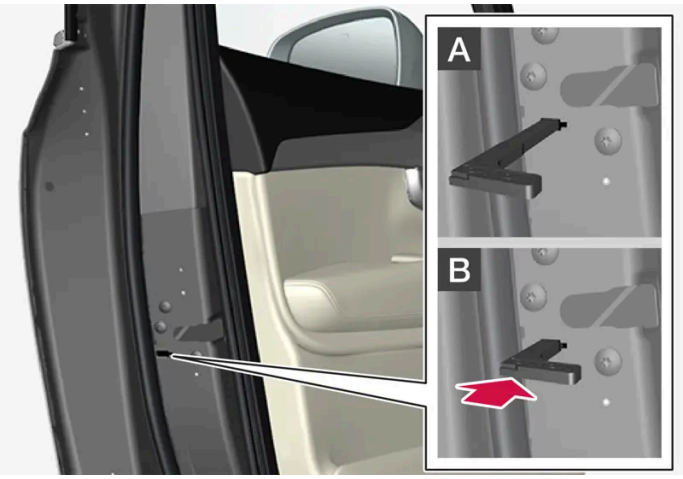
4 4
Turn the key back 45 degrees to its starting position and remove it.

> The door can be opened using the handle.

Locking with the key blade

The left-hand front door can be locked using the detachable key blade.

Other doors have a lock reset on the end face that must be pressed in using the key blade. Then they are mechanically locked against opening from the outside, but can be opened from the inside.



Manual locking of the door. Not to be mixed up with child locks.

1 Remove the detachable key blade from the key with buttons.

2 Insert the key blade in the hole for lock reset.

3 Press in the key until it bottoms – approximately 12 mm (0.5 inches).

A The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

B The door is blocked against opening from the outside. To return to position A, the inner door handle must be opened.

Note

- A door's lock reset only locks that particular door - not all doors simultaneously.
- A manually locked rear door with enabled child lock cannot be opened from either insider or outside. Unlocking is possible using the buttons on the key, the central locking button, the keyless locking system* or by using the Volvo Cars app.

[1] This applies whether the car is right-hand drive or left-hand drive.

* Option/accessory.

9.1.13. The key's range

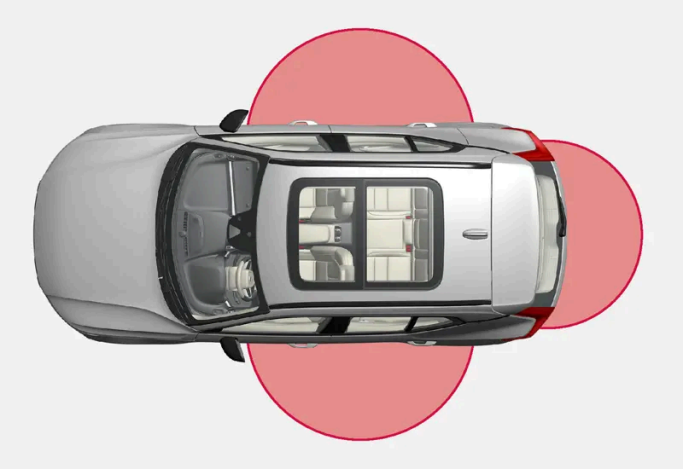
In order for the key to work properly, it needs to be within a certain distance from the car.

Using the key's buttons

The key's functions that are controlled by pressing a button have a range of approx. 20 metres (65 feet) from the car.

If the car does not verify a button being pressed - move closer and try again.

For keyless* use



For keyless use, a key must be within a distance of approx. 1 to 1.5 metres (3 to 5 feet) from the car's doors or tailgate.

Note

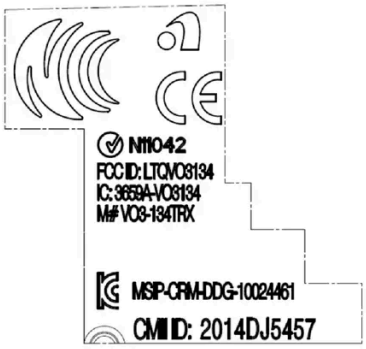
The key functions may be disrupted by surrounding radio waves, buildings, topographical conditions, etc. The car can always be locked/unlocked with the key blade.

* Option/accessory.

9.1.14. Type approval for the remote control key system

Type approval for the car's remote key system can be seen in the following tables.

Lock system keyless start (Passive Start) and keyless locking/unlocking (Passive Entry*)

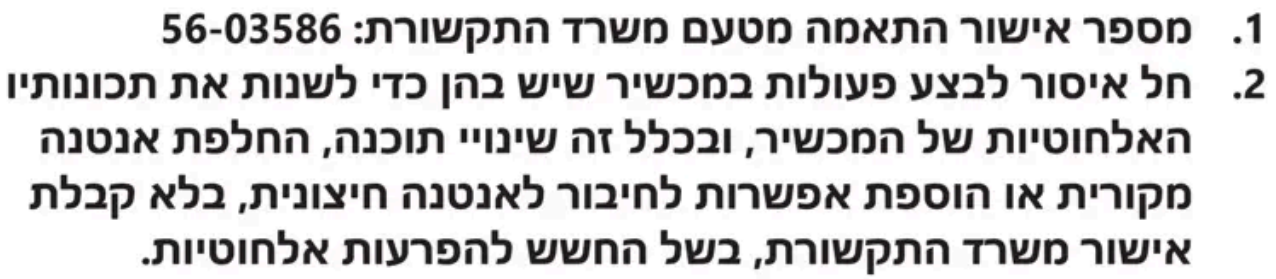


CEM marking for the remote control key system. For supplementary type approval numbers, see following tables.

Country/Area	Type approval	
Argentina	CNC ID: C-14771	
Brazil	ICC 03.040/2024 Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados.	ANATEL 04691-16-06830
Europe	Delphi Deutschland GmbH, 42367 Wuppertal hereby declares that this CV1-134TRX conforms to the essential property requirements and other relevant provisions contained in directive 2014/53/EU (RED).	
The United Arab Emirates	ER37847/15 DA0062437/11	
Indonesia	Nomor: 38301/SDPPI/2015	
Israel		See Illustration 1 below the table.
Jordan	TRC/LPD/2014/250	
Malaysia		
Mexico	IFETEL: RLVDEVO15-0396	
Namibia	TA-2016-02	CRAN Communications Regulatory Authority of Namibia
Russia		EAC
Serbia	P1614120100	
South Africa	TA-2014-1868	ICASA

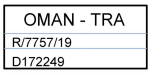
Israel

Illustration 1



Remote control key

Country/Area	Type approval	
Europe	Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co KG hereby declares that this type of radio equipment HUF8423MS conforms to directive 2014/53/EU. Wavelength: 433.92 MHz Maximum radiated transmission power: 10 mW Manufacturer: Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG, Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany	
Argentina		See the illustration below the table.
Brazil	Anatel: 06768-19-06643 Modelo: HUF8423MS Este equipomento opera em caráter secundário isto é não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.	ANATEL
Philippines	ESD-1919938C	NTC Type Approved No.: ESD-1919938C
The United Arab Emirates		TRA REGISTERED No: ER72465/19 DEALER No: DA36976/14
Ghana	NCA Approved: ZRO-M8-7E3-138	
Indonesia [1]	Sertifikat Nomor: 65073/SDPPI/2019 PLG ID: 8093	
CU (Customs Union) Kazakhstan, Russia		EAC
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 20402 ANRT 2019 Date d'agrément: 10/07/2019	
Moldova		024



Country/Area	Type approval	
Nigeria	Connection and use of this communication equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	
Oman		OMAN - TRA R/7757/19 D172249
Paraguay	HUF8423MS	HUF8423MS CONATEL NR:2019-08-I-0447
Serbia		005 19
Singapore	Complies with IMDA Standards DA103787	
South Africa	TA-2019/772	ICASA
Taiwan	本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條、第十四條等條文規定 .1 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不 • 得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能 .2 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾 • 現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用 • 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設 • 備之干擾	
Ukraine	.Справжнім Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co KG заявляє, що тип радіообладнання відповідає Технічному[HUF8423MS] регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст -декларації про відповідність доступний на веб :сайті за такою адресою Робоча частота: 433,92 ГГц	
Vietnam		ICT
Belarus		TP BY
Zambia		ZICTA ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/7/105

Argentina

H-23694

Key Tag

Country/Area	Type approval	
Europe	Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co KG hereby declares that this type of radio equipment HUF8432MS conforms to directive 2014/53/EU. Wavelength: 433.92 MHz Maximum radiated transmission power: 10 mW Manufacturer: Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co. KG, Steeger Str. 17, 42551 Velbert, Germany	
Argentina		See the illustration below the table.
Brazil	Anatel: 04362-16-06643 Modelo: HUF8432MS Este equipo opera em caráter secundário isto é não tem direito a proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário.	ANATEL
Ghana	NCA Approved: ZRO-M8-7E3-139	
Philippines	ESD-1919939C	NTC Type Approved No.: ESD-1919939C
The United Arab Emirates		TRA REGISTERED No: ER72467/19 DEALER No: DA36976/14
CU (Customs Union) Kazakhstan, Russia		EAC
Indonesia [1]	Sertifikat Nomor: 65072/SDPPI/2019 PLG ID: 8093	
Morocco	AGREE PAR L'ANRT MAROC Numéro d'agrément: MR 20403 ANRT 2019 Date d'agrément: 10/07/2019	
Moldova		024

Country/Area	Type approval	
Nigeria	Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission	
Oman		OMAN - TRA R/7758/19 D172249
Paraguay	HUF8432MS	HUF8432MS CONATEL NR:2019-08-I-0448
Serbia		005 19
Singapore	Complies with IMDA Standards DA103787	
South Africa	TA-2019-773	ICASA
Taiwan	本產品符合低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條、第十四條等條文規定 .1 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不 • 得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能 .2 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾 • 現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用 • 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設 • 備之干擾	
Ukraine	.Справжнім Huf Hülsbeck & Fürst GmbH & Co KG заявляє, що тип радіообладнання відповідає Технічному[HUF8432MS] регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст -декларації про відповідність доступний на веб :сайті за такою адресою Робоча частота: 433,92 ГГц	
Vietnam		ICT
Belarus		TP BY
Zambia		ZICTA ZMB/ZICTA/TA/2019/7/121

CNC COMISIÓN NACIONAL DE COMUNICACIONES

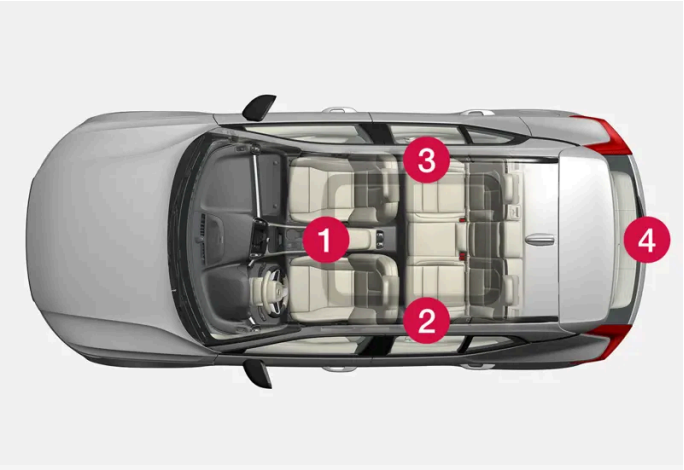
H-23695

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only applies to Indonesia.

9.1.15. Antenna locations for the start and lock systems

An antenna for the keyless starting system and antennas for the keyless locking system* are built into the car.



Antenna locations:

1. In the storage compartment in the tunnel console
2. In the upper front section of the left-hand rear door[1]
3. In the upper front section of the right-hand rear door[1]
4. In the cargo area[1]

Warning

People with an implanted pacemaker should keep it at a distance of at least 22 cm (9 inches) away from the antennas to prevent interference between the pacemaker and the key system.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only in cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*.

9.1.16. Ignition positions

The car's electrical system can be set in different levels/positions and in this way make the different functions available.

In order to facilitate the use of a limited number of functions with the engine switched off, the car's electrical system can be set in three different levels – **0**, **I** and **II**. These levels are described with the denomination "ignition position" throughout the owner's manual.

The following table shows the functions available in each ignition position/level:

Level	Functions
0	• Odometer, clock and temperature gauge are illuminated[1]. • Power* seats can be adjusted. • The centre display is started and can be used[1]. • The infotainment system can be used[1]. In this mode, the functions are controlled by time and are switched off automatically after a short while.
I	• Panoramic roof, power windows, 12V power socket in the passenger compartment, Bluetooth, navigation, phone, ventilation fan and windscreen wipers can be used. • Power seats can be adjusted. • 12 V power sockets* in the cargo area can be used. • The infotainment system is started automatically if it was running when the car was left. **Power is taken from the battery in this ignition position.**
II	• The headlamps come on. • Warning/indicator lamps illuminate for 5 seconds. • Several other systems are activated. However, heating in seat cushions and the rear window can only be activated after the car has been started. **This ignition position consumes a lot of current from the battery and should therefore be avoided!**

[1] Also activated when the door is opened.

* Option/accessory.

9.1.17. Selecting ignition mode

The car's electrical system can be set in different levels/positions and in this way make the different functions available.

Selecting ignition position

Start button location.

- **Ignition position 0** – Unlock the car and store the key inside the car.

> **Note**
>
> To reach level I or II **without** starting the engine - do **not** depress the brake pedal, or the clutch pedal for cars with manual gear changing, when these ignition positions are to be selected.

- **Ignition position I** – Depress the start button and release.
- **Ignition position II** – Press and hold the button depressed for approx. 5 seconds. Then release the button.
- **Back to ignition position0** – To return to ignition position 0 from position I and II – press the start button.

9.2. Locking and unlocking

9.2.1. Keyless locking and unlocking

9.2.1.1. Operating the tailgate with foot movement*

The tailgate can be opened and closed using a foot movement* under the rear bumper. The function makes things easier when your hands are full.

If the car is equipped with keyless locking and unlocking* then you can unlock the tailgate with a foot movement.

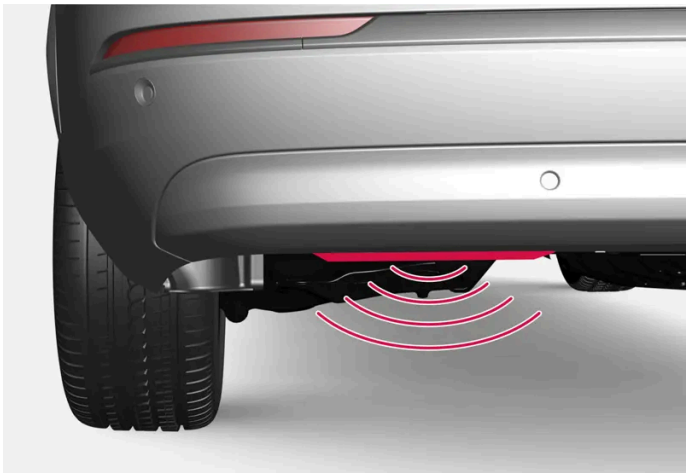
The function with both opening and closing of the tailgate is also available when the car is equipped with power operated tailgate*.

Note

The foot-operated tailgate function is available in two versions:

- Opening and closing with foot movement
- Only unlocking with foot movement (lift up the tailgate manually to open it)

Note that the function for opening and closing with foot movement requires power operated tailgate*.



The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The detector is located on the left-hand side of the bumper.

One of the car's keys must be within range behind the car, approx. 1 metre (3 feet). This also applies when the car is unlocked.

Opening and closing with foot movement

1

Kicking motion within the detector's activation area.

Make **one** forward kicking motion under the left part of the rear bumper. The bumper must not be touched. Then take a step back.

> A short acoustic signal sounds when the tailgate is opened/closed.

If several kicking motions are made without a key within range, the function is deactivated after a while.

Do not leave your foot positioned under the car during the kicking motion. The activation may then fail.

Cancelling opening or closing with foot movement

1 Make **one** forward kicking motion while opening or closing is in progress in order to stop the movement of the tailgate.

The key does not need to be in range to cancel opening or closing.

If the tailgate is stopped just before being fully closed, it will open on the next activation.

Note

Make sure you keep the area around the foot movement detector clean. A build-up of dirt, ice or snow may disrupt its function.

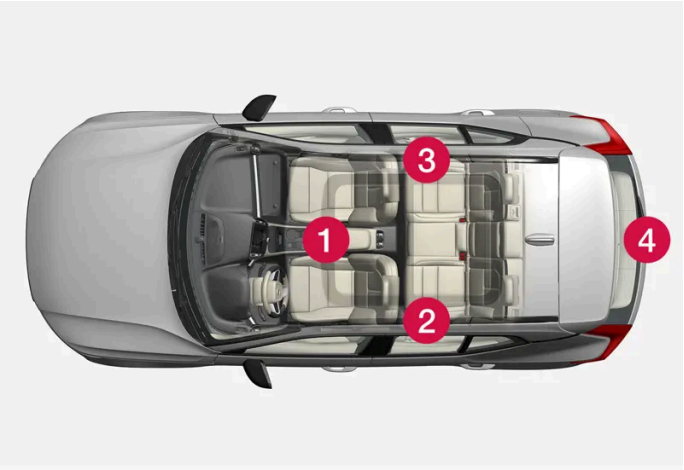
Note

Pay attention to the possibility that the system may be activated in a car wash if the key is within range.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.1.2. Antenna locations for the start and lock systems

An antenna for the keyless starting system and antennas for the keyless locking system* are built into the car.



Antenna locations:

1. In the storage compartment in the tunnel console
2. In the upper front section of the left-hand rear door[1]
3. In the upper front section of the right-hand rear door[1]
4. In the cargo area[1]

Warning

People with an implanted pacemaker should keep it at a distance of at least 22 cm (9 inches) away from the antennas to prevent interference between the pacemaker and the key system.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only in cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*.

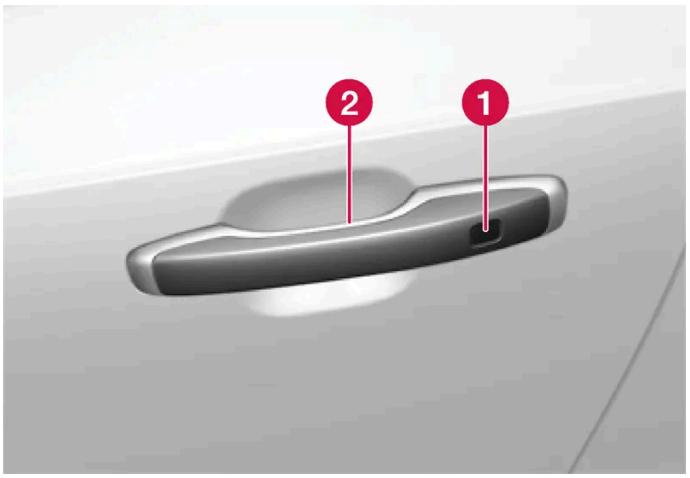
9.2.1.3. Keyless locking and unlocking with touch-sensitive surfaces*

With the keyless locking and unlocking function, just carrying a key in a pocket or bag will suffice. The car is locked or unlocked via a touch-sensitive surface on the door handle.

Touch-sensitive surfaces

Door handle

The outside of the door handles contains a recess for locking, while the inside contains a touch-sensitive surface for unlocking.



1 Touch-sensitive recess for locking

2 Touch-sensitive surface for unlocking

> **Note**
>
> It is important that only one touch-sensitive surface is activated at a time. Gripping the handle while touching the lock surface risks giving double commands. This means that the requested activity (locking/unlocking) will not be executed, or will be executed with a delay.

Tailgate handle

The tailgate handle has a rubberised pressure plate that is only used for unlocking.

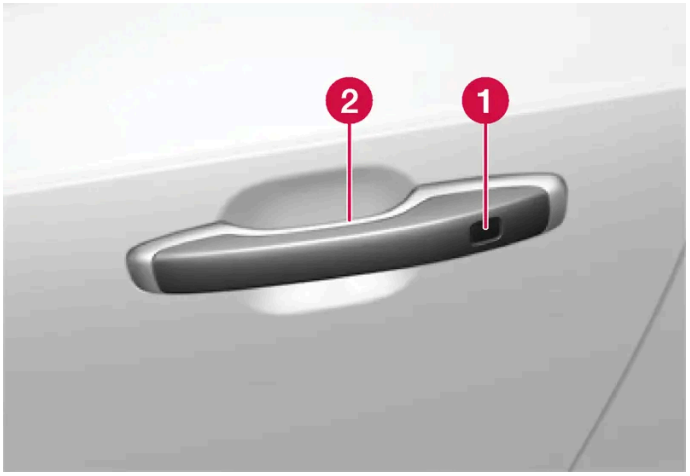
> **Note**
>
> Be aware that the system may be activated in connection with car washing if the key is in range.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.1.4. Keyless locking and unlocking*

With keyless locking and unlocking, it is sufficient to touch the door handle's touch-sensitive surface to lock or unlock the car.

> **Note**
>
> One of the car's keys must be within range for locking and unlocking to work.



1 Touch-sensitive recess for locking

2 Touch-sensitive surface for unlocking

> **Note**
>
> Be aware that the system may be activated in connection with car washing if the key is in range.

Keyless locking

All side doors must be closed to be able to lock the car. The tailgate, on the other hand, can be open when locking the car with a side door handle.

1 Touch the marked surface towards the rear on the outside of a door handle after the door has been closed. Or press the button on the underside of the tailgate before it closes.

> The lock indicator on the instrument panel starts to flash to indicate the car is locked.

To close all side windows and the panoramic roof* simultaneously - place a finger against the touch-sensitive recess on the outside of the door handle and hold it there until all of the side windows and the panoramic roof have been closed.

Locking when the tailgate is open

If the car has been locked and the tailgate is still open, make sure that the key is not left in the cargo area when the tailgate is closed.

> **Note**
>
> If the key is detected inside the car, the tailgate will not lock when it is closed.

Keyless unlocking

1 Grasp a door handle or gently press the rubberised pressure plate beneath the tailgate handle to unlock the car.

> The lock indicator on the instrument panel stops flashing to indicate that the car is unlocked.

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within 2 minutes of unlocking, they are locked automatically. This function prevents the car from being left unlocked unintentionally.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.1.5. Settings for Keyless entry*

You can choose which doors are unlocked when using the keyless unlocking function.

To change setting:

1 Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.

2 Tap on **My Car** → **Locking** → **Keyless Unlock**.

3 Select option:

- **All Doors** - unlocks all doors simultaneously.
- **Single Door** - unlocks selected door.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.1.6. Closing and locking tailgate with button*

The buttons on the lower edge of the tailgate can be used to make the car switch off and lock automatically.

Important

During manual tailgate operation, open or close it slowly. Do not use force to open/close it if there is resistance. It may be damaged and stop working correctly.

Closing[1]

1 Press the button on the underside of the tailgate.

> The tailgate closes automatically and remains unlocked.

Note

- The button is active 24 hours after the hatch has been left open. Thereafter, it must be closed manually.
- If the flap has been open for more than 30 minutes, it will close at a slow speed.

Closing and locking[2]

1 Press the button on the underside of the tailgate.

> The tailgate is closed automatically and the car is locked[3].

Note

- One of the car's keys must be within range for locking and unlocking to work.
- When using keyless* locking or closing, three signals will sound if the key is not sufficiently close to the tailgate.

Cancel closing

- Press the button on the instrument panel.
- Press the key's button.
- Press the closing button on the underside of the tailgate[1].
- Press the rubberised pressure plate beneath the outside handle.
- Using a foot movement*.

The tailgate's movement is interrupted and stops. The tailgate can then be operated manually.

If the tailgate is stopped close to closed position, it will open on the next activation.

Pinch protection

If something with sufficient resistance prevents the tailgate from opening or closing then the pinch protection is activated.

- During opening - movement is interrupted, the tailgate stops and a long acoustic signal sounds.
- During closing - movement is interrupted, the tailgate stops, a long acoustic signal sounds and the tailgate returns to the programmed max. position.

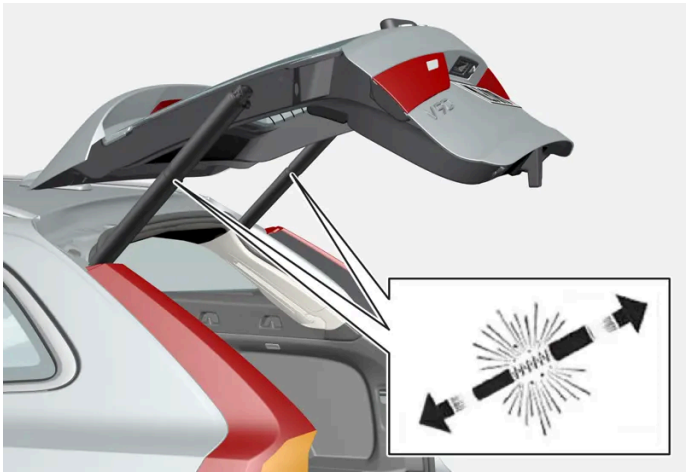
Warning

Watch out for the risk of crushing when opening and closing.

Check that there is nobody near the tailgate before starting to open or close it as a crush injury may have severe consequences.

Always operate the tailgate with caution.

Pre-tensioned springs



The pre-tensioned springs for the power operated tailgate.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not open the pre-tensioned springs for the power operated tailgate. They are pre-tensioned with high pressure and can cause injury if opened.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to cars with power operated boot lid.

[2] Applies to cars with keyless locking/unlocking and power operated tailgate.

[3] All doors must be closed for locking the car.

9.2.1.7. Keyless unlocking of the tailgate*

With keyless locking and unlocking, it is sufficient to press lightly on the rubberised pressure plate underneath on the tailgate handle to unlock.

> **Note**
>
> One of the car's keys must be within range behind the car for unlocking to work.

The tailgate is held closed by an electrical lock.

To open:

1 Press gently on the rubberised pressure plate beneath the tailgate handle.

> The lock is released.

2 Lift by the outside handle in order to open the tailgate.

> **Important**
>
> - Handle the rubber panel with care to avoid damage to its electrical contact. Minimal force is required for activation.
> - Do not exert the lifting force on the rubber panel when opening – lift the handle.

It is also possible to unlock the tailgate with a foot movement* under the rear bumper, see separate section.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not drive with an open tailgate! Toxic exhaust fumes could be drawn into the car through the cargo area.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.2. Keys

The car's keys lock and unlock the car. When a key is within the front part of the passenger compartment, the car can be started.

Available key types are standard key, Key Tag*, and Care Key. [1]

The standard key and Care Key are equipped with buttons. Additional keys to the number included as standard can be ordered. For cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*, a slightly smaller, lighter and button-less key (Key Tag) can be purchased as an accessory.

To start the car, a key needs to be within the front part of the passenger compartment.

For cars equipped with keyless locking and unlocking (Passive Entry)* the key can be anywhere in the car to start the car.

These keys can be linked to different driver profiles to save personal preferences in the car. Care Key is linked to a specific driver profile that is more restricted.

Warning

The key contains a button cell battery. Keep new and used batteries out of the reach of children. If someone swallows a battery it may cause serious injury.

If damage is discovered, e.g. if the battery cover cannot be closed properly, then the product should not be used. Keep defective products out of the reach of children.

Key buttons

The key has four buttons - one on the left-hand side and three on the right-hand side.

Locking - Pressing the button locks the doors, tailgate and fuel filler flap and also arms the alarm*.

A longer press closes all windows as well as the panoramic roof*.

A longer press closes all windows as well as the sunroof*.

Unlocking - Pressing the button unlocks the doors, tailgate and fuel filler flap and also deactivates the alarm.

A longer press opens all windows simultaneously. For example, it can be used to quickly air a hot car.

Tailgate - Unlocks the tailgate only and disarms its alarm. On cars with power operated tailgate*, the tailgate is opened automatically when the button is held depressed. The tailgate is also closed with a long press – acoustic warning signals sound.

Panic function - Used to attract attention in an emergency. Press and hold the button for at least 3 seconds or press it twice within 3 seconds to activate the car's direction indicators and the horn. The function can be turned off with the same button once it has been active for at least 5 seconds. Otherwise the function switches off automatically after 3 minutes.

Warning

If anyone is left in the car, make sure the power windows and panoramic roof* are de-energised by always taking the key with you when you leave the car.

Note

A key that has been locked in the car is temporarily deactivated and cannot be used before the car has been unlocked using another valid key. The double lock function is also deactivated.

Button-less key (Key Tag)*

A Key Tag can be ordered as an accessory for cars equipped with the keyless locking and unlocking function. Starting as well as keyless locking and unlocking work in the same way as with the standard key. The key is waterproof to a depth of approx. 10 metres (30 feet) for up to 60 minutes. It does not have extending key blade, and the battery cannot be replaced.

Care Key restricted key

A Care Key makes it possible to set a limit for the speed of the car when that particular key is used. The limitation is intended to encourage the car to be driven in a safe manner, e.g. when being loaned out.

If the active key is removed from the car

If the key is removed from the car when the engine is running, the warning message, **Car key not foundRemoved from car**, is shown in the driver display and an acoustic reminder sounds when the last door is closed.

The message disappears when the key is returned to the car, followed by a press of the right-hand keypad's O button, or when all of the doors have been closed.

Interference

Key functions for keyless starting and keyless locking and unlocking* can be disrupted by electromagnetic fields and screening.

> **Note**
>
> Avoid storing the car's keys close to metal objects or electronics (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers). Preferably no closer than 10-15 cm (4-6 inches).

If there is still interference - use the key's detachable key blade to unlock. Then place the key in the back-up reader in the tunnel console's storage compartment to disarm the alarm and allow the car to be started.

> **Note**
>
> When the key shall be read by the back-up reader, make sure that the storage compartment is separate from other nearby car keys, metal objects and electronics (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, laptops or chargers). These objects may disrupt the functions.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

9.2.3. Locking and unlocking using the key's buttons

The buttons on the key can be used to lock and unlock all doors, the tailgate and the fuel filler flap simultaneously.

Locking using the key's buttons

The figure is schematic.

1 Press the button to lock the car.

The driver's door must be closed in order for the lock sequence to be activated[1]. If any of the other doors or the tailgate is open, then these are not locked and their alarms armed* until they are closed. The alarm's movement detectors* are activated when all the doors and the tailgate are closed and locked.

> **Note**
>
> A key that has been locked in the car is temporarily deactivated and cannot be used before the car has been unlocked using another valid key. The double lock function is also deactivated.

Locking when the tailgate is open

> **Note**
>
> If the car has been locked while the tailgate is open, be careful not to leave the key in the cargo area when the tailgate is closed[1].

Unlocking using the key's buttons

1 Press the button to unlock the car.

Automatic relocking

If none of the doors or the tailgate is opened within 2 minutes of unlocking, they are locked automatically. This function prevents the car from being left unlocked unintentionally.

If the key is not working

If it is not possible to lock or unlock with the key, the battery may be discharged - in which case, lock or unlock the driver's door with the detachable key blade.

* Option/accessory.

[1] If the car is equipped with keyless locking/unlocking* then all side doors must be closed.

9.2.4. Settings for unlocking

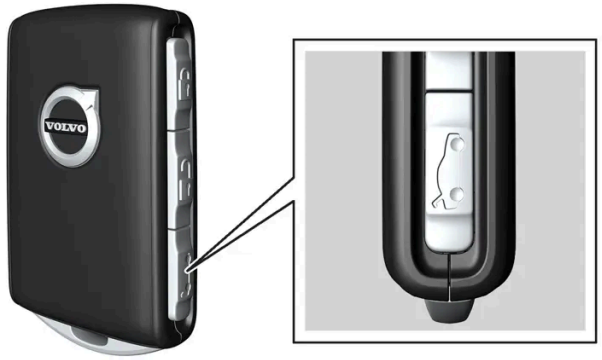
You can change the setting for unlocking using the button on the key. Either all doors are unlocked with one press on the button, or only the driver door is unlocked with one press on the button and the remaining doors with two presses on the button.

The settings made here also affect central unlocking via opening handles from the inside.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Locking** → **Remote and Interior Unlock**.
3. Select option:
   - **All Doors** - unlocks all doors simultaneously.
   - **Single Door** - unlocks the driver's door. Unlocking all of the doors requires two presses on the key's unlock button.

9.2.5. Unlocking the tailgate with a key button

There is a button on the key to unlock the tailgate only.



1 Press the key's button.

> The tailgate is unlocked and can be opened from the outside.
The side doors are still locked and the alarm is armed*. The lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel extinguishes in order to show that the entire car is not locked.
If the tailgate is not opened within 2 minutes then it is relocked and the alarm is re-armed.

Power operated tailgate*

1 Hold the key's button depressed for a couple of seconds.

> The tailgate is unlocked and opened, while the side doors remain locked and their alarm functions armed*.

Note

If the system for the power operated tailgate* works continuously for a long time, it is deactivated in order not to overload it. It can be used again after a few minutes.

* Option/accessory.

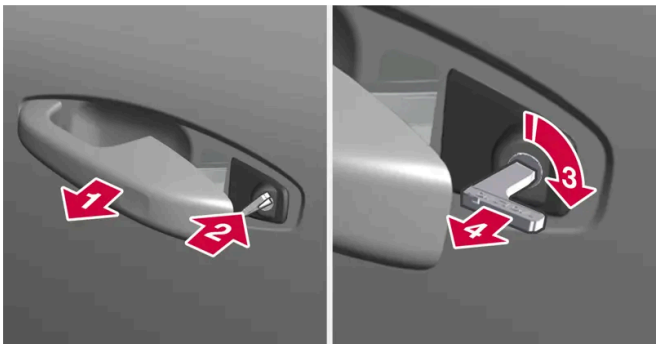
9.2.6. Locking and unlocking with the detachable key blade

The detachable key blade can be used to unlock one of the car's doors from the outside – such as if the battery in the key is discharged.

Unlocking with the key blade

> **Note**
>
> When the door is unlocked using the key blade and is then opened, the alarm is triggered. The alarm must be deactivated manually – it may be a good idea to read that section before opening the car.

1



1

Pull out the front door's handle on the left-hand side of the car to its end position.[1]

> The keyhole should now be visible inside the handle.

2 2

Insert the key.

3 3

Turn clockwise 45 degrees so that the key is pointing straight back.

4 4

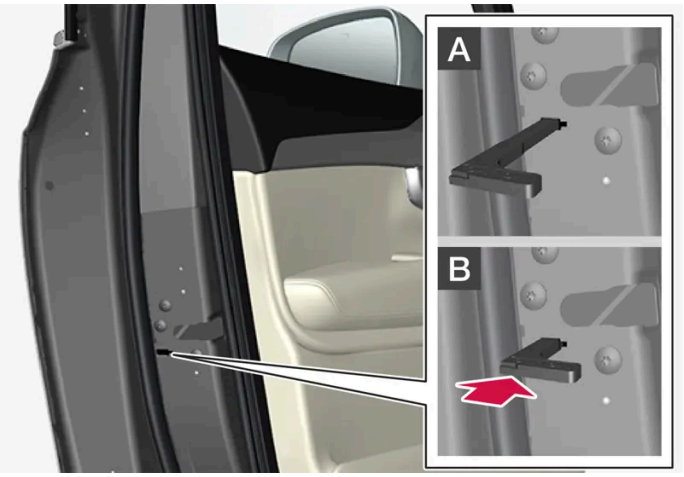
Turn the key back 45 degrees to its starting position and remove it.

> The door can be opened using the handle.

Locking with the key blade

The left-hand front door can be locked using the detachable key blade.

Other doors have a lock reset on the end face that must be pressed in using the key blade. Then they are mechanically locked against opening from the outside, but can be opened from the inside.



Manual locking of the door. Not to be mixed up with child locks.

1. Remove the detachable key blade from the key with buttons.
2. Insert the key blade in the hole for lock reset.
3. Press in the key until it bottoms – approximately 12 mm (0.5 inches).

A The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

B The door is blocked against opening from the outside. To return to position A, the inner door handle must be opened.

Note

- A door's lock reset only locks that particular door - not all doors simultaneously.
- A manually locked rear door with enabled child lock cannot be opened from either insider or outside. Unlocking is possible using the buttons on the key, the central locking button, the keyless locking system* or by using the Volvo Cars app.

[1] This applies whether the car is right-hand drive or left-hand drive.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.7. Automatic locking when driving

When the car starts to drive, the doors and tailgate are locked automatically for safety reasons.

The doors can still be opened from the inside during automatic locking when driving. Either all doors are unlocked, or just the door being opened, depending on the lock settings.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Note

You will need to use the child lock to prevent a rear door from being opened from inside the car.

Note

In the event of a collision, the car unlocks all doors for safety reasons. This only happens if any of the safety systems have deployed.

9.2.8. Double lock*

Double lock means that all of the car's opening handles are disengaged when the car is locked from the outside. None of the internal or external handles can then open the car until it has been unlocked again.

Warning

Do not lock the car from the outside while there is anyone left in the car. Double lock means that the car cannot be unlocked or opened from the inside.

Double lock is activated when locking with a key's lock button or with keyless locking*, and takes place with a delay of approx. 10 seconds after the doors have locked. If a door is opened within the delay time then the sequence is interrupted and the alarm is deactivated.

The car can only be unlocked with the key, keyless unlocking* or the Volvo Cars app* when double lock is activated.

The front left door can also be unlocked with the detachable key blade. If the car is unlocked with the detachable key blade, the alarm will be triggered.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.9. Setting the max. opening for electrically operated tailgate*

Set the amount the tailgate should be opened if the car is, for example, parked in a garage with limited headroom.

To adjust max. opening

1 Open the tailgate manually - and stop it in the desired opening position.

2 Press and hold button on the bottom of the tailgate for approx. 3 seconds.

> Two acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been saved.

Note

It is not possible to program an opening position lower than half-open tailgate.

Reset max. opening

1 Open the tailgate manually to the fully open position.

2 Press and hold the button on the underside of the tailgate for approx. 3 seconds.

> Two acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been cleared.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.10. Locking and unlocking from inside the car

The doors and tailgate can be locked and unlocked from inside using the central locking controls in the front doors.

Central locking

Locking and unlocking button with indicator lamp in the front door.

Unlocking using a button in the front door

1 Press the button to unlock all side doors and the tailgate.

Alternative unlocking method

Opening handle for alternative unlocking in the side door[1].

1 Pull the opening handle on one of the side doors and release.

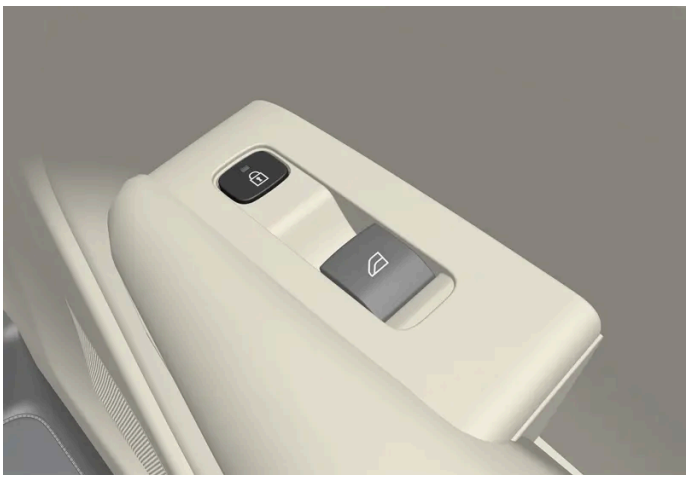
> Depending on the settings for unlocking, either all doors will be unlocked or only the selected door will be unlocked and opened.

Locking using a button in the front door

1 Press the button - both front doors must be closed.

> All doors and the tailgate are locked.

Locking using a button in the rear door*



Locking button with indicator lamp in the rear door.

The rear door lock buttons lock their respective rear door.

Unlocking the rear door

1 Pull the opening handle.

> The rear door is unlocked and opened [2].

[1] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

* Option/accessory.

[2] Provided that the child lock is not activated.

9.2.11. Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car

The tailgate can be unlocked from inside the car using a button beside the steering wheel on the instrument panel.

1 Briefly press the button on the instrument panel.

> The tailgate is unlocked and can be opened from the outside.

With the power operated tailgate option*:

1 Hold the instrument panel's button depressed for a couple of seconds.

> The tailgate is opened.

Note

If the system for the power operated tailgate* works continuously for a long time, it is deactivated in order not to overload it. It can be used again after a few minutes.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.12. Private locking*

The private locking function restricts access to certain spaces in the car, even if there is access to the key. It allows private storage when the car or its key is handed over in connection with service or valet parking, for example.

When private locking is activated, the tailgate cannot be opened, which prevents access to the space below the cargo area floor.

The private locking button is located in the centre display function view. Current status **Private Locking Unlocked** or **Private Locking Locked** is shown.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.13. Activating and deactivating private locking*

Private locking is activated with a function button in the centre display and an optional PIN code.

> **Note**
>
> The car needs to be in ignition mode I as a minimum for the private locking function to be activated.

Private locking has two codes:

- A security code is created the first time the function is used.
- A new PIN code is selected every time the function is activated.

Enter the security code before using for the first time

A security code needs to be selected during the first time the function is used. It can then be used to deactivate private locking if the selected PIN code has been forgotten or lost. The security code acts as a PUK code for all subsequent PIN codes set for the private locking function.

Save the security code in a safe place.

To create a security code:

1 Press the button for private locking in the function view.

> A pop-up window is shown.

2 Enter the preferred security code and press **Confirm**.

> The security code is saved. The private locking function is now ready for activation.

Activate private locking

1 Press the button for private locking in the function view.

> A pop-up window is shown.

2 Enter the code to be used in order to unlock the tailgate after locking and tap on **Confirm**.

> The tailgate is locked. Confirmation of locking takes place by means of a green indicator being shown by the button in the function view.

Deactivate private locking

1 Press the button for private locking in the function view.

> A pop-up window is shown.

2 Enter the code that was used for locking and tap on **Confirm**.

> The tailgate is unlocked. Confirmation of unlocking takes place by means of the green indicator by the button in the function view extinguishing.

Forgotten PIN code

If the PIN code has been forgotten or the wrong PIN code has been entered more than three times, the security code can be used to deactivate private locking.

If the car is unlocked via Volvo On Call*, private locking will be automatically deactivated.

Forgotten security code

If the security code has also been forgotten, contact an authorised Volvo dealer for help with deactivating private locking.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.14. Locking and unlocking

The car can be locked and unlocked in several different ways.

The options are:

- with the key's buttons
- using the detachable key blade (if the battery in the key is discharged)
- keyless* (the car detects that a key is within range)
- from the inside of the car using the locking controls in the doors
- with the Volvo Cars app*
- remote door unlock (RDU) with Volvo On Call*
- automatic locking when the car is driven.

> **Note**
>
> In the event of a collision, the car unlocks all doors for safety reasons. This only happens if any of the safety systems have deployed.

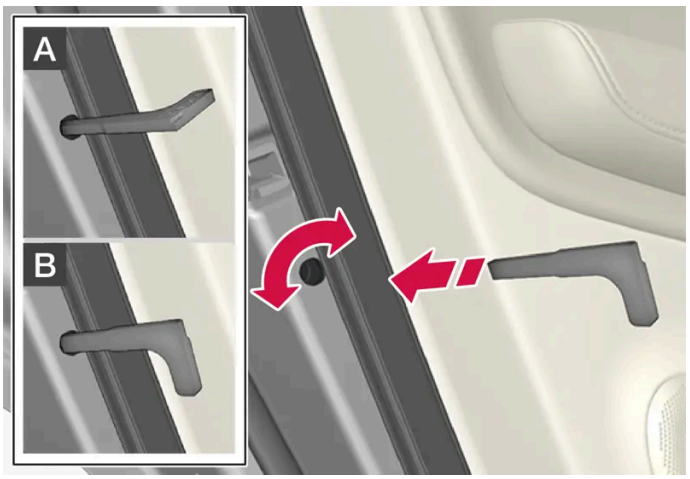
* Option/accessory.

9.2.15. Activating and deactivating child safety locks

The child safety lock prevents the rear doors from being opened from inside. With electric child safety locks, power window operation from the rear seat is also prevented.

The child lock can be either manual or electrical*.

Manual child lock



Manual child lock. Not to be confused with manual door locks.

1 Use the key's detachable key blade to turn the knob.

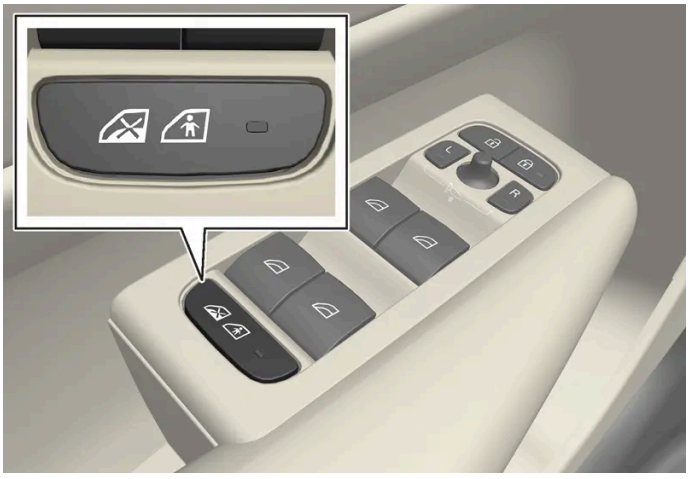
A The door is blocked against opening from the inside.

B The door can be opened from both the outside and the inside.

> **Note**
>
> - A door's knob control only blocks that particular door - not both rear doors simultaneously.
> - Cars with an electric child safety lock do not have a manual child lock.

Electric child lock*

The electric child lock can be activated and deactivated in all ignition positions above **0**. Activation and deactivation can be performed up to 2 minutes after switching off the car, provided that no door is opened.



Activation and deactivation button.

Rear child safety lock enabled

When the lamp in the button is illuminated, the child safety lock is enabled.

If the child lock is activated when the car is switched off, it will remain activated the next time the car is started.

- Rear doors cannot be opened from the inside.
- Rear power windows can only be operated from the driver's door.

Rear child safety lock disabled

When the lamp in the button is extinguished, the child safety lock is inactivated.

- Rear doors can be opened from the inside and power windows operated from the rear seat.

Symbols and messages

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Rear child lock Activated	The child lock is activated.
	Rear child lock Deactivated	The child lock is deactivated.

* Option/accessory.

9.2.16. Lock confirmation

The car indicates when it is locked or unlocked. How it is indicated depends on the settings for lock indication and door mirrors.

Exterior indication

Locking

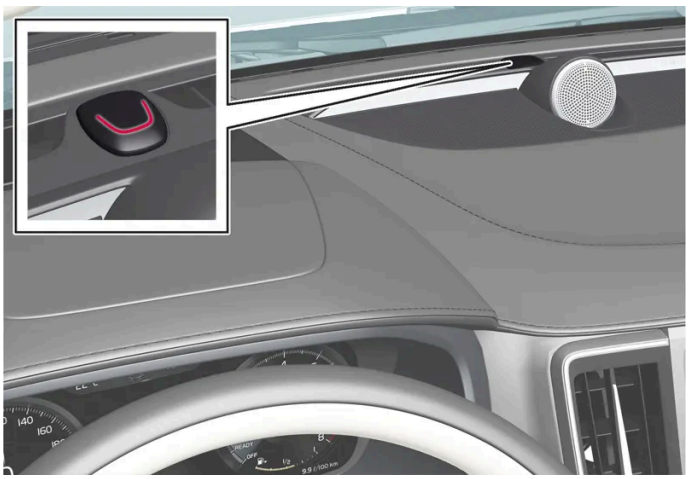
- The car's hazard warning flashers indicate locking by flashing and retracting the door mirrors [1].

Unlocking

- The car's hazard warning flashers indicate unlocking by two flashes and extending the door mirrors [1].

All doors, the tailgate and the bonnet must be closed for the car to indicate that it is locked. If locking takes place with just the driver door closed [2], locking will take place but the lock indication with hazard warning flashers will only take place when all doors, the tailgate and the bonnet have been closed.

Lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel



The lock and alarm indicator shows the status of the locking system:

- A long flash indicates locking.
- Short flashes indicate that the car is locked.
- Rapid flashes after disarming the alarm* indicate that the alarm has been triggered.

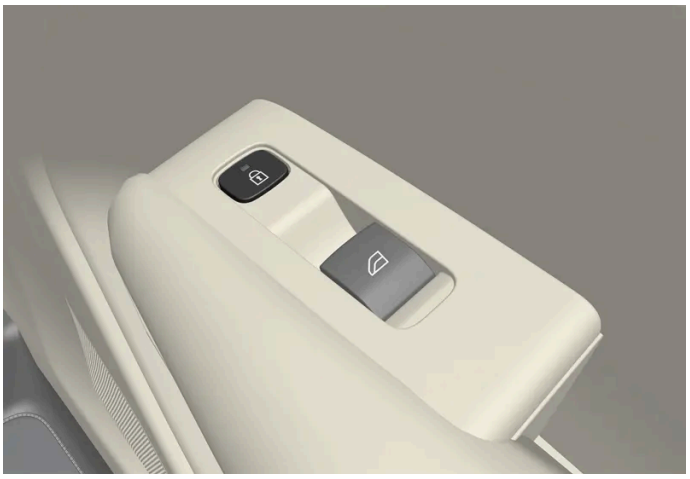
Indication in lock buttons

Front door

Lock buttons with indicator lamp in the front door.

An illuminated indicator lamp in the lock button of either front door indicates that all doors are locked. If any door is opened, the lamp will extinguish in both doors.

Rear door*



Lock button with indicator lamp in the rear door.

An illuminated indicator lamp in the lock button for one of the doors indicates that the door in question is locked. If any door is unlocked, its lamp will extinguish while the others will continue to illuminate.

Other indication

The home safe lighting and approach light functions can also be activated when locking and unlocking.

Retraction/extension of door mirrors can also be used as an aid to indicate locking/unlocking.

[1] Only for cars with retractable power door mirrors.

* Option/accessory.

[2] Not possible with keyless locking*.

9.2.17. Lock indication setting

You can select how the car shows whether it has been locked or unlocked in the settings menu in the centre display.

Different types of lock response

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Locking**.
3. Press **Visible Locking Feedback** to select when the car is to give a visible response:
   - **Lock**
   - **Unlock**
   - **Both**

Or switch off the function by selecting **Off** .

Automatic retraction of rearview mirrors* when locking

1 Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.

2 Press **My Car** → **Mirrors and Convenience**.

3 Select **Fold Mirror When Locked** to activate or deactivate the function.

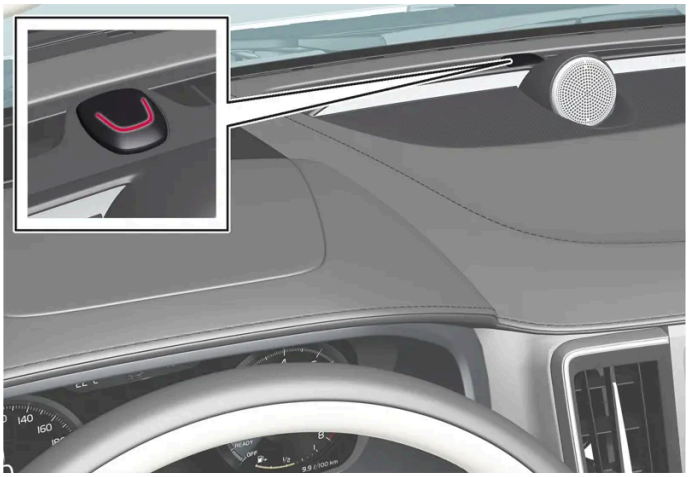
* Option/accessory.

9.3. Alarm

9.3.1. Alarm*

The alarm provides audible and visual warnings if anyone enters the car without a valid key or tampers with the battery or alarm siren.

Alarm indicator



A red LED on the instrument panel indicates the alarm system's status:

- LED not lit – alarm not armed.

- The LED flashes once every other second – alarm is armed.
- After the alarm has been disarmed, the LED flashes rapidly for a maximum of 30 seconds or until ignition position I has been activated - the alarm has been triggered.

When armed, the alarm is triggered if:

- a door, the bonnet or the tailgate is opened [1]
- a movement is detected in the passenger compartment (if fitted with a movement detector*)
- the car is raised or towed away (if fitted with a tilt detector*)
- the battery is disconnected
- the siren is disconnected.

Alarm signals

When the alarm has been triggered, the following happens:

- A siren sounds for 30 seconds or until the alarm is switched off.
- Hazard warning flashers flash for 5 minutes or until the alarm is switched off.

If the cause of alarm activation is not rectified, the alarm cycle is repeated up to 10 times [1].

Movement and tilt sensors *

Movement and tilt detectors react to movements inside the car [2] e.g. if the window is broken or if anyone tries to tow the car away.

To avoid triggering the alarm unintentionally:

- Close all windows when leaving the car.
- Close the panoramic roof.
- If the climate control is used – aim the airflow so that it does not point upwards in the passenger compartment.

It is also possible to reduce the alarm level in the centre display.

Symbols and messages

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Alarm system failureService required	Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Note

Do not attempt to repair or alter components in the alarm system yourself. Any such attempts may affect the terms of the insurance.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] Airflows from the climate control are also registered.

9.3.2. Activating and deactivating alarms*

The alarm is activated when the car is locked, and is deactivated when the car is unlocked. It is also possible to deactivate the alarm without a working key.

Activating and deactivating alarms

The alarm is activated when the car is locked, and is deactivated when the car is unlocked.

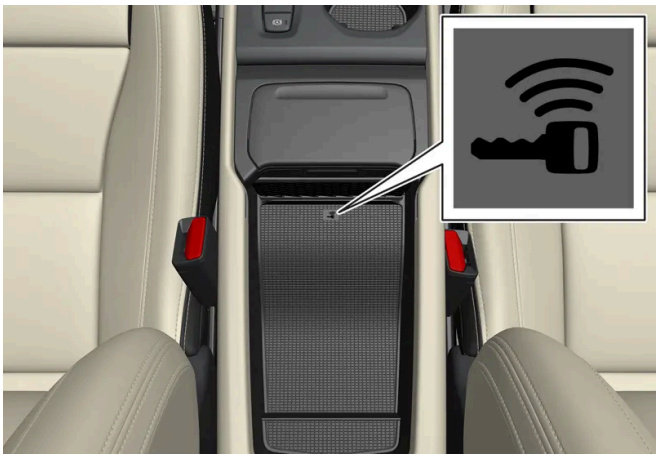
> **Note**
>
> It is not possible to lock the car without activating the alarm. If the car is parked on a ferry, for example, the function for reduced alarm level should be used instead.

Deactivate the alarm without a functioning key

The car can be unlocked and disarmed even if the key does not work, e.g. if the key's battery is discharged.

1 Open the driver's door with the detachable key blade.

> The alarm is triggered.

2 

Place the key on the key symbol in the back-up reader in the tunnel console's storage compartment.

3 Press the start button.

> The alarm is deactivated.

Switching off a triggered alarm

1 Press the key's unlock button or select ignition position I by pressing the start button.

* Option/accessory.

9.3.3. Reduced alarm level*

Reduced alarm level switches off certain types of alarm sensors so that a false alarm is not triggered, e.g. when travelling on a car ferry.

The alarm's movement and tilt detectors are deactivated when reduced alarm level is activated. The alarm then does not react to movement inside the car.

Reduced alarm level is deactivated after each usage and must therefore be reactivated.

Activating reduced alarm level

1 Press the **Reduced Guard** button in the centre display function view.

> The function is active until the car is driven, and must therefore be reactivated.

* Option/accessory.

---

10. Driver support

10.1. Cruise control functions

10.1.1. Cruise control

10.1.1.1. Cruise control

The cruise control (CC [1]) helps the driver maintain an even speed, which can result in more relaxed driving on motorways and long, straight roads in regular traffic flows.

Using engine braking instead of the foot brake

With Cruise Control, speed is regulated with less frequent application of the foot brake. On a downhill gradient, it may sometimes be desirable to start moving a little faster and instead limit the acceleration by engine braking. In this case the driver can temporarily disable foot brake application by Cruise Control.

To do so, proceed as follows:

1 Depress the accelerator pedal about halfway down and release.

> Cruise Control will disengage its automatic foot braking and then uses engine braking only.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] Cruise Control

10.1.1.2. Standby mode for cruise control

Cruise control (CC[1]) can be deactivated and set in standby mode. This can take place automatically or be done by the driver.

Standby mode means that the function is selected in the driver display but not activated. The symbol in the driver display is extinguished and cruise control does not then regulate the speed.

Standby mode on driver intervention

Cruise control is deactivated and set to standby mode if any of the following occur:

- The foot brake is used.
- The gear selector is moved to **N** position.
- The driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.
- The clutch pedal is held depressed for longer than 1 minute – applies to cars with manual gearbox.

The driver must then control the speed himself/herself.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Automatic standby mode

Activation of automatic standby mode can be due to one of the following:

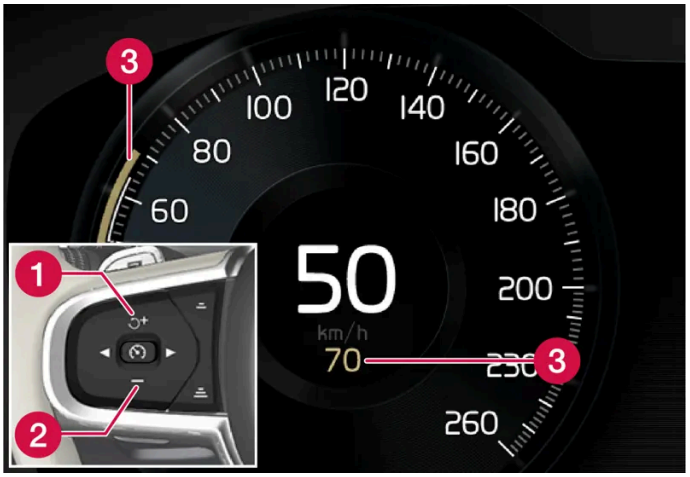
- The wheels are losing traction.
- The engine speed is too low/high.
- Brake temperature is too high.
- Speed falls below 30 km/h (20 mph).

The driver must then control the speed himself/herself.

[1] Cruise Control

10.1.1.3. Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions

It is possible to set stored speed for the speed limiter, cruise control, adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* functions.



1 + : Increases the stored speed
2 − : Reduces stored speed
3 Stored speed

1 Change a set speed with short presses on the steering wheel buttons + (1) or − (2) or by pressing and holding them.
   - **Short** presses: Each press changes the speed in increments of +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph).
   - **Press** and **hold**: Release the button when the speed indicator (3) has moved to the desired speed.

> The speed set after the last button press is stored in the memory.

Effect of the accelerator pedal

If the driver increases the car's speed using the accelerator pedal before pressing the steering wheel button + (1), the speed stored will be the car's speed when the button is depressed, provided the driver's foot is on the accelerator pedal at the moment when the button is depressed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Possible speed

Automatic gearbox

The driver support functions can follow another vehicle at speeds from 0 km/h up to 180 km/h (112 mph).

Pilot Assist can give steering assistance from almost stationary up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

Note that the lowest programmable speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) – even though it is capable of following another vehicle down to 0 km/h, a speed lower than 30 km/h (20 mph) cannot be selected/stored.

Manual gearbox

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The driver support functions can follow another vehicle at speeds from 30 km/h (20 mph) up to 180 km/h (112 mph).

Pilot Assist can give steering assistance from 30 km/h (20 mph) up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

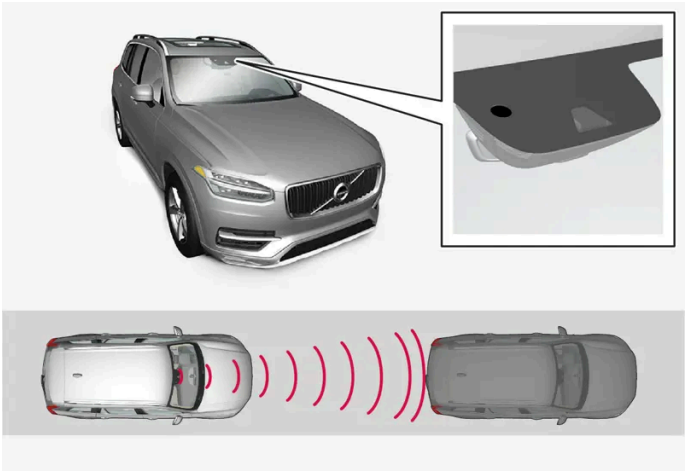
The lowest programmable speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) – the maximum speed is 200 km/h (125 mph).

* Option/accessory.

10.1.2. Adaptive cruise control

10.1.2.1. Adaptive cruise control*

The adaptive cruise control[1] (ACC[2]) can help the driver to maintain a constant speed, combined with a preselected time interval to the vehicle ahead.



The camera and radar unit measures the distance to the vehicle ahead.

An adaptive cruise control can provide a more relaxing driving experience on long journeys on motorways and long straight main roads in smooth traffic flows.

The driver selects the desired speed and a time interval to the vehicle ahead. If the camera and radar unit detects a slower vehicle in front of the car, the speed is adapted automatically via the preset time interval to the vehicle ahead. When the road is clear again the car returns to the selected speed.

The adaptive cruise control aims to:

- regulate the speed smoothly. In situations that demand sudden braking the driver must brake himself/herself. This applies in cases of large speed differences or if the vehicle in front brakes suddenly. Due to the limitations of the radar unit, braking may come unexpectedly or not at all.
- follow the vehicle ahead in the same lane at a time interval set by the driver. If the radar unit cannot see any vehicle in front then the car will instead maintain the speed stored by the driver. This also takes place if the speed of the vehicle ahead increases and exceeds the stored speed.

Steep roads and/or heavy load

Bear in mind that the adaptive cruise control is primarily intended for use when driving on level road surfaces. The function may have difficulty in keeping the correct distance from the vehicle ahead when driving on steep downhill slopes – in which case, be extra attentive and ready to brake.

Do not use adaptive cruise control if the car has a heavy load or a trailer is connected to the car.

Warning

- This is not a collision avoidance system. The driver is always responsible and must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle ahead.
- The function does not brake consistently for humans or animals, and neither for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for low trailers, oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.
- Do not use the function in demanding situations, such as in city traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Note

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Important

Maintenance of driver support components must only be performed at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

[2] Adaptive Cruise Control

10.1.2.2. Symbols and messages for adaptive cruise control*

A number of symbols and messages regarding the adaptive cruise control[1] (ACC[2]) can be shown. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	The symbol is lit	The car is maintaining the stored speed.
	Adaptive Cruise Contr. Unavailable The symbol is extinguished	Adaptive cruise control is set to standby mode.
	Adaptive Cruise Contr. Service required The symbol is extinguished	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
	Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual	Clean the windscreen in front of the camera and radar unit's detectors.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

[2] Adaptive Cruise Control

10.1.2.3. Standby mode for adaptive cruise control*

Adaptive cruise control[1] (ACC[2]) can be deactivated and set to standby mode. This can take place automatically or be done by the driver.

Standby mode means that the function is selected in the driver display but not activated. Adaptive cruise control does not then regulate the speed or distance to the vehicle in front.

Standby mode on driver intervention

The adaptive cruise control is deactivated and set in standby mode if any of the following occurs:

- The foot brake is used.
- The gear selector is moved to **N** position.
- The driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.
- The clutch pedal is held depressed for longer than 1 minute – applies to cars with manual gearbox.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Warning

- With the adaptive cruise control is in standby mode, the driver must intervene and regulate both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.
- When the adaptive cruise control is in standby mode and the car comes too close to a vehicle ahead, the driver may be warned of the short distance by the Distance Warning* function instead.

Automatic standby mode

Warning

With automatic standby mode, the driver is warned via an acoustic signal and a message in the driver display.

- The driver must then regulate the car's speed, apply the brakes as needed and maintain a safe distance to other vehicles.

Automatic standby mode may be engaged in the event of one of the following:

- One of the systems that Adaptive cruise control is dependent on stops working, e.g. stability control / anti-skid (ESC[3]).
- The driver opens the door.
- The driver takes off the seatbelt.
- The engine speed is too low/high.
- One or more wheels lose traction.
- The brake temperature is high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The camera and radar unit is covered by e.g. snow or heavy rainfall (camera lens/radio waves are blocked).
- The speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and ACC is uncertain whether the vehicle ahead is a stationary vehicle or an object, such as a speed bump.
- The speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns off so that ACC no longer has a vehicle to follow.
- The speed is reduced to below 30 km/h (20 mph) - only applies to cars with manual gearbox.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

[2] Adaptive Cruise Control

[3] Electronic Stability Control

10.1.2.4. Automatic braking with cruise control functions

The driver supports of adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* have a special brake function in slow traffic and while stationary. In certain situations, the parking brake is applied in order to keep the car stationary.

Brake function in slow queues and while stationary

For shorter stops in connection with creep mode in slow traffic or at traffic lights, driving is automatically resumed if the stops do not exceed approx. 3 seconds - if it takes longer before the vehicle in front starts moving again then the driver support function is set in standby mode with automatic braking.

1 The function is reactivated in one of the following ways:

- Press the steering wheel button .
- Depress the accelerator pedal.

> The function resumes following the vehicle ahead if it starts moving forward within approx. 6 seconds.

Warning

A significant increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.

Warning

Driver supports only warn of obstacles which their radar unit has detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay.

- Never wait for a warning or intervention. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

Note

The driver supports can hold the car stationary for a maximum of 10 minutes – then the parking brake is applied and the function is disengaged.

Before the driver supports can be reactivated, the parking brake must be released.

Cessation of automatic braking

In some situations, automatic braking ceases on coming to a standstill and the function is set in standby mode. This means that the brakes are released and the car may start to roll - the driver must therefore intervene and brake the car himself/herself to keep it stationary.

This may take place in any of the following situations:

- The driver puts his/her foot on the brake pedal.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The gear selector is moved to P, N, or R position.
- The driver sets the adaptive cruise control or Pilot Assist to standby mode.

Automatic activation of parking brake

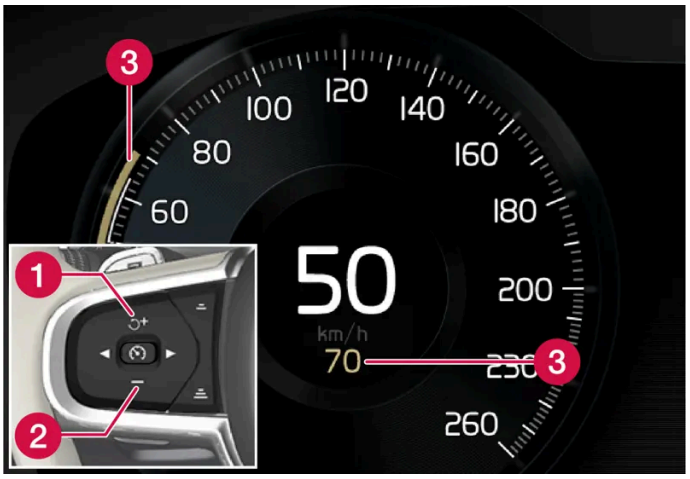
The Parking brake is applied if the function is holding the car stationary with the foot brake and:

- The driver opens the door or takes off his/her seatbelt.
- The function has kept the car stationary for more than approx. 10 minutes.
- The brakes have overheated.
- The driver switches the engine off.

* Option/accessory.

10.1.2.5. Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions

It is possible to set stored speed for the speed limiter, cruise control, adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* functions.



1. **+** : Increases the stored speed
2. **−** : Reduces stored speed
3. Stored speed

1 Change a set speed with short presses on the steering wheel buttons **+** (1) or **−** (2) or by pressing and holding them.

- **Short** presses: Each press changes the speed in increments of +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph).
- **Press** and **hold**: Release the button when the speed indicator (3) has moved to the desired speed.

> The speed set after the last button press is stored in the memory.

Effect of the accelerator pedal

If the driver increases the car's speed using the accelerator pedal before pressing the steering wheel button + (1), the speed stored will be the car's speed when the button is depressed, provided the driver's foot is on the accelerator pedal at the moment when the button is depressed.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Possible speed

Automatic gearbox

The driver support functions can follow another vehicle at speeds from 0 km/h up to 180 km/h (112 mph).

Pilot Assist can give steering assistance from almost stationary up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

Note that the lowest programmable speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) – even though it is capable of following another vehicle down to 0 km/h, a speed lower than 30 km/h (20 mph) cannot be selected/stored.

Manual gearbox

The driver support functions can follow another vehicle at speeds from 30 km/h (20 mph) up to 180 km/h (112 mph).

Pilot Assist can give steering assistance from 30 km/h (20 mph) up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

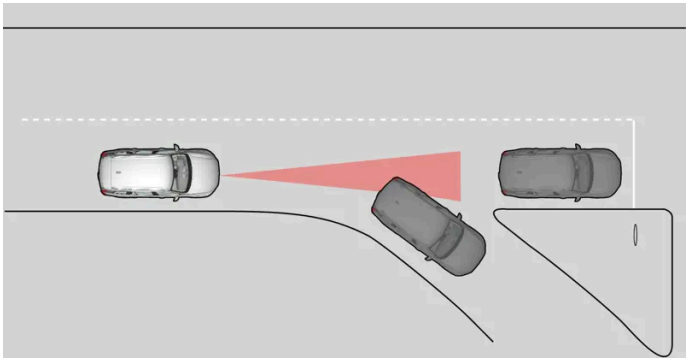
The lowest programmable speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) – the maximum speed is 200 km/h (125 mph).

* Option/accessory.

10.1.2.6. Change of target with cruise control functions

The driver supports of adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist*, in combination with automatic transmission, have a change of target function at certain speeds.

Change of target



If the target vehicle in front suddenly turns then there may be stationary traffic in front.

When the driver supports are following another vehicle at speeds **below** 30 km/h (20 mph) and changes target vehicle – from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle – the driver supports will slow down for the stationary vehicle.

Warning

When the driver supports are following another vehicle at speeds **in excess of** approx. 30 km/h (20 mph) and the target is changed from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle, the driver supports will **ignore** the stationary vehicle and instead accelerate to the stored speed.

- The driver must then intervene him/herself and brake.

Automatic standby mode with change of target

The driver supports are disengaged and set in standby mode:

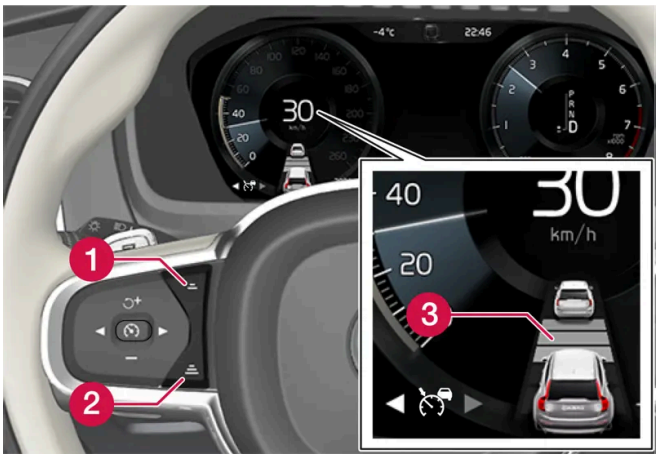
- when the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the driver supports are uncertain whether the target object is a stationary vehicle or another object, such as a speed bump.
- when the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns off so that the driver supports no longer have a vehicle to follow.

* Option/accessory.

10.1.2.7. Setting time interval to vehicle ahead

It is possible to set the time interval to the vehicle ahead to be maintained by the adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* functions.

1



Control for time interval.

1. Decrease time interval
2. Increase time interval
3. Distance indicator

Press the steering wheel button (1) or (2) to increase or decrease the time interval.

> The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.

Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the driver display as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line represents about 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines represents about 3 seconds.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The adaptive cruise control allows the time interval to vary significantly in certain situations in order to allow the car to follow the vehicle in front smoothly and comfortably. At low speed, when the distances are short, the adaptive cruise control increases the time interval slightly.

Note

When the symbol in the driver display shows a car and a steering wheel, Pilot Assist follows a vehicle in front at a preset time gap.

When only one steering wheel is shown, there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead.

Note

When the symbol in the driver display shows two cars, adaptive cruise control is following the vehicle in front at a pre-set time interval.

When only one car is shown, there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead.

Note

- The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.
- Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.
- If the driver supports do not seem to respond with a speed increase when activated, it may be because the time window to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the set time window.

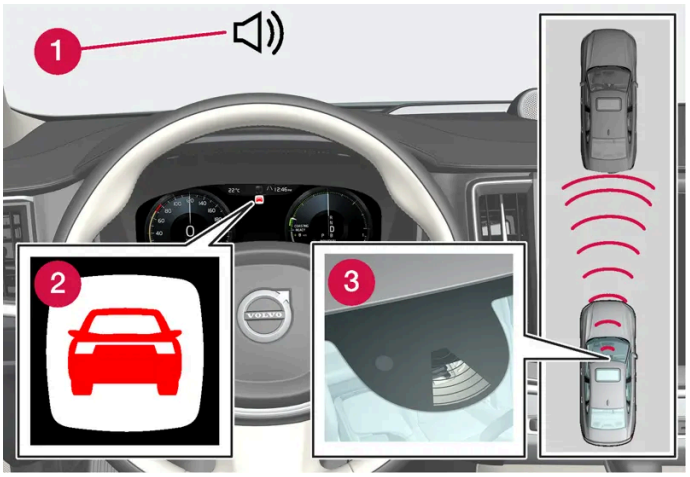
Warning

- Only use a time window that suits the current traffic conditions.
- The driver should be aware that short time windows limit the amount of time available to react and take action in an unexpected traffic situation.

* Option/accessory.

10.1.2.8. Warning from cruise control functions in the event of a collision risk

The driver support systems of adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* can warn the driver if the distance to the vehicle ahead suddenly becomes too short.



Audio and symbol for collision warning

1. Acoustic signal in the event of a risk of collision
2. Warning signal in the event of a risk of collision
3. Distance measurement with the camera and radar units

Adaptive cruise control and Pilot Assist use approx. 40% of the capacity of the foot brake. If the car needs to be braked more heavily than the driver support is capable of and the driver does not brake, the warning lamp and acoustic warning are activated to alert the driver that immediate intervention is required.

> **Warning**
>
> The driver support systems only warn of vehicles which their radar unit has detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay. Never wait for a warning. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

* Option/accessory.

10.1.3. Pilot Assist

10.1.3.1. Automatic braking with cruise control functions

The driver supports of adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* have a special brake function in slow traffic and while stationary. In certain situations, the parking brake is applied in order to keep the car stationary.

Brake function in slow queues and while stationary

For shorter stops in connection with creep mode in slow traffic or at traffic lights, driving is automatically resumed if the stops do not exceed approx. 3 seconds - if it takes longer before the vehicle in front starts moving again then the driver support function is set in standby mode with automatic braking.

1 The function is reactivated in one of the following ways:
   - Press the steering wheel button .
   - Depress the accelerator pedal.

> The function resumes following the vehicle ahead if it starts moving forward within approx. 6 seconds.

Warning

A significant increase in speed may follow when the speed is resumed with the steering wheel button.

Warning

Driver supports only warn of obstacles which their radar unit has detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay.

- Never wait for a warning or intervention. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

Note

The driver supports can hold the car stationary for a maximum of 10 minutes – then the parking brake is applied and the function is disengaged.

Before the driver supports can be reactivated, the parking brake must be released.

Cessation of automatic braking

In some situations, automatic braking ceases on coming to a standstill and the function is set in standby mode. This means that the brakes are released and the car may start to roll - the driver must therefore intervene and brake the car himself/herself to keep it stationary.

This may take place in any of the following situations:

- The driver puts his/her foot on the brake pedal.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The gear selector is moved to P, N, or R position.
- The driver sets the adaptive cruise control or Pilot Assist to standby mode.

Automatic activation of parking brake

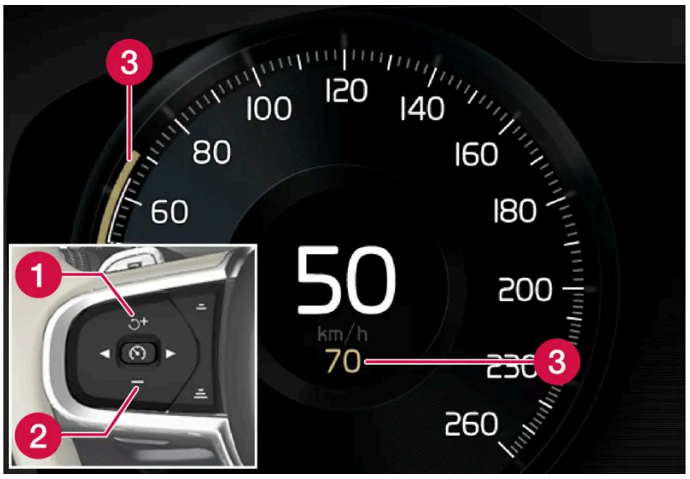
The Parking brake is applied if the function is holding the car stationary with the foot brake and:

- The driver opens the door or takes off his/her seatbelt.
- The function has kept the car stationary for more than approx. 10 minutes.
- The brakes have overheated.
- The driver switches the engine off.

* Option/accessory.

10.1.3.2. Setting the stored speed for cruise control functions

It is possible to set stored speed for the speed limiter, cruise control, adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* functions.



1. + : Increases the stored speed
2. − : Reduces stored speed
3. Stored speed

1 Change a set speed with short presses on the steering wheel buttons + (1) or − (2) or by pressing and holding them.
   - **Short** presses: Each press changes the speed in increments of +/- 5 km/h (+/- 5 mph).
   - **Press** and **hold**: Release the button when the speed indicator (3) has moved to the desired speed.

> The speed set after the last button press is stored in the memory.

Effect of the accelerator pedal

If the driver increases the car's speed using the accelerator pedal before pressing the steering wheel button + (1), the speed stored will be the car's speed when the button is depressed, provided the driver's foot is on the accelerator pedal at the moment when the button is depressed.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

A temporary increase in speed with the accelerator pedal, e.g. during overtaking, does not affect the setting - the car returns to the last stored speed when the accelerator pedal is released.

Possible speed

Automatic gearbox

The driver support functions can follow another vehicle at speeds from 0 km/h up to 180 km/h (112 mph).

Pilot Assist can give steering assistance from almost stationary up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

Note that the lowest programmable speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) – even though it is capable of following another vehicle down to 0 km/h, a speed lower than 30 km/h (20 mph) cannot be selected/stored.

Manual gearbox

The driver support functions can follow another vehicle at speeds from 30 km/h (20 mph) up to 180 km/h (112 mph).

Pilot Assist can give steering assistance from 30 km/h (20 mph) up to 140 km/h (87 mph).

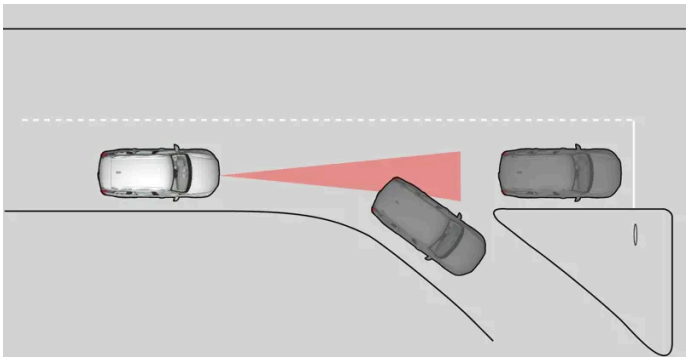
The lowest programmable speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) – the maximum speed is 200 km/h (125 mph).

* Option/accessory.

10.1.3.3. Change of target with cruise control functions

The driver supports of adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist*, in combination with automatic transmission, have a change of target function at certain speeds.

Change of target



If the target vehicle in front suddenly turns then there may be stationary traffic in front.

When the driver supports are following another vehicle at speeds **below** 30 km/h (20 mph) and changes target vehicle – from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle – the driver supports will slow down for the stationary vehicle.

Warning

When the driver supports are following another vehicle at speeds **in excess of** approx. 30 km/h (20 mph) and the target is changed from a moving vehicle to a stationary vehicle, the driver supports will **ignore** the stationary vehicle and instead accelerate to the stored speed.

- The driver must then intervene him/herself and brake.

Automatic standby mode with change of target

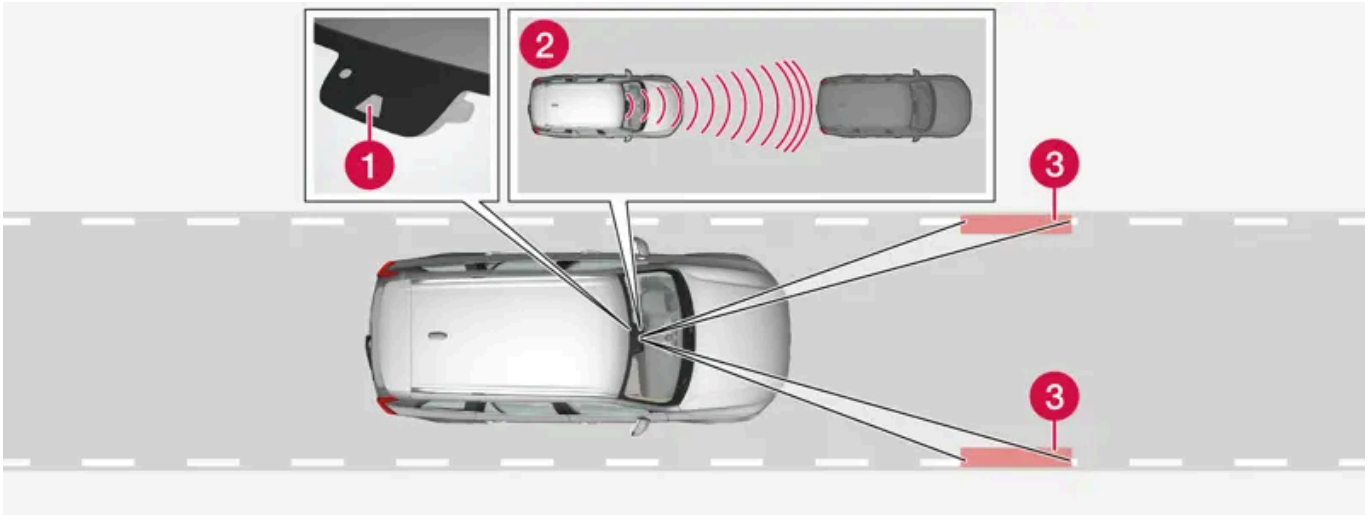
The driver supports are disengaged and set in standby mode:

- when the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the driver supports are uncertain whether the target object is a stationary vehicle or another object, such as a speed bump.
- when the speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns off so that the driver supports no longer have a vehicle to follow.

* Option/accessory.

10.1.3.4. Pilot Assist*

Pilot Assist[1] can help the driver to drive the car between the lane's lane markings as well as to maintain a constant speed, combined with a preselected time interval to the vehicle ahead.



The camera and radar unit measures the distance to the vehicle ahead and detects side markings.

1. Camera and radar unit
2. Distance readers
3. Readers, side markings

Get to know Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist helps to control your car and you may need to drive a few kilometres with Pilot Assist before you feel completely at home with the function. It is important to know about all of the function's applications and limitations in order to safely use all of the advantages.

The Pilot Assist function is primarily intended for use on motorways and similar major roads where it can contribute to more comfortable driving and a more relaxed driving experience.

The driver selects the desired speed and a time interval to the vehicle ahead. Pilot Assist scans the distance to the vehicle ahead and the lane's side markings on the road surface using the camera unit. The preset time interval is maintained with automatic speed adjustment whilst the steering assistance helps to position the car in the lane.

Pilot Assist regulates the speed with acceleration and braking. It is normal for the brakes to emit a low sound when they are being used to adjust the speed.

Pilot Assist strives to:

- regulate the speed smoothly. In situations that demand sudden braking the driver must brake himself/herself. This applies in cases of large speed differences or if the car in front brakes suddenly. Due to the limitations of the camera and radar unit, braking may come unexpectedly or not at all.
- follow the vehicle ahead in the same lane at a time interval set by the driver. If the radar unit cannot see any vehicle in front then the car will instead maintain the speed set and stored by the driver. This also takes place if the speed of the vehicle ahead increases and exceeds the stored speed.

Position of the car in the lane

When Pilot Assist helps to steer, it attempts to place the car halfway between the visible lane markings. For a smoother drive, it is a good idea to allow the car to find a good position. The driver can always adjust the position him/herself by increasing the steering input. It is important that the driver checks to make sure the car is positioned safely in the lane.

If Pilot Assist does not position the car in an appropriate way in the lane, it is recommended to turn Pilot Assist off or switch to adaptive cruise control*.

Steering assistance

The current status of steering assistance is indicated by the colour of the steering wheel's symbol:

• Steering wheel lit up indicates active steering assistance

• Steering wheel extinguished (as in illustration) indicates deactivated steering assistance.

Pilot Assist steering assistance takes into account the speed of the preceding car and the lane markings. The driver can at any time adjust steering interventions from Pilot Assist and steer in another direction, e.g. to change lane or avoid an obstruction on the road. Resistance is then felt in the steering wheel as long as the steering assistance is active.

Temporary disabling of steering assistance

> **Warning**
>
> Pilot Assist steering assistance is automatically deactivated and is resumed without prior warning.

When the direction indicators are used, Pilot Assist steering assistance is temporarily disengaged. When the direction indicator is switched off, steering assistance is reactivated automatically if the lane's edge markings can still be detected.

If Pilot Assist is unable to interpret the lane clearly, e.g. if the camera unit does not see the lane's edge markings, Pilot Assist shuts off steering assistance temporarily. Speed and distance regulating functions remain active. Steering assistance is resumed when the lane can be interpreted again. In these situations, slight vibration in the steering wheel may alert the driver to the fact that steering assistance has been deactivated temporarily.

Round bends and when the road splits

Pilot Assist interacts with the driver, who should therefore not wait for the steering assistance from Pilot Assist but should always be prepared to increase his/her own steering input, especially in bends.

When the car approaches an exit or if the lane splits, the driver should steer towards the desired lane so that Pilot Assist can detect the desired direction.

Hands on the steering wheel

In order for Pilot Assist to function, the driver's hands must be on the steering wheel. It is also important for the driver always to carry on being active and alert when driving as Pilot Assist is unable to read all situations and the function may toggle between off and on without prior warning.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not wait for all levels of warning and assistance from the systems, but act immediately if any warning signal is triggered.

1. If Pilot Assist detects that the driver does not keep his/her hands on the steering wheel, the system gives a warning with a symbol and text message in the driver display in order to prompt the driver to actively steer the car.
2. If the driver's hands still cannot be detected on the steering wheel after a few seconds the prompt to actively steer the car is repeated supplemented by an acoustic signal.
3. If Pilot Assist does not detect the driver's hands on the steering wheel after a further few seconds then the function is switched off. Following this, Pilot Assist must be restarted using the steering wheel button. After being switched off, the function continues to use acoustic and visual warning signals for up to 5 seconds.

Steep roads and/or heavy load

Bear in mind that Pilot Assist is primarily intended for use when driving on level road surfaces. The function may have difficulty in keeping the correct distance from the vehicle ahead when driving on steep downhill slopes – in which case, be extra attentive and ready to brake.

Do not use Pilot Assist if the car has a heavy load or a trailer is connected to the car.

> **Note**
>
> Pilot Assist will not provide steering assistance if something is connected to the towbar connector, like a trailer or a bicycle rack.

Read all warnings before use

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Note

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Important

Maintenance of driver support components must only be performed at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Warning

In certain situations, Pilot Assist steering assistance may have difficulty helping the driver in the right way or it may be automatically deactivated - in which case, the use of Pilot Assist is not recommended. Examples of such situations may be that:

- the lane markings are unclear, worn, missing, or they cross each other, or if there are several sets of lane markings.
- the lane division is changed, e.g. when the lanes split or merge, as well as on slip roads.
- at roadworks and sudden changes in the roadway, e.g. when the lines may stop marking the correct route.
- edges or other lines than lane markings are present on or near the road, e.g. kerbs, joints or repairs to the road surface, edges of barriers, roadside edges or strong shadows.
- the lane is narrow or winding.
- the lane contains ridges or holes.
- weather conditions are poor, e.g. rain, snow or fog or slush or impaired view with poor light conditions, back-lighting, wet road surface etc.

The driver should also note that Pilot Assist has the following limitations:

- High kerbs, roadside barriers, temporary obstacles (traffic cones, safety barriers, etc.) are not detected. Alternatively, they may be detected incorrectly as lane markings, with a subsequent risk of contact between the car and such obstacles. The driver must ensure him/herself that the car is at a suitable distance from such obstacles.
- The camera and radar sensor does not have the capacity to detect all oncoming objects and obstacles in traffic environments, e.g. potholes, stationary obstacles or objects which completely or partially block the route.
- Pilot Assist does not "see" pedestrians, animals, etc.
- The functions steering assist is force limited, which means that Pilot Assist cannot always help the driver to steer and keep the car within the lane.
- In cars equipped with Sensus Navigation*, the function has the option of using information from map data, which may result in varied performance.
- Pilot Assist is switched off if the power steering for speed related steering force is working with reduced power – e.g. during cooling due to overheating.

Warning

Pilot Assist must only be used if there are clear lane lines painted on each side of the lane. All other use involves increased risk of contact with surrounding obstacles that cannot be detected by the function.

Warning

- This is not a collision avoidance system. The driver is always responsible and must intervene if the system does not detect a vehicle ahead.
- The function does not brake consistently for humans or animals, and neither for small vehicles such as bicycles and motorcycles. Nor for low trailers, oncoming, slow or stationary vehicles and objects.
- Do not use the function in demanding situations, such as in city traffic, at junctions, on slippery surfaces, with a lot of water or slush on the road, in heavy rain/snow, in poor visibility, on winding roads or on slip roads.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

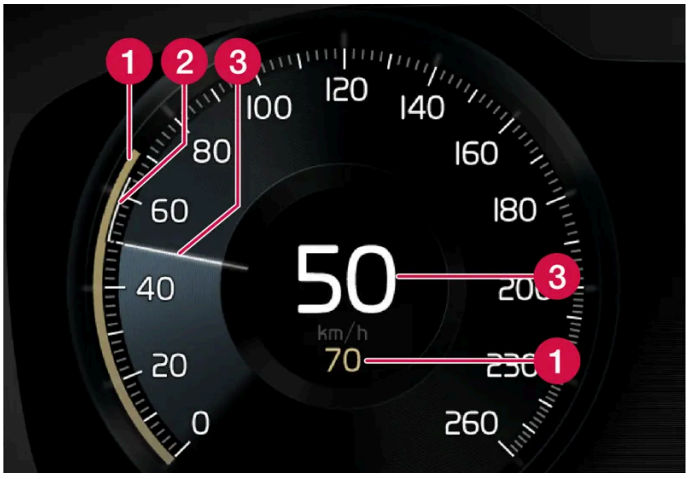
10.1.3.5. Display for adaptive cruise control and Pilot Assist*

The following sample illustration shows how adaptive cruise control* (ACC[1]) and Pilot Assist* can be shown in the driver display[2].

Graphic

	Adaptive cruise control is selected and active.
	Pilot Assist is selected and active. Pilot Assist steering assistance is only active when the steering wheel symbol has switched from extinguished to lit up.
	There is a target vehicle ahead to follow. The time interval to the vehicle ahead is only regulated when the graphic shows a vehicle above.

Speed



Indication of speeds.

1 Stored speed

2 Speed of vehicle ahead

3 Current speed of your car

* Option/accessory.

[1] Adaptive Cruise Control

[2] These functions can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

10.1.3.6. Symbols and messages for Pilot Assist*

A number of symbols and messages regarding Pilot Assist[1] can be shown. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Steering wheel symbol extinguished	Indicates deactivated steering assistance. When Pilot Assist provides steering assistance, the steering wheel is lit up.
	Symbol for hands on the steering wheel	The system cannot detect whether the driver has his/her hands on the steering wheel. Place your hands on the steering wheel and actively steer the car.
	Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual	Clean the windscreen in front of the camera and radar unit's detectors.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

10.1.3.7. Standby mode for Pilot Assist*

Pilot Assist[1] can be deactivated and set in standby mode. This can take place automatically or be done by the driver.

Standby mode means that the function is selected in the driver display but not activated. In this case, Pilot Assist does not regulate the speed or distance to the vehicle in front, or provide steering assistance.

Standby mode on driver intervention

Pilot Assist is deactivated and set in standby mode if any of the following occurs:

- The foot brake is used.
- The gear selector is moved to **N** position.
- The direction indicators are used for longer than 1 minute.
- The driver maintains a speed higher than the stored speed for longer than 1 minute.
- The clutch pedal is held depressed for longer than 1 minute – applies to cars with manual gearbox.

Automatic standby mode

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Warning

With automatic standby mode, the driver is warned via an acoustic signal and a message in the driver display.

- The driver must then regulate the car's speed, apply the brakes as needed and maintain a safe distance to other vehicles.

Automatic standby mode may be engaged in the event of one of the following.

- One of the systems that Pilot Assist is dependent on stops working, e.g. stability control / anti-skid[2].
- Hands not holding the steering wheel.
- The driver opens the door.
- The driver takes off the seatbelt.
- The engine speed is too low/high.
- One or more wheels lose traction.
- The brake temperature is high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The camera and radar unit is covered by e.g. snow or heavy rainfall (camera lens/radio waves are blocked).
- The speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and Pilot Assist is uncertain whether the vehicle ahead is a stationary vehicle or an object, such as a speed bump.
- The speed is below 5 km/h (3 mph) and the vehicle ahead turns off so that Pilot Assist no longer has a vehicle to follow.
- The speed is reduced to below 30 km/h (20 mph) - only applies to cars with manual gearbox.

* Option/accessory.

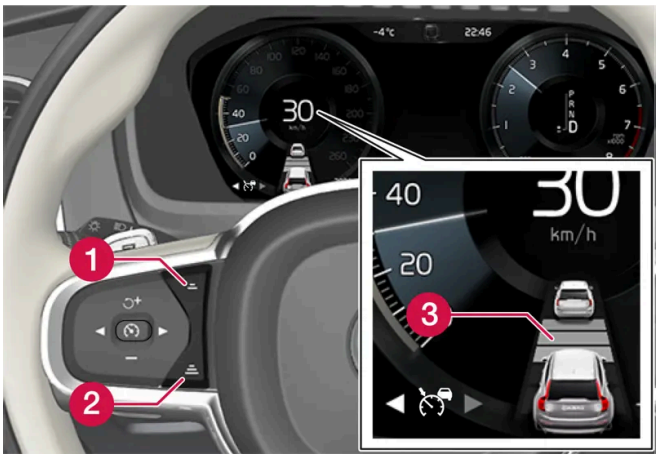
[1] This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

[2] Electronic Stability Control

10.1.3.8. Setting time interval to vehicle ahead

It is possible to set the time interval to the vehicle ahead to be maintained by the adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* functions.

1



Control for time interval.

1. Decrease time interval
2. Increase time interval
3. Distance indicator

Press the steering wheel button (1) or (2) to increase or decrease the time interval.

> The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.

Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the driver display as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line represents about 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines represents about 3 seconds.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The adaptive cruise control allows the time interval to vary significantly in certain situations in order to allow the car to follow the vehicle in front smoothly and comfortably. At low speed, when the distances are short, the adaptive cruise control increases the time interval slightly.

Note

When the symbol in the driver display shows a car and a steering wheel, Pilot Assist follows a vehicle in front at a preset time gap.

When only one steering wheel is shown, there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead.

Note

When the symbol in the driver display shows two cars, adaptive cruise control is following the vehicle in front at a pre-set time interval.

When only one car is shown, there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead.

Note

- The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.
- Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.
- If the driver supports do not seem to respond with a speed increase when activated, it may be because the time window to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the set time window.

Warning

- Only use a time window that suits the current traffic conditions.
- The driver should be aware that short time windows limit the amount of time available to react and take action in an unexpected traffic situation.

* Option/accessory.

10.1.3.9. Difference between Pilot Assist* and lane assistance

Pilot Assist is a comfort function that can help you to keep your car within its own lane and maintain a safe distance from vehicles in front of you. Lane assistance[1] is a function which, in a similar way, can help you in some situations to reduce the risk of your car accidentally leaving its own lane.

Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist can help you to steer your car between the lane's markings, as well as maintaining a preset speed and time interval to the vehicle ahead. The function can also help to maintain an advantageous position in the lane using the lane's lane lines.

What does Pilot Assist do?

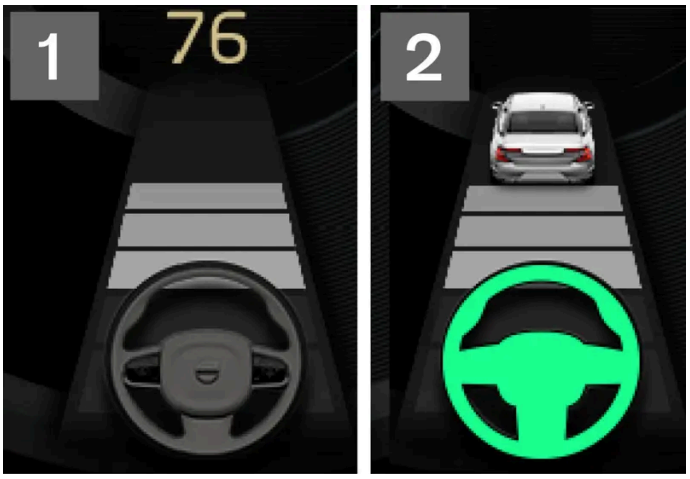
- Can help to keep the car within its lane by assisting steering in some cases.
- Can help to maintain a preset speed or the distance to the vehicle ahead by means of acceleration and braking operations.

How do I know when Pilot Assist is operational?

Symbols in the driver's display in the car indicate when this function is operational.

When the steering wheel in the middle is extinguished, Pilot Assist is running but steering assistance is not active.

When the steering wheel is illuminated, Pilot Assist is running and steering assistance is active.



2 When the steering wheel symbol in the driver display is illuminated, Pilot Assist is helping you to steer.

Lane assistance

Lane assistance can provide steering assistance and/or give you an alert when the vehicle is about to leave its own lane unintentionally. This function is active in the speed range 65-180 km/h (40-112 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane lines.

What does lane assistance do?

- Lane assistance can provide the driver with steering assistance, steering the car back into its lane and/or providing warnings using acoustic signals or steering wheel vibration.

How do I know when lane assistance is operational?

Symbols in the driver's display in the car show the status of the function.

An extinguished symbol in the driver display means that the function is running but the conditions for LKA have not been met.

A white symbol in the driver's display means that the conditions for LKA have been met and that the function is available.

An orange symbol in the driver's display means that LKA is providing steering assistance back in to the lane and/or will provide warnings using acoustic signals or steering wheel vibration.

Warning

The driver always bears responsibility for ensuring that the car is driven safely. Before using this function, the driver is recommended to read all sections on the function in the owner's manual.

Warning

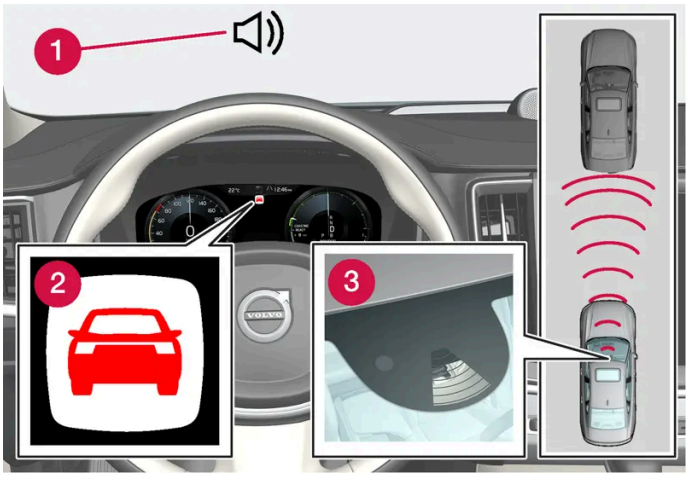
- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid(LKA)

10.1.3.10. Warning from cruise control functions in the event of a collision risk

The driver support systems of adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* can warn the driver if the distance to the vehicle ahead suddenly becomes too short.



Audio and symbol for collision warning

1. Acoustic signal in the event of a risk of collision
2. Warning signal in the event of a risk of collision
3. Distance measurement with the camera and radar units

Adaptive cruise control and Pilot Assist use approx. 40% of the capacity of the foot brake. If the car needs to be braked more heavily than the driver support is capable of and the driver does not brake, the warning lamp and acoustic warning are activated to alert the driver that immediate intervention is required.

> **Warning**
>
> The driver support systems only warn of vehicles which their radar unit has detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay. Never wait for a warning. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

* Option/accessory.

10.1.4. Overtaking assistance

10.1.4.1. Overtaking Assistance*

Overtaking Assistance can help the driver when overtaking other vehicles. The function can be used with adaptive cruise control* or Pilot Assist*.

When adaptive cruise control or Pilot Assist is following another vehicle and the driver indicates the intention to overtake by activating the direction indicator[1], the systems can help by accelerating the vehicle towards the vehicle ahead **before** the driver's vehicle reaches the overtaking lane.

The function then delays reducing speed in order to avoid premature braking when the driver's car is approaching a slower vehicle.

The function remains active until the driver's vehicle has cleared the overtaken vehicle.

> **Warning**
>
> Be aware that this function can be activated in more situations than during overtaking, e.g. when a direction indicator is used to indicate a change of lane or exit to another road – the car will then accelerate briefly.

> **Warning**
>
> - The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
> - The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
> - Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] On left flash only in left-hand-drive car, or right flash in right-hand-drive car.

10.1.4.2. Using Overtaking Assistance*

Overtaking assistance can be used with adaptive cruise control* or Pilot Assist*. There are a number of criteria if Overtaking Assistance is to be used.

The following conditions must exist for Overtaking Assistance to be activated:

- there must be a vehicle in front (the “target vehicle”)
- your car's **current speed** is at least 70 km/h (43 mph)
- **the stored speed** must be high enough for overtaking to take place safely.

To start the Overtaking Assistance:

1 Activate the direction indicator.

Use the left-hand direction indicator in a left-hand drive car right in a right-hand drive car.

> Overtaking Assistance begins acceleration and reduces the time interval the vehicle ahead for a limited period in order to facilitate overtaking. If no overtake is executed, the time interval returns to the preset value.

Warning

When using the Overtaking Assistance System, the driver should be aware that there may be undesired acceleration if the conditions suddenly change.

Some situations should therefore be avoided, such as if:

- the car is approaching an exit to turn-off in the same direction as overtaking would normally occur.
- the vehicle ahead slows down before the driver's car has crossed over into the overtaking lane.
- the traffic in the overtaking lane slows down.
- a right-hand drive car is driven in a county with left-hand traffic (or vice versa).

Situations of this type are avoided by temporarily setting Pilot Assist to standby mode.

* Option/accessory.

10.1.5. Cruise control functions

There are several driver support systems that can assist you while driving in order to maintain a suitable speed depending on situation. Here is a summary to make them more easily distinguishable from each other.

It is recommended that you read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to a function in order to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.

	Speed limiter[1]	Automatic speed limiter* [2]	Cruise control[3]	Adaptive cruise control* [4] [5]	Pilot Assist* [5]
Symbol in the driver display		+			
Brief description	The driver controls the speed with the accelerator pedal but is prevented by the speed limiter from mistakenly exceeding a preselected/preset maximum speed.	The automatic speed limiter uses speed information from the Road Sign Information function* to automatically adapt the maximum speed of the car.	The cruise control helps the driver to maintain an even speed, which can result in a more relaxed driving experience on, for example, motorways and long straight main roads in smooth traffic flows.	The adaptive cruise control helps the driver to maintain an even speed combined with a pre-selected time interval to the vehicle ahead.	Pilot Assist can help the driver to drive the car between the lane's side markings using steering assistance as well as to maintain an even speed, combined with a preselected time interval to the vehicle ahead.

[1] Speed Limiter

* Option/accessory.

[2] Automatic Speed Limiter

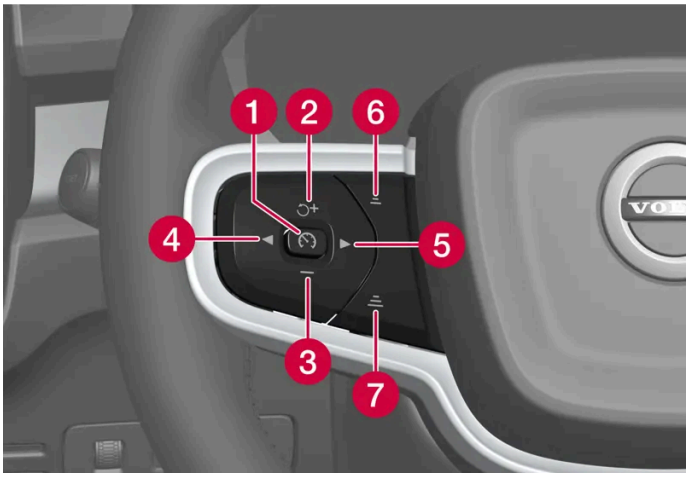
[3] Cruise Control

[4] Adaptive Cruise Control

[5] This function can be either standard or optional, depending on market.

10.1.6. Steering wheel buttons for the cruise control functions

The cruise control functions can be controlled using the left-hand steering wheel keypad. This is applicable to the speed limiter (SL[1]), automatic speed limiter (ASL[2]), cruise control (CC[3]), adaptive cruise control* (ACC[4]) and Pilot Assist*.



Cruise control function buttons

1. : **From standby mode** – Activates the selected function and stores the current speed. : **From active mode** – Sets the function to standby mode.
2. : **From standby mode** – Activates the selected function and resumes the stored speed. + : **From active mode** – Increases the stored speed.
3. − : Reduces stored speed.

4 ◀: Scroll to the left to the next function.

5 ▶: Scroll to the right to the next function.

6 =: Reduces the time interval to vehicles ahead.

7 ≡: Increases the time interval to vehicles ahead.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] Speed Limiter

[2] Automatic Speed Limiter

[3] Cruise Control

* Option/accessory.

[4] Adaptive Cruise Control

10.1.7. Selecting and activating cruise control functions

The cruise control functions have to be selected in the centre display first before they can be activated using a steering wheel button. This is applicable to the speed limiter (SL[1]), automatic speed limiter (ASL[2]), cruise control (CC[3]), adaptive cruise control (ACC[4]) and Pilot Assist.

1 Press the steering wheel button ◀ or ▶ to scroll to the symbol in the driver display for the desired function.

- Speed limiter:
- Cruise control:
- Adaptive cruise control:
- Pilot Assist:

> The symbol in the driver display is grey – the function is selected.

2 When a function is selected – press the steering wheel button to activate it.

> The symbol in the driver display lights up – the function is started and the current speed is stored as the maximum speed.

3 If the function is set to standby mode – press the steering wheel button to reactivate it.

> The driver display's cruise control markings light up – the car then continues to follow the last speed stored.

Toggling between the speed limiter and the automatic speed limiter

The automatic speed limiter can be activated and deactivated as a supplement to the speed limiter.

1

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

> • Illuminated button – the function is activated. Press the steering wheel button to start the automatic speed limiter with the current speed.
  • Extinguished button – the function is deactivated. Normal speed limiter is activated instead.

Criteria

Certain criteria have to be met to be able to start any of the functions.

Speed limiter and automatic speed limiter

- The speed limiter cannot be activated until after the engine has been started.
- The lowest maximum speed that can be stored is 30 km/h (20 mph).

Cruise control

- In order to start the cruise control from the standby mode, the car's current speed must be 30 km/h (20 mph) or higher.

Adaptive cruise control

- The driver's seatbelt must be buckled and the driver's door must be closed.
- There must be a vehicle (the "target vehicle") within reasonable distance in front of the car, or the current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).

Pilot Assist

- The driver's seatbelt must be buckled and the driver's door must be closed.
- The lane's edge markings must be clear and must be detected by the car.
- There must be a vehicle (the "target vehicle") within reasonable distance in front of the car, or the current speed must be at least 15 km/h (9 mph).
- The speed must not exceed 140 km/h (87 mph).
- The driver must keep his/her hands on the steering wheel.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

[1] Speed Limiter

[2] Automatic Speed Limiter

[3] Cruise Control

[4] Adaptive Cruise Control

10.1.8. Deactivating cruise control functions

The cruise control functions can be deactivated using a button on the steering wheel. The function then switches to standby mode. This is applicable to the speed limiter (SL[1]), automatic speed limiter (ASL[2]), cruise control (CC[3]), adaptive cruise control* (ACC[4]) and Pilot Assist*.

1 Press the steering wheel button .

> The symbol and indicators in the driver display are extinguished – the selected cruise control function is set in standby mode.

When a different function is selected using the steering wheel buttons, the driver display's symbol and the indicator for a previously selected function are hidden – the set/stored max. speed is then deleted.

> **Warning**
>
> When the cruise control functions are in standby mode, the driver must intervene and regulate both speed and distance to the vehicle ahead.

[1] Speed Limiter

[2] Automatic Speed Limiter

[3] Cruise Control

* Option/accessory.

[4] Adaptive Cruise Control

10.2. Speed limiter functions

10.2.1. Speed limiter

10.2.1.1. Speed limiter

A speed limiter (SL[1]) operates by means of the driver regulating the speed using the accelerator pedal but is prevented from accidentally exceeding a pre-selected/set maximum speed by the speed limiter.

Temporary acceleration

The speed limiter can be overridden temporarily when the accelerator pedal is depressed fully, without having to set the speed limiter to standby mode first – e.g. so as to be able to accelerate the car out of a situation quickly.

In which case, proceed as follows:

1 Fully depress the accelerator pedal and release it to interrupt acceleration when the desired speed has been reached.

> In this mode, the speed limiter is still activated and the driver display's symbol is therefore lit up.

2 Fully release the accelerator pedal when the temporary acceleration is finished.

> The car is then engine-braked automatically to below the last stored maximum speed.

Steep roads

On steep hills the speed limiter's braking effect may be inadequate and the stored maximum speed may be exceeded.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] Speed Limiter

10.2.2. Automatic speed limiter

10.2.2.1. Automatic speed limiter*

The Automatic Speed Limiter (ASL[1]) function helps the driver to adapt the car's maximum speed to the speed shown on the road signs.

Symbol for automatic speed limiter

The sign symbol (displayed alongside the stored speed, "70", in the centre of the speedometer) can be shown in three colours with the following meanings:

Colour of sign symbol	Meaning
Greenish yellow	The automatic speed limiter is active
Grey	The automatic speed limiter is set in standby mode
Orange	Automatic speed limiter is in temporary standby mode - e.g. due to a road sign not being read.

Speed information from road signs

The automatic speed limiter uses speed information from the Road Sign Information function to automatically adapt the maximum speed of the car.

Road sign information bases its information on the speed limit road signs that the car passes, plus map data. Physical signs passed have top priority, which may be necessary in the case of roadworks, for example.

If road sign information cannot interpret and provide speed information to the driver support systems, the automatic speed limiter is set to standby mode and changes to the normal speed limiter. In such cases the driver must intervene and brake to a suitable speed.

The automatic speed limiter will be reactivated when road sign information can once again interpret and provide speed information.

> **Warning**
>
> Even if the driver clearly sees the speed-related road sign, the speed information from the Road Sign Information* function to the automatic speed limiter may be incorrect – in such cases the driver must intervene him/herself and accelerate or brake to a suitable speed.

Tolerance level for automatic speed limiter

The automatic speed limiter can be set to different tolerance levels. The tolerance is adjusted in the same way as the speed setting is in the speed limiter.

If, for example, the car follows a signed speed limit of 70km/h (43 mph) the driver can instead choose to allow the car to maintain 75 km/h (47 mph).

The tolerance is followed until a road sign with a lower or higher speed is passed - then the car follows the new signed speed limit instead and the tolerance is deleted from the memory.

Note

The maximum selectable tolerance is +/- 10 km/h (5 mph).

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

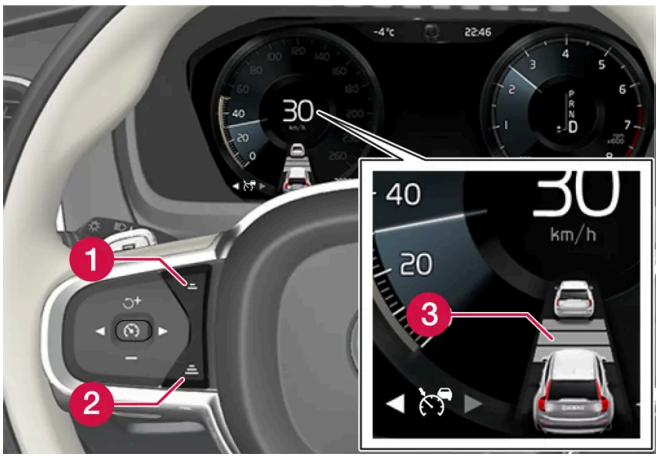
* Option/accessory.

[1] Automatic Speed Limiter

10.3. Distance Warning

10.3.1. Setting time interval to vehicle ahead

It is possible to set the time interval to the vehicle ahead to be maintained by the adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* functions.

1 

Control for time interval.

1. Decrease time interval
2. Increase time interval
3. Distance indicator

Press the steering wheel button (1) or (2) to increase or decrease the time interval.

> The distance indicator (3) shows the current time interval.

Different time intervals to the vehicle in front can be selected and shown in the driver display as 1-5 horizontal lines - the more lines the longer the time interval. One line represents about 1 second to the vehicle in front, 5 lines represents about 3 seconds.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The adaptive cruise control allows the time interval to vary significantly in certain situations in order to allow the car to follow the vehicle in front smoothly and comfortably. At low speed, when the distances are short, the adaptive cruise control increases the time interval slightly.

Note

When the symbol in the driver display shows a car and a steering wheel, Pilot Assist follows a vehicle in front at a preset time gap.

When only one steering wheel is shown, there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead.

Note

When the symbol in the driver display shows two cars, adaptive cruise control is following the vehicle in front at a pre-set time interval.

When only one car is shown, there is no vehicle within a reasonable distance ahead.

Note

- The higher the speed the longer the calculated distance in metres for a given time interval.
- Only use the time intervals permitted by local traffic regulations.
- If the driver supports do not seem to respond with a speed increase when activated, it may be because the time window to the vehicle ahead is shorter than the set time window.

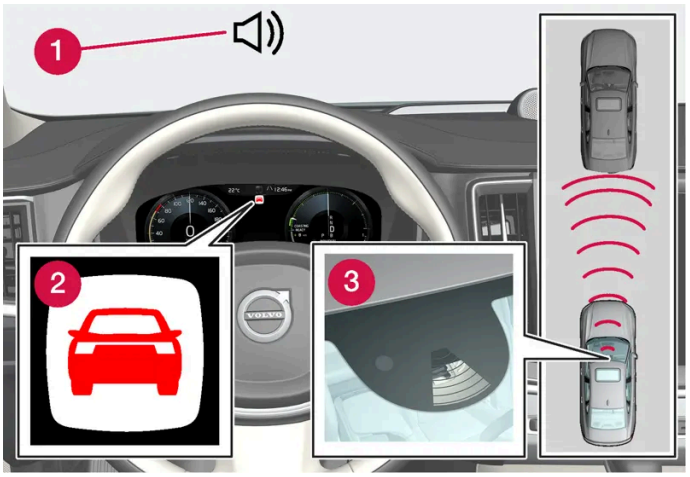
Warning

- Only use a time window that suits the current traffic conditions.
- The driver should be aware that short time windows limit the amount of time available to react and take action in an unexpected traffic situation.

* Option/accessory.

10.3.2. Warning from cruise control functions in the event of a collision risk

The driver support systems of adaptive cruise control* and Pilot Assist* can warn the driver if the distance to the vehicle ahead suddenly becomes too short.



Audio and symbol for collision warning

1. Acoustic signal in the event of a risk of collision
2. Warning signal in the event of a risk of collision
3. Distance measurement with the camera and radar units

Adaptive cruise control and Pilot Assist use approx. 40% of the capacity of the foot brake. If the car needs to be braked more heavily than the driver support is capable of and the driver does not brake, the warning lamp and acoustic warning are activated to alert the driver that immediate intervention is required.

> **Warning**
>
> The driver support systems only warn of vehicles which their radar unit has detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay. Never wait for a warning. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

* Option/accessory.

10.4. Blind Spot Information

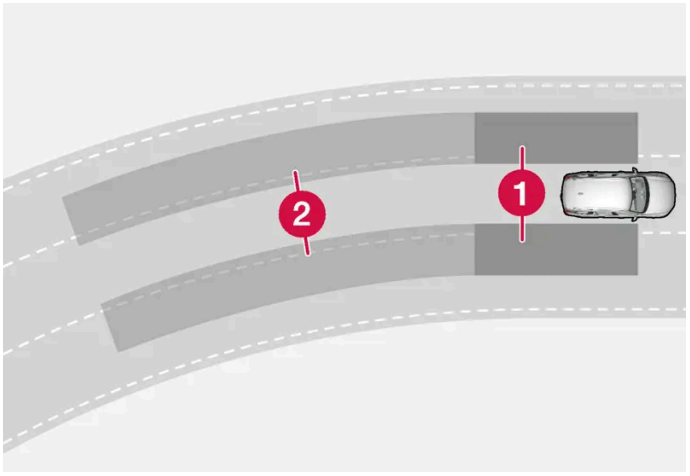
10.4.1. BLIS*

The BLIS[1] function is intended to help the driver detect vehicles diagonally behind and to the side of the car so as to provide assistance in heavy traffic on roads with several lanes in the same direction.

Location of BLIS lamp

BLIS is a driver aid intended to give a warning of:

- vehicles in the car's blind spot
- quickly approaching vehicles in the left and right lanes closest to the car.



Principle of BLIS

1 Zone in blind spot

2 Zone for quickly approaching vehicle

The system is designed to react when:

- your car is overtaken by other vehicles
- another vehicle is approaching your own car at speed.

When BLIS detects a vehicle in Zone 1 or a quickly approaching vehicle in Zone 2, the indicator lamp on the door mirror on the right or left illuminates with a constant glow. If the driver activates the direction indicator on the same side as the warning, the indicator lamp will change over from a constant glow to flashing with a more intense light.

BLIS is active when the driver's vehicle is travelling at a speed above 12 km/h (7 mph).

If passing vehicles drive more than 15 km/h (9 mph) faster than the driver's vehicle, BLIS will not react.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Note

The lamp illuminates on the side of the car where the system has detected the vehicle. If the car is overtaken on both sides at the same time then both lamps illuminate.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Blind Spot Information

10.4.2. Activating and deactivating BLIS*

The BLIS[1] function can be activated or deactivated.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

If BLIS is activated when starting the engine, the function is confirmed by the door mirror indicator lamps blinking once.

If BLIS was deactivated when the engine was switched off, it will continue to be deactivated when the engine is next started and no indicator lights will then be illuminated.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Blind Spot Information

10.4.3. Messages for BLIS*

A number of messages regarding BLIS[1] can be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Message	Specification
Blind spot sensor Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[2].
Blind spot system off Trailer attached	BLIS and Cross Traffic Alert* have been deactivated as a trailer has been connected to the car's electrical system.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Blind Spot Information

[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

10.4.4. Limitations of BLIS*

The BLIS[1] function may have limitations in certain situations.

Keep the surface indicated clean – on both the left and right-hand sides of the car[2].

Examples of limitations:

- Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may reduce the functions and deactivate alerts.
- The BLIS function is automatically deactivated if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system.
- For good performance of BLIS, there should be no bicycle rack, luggage carrier or similar mounted on the car's towbar.

Warning

- BLIS does not work on sharp bends.
- BLIS does not work when the car is reversing.

Note

This function uses the car's radar units, which have certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

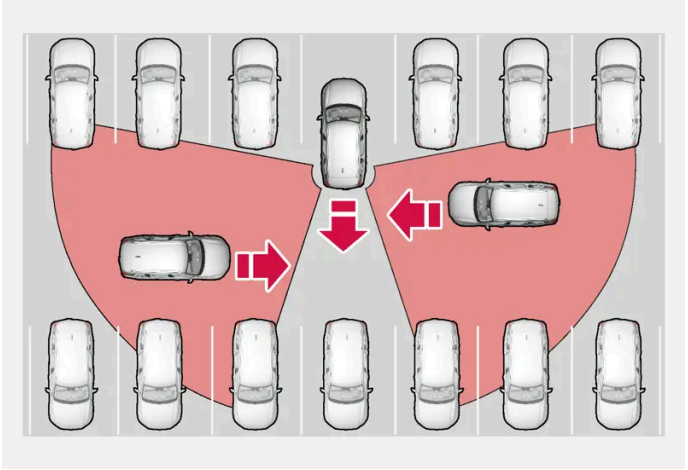
[1] Blind Spot Information

[2] NOTE: The illustration is schematic - details may vary depending on car model.

10.5. Cross Traffic Alert

10.5.1. Cross Traffic Alert*

Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) is a driver support that supplements BLIS[1] and is designed to help the driver detect traffic crossing behind the car when it is reversing.
The auto-brake sub-function can help the driver to stop the car in the event of a risk of collision with an un-observed vehicle.



Examples of areas where Cross Traffic Alert can assist the driver to detect obstacles during reversing.

The function is primarily designed to detect vehicles. In favourable conditions it may also be able to detect smaller objects, such as cyclists and pedestrians.

The function is only active if the car rolls backwards or if reverse gear has been selected.

If the function senses that something is approaching from the side, this can be indicated with:

- an acoustic signal - the sound is heard in the left-hand or right-hand speaker according to the direction from which the object approaches.
- an illuminated icon in the driver display's **Park Assist System** graphic.
- an icon on the Park assist camera top view.

Illuminated icon for Cross Traffic Alert in the **Park Assist System** graphic on the screen.

If the driver does not observe the warning from the function and a collision is unavoidable, the auto-brake sub-function engages in order to stop the car, after which the driver display shows an explanatory text message on why the car was braked.

> **Warning**
>
> - The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
> - The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
> - Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Blind Spot Information

10.5.2. Activating and deactivating Cross Traffic Alert*

The driver can choose to switch off the Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) function.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

The function is activated automatically each time the engine is started.

* Option/accessory.

10.5.3. Messages for Cross Traffic Alert*

A number of messages regarding Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) can be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Message	Specification
Blind spot sensor Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[1].
Blind spot system off Trailer attached	BLIS[2] and CTA have been deactivated as a trailer has been connected to the car's electrical system.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[2] Blind Spot Information System

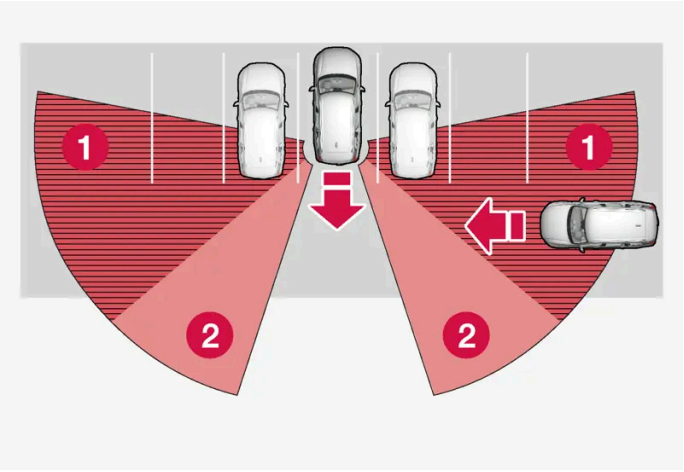
10.5.4. Limitations of Cross Traffic Alert*

The Cross Traffic Alert (CTA) function with auto-brake sub-function may have limited functionality in certain situations. Brake intervention is active at speeds below 15 km/h.

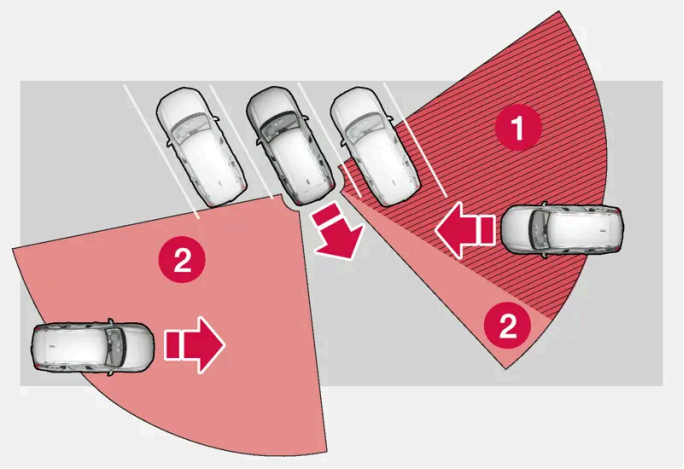
> **Warning**
>
> The auto-brake sub-function can only detect and brake for other vehicles that are moving – not for stationary obstacles, a cyclist or a pedestrian, for example.

The function has a certain limitation – the sensors cannot "see" through other parked vehicles or obstructions, for example.

Here are some examples of situations where the function's "field of vision" may be already limited and approaching vehicles cannot therefore be detected until they are very close:



The car is parked deep inside a parking slot.



In an angled parking slot Cross Traffic Alert may be completely “blind” on one side.

1 Blind sector.

2 Sector in which the function can detect/"see".

However, as your car slowly reverses, the angle it makes with the obstructing vehicle/object changes and the blind sector rapidly decreases.

Examples of further limitations

- Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may reduce the functions and deactivate alerts.
- CTA is automatically deactivated if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system.
- For good performance of CTA, there should be no bicycle rack, luggage carrier or similar mounted on the car's towbar.

> **Note**
>
> This function uses the car's radar units, which have certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

10.6. Rear Collision Warning

10.6.1. Rear Collision Warning*

The Rear Collision Warning[1] (RCW) function can help the driver to avoid being hit by a vehicle approaching from behind.

Drivers in vehicles behind can be warned about an imminent collision by the function flashing intensively with the direction indicators.

If, at a speed below 30 km/h (20 mph), the function detects that the car is in danger of being hit from behind, the seatbelt tensioners may tension the front seatbelts. The Whiplash Protection System is also activated in the event of a collision.

Immediately before a collision from behind, this function may also activate the foot brake in order to reduce the forward acceleration of the car during the collision. However, the foot brake is only activated if the car is stationary. The foot brake releases immediately if the accelerator pedal is depressed.

This function is activated automatically each time the engine is started.

> ⚠ **Warning**
>
> - The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
> - The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
> - Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The function is not available in all markets.

10.6.2. Limitations of Rear Collision Warning*

In certain cases, the Rear Collision Warning (RCW)[1] may have difficulty helping the driver in the event of a collision risk.

This can, for example, be if:

- the vehicle approaching from behind is detected too late
- the vehicle approaching from behind changes lane at the last moment
- a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is connected to the car's electrical system - the function is then deactivated automatically.

> **Note**
>
> In certain markets, RCW does **not** give a warning with the direction indicators due to local traffic regulations - in such cases, this part of the function is deactivated.

> **Note**
>
> This function uses the car's radar units, which have certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Rear collision warning.

10.7. Connected Safety

10.7.1. Connected Safety

Connected Safety[1] communicates information between your own car and other vehicles via the Internet[2]. The function is intended to make a driver aware that there may be a potentially dangerous traffic situation further ahead on the same road.

The function can inform the driver whether another vehicle further ahead on the same road has activated its hazard warning flashers or detected slippery driving conditions. Information about slippery driving conditions is also given if your own car detects slippery surfaces.

Connected Safety can help the driver with the following:

- Alarm on hazard warning flashers
- Alarm on slippery driving conditions

Connected Safety communication between vehicles only works for vehicles equipped with the function and which have it activated.

Alarm on hazard warning flashers

If your own car's hazard warning flashers are activated, information about this can be sent to vehicles approaching your own car's position.

When your own car is approaching a vehicle with flashing hazard warning flashers, this symbol is shown on the driver display.

Alarm on slippery driving conditions

If your own car detects reduced friction between your tyres and the road, information on this can be sent to vehicles approaching your own car's position.

If an ice alert is triggered, this symbol is displayed on the Driver display when a vehicle approaches the slippery road section, both in your own car and in other vehicles that have received the information via Connected Safety.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] Not available on all markets.

[2] Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.

10.7.2. Activating and deactivating Connected Safety

For Connected Safety to be able to share information on road conditions with other vehicles, the function needs to be activated. The function can be deactivated if you do not want to share information.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

When activated, special terms and conditions that appear on the display must be acknowledged by the driver before a connection to the Internet[1] can be made. For example, a situation where the driver must accept data being sent from the car using his/her mobile phone.

If there is no Internet connection, your own car will still inform you, the driver, that slippery driving conditions have been detected by your own car. For Connected Safety to work fully, your own car needs to be connected to the Internet.

[1] Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.

10.7.3. Limitations of Connected Safety

Information about vehicles with activated hazard warning flashers or which have detected slippery driving conditions is not always communicated between all vehicles within the same area.

This can be because for example:

- Poor or no contact with the Internet.
- Vehicles on slippery surfaces make manoeuvres that are too weak for friction between tyres and road surface to be detectable, e.g. steering wheel movement, acceleration or braking.
- Vehicles that have detected slippery surfaces, or have activated their hazard warning flashers, do not have the function activated.
- Vehicles that have detected slippery surfaces, or have activated their hazard warning flashers, are not equipped with the function.
- There may be no warning due to missing or defective global positioning/satellite navigation.
- Detection of slippery surfaces or activation of hazard warning flashers has taken place on a road which is missing from Volvo Cars database.
- Connected Safety is not available in all markets and does not cover all areas - a retailer for Volvo has information on current areas.

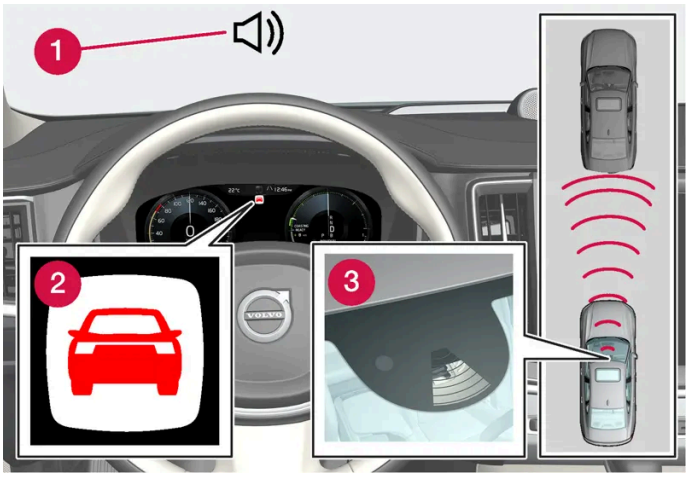
Warning

- In certain situations, the function may give incorrect warnings for slippery driving conditions.
- The function cannot always detect other vehicles with activated hazard warning flashers or detect all sections of road with slippery surfaces.

10.8. City Safety

10.8.1. City Safety™

City Safety[1] can use lights, sound and a brake pulse warning to alert the driver to pedestrians, cyclists, larger animals and vehicles.



Function overview

1 Acoustic signal in the event of a risk of collision

2 Warning signal in the event of a risk of collision

3 Distance measurement with the camera and radar unit

The function can help the driver avoid a collision when, for example, driving in heavy traffic, where changes in the traffic ahead coupled with inattentiveness can lead to an incident. City Safety then activates brief, heavy braking and the car normally stops just behind the vehicle in front.

The function helps the driver by automatically braking the car in the event of an imminent risk of collision if the driver does not react in time by braking and/or swerving.

City Safety is activated in situations where the driver should have started braking earlier, which is why it cannot help the driver in every situation. The function is designed to be activated as late as possible in order to avoid unnecessary intervention. Automatic braking takes place only after or at the same time as the collision warning.

The driver or passengers are not normally aware of City Safety - it only intervenes in a situation where a collision is immediately imminent.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] The function is not available in all markets.

10.8.2. Subfunctions for City Safety

City Safety[1] can help to prevent a collision or reduce the collision speed. The function consists of several subfunctions.

Ability to reduce speed

If the speed difference between the driver's car and the obstacle is greater than the following specified speeds, the City Safety auto-brake function cannot prevent a collision but it can mitigate the consequences of a collision.

Vehicles

For a vehicle in front, City Safety can reduce the speed by up to 60 km/h (37 mph).

Cyclists

For a cyclist, City Safety can reduce the speed by up to 50 km/h (30 mph).

Pedestrians

For a pedestrian, City Safety can reduce speed by up to 45 km/h (28 mph).

Large animals

In the event of a risk of a collision with a large animal, City Safety can reduce the car's speed by up to 15 km/h (9 mph).

The brake function for large animals is primarily intended to reduce the force of the impact at higher speeds and is most effective at speeds above 70 km/h (43 mph) but less effective at lower speed.

The steps of City Safety

City Safety carries out three steps in the following order:

1. Collision warning
2. Brake support
3. Auto Brake

1 - Collision warning

The driver is first warned of a potentially imminent collision.

City Safety can detect pedestrians, cyclists or vehicles that are stationary or moving in the same direction as the car and are ahead. City Safety can also detect pedestrians, cyclists or large animals that are crossing the road in front of the car.

In the event of a risk of collision with a pedestrian, larger animal, cyclist or vehicle, the driver is alerted by means of a visual, acoustic and brake pulse warning. There is no brake pulse warning at lower speeds, sudden driver braking or acceleration. The brake pulse frequency varies according to the car's speed.

2 - Brake support

If the risk of collision has increased further after the collision warning then the brake support is activated.

Brake support reinforces the driver’s braking action if the system considers that the braking is not sufficient to avoid a collision.

3 - Auto Brake

The automatic brake function is activated last.

If in this situation the driver has not yet started to take evasive action and the risk of collision is imminent then the automatic braking function is deployed - this takes place irrespective of whether or not the driver brakes. Braking then takes place with full brake force in order to reduce collision speed, or with limited brake force if it is sufficient to avoid a collision.

The seatbelt tensioner can be activated in connection with the engagement of the automatic brake function.

In some situations, the action of Auto-brake may begin with light braking and then progress to full brake action.

When City Safety has prevented a collision with a stationary object, the car remains stationary in anticipation of positive action by the driver. If the car has been braked to avoid collision with a slower vehicle in front, its speed is reduced to match that of the vehicle in front.

> **Note**
>
> On cars with manual gearbox, the engine stops when the Auto-brake function has stopped the car, unless the driver has managed to depress the clutch pedal beforehand.

The driver can always interrupt a braking intervention by firmly depressing the accelerator pedal.

> **Note**
>
> When City Safety brakes, the brake lights come on.

When City Safety is activated and brakes the vehicle, the driver display shows a text message to the effect that the function is/has been active.

> **Warning**
>
> City Safety must not be used by the driver to change his/her driving style - the driver must not rely on City Safety alone and allow it to do the braking.

[1] The function is not available in all markets.

10.8.3. Setting the warning distance for City Safety

City Safety[1] is always activated, but the driver can select the warning distance for the function.

Note

The City Safety function cannot be deactivated. It is activated automatically when the engine/electric operation is started and remains switched on until the engine/electric operation is switched off.

The warning distance determines the sensitivity of the system and regulates the distance at which a visual, acoustic and brake pulse warning should be deployed.

To select warning distance:

1. Select **Settings** → **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** in the centre display's top view.
2. Under **City Safety Warning**, select either **Late**, **Normal** or **Early** to set the desired warning distance.

If the **Early** setting produces too many warnings, which could be perceived as irritating in certain situations, the **Normal** or **Late** warning distance can be selected.

When warnings are perceived as being too frequent or disturbing, the warning distance can be reduced, which reduces the total number of warnings and instead leads to City Safety giving a warning at a later stage.

The **Late** warning distance should therefore only be used in exceptional cases, as in dynamic driving.

Warning

- No automatic system can guarantee 100% correct function in all situations. Therefore, never test City Safety by driving at people, animals or vehicles - this may cause severe damage and injury and risk lives.
- City Safety warns the driver when there is a risk of a collision, but it cannot shorten the driver's reaction time.
- Even if the warning distance has been set to **Early** warnings could be perceived as being late in certain situations, e.g. when there are large differences in speed or if vehicles ahead suddenly brake heavily.
- With the warning distance set at **Early**, the warnings will come more in advance. This may mean that the warnings come more frequently than at the warning distance **Normal**, but it is recommended since it can make City Safety more effective.

[1] The function is not available in all markets.

10.8.4. Messages for City Safety

A number of messages regarding City Safety can be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Message	Specification
City Safety Automatic intervention	When City Safety brakes or has done an automatic braking, several of the driver display symbols may be illuminated in connection with a text message being shown.

Message	Specification
City Safety Reduced functionality Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[1].

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message persists, contact a workshop[1].

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

10.8.5. Limitations of City Safety

The City Safety[1] function may have limitations in certain situations.

Surroundings

Low objects

Low-hanging objects, e.g. a flag/pennant for projecting load, or accessories such as auxiliary lamps and bull bars that are higher than the bonnet, will limit the function.

Skidding

On slippery road surfaces the braking distance is extended, which may reduce the capacity of City Safety to avoid a collision. In such situations, the anti-lock brakes and the stability control ESC[2] are designed to give the best possible braking force with maintained stability.

Oncoming light

The visual warning signal in the windscreen may be difficult to notice in the event of strong sunlight, reflections, when sunglasses are being worn or if the driver is not looking straight ahead.

Heat

In the event of high passenger compartment temperature, caused by e.g. strong sunlight, the visual warning signal in the wind-screen may be temporarily disengaged.

The camera and radar unit's field of view

The camera's field of vision is limited, which is why pedestrians, large animals, cyclists and vehicles in some situations cannot be detected, or they are detected later than anticipated.

Dirty vehicles may be detected later than others and if it is dark, motorcycles may be detected late or not at all.

If a text message in the driver display indicates that the camera or radar unit is obstructed, City Safety may be unable to detect pedestrians, large animals, cyclists, vehicles or road lines ahead of the car. This means that the functionality of City Safety may be reduced.

However, an error message is not shown in all situations where the windscreen sensors are obstructed. The driver must therefore take care to keep the area of windscreen in front of the camera and radar unit clear.

> **Important**
>
> Maintenance of driver support components must only be performed at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Driver intervention

Reversing

When your own car is reversing, City Safety is temporarily deactivated.

Low speed

City Safety is not activated at very low speeds - below 4 km/h (3 mph) - and the system therefore does not intervene in situations where your car is approaching a vehicle ahead very slowly, e.g. when parking.

Active driver

Driver commands are always prioritised, which is why City Safety does not intervene or postpone warning/intervention in situations where the driver is steering and accelerating in a decisive manner, even if a collision is unavoidable.

Active and aware driving behaviour can therefore delay a collision warning and intervention in order to minimise unnecessary warnings.

Important warnings

> **Warning**
>
> Driver supports only warn of obstacles which their radar unit has detected – hence a warning may not be given, or it may be given with a certain delay.
>
> - Never wait for a warning or intervention. Apply the brakes when the situation requires.

Warning

- Warnings and brake interventions could be implemented late or not at all if a traffic situation or external influences mean that the camera and radar unit cannot detect pedestrians, cyclists, large animals or vehicles correctly.
- For vehicles to be detected at night, their headlamps and rear lamp cluster must be switched on and shining clearly.
- The camera and radar unit has a limited range for pedestrians and cyclists. The system can provide effective warnings and brake interventions as long as the relative speed is below 50 km/h (30 mph). For stationary or slow-moving vehicles, warnings and brake interventions are effective at vehicle speeds up to 70 km/h (43 mph). Speed reduction for large animals is less than 15 km/h (9 mph) and can be achieved at vehicle speeds above 70 km/h (43 mph). The warning and brake intervention for large animals is less effective at lower speeds.
- Warnings for stationary or slow-moving vehicles as well as large animals may be disengaged due to darkness or poor visibility.
- Warnings and brake interventions for pedestrians and cyclists are deactivated at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- Do not place, stick or mount anything on the outside or inside of the windscreen in front of or around the camera and radar unit — this can interfere with camera-dependent functions.
- Objects, snow, ice or dirt in the area of the camera sensor may reduce its functionality, fully deactivate it or give incorrect function response.

Warning

- The City Safety auto-brake function can prevent a collision or reduce collision speed, but to ensure full brake performance the driver should always depress the brake pedal – even when the car auto-brakes.
- The warning is only activated if there is a high risk of collision – you must therefore never wait for a collision warning.
- The warning and brake intervention for pedestrians and cyclists are deactivated at vehicle speeds exceeding 80 km/h (50 mph).
- City Safety does not activates any auto-brake functions in the event of heavy acceleration.

Note

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

Market limitation

City Safety is not available in all countries. If City Safety does not appear in the centre display's **Settings** menu, the car is not equipped with this function.

Search path in the top view of the centre display:

- **Settings** → **My Car** → **IntelliSafe**

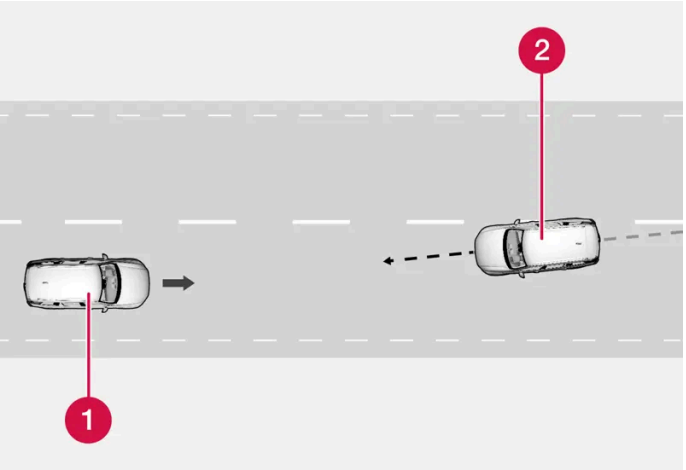
[1] The function is not available in all markets.

[2] Electronic Stability Control

10.8.6. City Safety brakes for oncoming vehicles

City Safety can assist the driver to use emergency braking for an oncoming vehicle in your car's lane.

If an oncoming vehicle enters your car's lane and a collision is unavoidable, City Safety can reduce the car's speed with a view to reducing the violence of the impact.



1 Your car
2 Oncoming vehicles

For this function to work, the following criteria must be met:

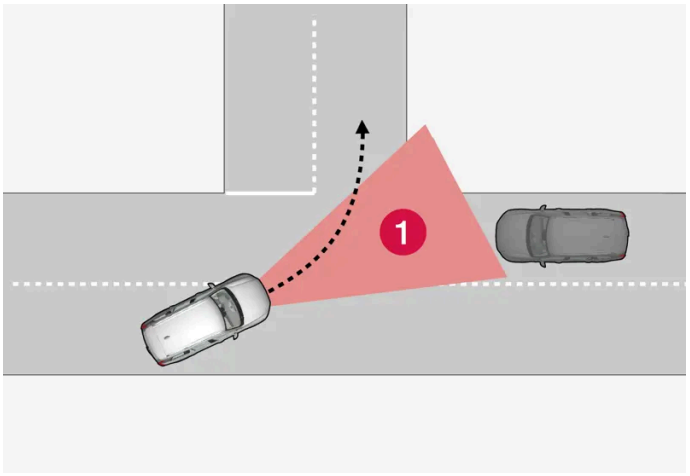
- your car must be travelling at more than 4 km/h (3 mph)
- the road section must be straight
- your car's lane must have clear lane markings
- your car must be positioned straight in its own lane
- the oncoming vehicle must be within your car's lane markings
- the oncoming vehicle must have its headlamps switched on
- this function can only handle "front to front" collisions
- this function can only detect vehicles with four wheels.

Warning

Warnings and brake interventions due to an impending collision with an oncoming vehicle always come very late.

10.8.7. City Safety in cross traffic

City Safety[1] can help the driver when turning and crossing the path of another oncoming vehicle at an intersection.



1 Sector in which City Safety can detect oncoming crossing vehicles.

For City Safety to detect an oncoming vehicle on a collision course, the oncoming vehicle must first enter the sector in which City Safety can analyse the situation.

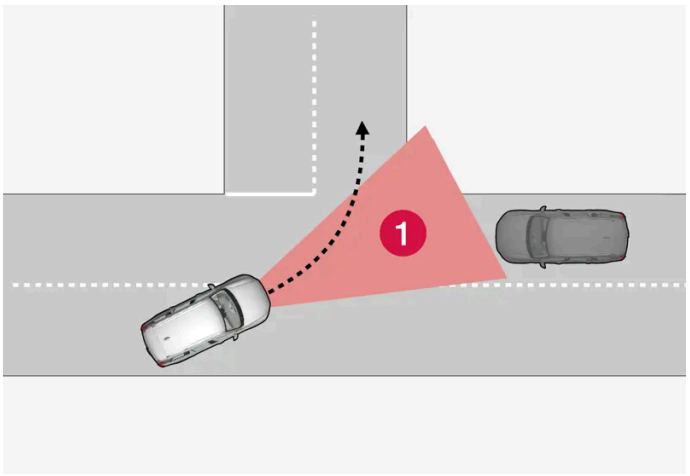
In addition:

- your car's speed must be at least 4 km/h (3 mph).
- your car must turn to the left in markets with right-hand traffic (or to the right in left-hand traffic).
- the oncoming vehicle must have its headlamps switched on.

[1] The function is not available in all markets.

10.8.8. Limitations for City Safety in cross traffic

In some cases City Safety may have difficulty helping the driver deal with collision risks due to oncoming cross traffic.



Examples are:

- If there are slippery driving conditions and stability control[1] intervenes.
- If the oncoming vehicle is detected too late.
- If the oncoming vehicle is obscured by something.
- If the oncoming vehicle has headlamps switched off.
- If the oncoming vehicle drives in an unpredictable manner, for example, abruptly changes lanes at a late stage.

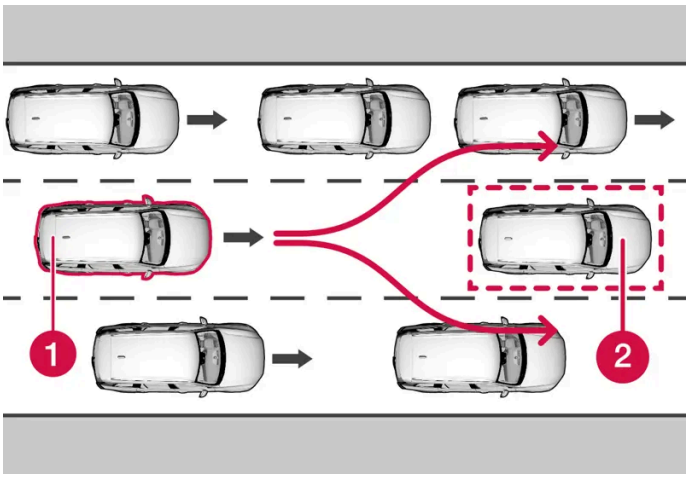
> **Note**
>
> This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

[1] Electronic Stability Control (ESC)

10.8.9. Automatic braking in the event of an impeded evasive manoeuvre with City Safety

City Safety[1] has the facility to assist the driver by automatically braking the car earlier when it is not possible to avoid a collision by only steering away.

City Safety assists the driver by continuously attempting to anticipate whether there are "escape routes" to the side in case a slow or stationary vehicle ahead is discovered at a late stage.



Your car (1) "sees" no options for evading the vehicle ahead (2) and can therefore auto-brake earlier.

1. Your car
2. Slow/stationary vehicle

City Safety does not intervene with the auto-brake function as long as the driver him/herself has the opportunity to avoid a collision via a steering manoeuvre.

However, if City Safety anticipates that an evasive manoeuvre is not possible due to traffic in an adjacent lane, the function can assist the driver by automatically starting to brake at an earlier stage.

[1] The function is not available in all markets.

10.8.10. Detection of obstacles with City Safety

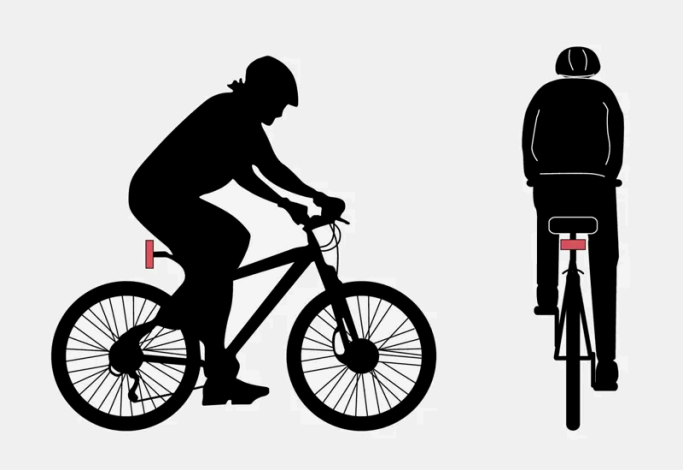
City Safety[1] can help the driver to detect vehicles, cyclists, large animals and pedestrians.

Vehicles

City Safety detect most vehicles that are stationary or moving in the same direction as the driver's own car. This function can also detect oncoming vehicles and cross traffic in certain cases.

In order that City Safety shall be able to detect a vehicle in the dark, the vehicle's front and rear lights must be working and clearly illuminated.

Cyclists



Examples of what City Safety interprets as a cyclist — with clear body outline and bicycle outline.

Good performance requires that the system function that detects a cyclist must receive the clearest possible information about the body and bicycle outline, requiring the ability to identify the bicycle, head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body plus a normal human pattern of movement.

If large parts of the cyclist's body or bicycle are not visible to the function's camera then the system cannot detect a cyclist.

For the function to be able to detect a cyclist, he/she must be an adult and riding a bicycle designed for adults.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

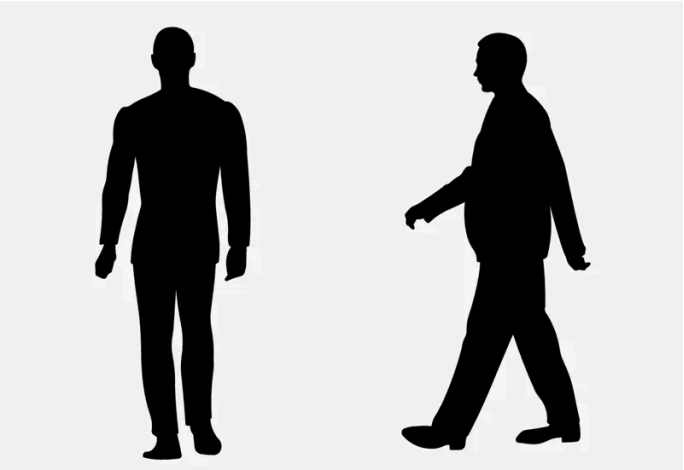
Warning

City Safety is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all cyclists in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured cyclists.
- cyclists if the background contrast for the cyclists is poor.
- cyclists wearing clothing that obscures the body outline.
- bicycles loaded with large objects.

Warnings and brake interventions could be late or not occur at all. The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

Pedestrians



Examples of what the system regards as pedestrians with clear body outlines.

Good performance requires that the system function that detects a pedestrian must receive the clearest possible information about the body outline, requiring the ability to identify the head, arms, shoulders, legs, upper and lower body plus a normal human pattern of movement.

In order that it shall be possible to detect a pedestrian there must be a contrast with the background and this will be affected by such things as clothes, the background and the weather. With poor contrast the pedestrian may either be detected late or not at all, which may mean that warnings and braking are late or omitted.

City Safety can also detect pedestrians in the dark if they are illuminated by the car's headlamps.

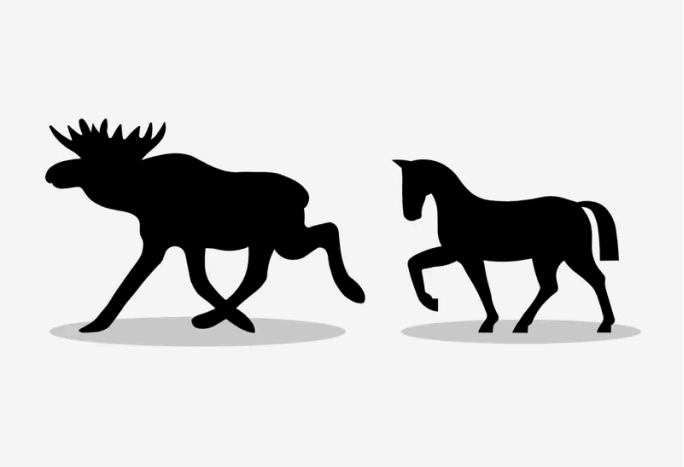
Warning

City Safety is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all pedestrians in all situations and, for example, cannot see:

- partially obscured pedestrians, people in clothing that hides their body contour or pedestrians shorter than 80 cm (32 in.).
- pedestrians if the background contrast for the pedestrians is poor.
- pedestrians who are carrying larger objects.

Warnings and brake interventions could be late or not occur at all. The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

Large animals



Examples of what City Safety interprets as large animals - standing still or walking slowly and with clear body outline.

Good performance requires that the system function that detects a large animal (e.g. elk and horse) must receive the clearest possible information about the body outline, requiring the ability to identify the animal directly from the side in combination with what is a normal pattern of movement for the animal.

If parts of the animal's body are not visible to the function's camera then the system cannot detect the animal.

City Safety can also detect large animals in the dark if they are illuminated by the car's headlamps.

> **Warning**
>
> City Safety is supplementary driver support, but it cannot detect all large animals in all situations and, for example, cannot see:
>
> - partially obscured large animals.
> - larger animals seen from the front or from behind.
> - large animals that run or move quickly.
> - large animals if the background contrast for the animals is poor.
> - small animals such as dogs and cats, for example.
>
> Warnings and brake interventions could be late or not occur at all. The driver is always responsible that the vehicle is driven correctly and with a safety distance adapted to the speed.

[1] The function is not available in all markets.

10.9. Steering assistance at risk of collision

10.9.1. Steering assistance at risk of collision

The function **Collision avoidance** can help the driver reduce the risk of the car leaving its lane unintentionally and/or colliding with another vehicle or obstacle by actively steering the car back into its lane and/or swerving.

The function consists of these subfunctions:

- Steering assistance upon risk of run-off
- Steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision
- Steering assistance upon risk of rear-end collision*

After automatic engagement, the driver display indicates that this has occurred via a text message:

Collision avoidance Automatic intervention

> **Warning**
>
> - The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
> - The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
> - Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

> **Note**
>
> It is always the driver who decides how much the car should steer – the car can never take command.

* Option/accessory.

10.9.2. Activating or deactivating steering assistance in the event of a collision risk

The steering assistance function is optional – the driver can choose to activate or deactivate it.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- Illuminated button indication – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button indication – the function is deactivated.

This function is activated automatically each time the engine is started[1].

> **Note**
>
> When the **Collision avoidance** function is deactivated, all subfunctions are switched off:
>
> - Steering assistance at risk of road departure
> - Steering assistance at risk of oncoming collision
> - Steering assistance at risk of rear-end collision*
>
> Even though it is possible to deactivate the function, it is advisable for the driver to always have it activated since it improves driving safety in most cases.

[1] In certain markets, the setting used when the engine is switched off is reactivated.

* Option/accessory.

10.9.3. Symbols and messages for steering assistance upon risk of collision

A number of symbols and messages regarding steering assistance may be shown in the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Collision avoidance Automatic intervention	When the function is activated, a message is shown to the driver indicating that the system has been activated.
	Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual	The ability of the camera to scan the roadway in front of the car is reduced.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains: Contact a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

10.9.4. Limitations for steering assistance at risk of collision

In certain situations the function may have limited functionality and fail to intervene in the following cases, for example:

- for small vehicles, such as motorcycles
- if the majority of the car has steered into the adjacent lane
- on roads/in lanes with unclear or non-existent lane markings

- outside the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph)
- as the steering servo for speed-dependent steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. when cooling due to overheating.

Other demanding situations can include:

- road works
- winter road conditions
- narrow roads
- poor road surface
- a very “sporty” driving style
- poor weather with reduced visibility.

In these demanding situations, the function may have difficulty helping the driver correctly. In such cases it is recommended to switch off this function.

Warning

Warnings and steering assistance due to an impending collision with an oncoming vehicle always come very late.

Note

This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

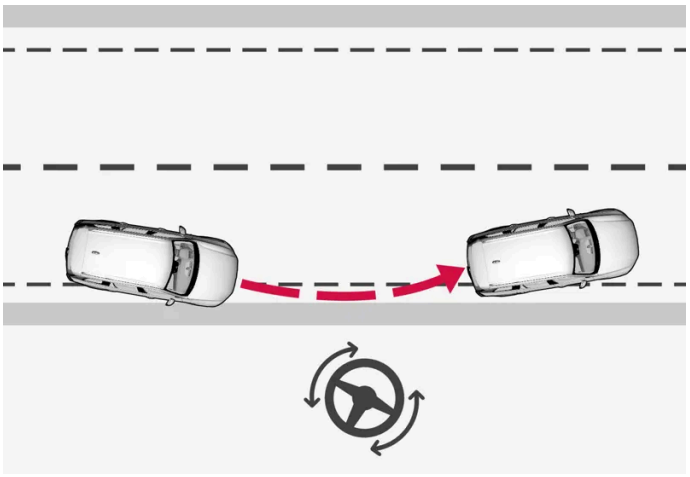
10.9.5. Steering assistance upon risk of run-off

Steering assistance has a number of subfunctions. Steering assistance in the event of run-off risk can help the driver and reduce the risk of the car accidentally leaving the road by actively steering the car back onto the road.

The function has two activation levels on intervention:

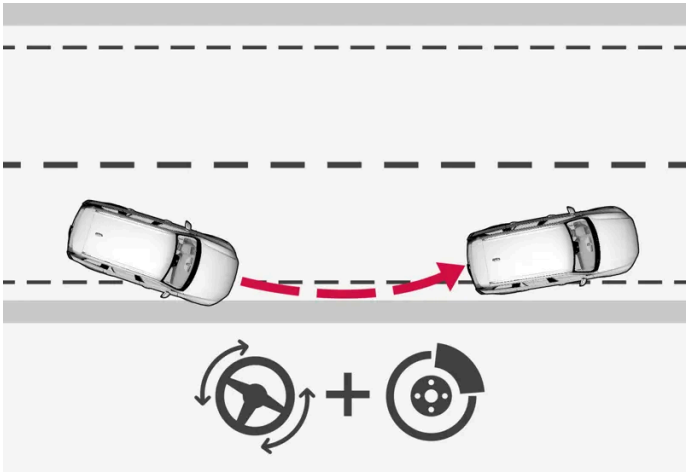
- Steering assistance only
- Steering assistance with brake intervention

Steering assistance only



Intervention with steering assistance

Steering assistance with brake intervention



Intervention with steering assistance and braking

Brake intervention helps in situations where steering assistance alone is not sufficient. The brake force is adapted automatically depending on the situation at the time of road run-off.

The function is active within the speed range 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane markings/lines.

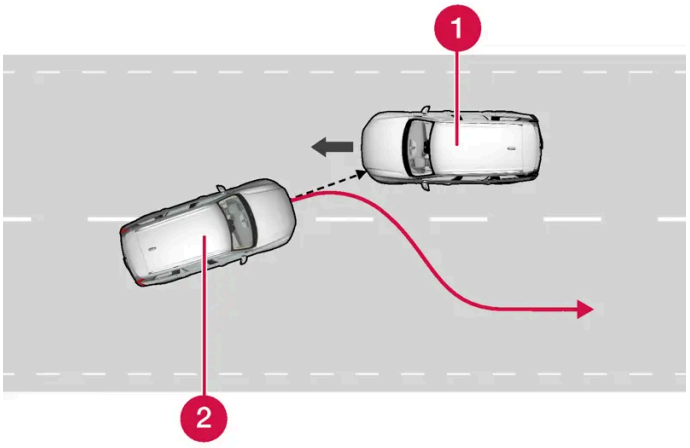
A camera scans the edges of the road and the painted side markings. If the car is about to leave the side of the road, the car is steered back onto the road and if the steering intervention is not enough to avoid run-off, the brakes are also activated.

However, the function does **not** intervene with either steering assistance or brake intervention if the direction indicators are used. And if the function detects that the driver is actively driving the car, activation of the function will be delayed.

When the function intervenes, a message is shown in the driver display.

10.9.6. Steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision

Steering assistance has a number of subfunctions. Steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision can help a distracted driver who does not notice that the car is heading into the opposite lane.



The function can assist by guiding the car back to its own lane.

1 Oncoming vehicles

2 Your car

At the same time as steering intervention is activated, collision warning for driver support is also activated. However, the brake pulse included in the collision warning will not be activated.

The function is active within the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane markings/lines.

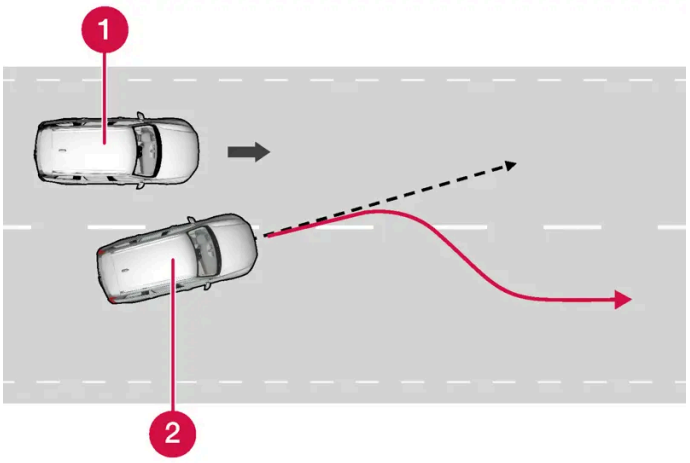
If the car is about to leave its own lane while an oncoming vehicle is approaching at the same time, the function can help the driver to steer the car back into its own lane.

However, the function does **not** intervene with steering assistance if the direction indicator is used. And if the function detects that the driver is actively driving the car, activation of the function will be delayed.

When the function intervenes, a symbol and a message are shown in the driver display, and an acoustic signal can be heard as well.

10.9.7. Steering assistance upon risk of rear-end collision*

Steering assistance has a number of subfunctions. Steering assistance if there is a risk of rear-end collision can help a distracted driver who does not notice that the car is about to leave its own lane while an oncoming vehicle is approaching at the same time, either from behind or in the blind spot.



The function can assist by steering the car back to its own lane.

1 Other vehicle in the blind spot

2 Your car

If the car is about to leave its own lane while another vehicle is in the blind spot, or another vehicle is approaching rapidly in an adjacent lane at the same time, the function can help the driver to steer the car back into its own lane.

The function can even assist if the driver intentionally changes lanes using direction indicators without noticing that another vehicle is approaching.

The function is active within the speed range 60-140 km/h (37-87 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane markings/lines.

The lamps in the door mirrors flash during steering intervention, regardless of whether the BLIS* [1] function is activated. An acoustic signal can also be heard.

When the function intervenes, a message is shown in the driver display.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Blind Spot Information

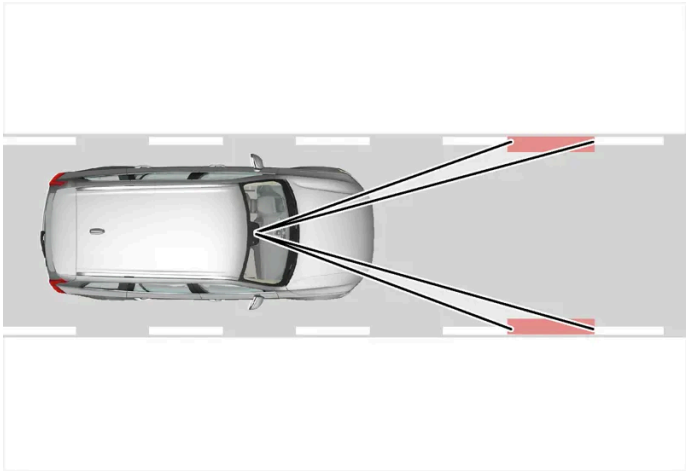
10.10. Driver Alert Control

10.10.1. Driver Alert Control

The Driver Alert Control (DAC) function is intended to help make the driver aware that he or she is starting to drive less consistently, e.g. if the driver becomes distracted or starts to fall asleep.

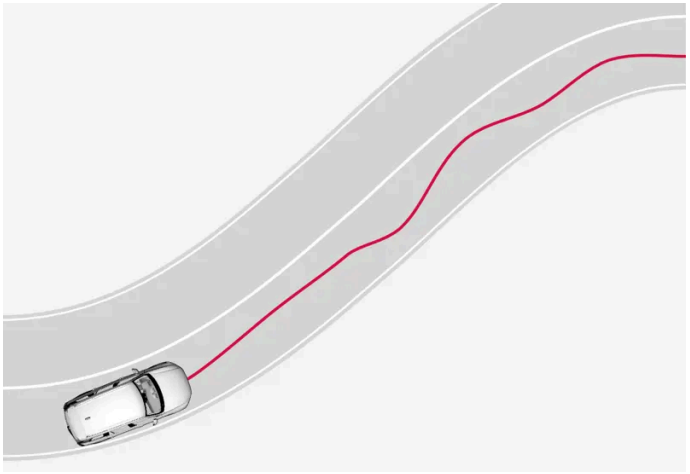
The objective for the function is to detect slowly deteriorating driving ability and it is primarily intended for major roads. The function is not intended for city traffic.

The function is activated when speed exceeds 65 km/h (40 mph) and remains active as long as the speed is over 60 km/h (37 mph).



Driver Alert Control reads the position of the car in the lane.

A camera detects the edge markings painted on the carriageway and compares the alignment of the road with the driver's steering wheel movements.



The car is being driven erratically in the lane.

If driving behaviour becomes noticeably inconsistent, the driver is alerted by this symbol in the driver display, combined with an acoustic signal and the text message **Time to take a break**.

If the car is equipped with Sensus Navigation* and has the function **Rest Stop Guidance** activated, suggestions for an appropriate place for a break are also displayed.

The warning is repeated after a time if driving behaviour has not improved.

Warning

Driver Alert Control should not be used to extend a period of driving. The driver should instead plan for breaks at regular intervals and make sure they are well rested.

Warning

An alarm from Driver Alert Control should be taken very seriously, as a sleepy driver is often not aware of his/her own condition.

If the alarm sounds or you feel fatigued:

- Stop the car safely as soon as possible and rest.

Studies have shown that it is just as dangerous to drive while tired as it is to drive under the influence of alcohol or other stimulants.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

10.10.2. Activating and deactivating Driver Alert Control

The Driver Alert Control (DAC) function can be activated or deactivated.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** → **Driver Alert**.
3. Select or deselect **Alertness Warning** to activate or deactivate the function.

10.10.3. Selecting rest stop guidance in the event of a warning from Driver Alert Control

In cars equipped with Sensus Navigation*, the driver can activate a guide that can automatically suggest an appropriate rest area when Driver Alert Control (DAC) issues a warning.

It is possible to select whether the **Rest Stop Guidance** function should be activated or deactivated.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** → **Driver Alert**.
3. Select or deselect **Rest Stop Guidance** to activate or deactivate the function.

* Option/accessory.

10.10.4. Limitations of Driver Alert Control

The Driver Alert Control (DAC) function may have limitations in certain situations.

In some cases the system may issue a warning despite driving ability not deteriorating, for example:

- in strong side winds
- on rutted road surfaces.

> **Warning**
>
> In some cases, driving behaviour is not affected despite driver fatigue – e.g. when using the Pilot Assist* function – resulting in the driver not getting a warning from Driver Alert.
>
> It is therefore important to always stop and take a break at the slightest feeling of fatigue, regardless of whether the function has given a warning.

> **Note**
>
> This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

10.11. Lane assistance

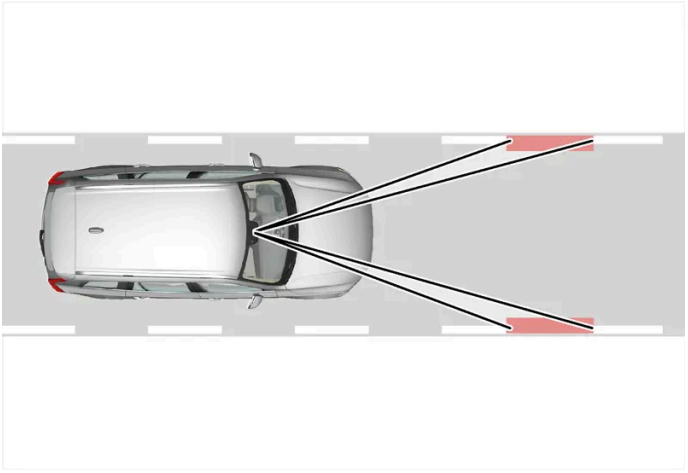
10.11.1. Lane assistance

The function of the Lane Keeping Aid (LKA[1]) is to help the driver to reduce the risk of the car accidentally leaving its own lane on motorways and similar major routes.

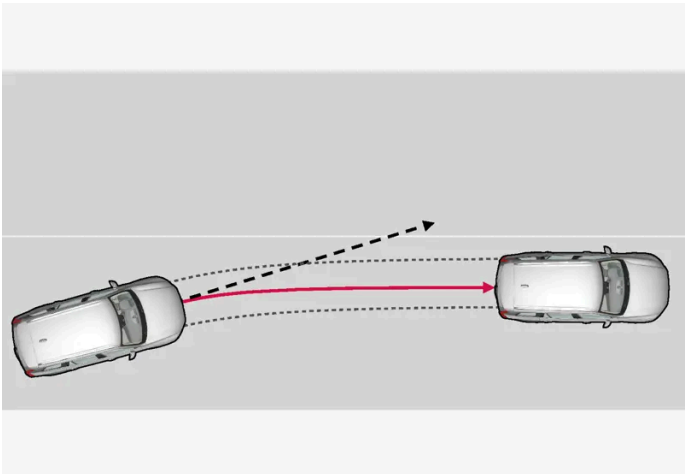
Lane Keeping Aid steers the car back into its lane and/or alerts the driver with vibrations in the steering wheel.

Lane Keeping Aid is active within the speed range 65–200 km/h (40–125 mph) on roads with clearly visible side lines.

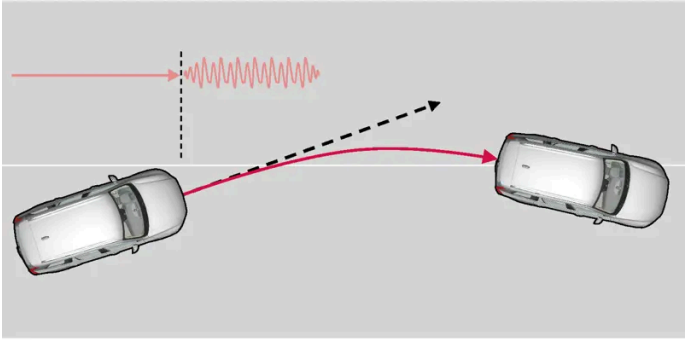
On narrow roads the function may be unavailable, in which case it goes into standby mode. The function becomes available again when the road is wide enough.



A camera reads the side lines of the road/lane.



Lane assistance steers the car back into its lane.



Lane assistance warns with steering wheel vibrations.

Depending on settings, lane assistance acts in accordance with the following:

- **Assist** activated: When the car is approaching a lane line, the function will actively steer the car back into its lane by applying a slight torque to the steering wheel.
- **Warning** activated: If the car is about to cross a lane line, the driver is warned by means of vibrations in the steering wheel.
- There is also an option where both steering assistance and warning are activated simultaneously.

Note

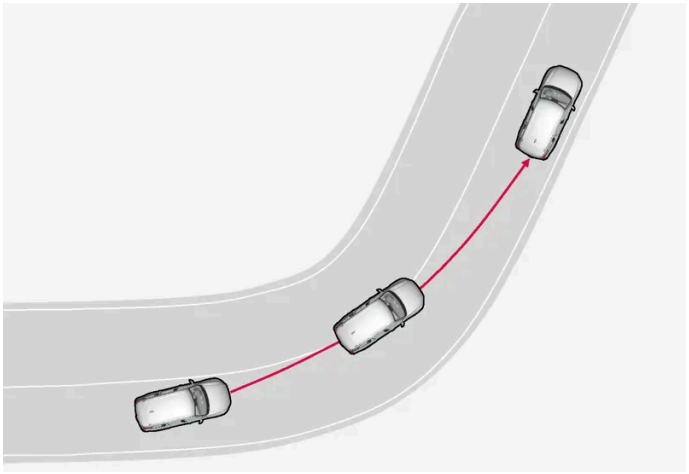
When a direction indicator/flasher is switched on, there are no steering corrections or alerts from lane assistance.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Lane assistance does not intervene



Lane assistance does not engage on sharp inside curves.

In some situations, lane assistance allows lane lines to be crossed without intervening with either steering assistance or a warning – e.g. when using the direction indicators or if the car is allowed to cut the corners in bends.

Hands on the steering wheel

For steering assistance with lane assistance to work, the driver must have his/her hands on the steering wheel, which the system will continue to monitor.

If the driver does not keep his/her hands on the steering wheel, a warning signal is heard and a message encourages the driver to steer the car actively:

- **Lane Keeping Aid Apply steering**

If the driver does not follow the prompt to start steering, the function is set in standby mode, and this message is shown:

- **Lane Keeping Aid Standby until steering applied**

The function will then be unavailable until the driver starts to steer the car again.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

10.11.2. Activating and deactivating lane assistance

The Lane Keeping Aid (LKA) function (LKA[1]) is optional – the driver can choose to activate or deactivate this function.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

10.11.3. Difference between Pilot Assist* and lane assistance

Pilot Assist is a comfort function that can help you to keep your car within its own lane and maintain a safe distance from vehicles in front of you. Lane assistance[1] is a function which, in a similar way, can help you in some situations to reduce the risk of your car accidentally leaving its own lane.

Pilot Assist

Pilot Assist can help you to steer your car between the lane's markings, as well as maintaining a preset speed and time interval to the vehicle ahead. The function can also help to maintain an advantageous position in the lane using the lane's lane lines.

What does Pilot Assist do?

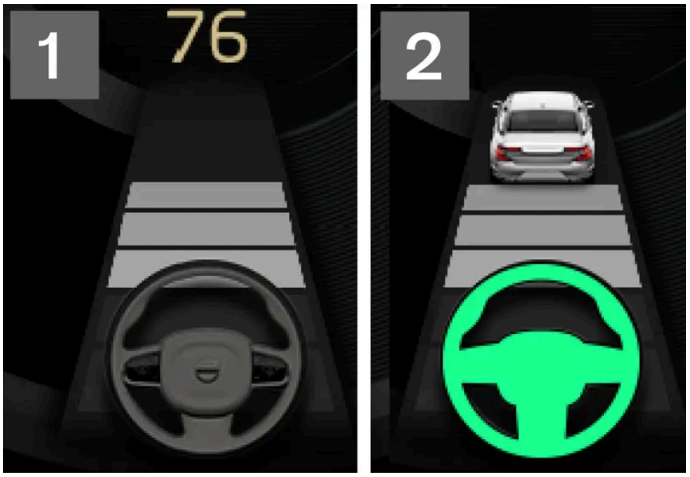
- Can help to keep the car within its lane by assisting steering in some cases.
- Can help to maintain a preset speed or the distance to the vehicle ahead by means of acceleration and braking operations.

How do I know when Pilot Assist is operational?

Symbols in the driver's display in the car indicate when this function is operational.

When the steering wheel in the middle is extinguished, Pilot Assist is running but steering assistance is not active.

When the steering wheel is illuminated, Pilot Assist is running and steering assistance is active.



2 When the steering wheel symbol in the driver display is illuminated, Pilot Assist is helping you to steer.

Lane assistance

Lane assistance can provide steering assistance and/or give you an alert when the vehicle is about to leave its own lane unintentionally. This function is active in the speed range 65-180 km/h (40-112 mph) on roads with clearly visible lane lines.

What does lane assistance do?

- Lane assistance can provide the driver with steering assistance, steering the car back into its lane and/or providing warnings using acoustic signals or steering wheel vibration.

How do I know when lane assistance is operational?

Symbols in the driver's display in the car show the status of the function.

An extinguished symbol in the driver display means that the function is running but the conditions for LKA have not been met.

A white symbol in the driver's display means that the conditions for LKA have been met and that the function is available.

An orange symbol in the driver's display means that LKA is providing steering assistance back in to the lane and/or will provide warnings using acoustic signals or steering wheel vibration.

> **Warning**
>
> The driver always bears responsibility for ensuring that the car is driven safely. Before using this function, the driver is recommended to read all sections on the function in the owner's manual.

> **Warning**
>
> - The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
> - The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
> - Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid(LKA)

10.11.4. Select assistance option for lane assistance

The driver can select how the Lane Keeping Aid (LKA[1]) should react if the car leaves its lane.

1 Select **Settings** → **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** in the centre display's top view.

2 In the event of **Lane Keeping Aid Mode**, select how the function should react:

- **Assist** - the driver is given steering assistance without a warning.
- **Warning** – the driver is only warned by steering wheel vibration.
- **Both** – the driver is given a warning both from the steering wheel vibrating and from steering assistance.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

10.11.5. Symbols and messages for lane assistance

A number of symbols and messages regarding lane assistance (LKA[1]) can be shown on the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Driver support system Reduced functionality Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[2].
	Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual	The ability of the camera to scan the roadway in front of the car is reduced.
	Lane Keeping Aid Apply steering	The LKA steering assistance does not function if the driver does not have his/her hands on the steering wheel. Follow the instruction and steer the car.
	Lane Keeping Aid Standby until steering applied	LKA is set in standby mode until the driver starts to steer the car again.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

10.11.6. Display mode for lane assistance

Lane assistance (LKA[1]) is visualised by symbols in the driver display depending on the situation.

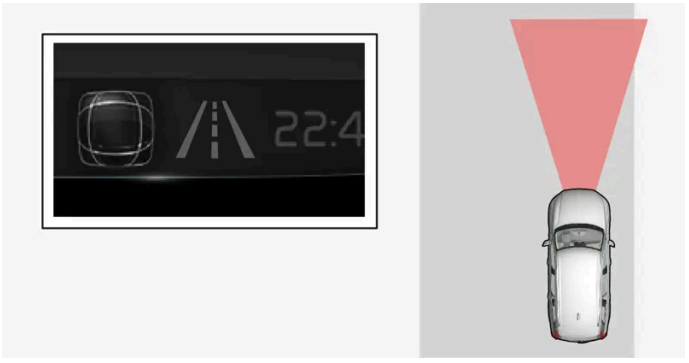
Here are some examples of symbols and the situations in which they are shown:

Available

Available – the lane lines in the symbol are white.

Lane assistance is scanning one or both lane lines.

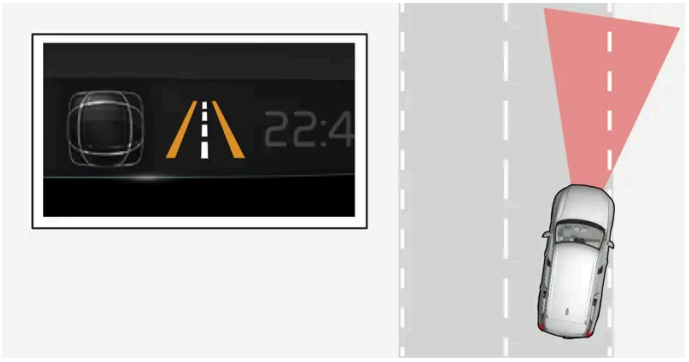
Unavailable



Unavailable – the lane lines in the symbol are extinguished.

The Lane assistance cannot detect the lane lines, the speed is too low or the road is too narrow.

Indication of steering assistance/warning



Steering assistance/warning – the lane lines in the symbol are coloured.

Lane assistance indicates that the system is giving a warning and/or attempting to steer the car back into the lane.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

10.11.7. Limitations of Lane assistance

In certain demanding conditions lane assistance (LKA[1]) may have difficulty helping the driver correctly. In such cases it is recommended to switch off this function.

Examples of such conditions are:

- road works
- winter road conditions
- poor road surface
- a very “sporty” driving style
- poor weather with reduced visibility
- roads with unclear or non-existent side markings
- sharp edges or lines other than the lane's side markings
- as the steering servo for speed-dependent steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. when cooling due to overheating.

The function is unable to detect barriers, rails or similar obstacles at the side of the carriageway.

> **Note**
>
> This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

10.12. Electronic stability control

10.12.1. Electronic stability control

Electronic Stability Control (ESC[1]) helps the driver to avoid skidding and improves the car's traction.

The driver display shows this symbol when the system is engaged.

Braking from the system may be heard as a pulsing sound, and the car may accelerate more slowly than expected when applying the throttle.

The system consists of the following subfunctions:

- Stability function [2]
- Spin control and traction control system
- Engine Drag Control
- Trailer stability assist
- Roll Stability Control

> **Warning**
>
> - The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
> - The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
> - Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

Stability function [2]

The function checks the driving and brake force of the wheels individually in order to stabilise the car.

Spin control and traction control system

The function is active at low speed and brakes the drive wheels that spin so that additional traction shall be transferred to the drive wheels that are not spinning.

The function can also prevent the driving wheels from spinning against the road surface during acceleration.

Engine Drag Control

Engine Drag Control (EDC [3]) can prevent involuntary wheel lock-up, e.g. when engine braking on slippery road surfaces. Involuntary wheel locking while driving can, amongst other things, impair the driver's ability to steer the car.

Trailer stability assist* [4]

Trailer stability assist (TSA [5]) stabilises a car towing a trailer in situations where they begin snaking.

> **Note**
>
> Trailer Stability Assist is deactivated if **ESC Sport Mode** is activated.

Roll Stability Control

This function reduces the risk of overturning, for example during a sudden evasive manoeuvre or if the car skids. The system registers if and how much the car's lateral inclination changes. This information is used to calculate the risk of the car overturn-

ing. If the car is at risk, its electronic stability control system engages, the engine torque is reduced and one or more wheels are braked until the car has regained its stability.

> **Warning**
>
> Under normal driving conditions, the system improves the car's road safety, but this must not be taken as a reason to increase speed. Always follow the normal precautions for safe driving.

[1] Electronic Stability Control

[2] Also known as Active Yaw Control.

[3] Engine Drag Control

* Option/accessory.

[4] Trailer stability assist is included when the Volvo genuine towbar is installed.

[5] Trailer Stability Assist

10.12.2. Symbols and messages for electronic stability control

A number of symbols and messages regarding electronic stability control (ESC [1]) can be shown on the driver display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Constant glow for approx. 2 seconds	System check when the engine is started.
	Flashing light	The system is being activated.
	Constant glow	Sport mode is activated. **NOTE:** The system is not deactivated in this mode – it is partly reduced.
–	**Traction control Temporarily off**	The system has been temporarily reduced due to excessive brake temperature - the function is reactivated automatically when the brakes have cooled.
	ESC Service required	The system is disengaged. Stop the car in a safe place, switch off the engine and start it again.

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] Electronic Stability Control

10.12.3. Electronic Stability Control in sport mode

The stability system (ESC[1]) is always activated – it cannot be switched off. However, the driver can select ECS Sport mode, which allows for a more active driving experience.

With Sport mode selected, interventions from the system are reduced and the car is allowed to skid more and greater control than normal is thus transferred to the driver.

When Sport mode is selected, the function can be considered as deactivated, despite the function continuing to help the driver in many cases.

> **Note**
>
> With Sport mode selected, trailer stability assist (TSA[2]) is deactivated.

Sport mode also provides more traction even if the car has become bogged down or is driving on a loose surface, such as in sand or deep snow.

[1] Electronic Stability Control

[2] Trailer Stability Assist

10.12.4. Activating and deactivating sport mode for electronic stability control

The stability system (ESC[1]) is always activated – it cannot be switched off. However, the driver can select sport mode, which allows for a more active driving experience.

The driver display indicates activated **ESC Sport Mode** by displaying this symbol with a constant glow until the function is deactivated or the engine is switched off. The next time the engine is started, the system is back in its normal mode again.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

The Sport mode function cannot be selected when one of the following functions is activated:

- Speed limiter
- Cruise control
- Adaptive cruise control*

- Pilot Assist*

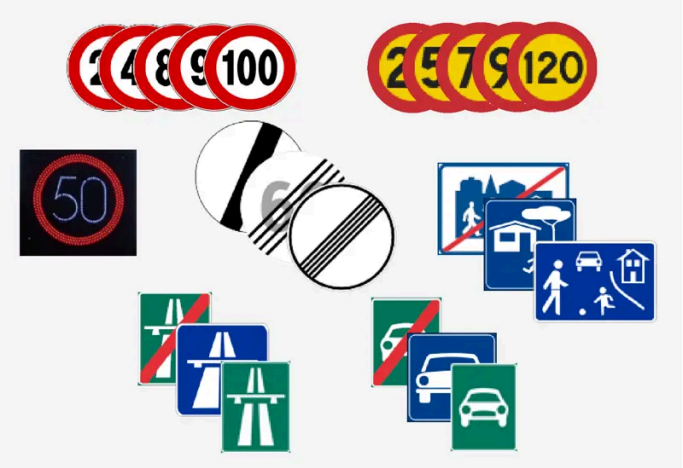
[1] Electronic Stability Control

* Option/accessory.

10.13. Road Sign Information

10.13.1. Road Sign Information*

The Road Sign Information function can help the driver to observe speed-related road signs and certain prohibition signs.



Examples of readable signs[1].

RSI can provide information about such things as current speed, when a motorway or road is starting/ending, when overtaking is prohibited or when the direction of travel is one-way.

If the car passes a speed limit sign, it will be shown in the driver's display.

Road Sign Information also includes subfunctions that can warn the driver if a speed limit has been exceeded or in connection with speed cameras.

> **Note**
>
> In certain markets, the road sign information function is only available in combination with map data.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Road signs are market-dependent - illustrations in these instructions only show a few examples.

10.13.2. Road Sign Information and Sensus Navigation*

The Road Sign Information function can receive speed-related information from Sensus Navigation.

If the car is equipped with Sensus Navigation*, speed information is read from the navigation unit in the following cases:

- On detection of signs that indirectly indicate a speed limit, such as motorway, dual carriageway and city limit signs.
- If a previously detected speed sign is assumed not to apply any longer, but no new sign has been detected.

Note

In certain markets, the Road Sign Information function* is only available in combination with Sensus Navigation*.

Note

If a downloaded third-party app is used for navigation then there is no support for speed-related information.

* Option/accessory.

10.13.3. Activating and deactivating Road Sign Information*

The Road Sign Information function (RSI[1]) is optional – the driver can choose to activate or deactivate this function.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

Road Sign Information is activated automatically each time the engine is started.

> **Note**
>
> - If the automatic speed limiter function is activated, road sign information is shown in the driver display even if the Road Sign Information function is not activated.
> - To remove road sign information from the driver display, you must deactivate **both** the automatic speed limiter and Road Sign Information.
> - When the automatic speed limiter function is activated but Road Sign Information is deactivated, no warnings are given from Road Sign Information. Road Sign Information must also be activated in order to receive warnings.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Road Sign Information

10.13.4. Limitations of Road Sign Information*

The Road Sign Information function may have limitations in certain situations.

Examples of what can reduce the function are as follows:

- Faded signs
- Signs positioned on bends
- Rotated or damaged signs
- Signs positioned high above the roadway
- Fully/partially obscured or poorly positioned signs
- Signs completely or partly covered with frost, snow and/or dirt
- Digital road maps[1] with outdated, incorrect or missing speed information[2]

> **Note**
>
> In certain markets, the road sign information function is only available in combination with map data.

> **Note**
>
> The function for Road Sign Information may interpret some types of bicycle rack, connected to the electrical socket for trailers, as a connected trailer. In such cases, the driver display may show incorrect speed information.

> **Note**
>
> This function uses the car's camera and radar units, which have certain general limitations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] In cars equipped with Sensus Navigation*.

[2] Map data with speed information does not exist for all areas.

10.13.5. Warning for speed limitation and speed camera from road sign information*

Road Sign Information includes subfunctions that can warn the driver if a speed limit has been exceeded or in connection with speed cameras.

Warning for speed limit

The speed warning is given by the driver display symbol [1] flashing when the maximum permissible speed is exceeded. The maximum permissible speed is determined by the speed limit in force, plus an optional margin that can be selected in the centre display under settings.

The speed warning alerts the driver when the applicable speed limit or stored maximum speed is exceeded. This warning is repeated once after approx. 30 seconds within one and the same speed limit zone unless the driver reduces the speed. Another warning is available only when the driver has reduced the speed by at least 5 km/h (3 mph) below the speed limit, and then exceeds it again, or when the car reaches a new area with a speed limit.

> **Note**
>
> To get an acoustic warning if you exceed the required speed, the **Speed Limit Warning** function must be activated and the **Road Sign Audio Warning** subfunction must be set to **On**. An acoustic warning is then given if the car's speed exceeds the speed indicated by the Road Sign Information function in the driver display.

Warning for speed camera

A car equipped with Road Sign Information and map data[2] can provide information on an upcoming speed camera in the driver display[3].

If the car exceeds a detected speed limit with the Speed warning function activated, a speed warning is given when the car approaches a speed camera, provided that the navigation map for the area in question contains information on speed cameras.

> **Note**
>
> An option is available to receive an acoustic warning for speed cameras independently of the car's speed and exceeded speed limit, even if the **Road Sign Audio Warning** function is deactivated.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Road signs are customised for each market – the one shown here is just an example.

[2] Sensus Navigation

[3] Information on speed cameras on the navigation map is not available for all markets/areas.

10.13.6. Activating and deactivating warnings from road sign information*

The driver can choose which warnings are activated for Road Sign Information and adjust the limit for them.

1. Select **Settings** → **My Car** → **IntelliSafe** → **Road Sign Information** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select **Speed Limit Warning** and the desired settings.

You can choose to do the following:

- Activate speed warning
- Adjust the limit for Speed Warning[1]
- Activating acoustic warning in connection with speed warning[2]

- Activating acoustic warning in connection with speed camera warning[3]

* Option/accessory.

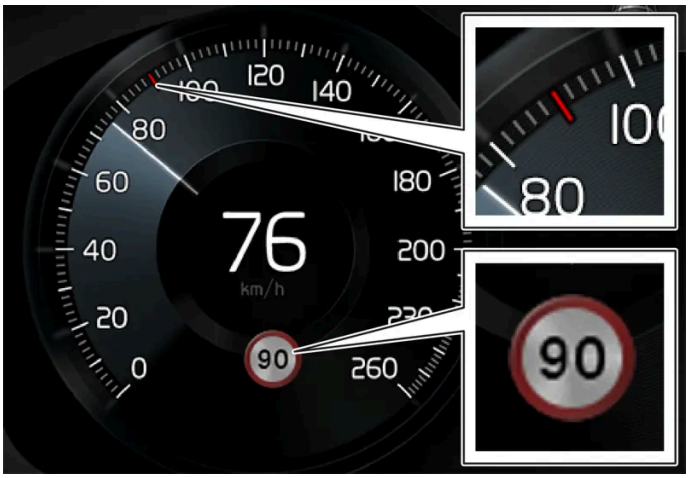
[1] The function does not take account of the selected limit adjustment when the driver display shows the symbol for speed camera.

[2] The driver can also be warned when driving towards one-way traffic/no entry road. Applies to certain markets.

[3] The car needs access to map data with information on speed cameras.

10.13.7. Display mode for road sign information*

The Road Sign Information function shows road signs in different ways depending on the sign and the situation. The following illustrations are examples.



Example[1] of detected speed information.

When the function detects a road sign with an imposed speed limit the driver display shows the sign as a symbol combined with a coloured indication on the speedometer.

If the car is equipped with map data*, speed-related information is also obtained from map data, which means that the driver display can show or change information on the speed limit without having passed a speed-related sign.

An additional sign, such as "no overtaking", may be shown together with the speed limit symbol.

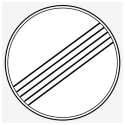
At an entrance with no-entry signs, or with a prohibition confirmed by a sign and map data, the driver is warned with a flashing symbol in the driver display. The driver can also be given an acoustic warning when driving towards a no-entry road if acoustic warning for road signs is activated.[2]

Speed limit or end of motorway

When the function detects an "indirect speed limit sign" stating the end of the current speed limit – e.g. at the end of a motorway – a symbol appears with the corresponding road sign in the driver's display.

If the car is equipped with map data*, direct speed limit signs are normally displayed – indirect speed limit signs are only displayed if map data has no information on the speed limit for the road section in question.

Example of indirect speed limit sign:



End of all restrictions.

End of motorway.

The symbol in the driver display extinguishes shortly after and is re-illuminated when the speed-related sign has been passed.

Changed speed limit

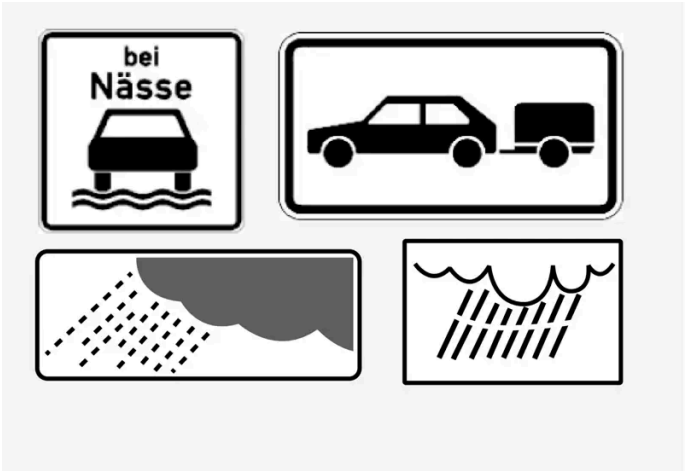
When passing a direct speed limit sign when a speed limit changes a symbol with the corresponding road sign appears in the driver's display.

Example of direct speed limit sign.

The symbol in the driver display extinguishes after a while and is re-illuminated when the speed-related sign has been passed.

If the car is equipped with map data*, speed limit signs are shown in the driver display when map data contains information on the speed limit for the road section in question, even if no direct sign has been passed. If there is no information in the map data, the sign is extinguished after a while.

Additional signs



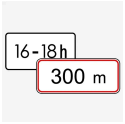
Examples of additional signs.

Sometimes different speed limits are signed for the same road - an additional sign then indicates the circumstances under which the different speeds apply. The road section may be particularly susceptible to accidents in rain and/or fog, for example.

An additional sign relating to rain is displayed only if the windscreen wipers are in use.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

If a trailer is connected to the car's electrical system and you pass a speed sign with the additional sign "trailer", the indicated speed will appear on the driver display.



Some speed limits only apply after a certain distance or at a certain time of day. The driver's attention can drawn to this fact by means of a symbol for an additional sign below the speed symbol.

The additional symbol in the driver display will show either “DIST” or “TIME”.

Sign for "School" and "Children at play"

If a warning sign for "School" or "Children at play" is included in the map data*, the driver display shows a sign of this type.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Road signs are market-dependent - the illustrations in these instructions only show examples.

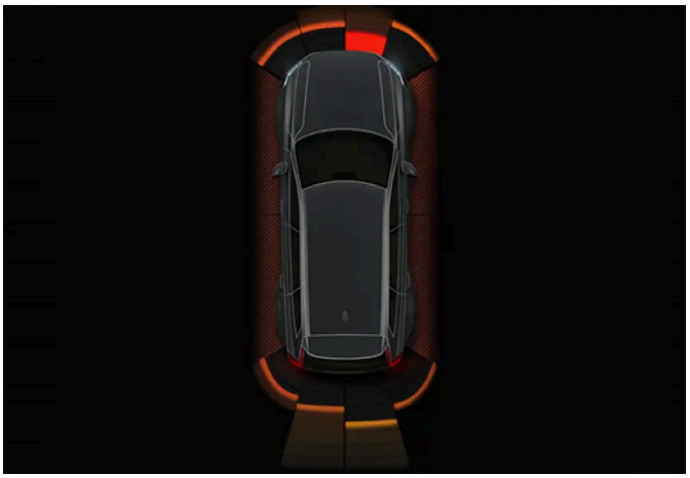
[2] Applies to certain markets.

10.14. Parking functions

10.14.1. Parking assistance

10.14.1.1. Park Assist*

The Park Assist System uses sensors to assist the driver when manoeuvring in tight spaces by indicating the distance to obstacles through acoustic signals combined with a graphic in the centre display.



Example of screen view with obstacle zones and sensor sectors.

The centre display shows an overview of the relationship between the car and detected obstacles.

The highlighted sector indicates the location of the obstacle. The closer the car symbol is to a highlighted sector box at the front/back, the shorter the distance between the car and detected obstacle.

The side sectors change colour as the distance between the car and an object is reduced.

The shorter the distance to the obstacle, the faster the signal sounds. Other sound from the audio system is muted automatically.

The acoustic signal for obstacles ahead and to the sides is active when the car is moving but stops after the car has been stationary for approx. 2 seconds. The acoustic signal for obstacles behind is also active when the car is stationary.

At a distance within approx. 30 cm (1 foot) from an obstacle behind or in front of the car, the tone is constant and the active sensor field closest to the car symbol is filled.

At a distance within approx. 25 cm (0.8 foot) from an obstacle to the sides, the tone pulses intensively and the active sector field changes colour from orange to red.

The volume of the parking assistance signal can be adjusted while the signal is sounding by means of the [>II] knob on the centre console. Adjustment can also be performed in the parking assistance system's settings.

Note

Except in the sector nearest to the car symbol, audible warnings are only given for objects directly in the path of the car.

Warning

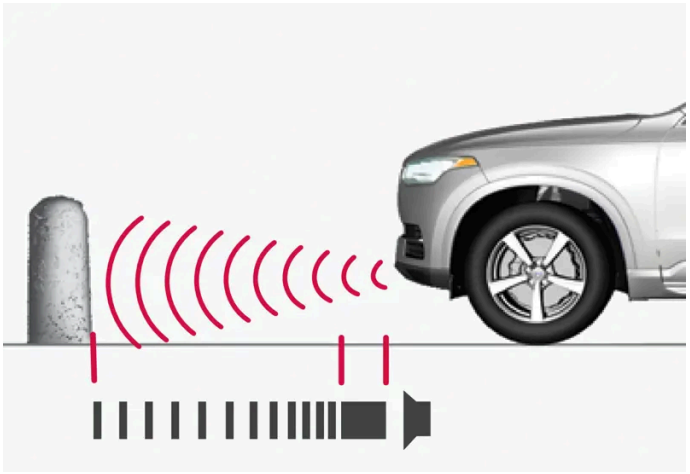
- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

10.14.1.2. Park Assist System front, rear and along the sides*

Park Assist Pilot has different behaviour depending on which part of the car is approaching an obstacle.

Forwards



The warning signal has a constant acoustic signal at less than approx. 30 cm (1 foot) from an obstacle.

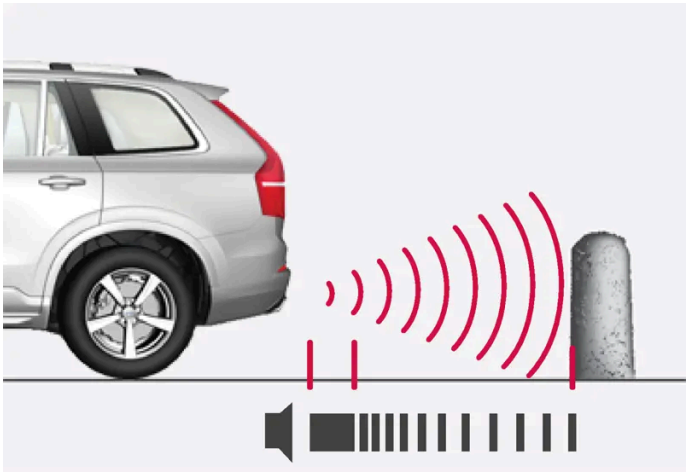
The Parking Assistance System's front detectors are activated automatically when the engine is started. They are active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The measuring range is approx. 80 cm (2.5 feet) in front of the car.

> **Note**
>
> Parking assistance is deactivated when the parking brake is used or **P** mode is selected in a car with an automatic gearbox.

> **Important**
>
> When auxiliary lamps are fitted: Remember that these must not obscure the sensors - the auxiliary lamps may then be perceived as an obstacle.

Backwards



The warning signal has a constant tone at less than approx. 30 cm (1 foot) from an obstacle.

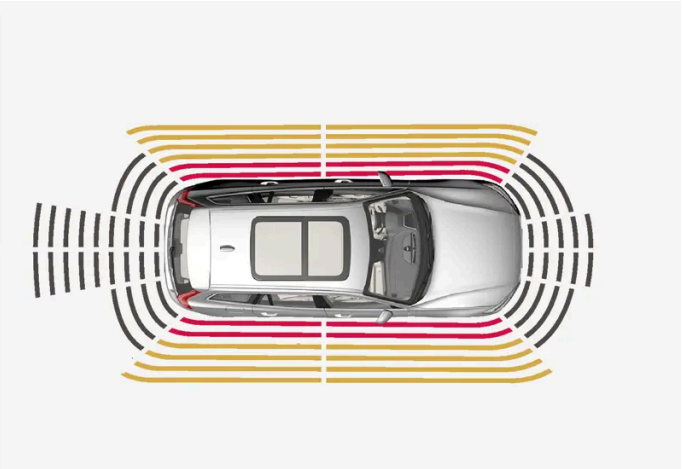
The sensors for reverse are activated if the car rolls backward without a gear engaged or when the gear lever is moved to reverse position.

The measuring range is approx. 1.5 metres (5 feet) behind the car.

When reversing with a trailer connected to the car's electrical system, parking assistance backward is deactivated automatically.

> **Note**
>
> When reversing with e.g. a trailer or bike carrier on the towbar - without Volvo genuine trailer wiring - parking assistance may need to be switched off manually in order that the sensors do not react to them.

Along the sides



The warning signal pulses intensively at less than approx. 25 cm (0.8 foot) from an obstacle.

Parking assistance side sensors are activated automatically when the engine is started. They are active at speeds below 10 km/h (6 mph).

The measuring range is approx. 25 cm (0.8 foot) from the sides.

However, the detection range of the side sensors increases significantly when the steering angle of the front wheels is increased, and obstacles of up to approx. 90 cm (3 feet) located diagonally behind or in front of the vehicle are detected when the steering wheel is turned.

* Option/accessory.

10.14.1.3. Activating and deactivating Parking Assistance System*

The park assist function can be activated or deactivated.

The front and side parking assistance detectors are activated automatically when the engine is started. The rear detectors are ac-

tivated if the car rolls backwards or when reverse gear is engaged.

Activate or deactivate the function using this button in the centre display's function view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

In cars equipped with a park assist camera*, Park Assist Pilot can also be activated or deactivated from the relevant camera view.

* Option/accessory.

10.14.1.4. Symbols and messages for Park Assist Pilot

Symbols and messages for Park Assist Pilot can be shown in the driver display and/or the centre display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
		The rearward parking assistance sensors are **deactivated**, so there are no acoustic warnings for obstacles/objects.
	Park Assist System **Sensors blocked, cleaning needed**	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
	Park Assist System **Unavailable Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[1].

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ○ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

10.14.1.5. Limitations of park assist system*

The Parking Assistance System cannot detect everything in all situations and may therefore have limited functionality in some cases.

A driver should be aware about the following examples of Park Assist Pilot's limitations:

Warning

- The ability of the park assist cameras to clearly reproduce the surroundings in all zones around the car can be affected by the conditions during use.
- Pay particular attention if there are people and animals near the car.
- Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking manoeuvre.
- Objects/obstacles may be closer to the car than they appear to be on the screen.

Warning

Pay additional attention while reversing when this symbol is shown if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is mounted and electrically connected to the car.

The symbol indicates that the parking assistance sensors rearward are **switched off** and will not warn of any obstacles.

Important

Objects e.g. chains, thin glossy poles or low barriers may be in the "signal shadow" and are then temporarily not detected by the sensors - the pulsating tone may then unexpectedly stop instead of changing over to the expected constant tone.

The sensors cannot detect high objects, such as projecting loading docks.

- In such situations, pay extra attention and manoeuvre/reposition the car particularly slowly or stop the current parking manoeuvre - there may be a high risk of damage to vehicles or other objects since information from the sensors is not always reliable in such situations.

Important

In certain conditions the parking assistance system may produce incorrect warning signals that are caused by external sound sources with the same ultrasonic frequencies that the system works with.

Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes, exhaust noises from motorcycles, etc.

Note

Since a towbar is configured with the car's electrical system, towbar protrusion is included when the function measures the distance to an object behind the car.

* Option/accessory.

10.14.2. Active park assist

10.14.2.1. Park Assist Pilot*

Park Assist Pilot (PAP[1]) can assist the driver to manoeuvre the car while parking. The function can also assist with steering when driving out from parallel parking.

The function first checks if a space is large enough and if so then assists the driver to steer the car into the space.

The centre display indicates with symbols, graphics and text the various operations to be carried out and when to do so.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

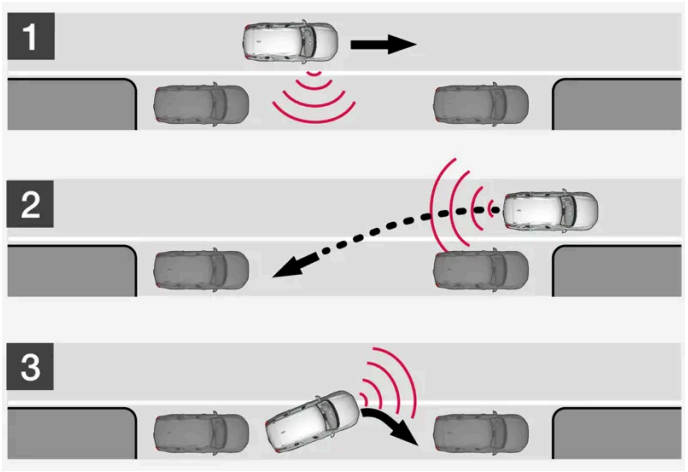
* Option/accessory.

[1] Park Assist Pilot

10.14.2.2. Parking variants with Park Assist Pilot*

Park Assist Pilot (PAP[1]) can be used for both parallel and perpendicular parking.

Parallel parking



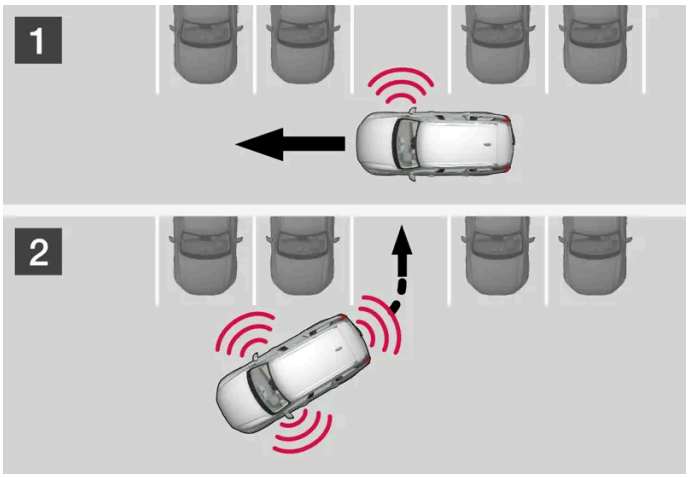
The principal of parallel parking.

The function parks the car using the following steps:

1. A parking space is identified and measured.
2. The car is reversed into the space.
3. The car is positioned in the space by means of driving forward/backward.

With the **Park Out** function, a parallel-parked car can also get help from the function with leaving the parking space.

Perpendicular parking



Principle for perpendicular parking.

The function parks the car using the following steps:

1. A parking space is identified and measured.
2. The car is reversed into the space and then positioned in the space by means of driving forward/backward.

> **Note**
>
> When leaving a parking space, the **Park Out** function must only be used for a parallel-parked car - it does not work for a perpendicular-parked car.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Park Assist Pilot

10.14.2.3. Using Park Assist Pilot*

Park Assist Pilot (PAP[1]) helps the driver park via three steps. The function can also help the driver to leave a parking space.

This function measures space and steers the car – the driver's job is to:

- keep an eye on what is happening around the car
- follow the instructions in the centre display
- select a gear (reverse/forward) – an acoustic signal indicates when the driver should change gear
- regulate and maintain a safe speed
- brake and stop.

Symbols, graphic and/or text appear on the centre display when the different steps are to be performed.

The function can be activated if the following criteria are met once the engine has been started:

- No trailer is attached to the car
- Speed is lower than 30 km/h (20 mph).

> **Note**
>
> The distance between the car and parking spaces should be 0.5–1.5 metres (1.6–5.0 ft) while the function is searching for a parking space.

Parking with Park Assist Pilot

The function parks the car using the following steps:

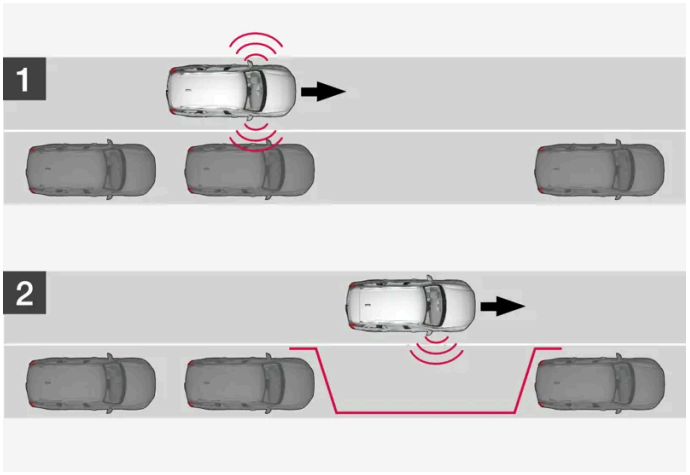
1. A parking space is identified and measured.
2. The car is reversed into the space.
3. The car is positioned into the space - the system may then request that the driver changes gear and brakes.

Find and measure parking spaces

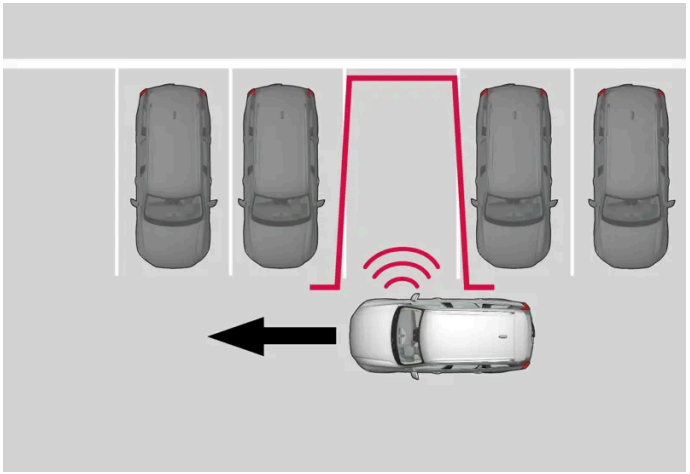
The function can be activated in the centre display's function view.

It can also be accessed from the camera views.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.



Principle for searching before parallel parking.



Principle for searching before perpendicular parking.

Drive at a maximum of 30 km/h (20 mph) before parking.

1 Tap on the **Park In** button in the function view or in the camera view.

> The function searches for a parking space and checks whether it is big enough.

2 Be prepared to stop the car when the graphic and message on the centre display state that a suitable parking space has been found.

> A pop-up window is shown.

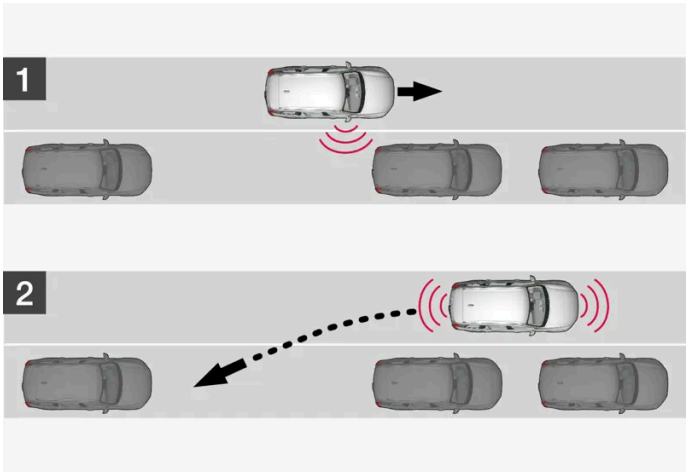
3 Select **Parallel parking** or **Perpendicular parking** and select reverse gear.

Note

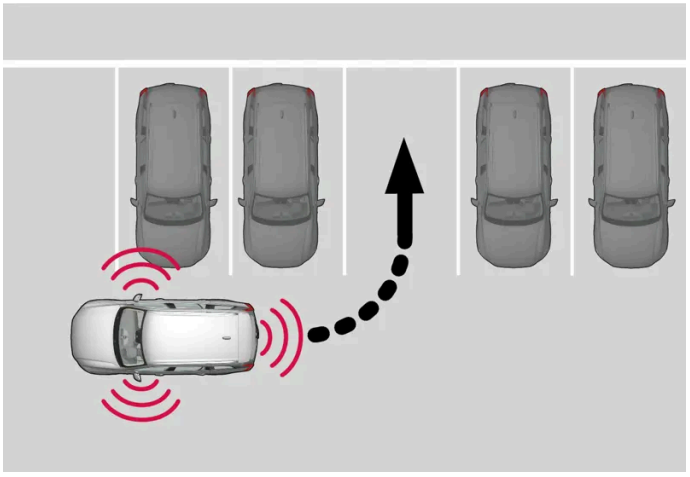
The function searches the area for parking, displays instructions and guides the car in on its passenger side. But if required the car can also be parked on the driver's side of the street:

- Activate the direction indicator to the driver's side - then the system searches for a parking space on that side of the car instead.

Reversing in to the parking space



Principle for reversing into parallel parking.



Principle for reversing into perpendicular parking.

1 Check that the area behind the car is clear, then engage reverse gear.

2 Reverse slowly and carefully without touching the steering wheel - and no faster than 7 km/h (4 mph).

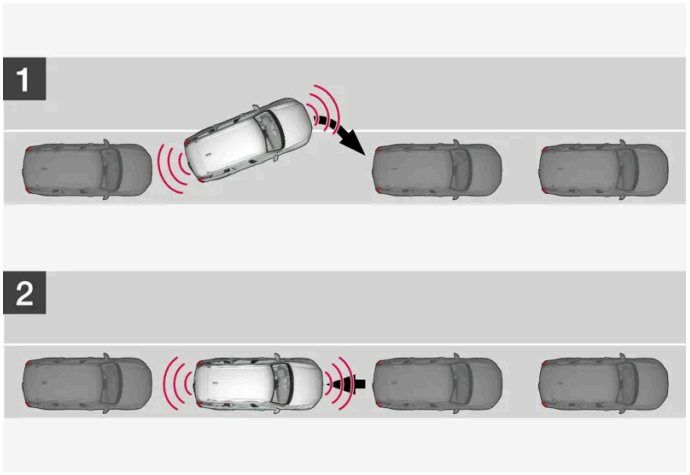
3 Be prepared to stop the car when instructed by the graphic and message on the centre display.

Note

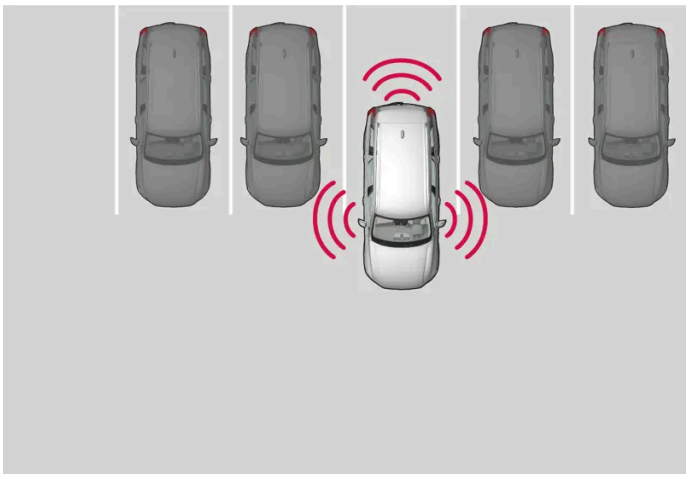
- Keep your hands away from the steering wheel when the function is activated.
- Make sure that the steering wheel is not hindered in any way and can rotate freely.
- To achieve optimum results - wait until the steering wheel is fully turned before starting to drive backward/forward.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Positioning the car in the parking space



Principle for positioning during parallel parking.



Principle for positioning during perpendicular parking.

1. Move the gear selector to the gear position as instructed by the system, wait until the steering wheel has been turned and drive forward slowly.
2. Be prepared to stop the car when instructed by the graphic and message on the centre display.
3. Select reverse gear and drive slowly backwards.
4. Be prepared to brake the car when instructed by the graphic and message on the centre display.

The function is deactivated automatically and the graphics and message show that parking is complete. It may be necessary for the driver to correct the car's position. Only the driver can determine whether the car is properly parked.

> **Important**
>
> The warning distance is shorter when the sensors are used by Park Assist Pilot (PAP[1]) compared with when Park Assist System uses the sensors.

Auto-brake during parking sequence

If the parking sensors detect a vehicle or pedestrian within the intended route in front of or behind the car during a parking manoeuvre, the car is auto-braked to stationary.

The driver display then shows a pop-up message where the driver can choose to cancel the parking manoeuvre by tapping on **Cancel**, or tap **Resume** to continue the parking sequence.

Proceed as follows after selecting **Resume**:

1 Check that there is free space around the car and follow the instructions in the centre display, such as:

To continue – Gently accelerate away from object.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Park Assist Pilot

10.14.2.4. Leaving parallel parking with Park Assist Pilot*

The **Park Out** function can help the driver to leave a parking space when the car is parallel parked.

Note

When leaving a parking space, the **Park Out** function must only be used for a parallel-parked car - it does not work for a perpendicular-parked car.

The **Park Out** function is activated in the centre display's function view or in the camera view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

1. Tap on the **Park Out** button in the function view or in the camera view.
2. Use the direction indicator to select the direction in which the car should leave the parking space.
3. Be prepared to stop the car when instructed by the graphic and message on the centre display - follow the instructions in the same way as for the parking procedure.

Note the steering wheel can "spring" back when the function is completed - the driver may then need to turn the steering wheel back to the maximum steering angle in order to leave the parking space.

If the function considers that the driver can leave the parking space without any extra manoeuvring then the function will be stopped, even if the driver may consider that the car is still in the parking space.

* Option/accessory.

10.14.2.5. Messages for Park Assist Pilot*

Messages for Park Assist Pilot (PAP[1]) can be shown in the driver display and/or the centre display. Here are some examples.

Message	Specification
Park Assist System **Sensors blocked, cleaning needed**	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
Park Assist System **Unavailable Service required**	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[2].

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Park Assist Pilot

[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

10.14.2.6. Limitations of Park Assist Pilot*

The Park Assist Pilot (PAP[1]) function cannot detect everything in all situations and may therefore have limited functionality.

A driver should be aware about the following examples of Park Assist Pilot limitations.

Warning

- The ability of the park assist cameras to clearly reproduce the surroundings in all zones around the car can be affected by the conditions during use.
- Pay particular attention if there are people and animals near the car.
- Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking manoeuvre.
- Objects/obstacles may be closer to the car than they appear to be on the screen.

Important

Objects situated higher than the sensor detection area are not included when calculating the parking manoeuvre, which could cause the function to swing into the parking space too early – such parking spaces should be avoided for this reason.

Parking is discontinued

A parking sequence will be discontinued:

- if the driver moves the steering wheel
- if the car is driven too quickly - above 7 km/h (4 mph)
- if the driver presses **Cancel** in the centre display
- when the anti-lock brakes or the Electronic stability control are engaged - e.g. when a wheel loses grip on a slippery road
- as the steering servo for speed-dependent steering wheel resistance is working at reduced power – e.g. when cooling due to overheating.
- when the parking sensors detect a vehicle or pedestrian within the intended route in front of or behind the car during a parking manoeuvre, the car is auto-braked to stationary.

Where applicable, a message in the centre display states the reason for a parking sequence being discontinued.

Important

Under certain circumstances, the function is unable to find parking spaces - one reason for this may be the fact that there is interference with the sensors from external sound sources which emit the same ultrasound frequencies as those with which the system works.

Examples of such sources include horns, wet tyres on asphalt, pneumatic brakes and exhaust noises from motorcycles etc.

Note

Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors will reduce their function and may prevent measurement.

Driver responsibility

The driver should bear in mind that the function is an aid – not an infallible, fully-automatic function. The driver must therefore be prepared to interrupt a parking step.

There are also a few details to bear in mind while parking, e.g.:

- The driver is always responsible for determining whether the space selected by the function is suitable for parking.
- Do not use the function if snow chains or a spare wheel are fitted.
- Do not use the function if cargo items are protruding from the car.
- Heavy rain or snow may cause the system to measure the parking space incorrectly.
- During the search and check-measurement of the parking space, the function may miss objects positioned deep in the parking space.
- Parking spaces on narrow streets are not always feasible, since the space required for manoeuvring may not be sufficient.
- Use approved tyres [2] with the correct tyre pressure - this affects the ability of the function to park the car.
- The function bases itself on the locations of vehicles already parked nearby – if they are inappropriately parked, your own car's tyres and wheel rims may be damaged by contact with the kerb.
- Perpendicular parking spaces may be missed or offered unnecessarily if one parked car is protruding more than other parked cars.
- The function is designed for parking on straight streets – not sharp curves or bends. For this reason, make sure the car is parallel to the potential parking spaces when the function measures the space.

* Option/accessory.

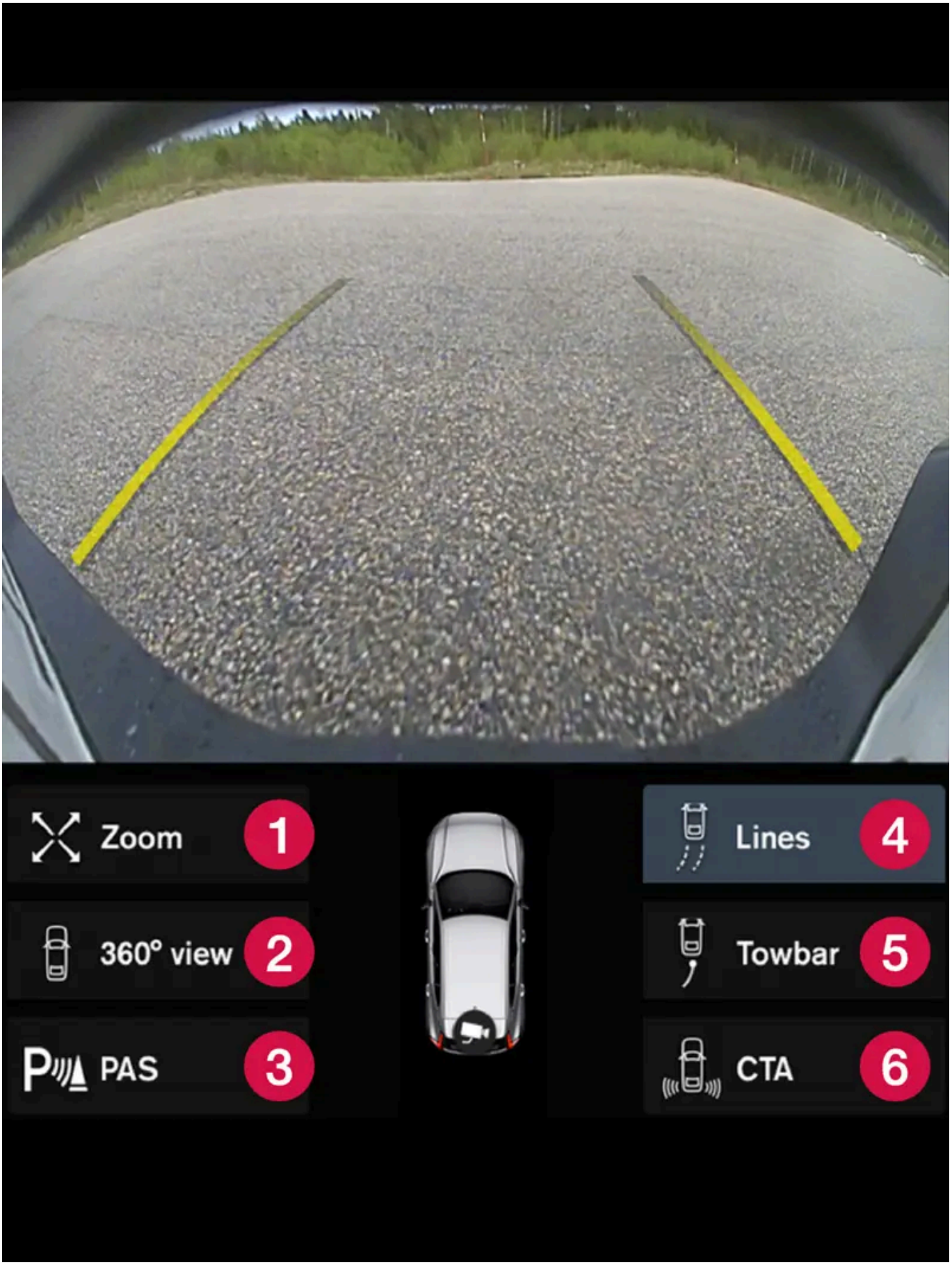
[1] Park Assist Pilot

[2] "Approved tyres" refers to tyres of the same type and make as those fitted on delivery from the factory.

10.14.3. Park assist camera

10.14.3.1. Park assist camera*

Park assist camera can assist the driver when manoeuvring in tight spaces by indicating obstacles with a camera image and graphic in the centre display.



Example of camera view.

1 **Zoom**[1] - zoom in/out

2 **360° view*** - activates/deactivates all cameras

3 **PAS**[2] - activates/deactivates the parking assistance sensors

4 **Lines** - activates/deactivates park assist lines

5 **Towbar*** - activates/deactivates the towbar park assist line*[3]

6 **CTA*** - activates/deactivates Cross Traffic Alert

The park assist camera is a support function which is activated automatically when reverse gear is selected or manually in the centre display.

Warning

- The ability of the park assist cameras to clearly reproduce the surroundings in all zones around the car can be affected by the conditions during use.
- Pay particular attention if there are people and animals near the car.
- Bear in mind that the front of the car may swing out towards oncoming traffic during the parking manoeuvre.
- Objects/obstacles may be closer to the car than they appear to be on the screen.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The park assist lines are switched off when zooming in.

[2] Park Assist System

[3] Not available for all models and markets.

10.14.3.2. Activating park assist camera*

The park assist camera is activated automatically when reverse gear is engaged or manually with one of the centre display's function buttons.

Camera view when reversing

When reverse gear is engaged, the screen shows the 360° view if it or any of the side views was the last used camera view, otherwise the rear view is shown.

Camera view for manual camera activation

Activate the parking camera with this button in the centre display's function view. The screen then initially shows the last used camera view. However, after each engine start, the previously shown side view is replaced by the 360° view and the previously shown zoomed rear view is replaced by the rear view.

- Illuminated button – the function is activated.
- Extinguished button – the function is deactivated.

Automatic deactivation of camera

The front view extinguishes at 25 km/h (16 mph) to avoid distracting the driver – it reactivates automatically if the speed drops to 22 km/h (14 mph) within 1 minute, on the condition that the speed has not exceeded 50 km/h (31 mph).

Other camera views are extinguished at 15 km/h (9 mph) and not reactivated.

* Option/accessory.

10.14.3.3. Symbols and messages for park assist camera*

Symbols and messages for Park assist camera can be shown in the driver display and/or the centre display. Here are some examples.

Symbol	Message	Specification
		The rearward parking assistance sensors are **deactivated**, so there are no acoustic warnings and field marks for obstacles/objects.
		The camera is disengaged.
	Park Assist System Sensors blocked, cleaning needed	One or more of the function's sensors are blocked - check and correct as soon as possible.
	Park Assist System Unavailable Service required	The system does not function as it should. A workshop should be contacted[1].

A text message can be cleared by briefly pressing the ◯ button, located in the centre of the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

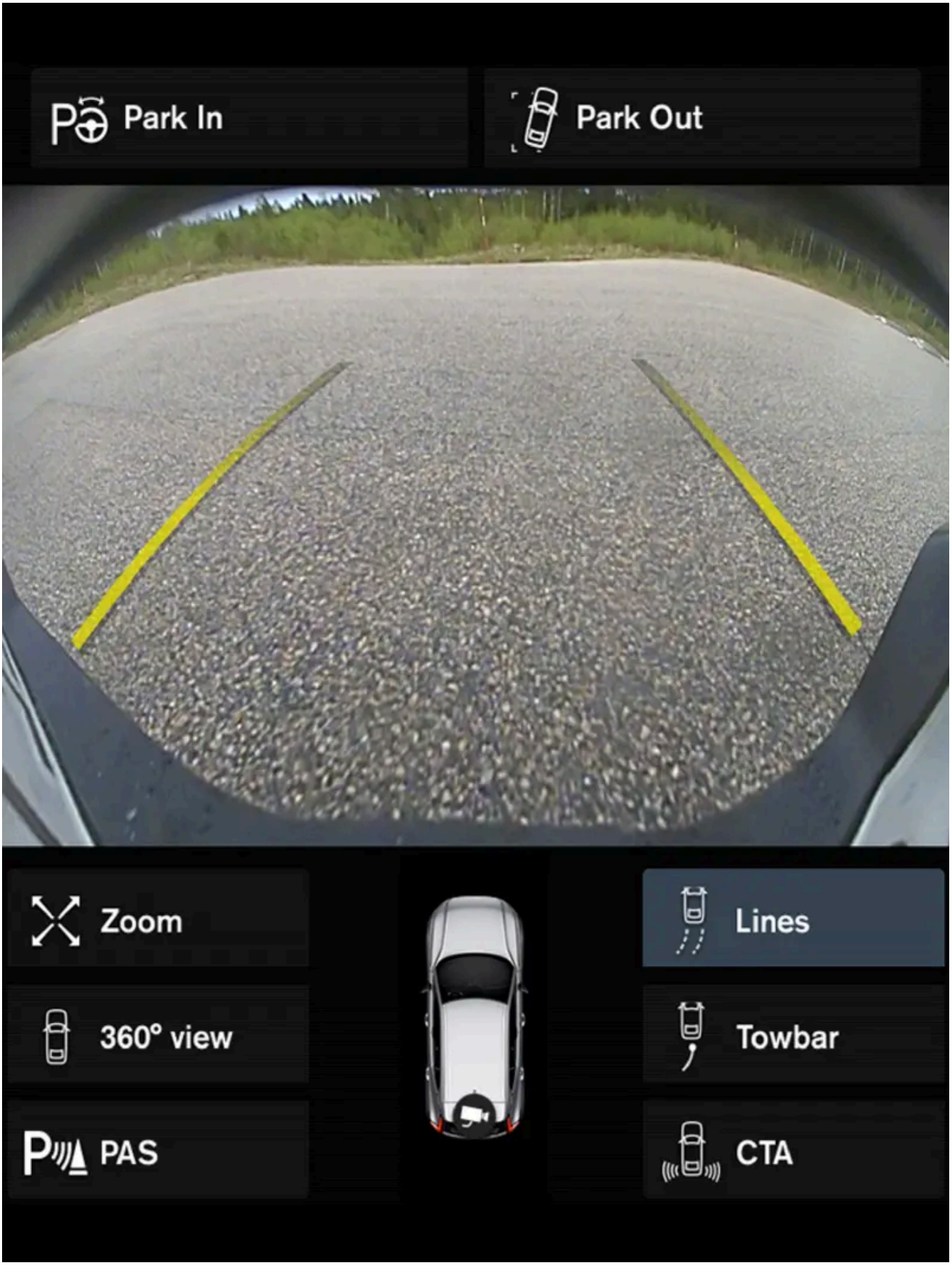
If a message remains, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

10.14.3.4. Park assist lines for park assist camera*

The Park assist cameras indicate the position of the car in relation to its surroundings by displaying lines on the screen.



Example of park assist lines

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Park assist lines show the intended route for the car's external dimensions with the current steering wheel angle - this can facilitate parallel parking, reversing into tight spaces and when connecting a trailer.

The lines on the screen are projected as if they were at ground level behind the car and respond directly to steering wheel movements, showing the driver the path the car will take - also when the car is turning.

These park assist lines include the car's most protruding parts, e.g. towbar, door mirrors and corners.

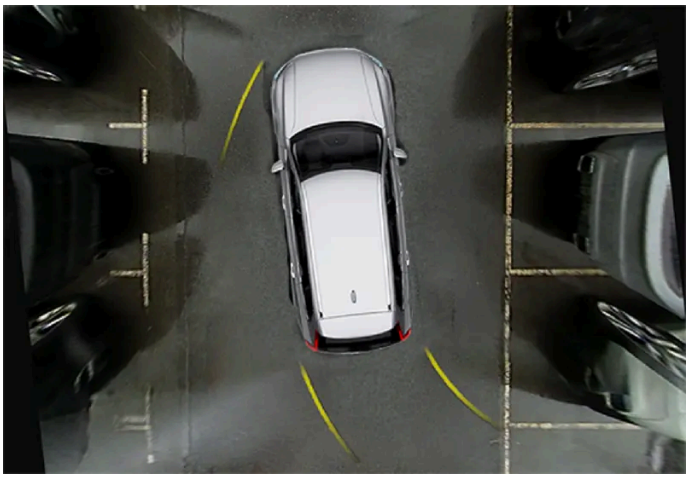
Note

- When reversing with a trailer which is not connected electrically to the car, the park assist lines on the display show the route the **car** will take – not the trailer.
- The screen shows no park assist lines when a trailer is connected electrically to the car's electrical system.
- Park assist lines are not shown when zooming in.

Important

- Remember, that with the rear camera view selected, the monitor only displays the area behind the car. Be aware of the sides and front of the car when manoeuvring in reverse.
- The same applies vice versa - note what happens to the rear parts of the car when the front camera view is selected.
- Note that the park assist lines show the **shortest** route. Therefore, pay extra attention to the car's sides so that they do not go against/over something when the steering wheel is turned when driving forward or that the front sweeps against/over something when the steering wheel is turned when reversing.

Park assist lines in 360° view*



360° view with park assist lines

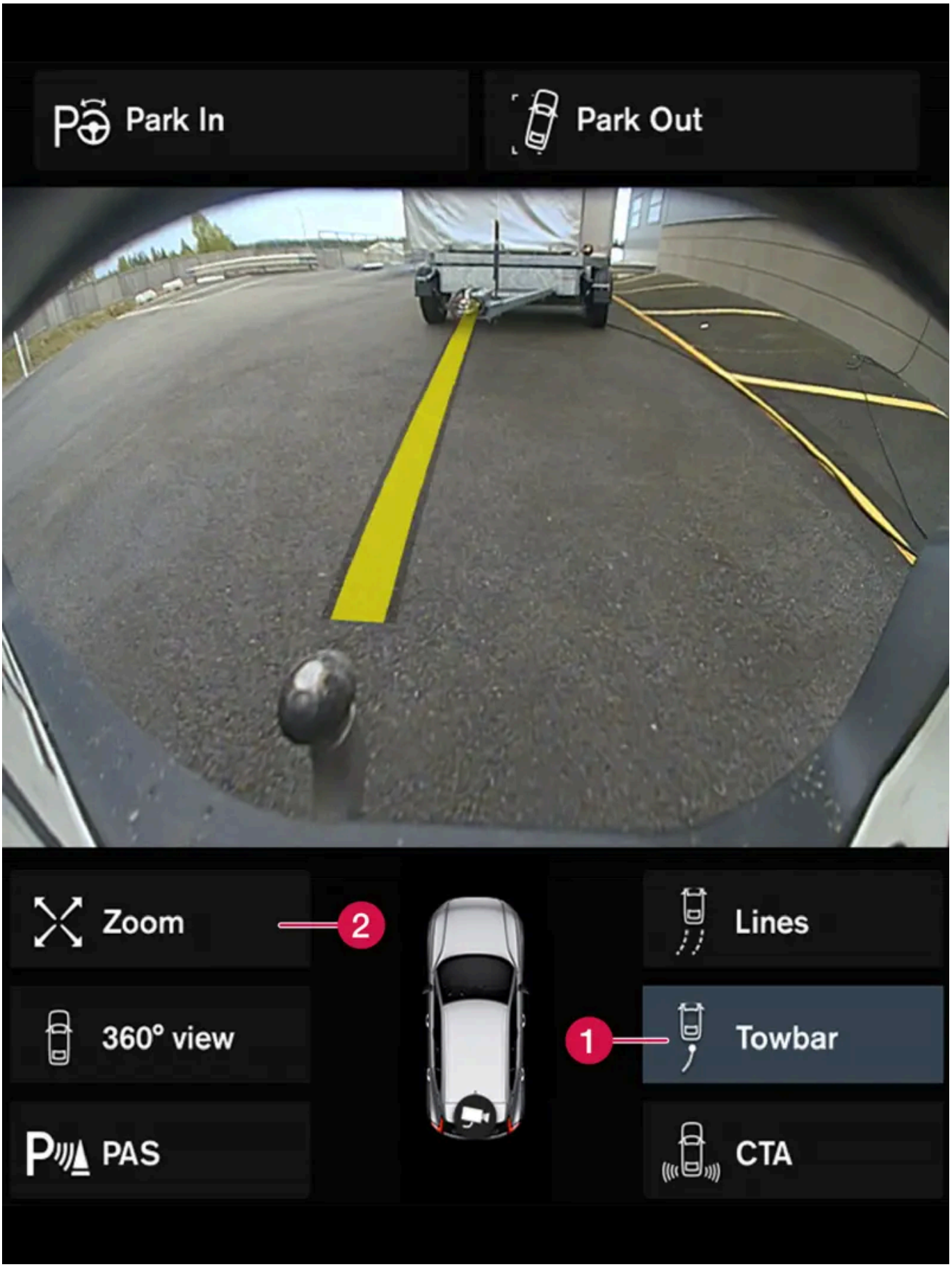
With the 360° view, park assist lines are shown behind, in front of and at the side of the car (depending on the direction of travel):

- When driving forwards: Front lines
- When reversing: Side lines and reversing lines

With front or rear camera selected, the park assist lines appear regardless of the car's direction of travel.

With one side camera selected, the park assist lines only appear when reversing.

Towbar assist line*



Towbar with park assist line

1 **Towbar** - activates the towbar assist line.

2 **Zoom** - zoom in/out.

To use the camera for connecting a trailer:

1 Press **Towbar** (1).

> The park assist lines for the towbar's intended path appear - the car's park assist lines will disappear at the same time. Park assist lines for both car and towbar cannot be shown at the same time.

2 Press **Zoom** (2) when a more precise manoeuvring is required.

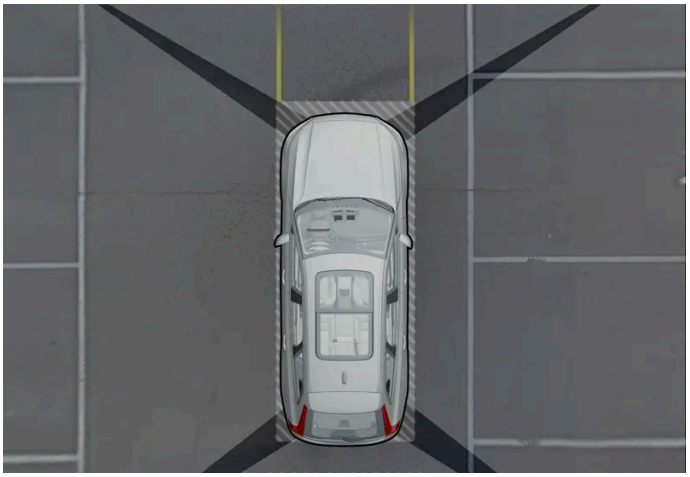
> The camera view zooms in.

* Option/accessory.

10.14.3.5. Park assist camera locations and surveillance areas*

The Park Assist cameras can show rear, front, left or right camera view individually. You can also have a composite 360° view that shows all sides.

360° view*



Example of "field of vision" for the parking cameras with approximate coverage area.

The **360° view** function activates all parking cameras, whereupon the four sides of the car are shown simultaneously in the centre display, which helps the driver to observe what is around the car when manoeuvring at slow speeds. From the 360°

view, each camera view can be activated separately. Tap on the screen to show the camera symbols and select the desired view. The camera symbols will disappear after a short time without the screen being touched.

A camera symbol on the centre display's car symbol indicates which of the cameras is active.

If the car is also equipped with **Park Assist System*** then distance to detected obstacles is illustrated with fields in different colours.

The cameras can be activated automatically or manually.

Backwards

The backwards-facing camera is fitted above the registration plate.

The backward-facing camera shows a wide area behind the car. For certain models, part of the bumper can be seen as well as the towbar in some cases.

Objects shown in the centre display may appear slightly tilted – this is normal.

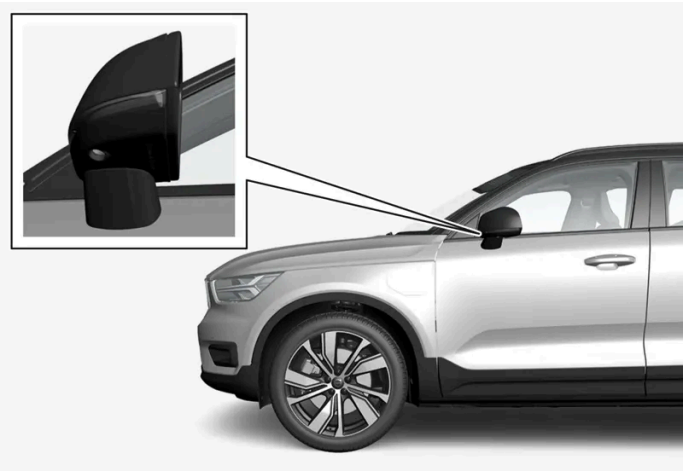
Forwards

The forwards parking camera is located in the grille.

The front camera can be helpful on an exit road with limited visibility to the sides, e.g. when driving out of a garage. It is active at speeds up to 25 km/h (16 mph) - following which, the front camera is switched off.

If the car does not reach 50 km/h (30 mph) and the speed falls below 22 km/h (14 mph) within 1 minute after the forward-facing camera has been extinguished, the camera is reactivated.

The sides



The side cameras are positioned in each door mirror.

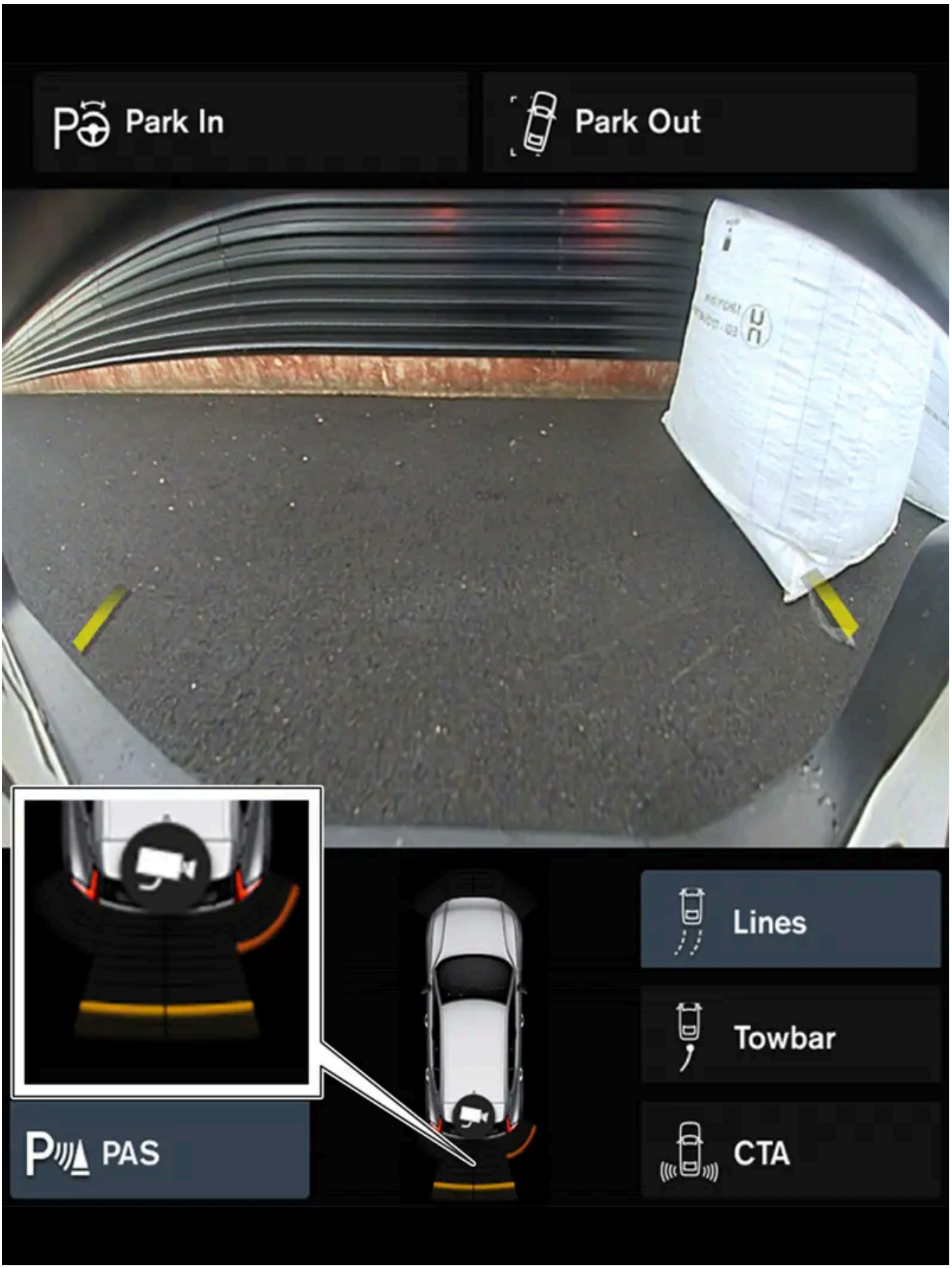
The side cameras can show what is along each side of the car.

* Option/accessory.

10.14.3.6. Sensor fields for park assist system*

If the car is equipped with the Park Assist System then the distance is shown in the Park Assist camera's 360° view with coloured fields for each sensor that registers an obstacle.

Sensor fields backwards and forwards



The screen can show coloured sensor fields on the car symbol.

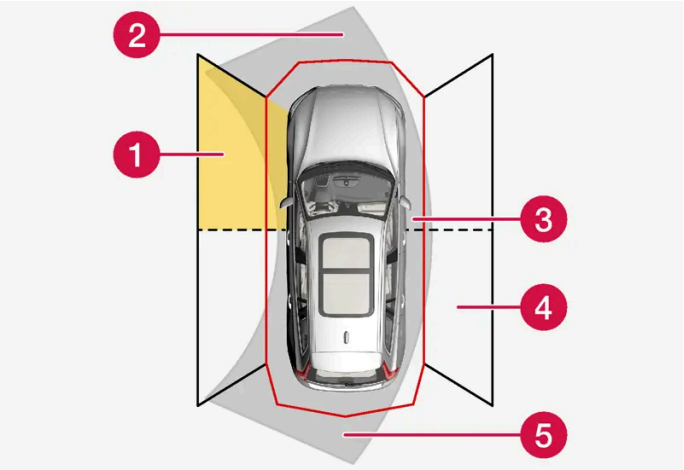
The fields for the front and reversing sensors change colour as the distance to the obstacle decreases – from yellow through orange to red.	
Field colour reverse	**Distance in metres (feet)**
Yellow	0.6-1.5 (2.0-4.9)
Orange	0.3–0.6 (1.0–2.0)
Red	0-0.3 (0-1.0)

Field colour forwards	**Distance in metres (feet)**
Yellow	0.6–0.8 (2.0–2.6)
Orange	0.3–0.6 (1.0–2.0)
Red	0-0.3 (0-1.0)

For red sensor fields, the pulsating acoustic signal changes over to a constant tone.

Sensor field to the sides

Warning signals depend on the intended route of the car. When the steering wheel is turned, therefore, there may also be a warning for obstacles diagonally in front of or diagonally behind the car, not just straight ahead or directly behind.



Parking sensor sectors where obstacles can be detected.

1 Left-hand side front sensor field

2 Obstacle sector in the car's intended route forwards – depending on steering wheel angle

3 Sector with red field colour and intensively pulsing tone

4 Right-hand side rear sensor field

5 Obstacle sector in the car's intended route in reverse – depending on steering wheel angle.

The colour of the side fields changes with reduced distance to the obstacle – from amber to red.	
Colour of side fields	**Distance in metres (feet)**
Yellow	0,25–0,9 (0,8–3,0)
Red	0–0,25 (0–0,8)

In the case of red sensor fields, the acoustic signal changes from pulsing to intensively pulsing.

* Option/accessory.

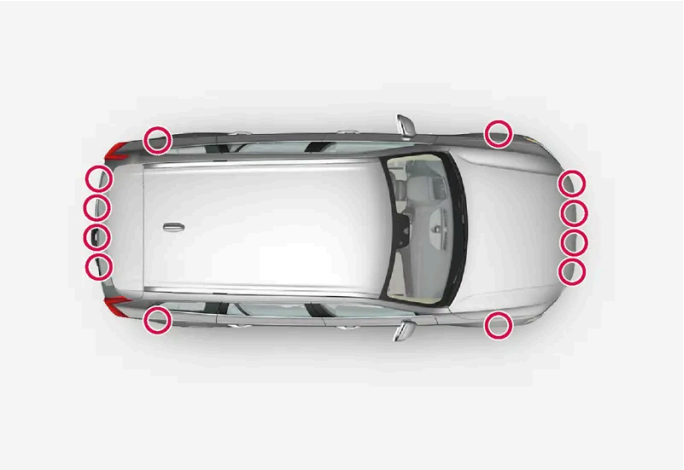
10.15. Camera and radar unit

10.15.1. Recommended maintenance for camera and radar units

In order that the camera and radar units shall function correctly, they must be kept clear of dirt, ice and snow, and be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

> **Note**
>
> Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may cause incorrect warning signals, reduced or no function.

The following illustrations mark out the surfaces to be kept clean – on both the left and right-hand sides of the car.



Location of the parking sensors around the car

Location of front camera and radar unit

Location of rear radar units

- To ensure best possible functionality, the surfaces in front of the sensors must be kept clean.
- Do not affix any objects, tape or labels in the area of the sensors.
- Clean camera lenses regularly with lukewarm water and car shampoo - be careful not to scratch the lenses.

> **Important**
>
> Maintenance of driver support components must only be performed at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

10.15.2. Symbols and messages for camera and radar units

Here are examples of some of the display messages and symbols regarding the camera and radar that can be shown in the driver display.

Detector blocked

If the driver display shows this symbol and the message **Windscreen sensor Sensor blocked, see Owner's manual**, this means that the camera and radar unit cannot detect other vehicles, cyclists, pedestrians and large animals in front of the car, and that the car's camera-based and radar-based functions may be disrupted.

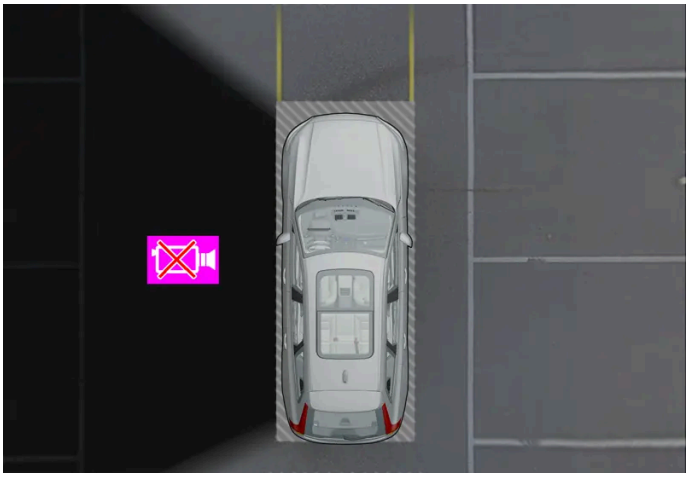
The following table presents examples of possible causes for a message being shown, along with the appropriate action:

Cause	Action
The windscreen surface in front of the camera and radar unit is dirty or covered with ice or snow.	Clean dirt, ice and snow from the windscreen surface in front of the camera and radar unit.
Thick fog and heavy rain or snow block the radar signals or the camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work during heavy rain or snowfall.
Water or snow from the road surface swirls up and blocks the radar signals or camera view.	No action. Sometimes the unit does not work on a very wet or snow-covered road surface.

Cause	Action
Dirt has entered between the inside of the windscreen and the camera unit.	Visit a workshop to have the windscreen inside the unit's cover cleaned - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
Strong oncoming light	No action. The camera unit is reset automatically in more favourable light conditions.

Defective camera

If a camera sector is black and contains this symbol then it means that the camera is out of order.



Example for showing when the car's left camera is non-operational.

A black camera sector is also shown in the following instances, but then **without** the symbol for defective camera:

- open door
- open tailgate
- folded-in door mirror.

Rear parking camera

Warning

Pay additional attention while reversing when this symbol is shown if a trailer, bicycle rack or similar is mounted and electrically connected to the car.

The symbol indicates that the parking assistance sensors rearward are **switched off** and will not warn of any obstacles.

10.15.3. Limitations for camera and radar units

The camera and radar have certain limitations – which in turn also limits those functions that use the units. A driver should be aware about the following examples of limitations.

Common limitations for camera and radar

The camera and radar are aids for intelligent driving that cannot be called upon to achieve intelligent driving, and the necessary safety management must be implemented in order to avoid road safety risks or accidents caused by the driver's incorrect use of the camera and radar.

Blocked unit

Do not position, stick or install anything in front of or around the camera and radar units – this may disrupt camera and radar-based functions. This may result functions being reduced, being switched off completely or giving incorrect function responses.

High temperature

At very high temperatures the camera and radar can temporarily be switched off for about 15 minutes after the engine is started so as to protect the unit's electronics. The units restart automatically when the temperature has fallen sufficiently.

Damaged windscreen

The following rules are also applicable when a camera or radar is placed in the windscreen:

- If a scratch, crack or stone chip appears in front of the unit and covers an area of approx. 0.5 × 3.0 mm (0.02 × 0.12 inches) or more, a workshop[1] must be contacted so that the windscreen can be replaced.
- Volvo recommends **not** repairing cracks, scratches or stone chips in the area in front of the unit – the entire windscreen should be replaced instead.
- Before replacing a windscreen, contact a workshop[1] to verify that the correct windscreen has been ordered and will be fitted.
- The same type of windscreen wipers or windscreen wipers approved by Volvo must be fitted when the windscreen is replaced.
- When replacing the windscreen, the camera and radar unit must be recalibrated by a workshop[1] to ensure the functionality of all the camera and radar-based systems in the car.

> **Note**
>
> If not rectified, it can lead to reduced performance for the driver support systems that use the camera and/or radar units. This may result functions being reduced, being switched off completely or giving incorrect function responses.

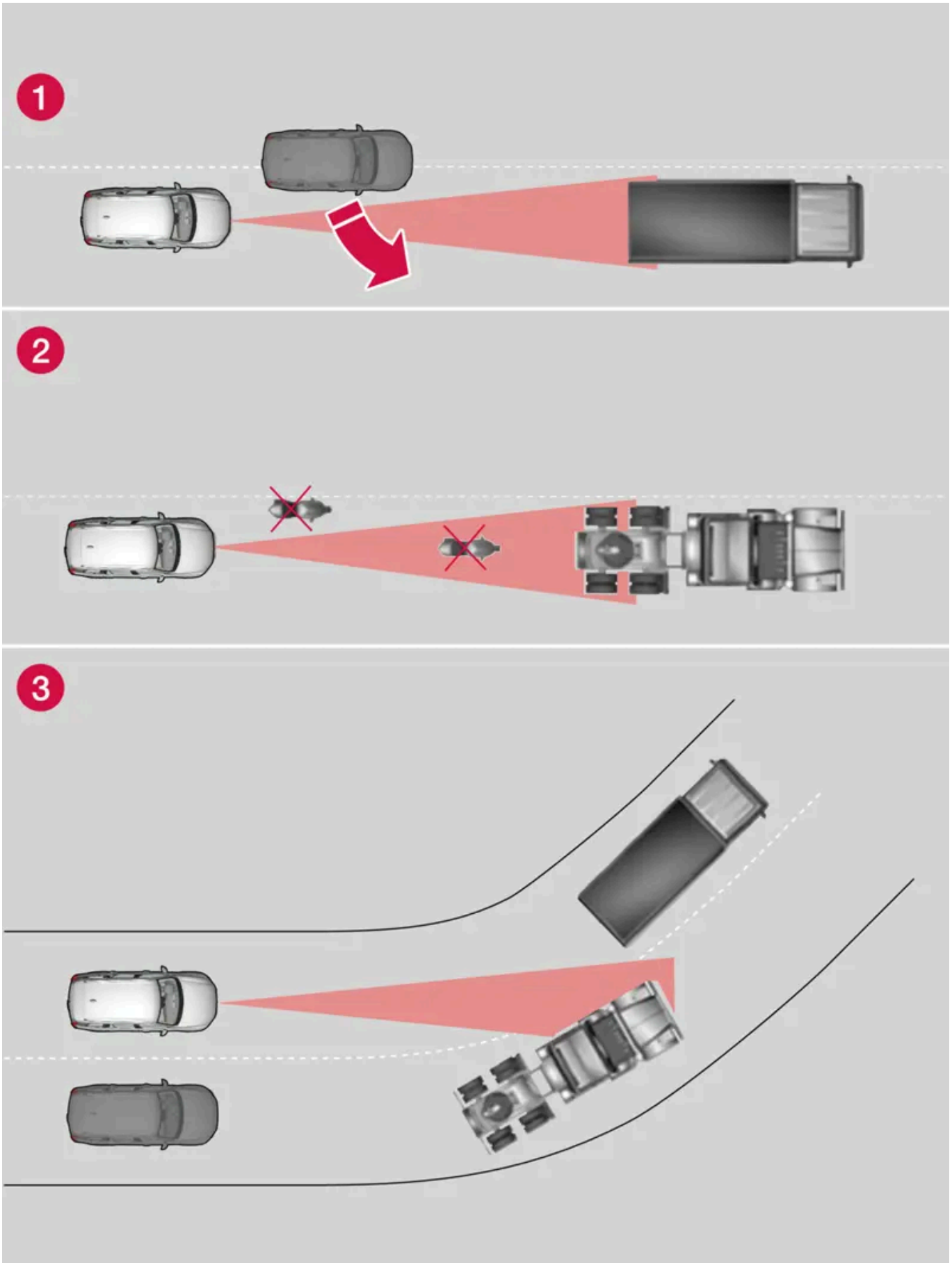
Further limitations for radar

Vehicle speed

The radar unit's ability to detect a vehicle ahead is greatly reduced if the speed of the vehicle ahead is very different to the speed of your own car.

Limited field of vision

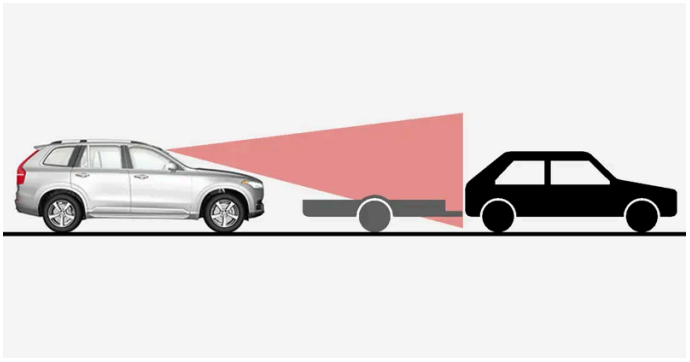
The radar unit has a limited field of vision. In some situations another vehicle is not detected, or the detection is made later than expected.



The radar unit's field of vision

1. Sometimes the radar unit is late at detecting vehicles at close distances - e.g. a vehicle that drives in between your car and the vehicle ahead.
2. Small vehicles, such as motorcycles, or vehicles not driving in the centre of the lane can remain undetected.
3. In bends, the radar unit may detect a different vehicle than intended or lose a detected vehicle from view.

Low trailers



Low trailer in radar shadow

Low trailers can also be difficult for the radar unit to detect, or are not detected at all - the driver should therefore be particularly careful when driving behind low trailers when the adaptive cruise control* or Pilot Assist* is activated.

Further limitations for camera

Impaired vision

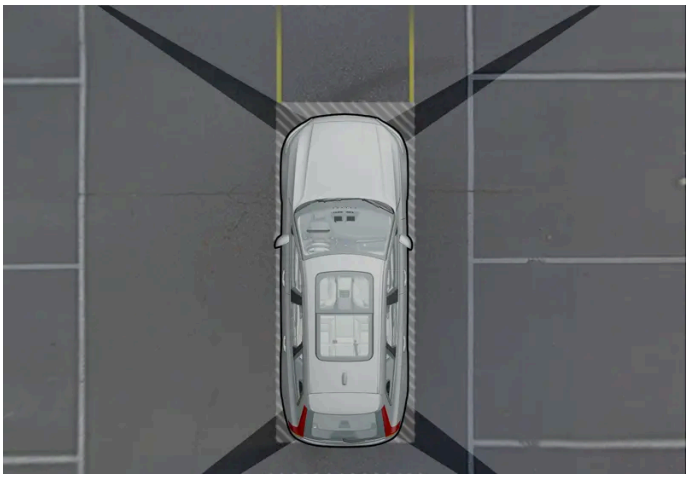
The cameras have limitations similar to the human eye, i.e. may "see" worse in for example intense snowfall or rain, dense fog, heavy dust storms and snow flurries. Under such conditions, the functions of camera-dependent systems could be significantly reduced or temporarily disengaged.

Strong oncoming light, reflections in the carriageway, snow or ice on the road surface, dirty road surfaces or unclear lane markings can also significantly reduce camera function when it is used to scan the carriageway to detect pedestrians, cyclists, large animals and other vehicles.

Bicycle racks or other accessories mounted at the rear of the car may obscure the camera's view.

Further limitations for Park assist camera*

Blind sectors



There are "blind" sectors between the cameras' fields of vision.

In the park assist camera's 360° view* obstacles/objects may "vanish" in the gaps between the individual cameras.

> **Warning**
>
> Pay attention to the possibility that, even if it only looks like a relatively small part of the image is obscured, a relatively large sector could be hidden from view. An obstacle could thereby go undetected until the car is very close to it.

Light conditions

The camera image is adjusted automatically according to prevailing light conditions. Because of this, the image may vary slightly in brightness and quality. Poor light conditions can result in reduced image quality.

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

10.15.4. Camera unit

The camera unit is used by several driver support systems and has the task of for example detecting lane lines or traffic signs.

Location of the camera unit

The camera unit is used by the following functions:

- Adaptive cruise control*
- Pilot Assist*
- Lane assistance*
- City Safety
- Steering assistance at risk of collision
- Driver Alert Control*
- Road Sign Information*
- Active main beam*
- Park Assist*

> **Important**
>
> Do not attempt to access the camera using sharp or foreign objects through the air vents as this may damage the equipment.

* Option/accessory.

10.15.5. Radar unit

Radar is used by several driver support systems and has the task of sensing other vehicles.

Location of front radar unit

The radar unit is used by the following functions:

- Distance Warning*
- Adaptive cruise control*
- Pilot Assist*
- Lane assistance
- City Safety
- Steering assistance at risk of collision

Modification of the radar unit could result in its use being illegal.

* Option/accessory.

10.15.6. Type approval for radar device

Here you can find type approval for the car's radar units for adaptive cruise control* (ACC[1]), Pilot Assist* and BLIS*[2].

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Botswana		✓	BTA REGISTERED No: XXXXX/XX/XXXX/XXXX	
Brazil	✓		ANATEL ##### ## ######	Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário, isto é, não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial, mesmo de estações do mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferência a sistemas operando em caráter primário. Modelo: L2C0054TR 4122-14-8645 EAN: (01)07897843840855

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
		✓		Este equipamento não tem direito à proteção contra interferência prejudicial e não pode causar interferência em sistemas devidamente autorizados. 03563-17-05364
Europe	✓		CE	Hereby, Delphi Electronics and Safety declares that L2C0054TR / L2C0055TR are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU (RED). The original declaration of conformity can be accessed at the following link www.delphi.com/automotive-homologation. Frequency Band: 76GHz – 77GHz Maximum Output Power: 55dBm EIRP The Declaration of Conformity may be consulted at Delphi Electronics & Safety / 2151 E. Lincoln Road / Kokomo, Indiana 46902 USA
		✓		Hereby, Hella KgaA Hueck & Co. Declares that the radio equipment type RS4 is in compliance with Directive 2014/53/EU. The full text of the EU declaration of conformity is available at the following internet address: www.hella.com/vcc. Technical information: Frequency range: 24.05 ... 24.25 GHz Transmission power: 20 dBm (maximum) EIRP Manufacturer and Address: Manufacturer: Hella KGaA Hueck & Co. Address: Rixbecker Straße 75, 59552 Lippstadt, Germany
The United Arab Emirates (UAE)	✓		TRA Registered No: XXnnnnn/nn Dealer No: XXnnnnn/nn	Registered No: ER37536/15 Dealer No: DA37380/15
		✓		Registered No: ER53878/17 Dealer No: DA44932/15
Ghana		✓		NCA Approved: 1R3-1M-7E1-0B7
Indonesia	✓			37295/POSTEL/2014 4927
		✓		Certificate number: 50459/SDPPI/2017 Country of origin Germany Certificate number: 53578/SDPPI/2017 Country of origin China PLG ID: 6051
Jamaica		✓		This product contains a Type Approved Module by Jamaica: SMA – “RS4”.
Jordan	✓			Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2014/255 Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)
		✓		Type Approval No.: TRC/LPD/2017/63 Equipment Type: Low Power Device (LPD)
China		✓		[illegible] RS4[illegible]H[illegible] [illegible]24.05-24.25GHz[illegible]: 20mW [illegible] [illegible] [illegible]

Market	ACC & PA	BLIS	Symbol	Type approval
Nigeria		✓		Connection and use of this communications equipment is permitted by the Nigerian Communications Commission.
Oman		✓		
Russia		✓		
Serbia	✓			И011 14
		✓		И011 17
Singapore	✓			DA 105753
		✓		DA 103238
South Africa	✓			TA-2014/1824
		✓		TA-2016/3407
South Korea	✓			Certification No. MSIP-CMI- DPH-L2C0054TR
		✓		R-CMM-HLA-RS4 □ □□□□ □□□□(A□) □□□□ □□□□□□□□ □ □□□ □□□ □□□ □□□ □ □□□ □□□□□□□ □ □□□,□□□□□ □□□□ □ □□□ □□□ □□□ □□□□ □ □□□□
Taiwan	✓			CCAB15LP0560T3
		✓		CCAB17LP0470T5 □□ □□□□□□□□□□□□□□□□□□□,□□□□□,□□□□□□□□□□□□□□□□□□

Market	Symbol	Type approval
Europe	CE	Hereby, Volvo cars, declares that all radio equipment's are in compliance with the essential requirements and other relevant provisions of Directive 2014/53/EU.
Japan		R 204-750001 This device is granted pursuant to the Japanese Radio Law and the Japanese Telecommunications Business Law. This device should not be modified (otherwise the granted designation number will become invalid).

* Option/accessory.

[1] Adaptive Cruise Control

[2] Blind Spot Information

10.16. Driving support systems

The car is equipped with different driver support systems which can assist the driver in different situations, either actively or passively.

For example, the systems can help the driver to:

- maintain a set speed
- maintain a certain time interval to the vehicle ahead
- prevent a collision by giving a warning to the driver and braking the car
- help the driver to park.

Some of the systems are fitted as standard while others are options – which alternative applies is market dependent.

Warning

The driver support systems are only supplementary aids - they cannot handle all situations in all conditions.

The driver always bears responsibility that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

10.17. Safety check of driver support when starting

When you start the car after it has been fully switched off, a safety check of the car's driver support systems is shown in the driver display. The check shows which driver support systems are available in the car and whether they are ready for use.

The safety check is shown in the driver display

The illustration shows the 12" driver display

The illustration shows the 8" driver display

The green dots indicate that everything looks OK. If any system needs an additional check, this is shown by an orange dot and a message in the driver display.

> **Note**
>
> Available driver support systems may vary depending on the market, options, car model and model year.

10.18. Warnings from various driver support systems

If you notice that the car acts in an unexpected way then this may be due to one of the car's safety-related functions being activated.

What is happening in your car?

There are several functions in your car that can contribute actively to increasing safety in traffic, both for yourself and other road users. You have the option of viewing a list of some of the functions and what they may do – the aim of this is to ensure you are not surprised by the activation of any of the functions. If a function should be activated, you can also be informed of this via a text message in the driver display.

> **Note**
>
> Read the individual sections on each system in order to fully understand the functions and learn about important warnings.

Warning with the symbol, acoustic signals, visual signals or vibration

The driver support functions in your car can alert you in different ways. For example, with vibration in the steering wheel, brake pulse, with visual or acoustic signals or via symbols in the driver display.

City Safety™

City Safety is a function that can prevent or mitigate a collision with pedestrians, cyclists, larger animals or vehicles. Visual, acoustic and brake pulse warnings are given in the event of a risk of collision to help the driver act in time. If the driver does not react to the warning and the risk of collision is assessed as imminent then City Safety can automatically brake the car.

- Brake pulse warnings, visual and acoustic signals.
- The car brakes in certain situations if the driver does not react him/herself within a reasonable amount of time.

Steering assistance at risk of collision

The function for collision avoidance assistance can help you reduce the risk of the car unintentionally leaving its lane and/or colliding with another vehicle or obstacle. The function can assist you by helping to steer the car back into its own lane and/or steer aside.

Your experience of the function may therefore differ depending on which of the subfunctions is activated.

- Steering assistance upon risk of run-off.
- Steering assistance upon risk of head-on collision.
- Steering assistance upon risk of rear-end collision.

Lane Keeping Aid (LKA [1])

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Lane assistance can help you to reduce the risk of the car unintentionally leaving its own lane. Since you have the option to choose the setting for how the function should assist you, your experience of the safety function may vary.

- Steering assistance: If the function detects that the car is approaching a lane line, you will feel a gentle steering action applied to the steering wheel. You must have both hands on the steering wheel for the function to work.
- Warning: If the function detects that the car is approaching a lane line, you will be alerted by vibration in the steering wheel.
- Both: You are alerted with vibration and a gentle steering action applied to the steering wheel.

Blind Spot Information (BLIS)

BLIS is designed to give a warning of rapidly approaching vehicles as well as vehicles diagonally behind and to the side of your vehicle so as to give you assistance in heavy traffic on roads with several lanes in the same direction.

- Alerts with an indicator lamp in the side mirror, with fixed glow and flashing light.

Driver Alert

The function is intended to attract the driver's attention if he/she starts to drive less consistently, e.g. if he/she becomes distracted or starts to fall asleep.

- Acoustic signal combined with a symbol in the driver display and a message.

Cross Traffic Alert (CTA)*

Cross Traffic Alert is a function designed to alert for crossing traffic when the car is being reversed.

- Acoustic signal from left or right-hand speaker, depending on the direction from which the object is approaching
- Icon in the driver display
- Icon in the park assist camera's top view

Roll Stability Control (RSC)

Roll Stability Control is a stabiliser system that, in certain situations, can help to reduce the risk of overturning, for example, during sudden evasive manoeuvres or if the car skids. If the system registers that there is a risk of the car overturning, it can react with the following action:

- Engine torque is reduced.
- One or more wheels are braked.

> **Warning**
>
> The functions described are supplementary aids - they cannot handle all situations in all conditions.
>
> The driver always bears responsibility that the vehicle is driven safely and that applicable road traffic rules and regulations are followed.

[1] Lane Keeping Aid

* Option/accessory.

10.19. Speed-dependent steering force

Speed related power steering causes the steering wheel force to increase with the speed of the car so as to be able to give the driver enhanced sensitivity. On motorways the steering is firmer. When parking and at low speed steering is light and requires less effort.

Reduced power

In rare situations, the power steering may need to work at reduced power, and turning the steering wheel may then seem slightly heavier. This may occur when the power steering becomes too hot and it then needs temporary cooling. It may also occur if the power supply is disrupted.

In the event of reduced power, the message **Power steering Assistance temporarily reduced** is shown, as well as this symbol in the driver display.

While the power steering is working at reduced power, the driver support functions and steering assistance systems are not available.

> **Warning**
>
> If the temperature increases too much, the servo may be forced to switch off completely. In such a situation, the driver display shows the **Power steering failure Stop safely** message, combined with a symbol.

Change the steering force level*

Steering wheel resistance can be adjusted when using INDIVIDUAL drive mode.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Select **My Car** → **Drive Modes** → **Steering Force**.

Steering wheel resistance selection can only be accessed if the car is stationary or is moving at low speed and in a straight line.

* Option/accessory.

10.20. Drive modes when using time interval to vehicles

The driver can select different driving styles for how driver support should maintain the preset time interval to the vehicle ahead.

Selection is made via the drive mode control DRIVE MODE.

Select one of the following options:

- **Eco** – The driver support focuses on good fuel economy, which means longer time interval to the vehicle ahead.
- **Comfort** – The driver support focuses on following the set time interval to the vehicle ahead as smoothly as possible.
- **Dynamic*** – The driver support focuses on following the set time interval to the vehicle ahead more closely, which in certain cases may mean heavier acceleration and braking.

* Option/accessory.

10.21. Auto braking after a collision

In the event of a collision in which the activation level is reached for the pyrotechnic seatbelt tensioners or airbags, or if a collision with a large animal is detected, the car's brakes are automatically applied. This function is to prevent or reduce the effects of any subsequent collision.

After a serious collision there is a risk that it is no longer possible to control and steer the car. In order to avoid or mitigate a possible further collision with a vehicle or an object in the vehicle's path, the auto braking system is activated automatically and brakes the car in a safe manner.

Brake lights and hazard warning lights are activated during braking. When the car has stopped, the hazard warning lights continue to flash and the parking brake is applied.

If braking is not appropriate, e.g. if there is a risk of being hit by following traffic, the system can be overridden by the driver depressing the accelerator pedal.

The function assumes that the brake system is intact after the collision.

---

11. Starting and driving

11.1. Starting and switching off the car

11.1.1. Immobiliser

The electronic immobiliser is a theft protection system that prevents starting the car without the correct key.

The following error message in the driver display is related to the electronic immobiliser:

Symbol	Message	Specification
	Car key not found	Error reading the key during starting - place the key on the key symbol in the centre console's storage compartment and try again.

11.1.2. Starting the car

The car is started using the start button beside the steering wheel when the key is in the passenger compartment.

Start button location.

Warning

Before starting:

- Fasten the seatbelt.
- Adjust the seat, steering wheel and mirrors.
- Make sure that the brake pedal can be fully depressed.

The key is not physically used when starting the car since it is equipped with support for keyless starting (Passive start).

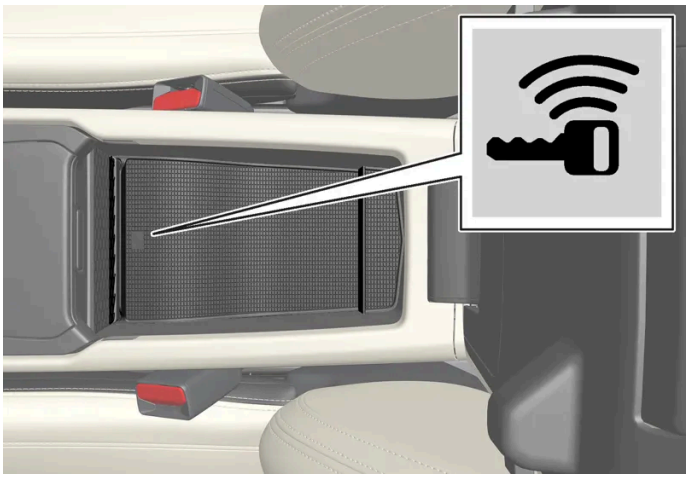
To start the car:

1. The key must be inside the car. For cars with Passive Start, the key needs to be located in the front part of the passenger compartment. With the option for keyless locking/unlocking* of the car, the key can be anywhere in the car.
2. Hold the brake pedal depressed[1] fully. For cars with automatic gear changing, make sure that gear position P or N is selected. For cars with a manual gearbox, make sure that the gear lever is in neutral position or that the clutch pedal is depressed.
3. Press the start button.

When the engine is started, the starter motor works until the engine is started or until its overheating protection triggers[2].

Error messages

If the **Car key not found** message is shown in the driver display when starting, place the key by the back-up reader. Then try to start the car again.



Backup reader's location.

Note

When the key is positioned by the back-up reader, make sure that there are no keys, metal objects or electronic apparatus by the back-up reader, (e.g. mobile phones, tablets, computers or chargers). Several keys close to one another by the back-up reader may cause interference with each other.

Important

If the engine fails to start after 3 attempts - wait for 3 minutes before making a further attempt. Starting capacity increases if the battery is allowed to recover.

Warning

Never remove the key from the car while driving or during towing.

Warning

Always take the key out from the car when leaving the car and make sure the car's electrical system is in ignition position **0** – especially if there are children in the car.

Note

The idling speed can be noticeably higher than normal for certain engine types during cold starting. This is done in order that the emissions system can reach normal operating temperature as quickly as possible, which minimises exhaust emissions and protects the environment.

* Option/accessory.

[1] If the car is moving, the engine can be started simply by pressing the button.

[2] Does not apply to KERS cars where the alternator is used for starting.

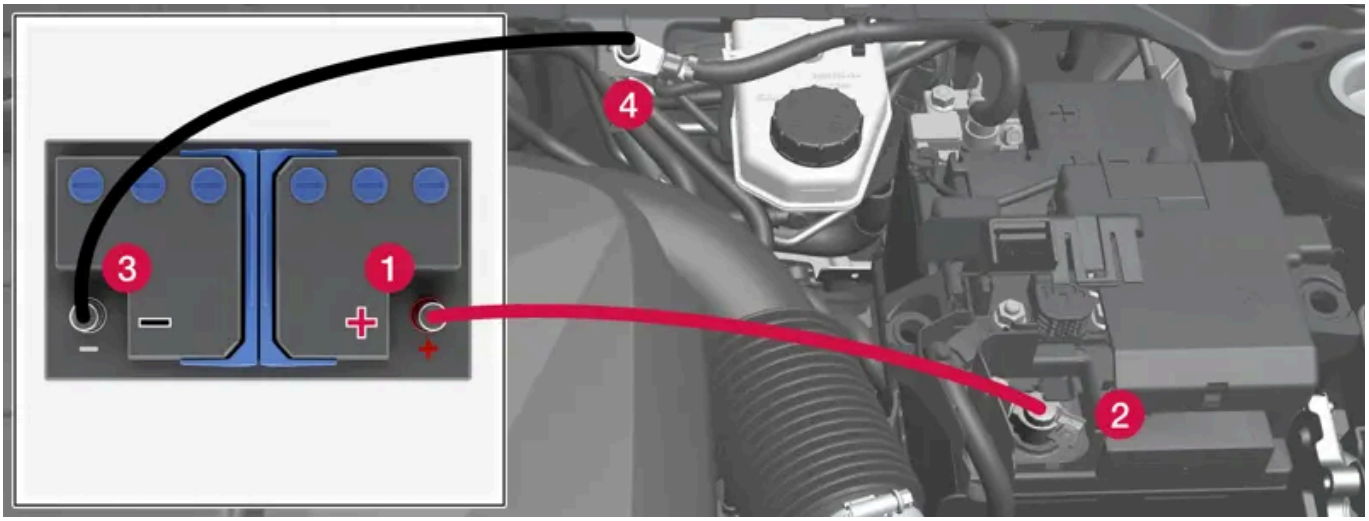
11.1.3. Using jump starting with another battery

If the starter battery is discharged then the car can be started with current from another battery.

Jump starting requires access to another car's 12V battery as well as jump leads.

> **Important**
>
> The charging points in mild hybrid type cars are designed for only jump starting the car itself. Do not use the charging points of mild hybrids to start other cars – the fuse for the charging circuit may be overloaded so that it stops working.

In mild hybrid[1] type cars, a discharged starter battery may be caused by an overloaded fuse that prevents charging. If a fuse has been triggered, the message **12 V Battery Fuse failure Service required** is shown in the driver display. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.



Charging points for jump starting own car. The appearance in the engine compartment may vary depending on car model and equipment level.

When jump starting the car, the following steps are recommended to avoid short circuits or other damage:

1. Set the car's electrical system in ignition position 0.
2. Check that the donor battery has a voltage of 12 V.
3. If the battery is installed in another car – switch off its engine and make sure that the cars do not touch each other.
4. Connect one of the red jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's positive terminal (1).

   > **Important**
   >
   > Connect the jump lead carefully to avoid a short circuit and contact with other components in the engine compartment.

5. Open the positive charging point's cover (2).
6. Attach the red jump lead's other clamp onto the car's positive charging point (2).
7. Attach one of the black jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's negative terminal (3).
8. Attach the black jump lead's other clamp onto the car's negative charging point (4).
9. Check that the jump lead clamps are affixed securely so that there are no sparks during the starting attempt.

10 Start the engine of the donor car and allow it to run for a few minutes at a rotation speed higher than normal idle approx. 1500 rpm.

11 Start the engine in the car with the discharged battery.

> **Important**
>
> Do not touch the connections between cable and car during the starting attempt. There is a risk of sparks forming.

12 Remove the jump leads in reverse order - first the black and then the red.

Make sure that none of the black jump lead's clamps comes into contact with the car's positive charging point, the donor battery's positive terminal, or the clamp connected to the red jump lead.

> **Warning**
>
> 48 V voltage can be dangerous in the event of incorrect intervention. Do not touch anything on the batteries that is not clearly described in the owner's manual.
>
> - 48 V support battery must never be used for jump starting.
> - External electrical equipment must not, under any circumstances, be connected to the 48 V battery.
> - The 48 V battery may only be serviced and replaced by a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

> **Warning**
>
> - The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
> - Do not connect the jump leads to any fuel system component or any moving part. Be careful of hot engine parts.
> - The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
> - If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.
> - Never smoke near the battery.

Note

If the starter battery has such a low State Of Charge (SoC) that the car has no normal electrical functions and the engine is then jump-started with an external battery or a battery charger, the Start/stop function may continue to be activated. If the Start/stop function then auto-stops the engine shortly afterwards, there is a great risk that engine auto-start will fail because the battery has not had the time to recharge sufficiently.

If the car has been jump-started, or if there is insufficient time to charge the battery using a battery charger, the Start/stop function will be temporarily deactivated until the battery has been sufficiently recharged by the car. In an outside temperature of approx. +15 °C (approx. 60 °F), the battery needs to be charged for at least 1 hour by the car. In a lower outside temperature, the charging time may increase to 3–4 hours. The recommendation is to charge the battery if possible using an external battery charger.

[1] Cars with engine alternative B3, B4, B5 or B6 are the mild hybrid type.

11.1.4. Switching off the car

The car is switched off using the start button beside the steering wheel.

Start button location.

To switch off the car:

1 Press the start button - the car is switched off.

If the gear selector for cars with an automatic gearbox is not in position P or if the car rolls:

1 Press the start button and hold it depressed until the car is switched off.

11.1.5. Ignition positions

The car's electrical system can be set in different levels/positions and in this way make the different functions available.

In order to facilitate the use of a limited number of functions with the engine switched off, the car's electrical system can be set in three different levels – **0**, **I** and **II**. These levels are described with the denomination "ignition position" throughout the owner's manual.

The following table shows the functions available in each ignition position/level:

Level	Functions
0	• Odometer, clock and temperature gauge are illuminated[1]. • Power* seats can be adjusted. • The centre display is started and can be used[1]. • The infotainment system can be used[1]. In this mode, the functions are controlled by time and are switched off automatically after a short while.
I	• Panoramic roof, power windows, 12V power socket in the passenger compartment, Bluetooth, navigation, phone, ventilation fan and windscreen wipers can be used. • Power seats can be adjusted. • 12 V power sockets* in the cargo area can be used. • The infotainment system is started automatically if it was running when the car was left. **Power is taken from the battery in this ignition position.**
II	• The headlamps come on. • Warning/indicator lamps illuminate for 5 seconds. • Several other systems are activated. However, heating in seat cushions and the rear window can only be activated after the car has been started. **This ignition position consumes a lot of current from the battery and should therefore be avoided!**

[1] Also activated when the door is opened.

* Option/accessory.

11.1.6. Selecting ignition mode

The car's electrical system can be set in different levels/positions and in this way make the different functions available.

Selecting ignition position

Start button location.

- **Ignition position 0** – Unlock the car and store the key inside the car.

> **Note**
>
> To reach level I or II **without** starting the engine - do **not** depress the brake pedal, or the clutch pedal for cars with manual gear changing, when these ignition positions are to be selected.

- **Ignition position I** – Depress the start button and release.
- **Ignition position II** – Press and hold the button depressed for approx. 5 seconds. Then release the button.
- **Back to ignition position0** – To return to ignition position 0 from position I and II – press the start button.

11.2. Alcohol lock

11.2.1. Alcohol lock*

The function of the alcohol lock is to prevent the car from being driven by individuals under the influence of alcohol. Before starting the car is possible, the driver must take a breath test to ensure that he/she is not under the influence of alcohol.

The car's systems adapt when an alcohol lock is connected into the car. In this way the driver can easily receive messages from the alcohol lock directly in the driver display. Alcohol lock calibration takes place in accordance with each market's limit value in force for driving legally.

For information about a specific alcohol lock, please refer to the alcohol lock manufacturer.

> **Warning**
>
> The alcohol lock is an aid and does not exempt the driver from responsibility. It is always the responsibility of the driver to be sober and to drive the car safely.

Using the alcohol lock

The alcohol lock is activated automatically and is then ready for use when the car is unlocked.

In order to obtain correct function and as accurate a measurement result as possible:

- Avoid eating or drinking approx. 5 minutes before the breath test.
- Avoid excess windscreen washing - the alcohol in the washer fluid may result in an incorrect measurement result.

> **Note**
>
> After a completed period of driving, the car can be restarted within 30 minutes without a new breath test.

Bypassing the alcohol lock

In the event of an emergency situation or if the alcohol lock is out of order, it is possible to bypass the alcohol lock in order to drive the car.

To deactivate the alcohol lock, see the manufacturer's instructions for the alcohol lock.

* Option/accessory.

11.3. Gearbox

11.3.1. Kick-down function

Kick-down [1] can be used when maximum acceleration is needed such as for overtaking.

When the accelerator pedal is pressed all the way to the floor (beyond the position normally regarded as full acceleration) a lower gear is immediately engaged. This is known as kick-down.

If the accelerator is released from the kick-down position, the gearbox automatically changes up.

Safety function

To prevent over-revving of the engine, the gearbox control program has a protective downshift inhibitor.

The gearbox does not permit downshifting/kick-down which would result in an engine speed high enough to damage the engine. Nothing happens if the driver still tries to shift down in this way at high engine speed – the original gear remains engaged.

On kick-down the car can shift down one or more steps at a time, depending in engine speed. The car shifts up when the engine has reached is maximum engine speed in order to prevent engine damage.

[1] Only possible with automatic gearbox.

11.3.2. Launch function*

Launch can be used when maximum acceleration is required from stationary. The function is available in the following drive modes: **Dynamic**, **Comfort** and **Individual**.

Activate Launch

Make sure the car is stationary and the wheels are pointing straight forward.

1. Move to gear position D.
2. Depress the brake pedal fully.
3. Then fully depress the accelerator pedal.
4. Release the brake pedal within 2 seconds.

> **Note**
>
> If the Launch function does not work, wait a few minutes and let the drivetrain cool down to working temperature before retrying.

> **Important**
>
> The drivetrain is subject to wear and tear when using Launch and therefore the function is only available a limited number of times.

* Option/accessory.

11.3.3. Gearbox

The gearbox is part of the car's powertrain (power transmission) between engine and drive wheels. The function of the gearbox is to change the gear ratio depending on speed and power requirements.

There are two main types of gearbox, manual and automatic.

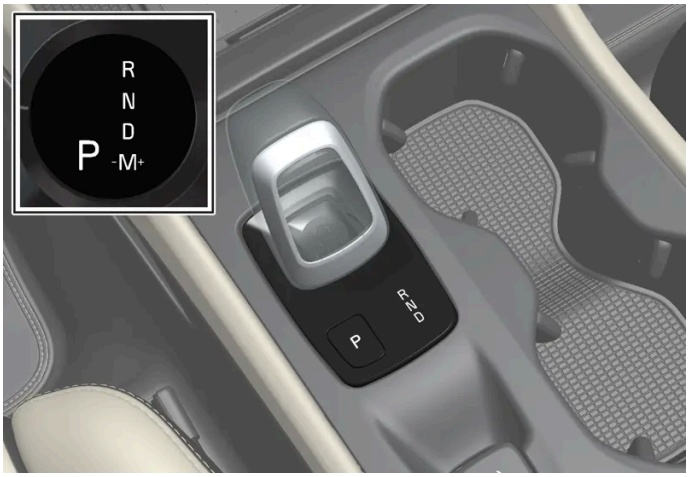
The manual gearbox has six gears.

The automatic gearbox has either seven or eight gears. The number of gear changes means that the engine's torque and power range can be used effectively.

It is also possible to select gears manually with the automatic gearbox. The driver display shows the selected gear position.

11.3.4. Automatic gearbox

Gears are selected automatically so that you can drive as energy-efficiently as possible. The gearbox also has a manual gearshift mode.



Overview of gear lever and shift pattern in the driver display.

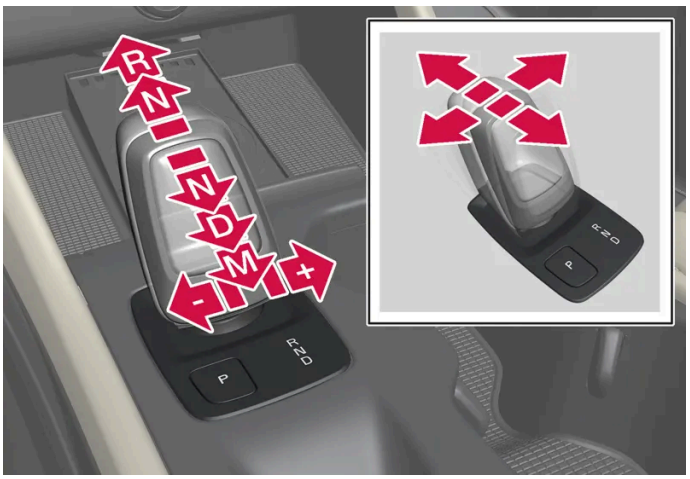
The driver display shows the selected gear position:

P, R, N, D or M.

11.3.5. Changing gear with automatic gearbox

Change gear position by pressing the spring-loaded gear selector forwards or backwards, or sideways for manual shifting.

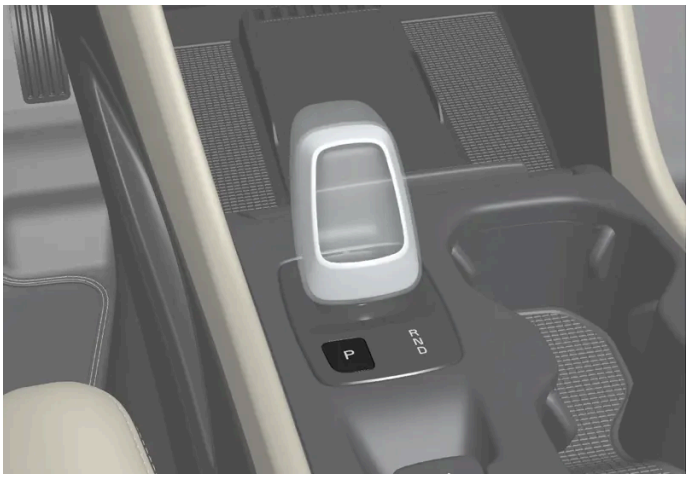
Changing gear



Overview of gear lever and gear positions.

Gear positions

Parking – P



Overview of gear lever and position P.

Parking is activated with the P button located next to the gear selector.

The gearbox is mechanically blocked when the P position is engaged.

Select position P for parking. The car can start in position P. The car must be stationary when the P position is selected.

To park - first apply the parking bake and then select P position.

> **Warning**
>
> Always use the parking brake when parking on an inclined surface. Engaging a gear or the automatic transmission's **P** position is not sufficient to hold the car stationary in all situations.

Note

To be able to lock the car and arm the alarm, the gear position must be in **P**.

Help functions

The system will change to the P position automatically:

- if the car is switched off in position D or R.
- if the driver unfastens the seatbelt and opens the driver's door when the car is running in a mode other than P.

To park a car without wearing the seatbelt and with the door open - exit the P position by selecting R or D again.

If the car is switched off in N position there is no automatic change-over to P position. This makes it possible to wash the car in an automatic car wash.

Reverse – R

Select position R to reverse. The car must be stationary when the R position is selected.

Neutral – N

The car freewheels in position N. The car can start in position N. Apply the parking brake if the car is stationary with the gear selector in the N position.

In order to change from N position to another gear position, the brake pedal must be depressed and the ignition position must be II. Some gearbox variants require the engine to be running.

Drive position - D

D is the normal driving position. Shifting up and down takes place automatically based on the level of acceleration and speed.

The car must be stationary when changing gear from R position to D position.

Note

It is possible to change between D/R at very low speed without your foot on the brake in order to facilitate parking, for example.

Manual position – M

Overview of manual gear position in the driver display.

In M position, it is possible to change gear manually. The car engine-brakes when the accelerator pedal is released.

Position M is selected by moving the gear selector backwards from the D position.

- Press the gear selector to the right to "+" (plus) to change up one step and release it.
- Press the gear selector to the left to "–" (minus) to change down one step and release it.
- Press the gear selector backwards to return to the D position.

The gearbox automatically shifts down if the speed decreases to a level lower than appropriate for the selected gear, in order to avoid jerking and stalling.

11.3.6. Symbols and messages for automatic gearbox

If a fault should occur in the gearbox, a symbol and a message are shown in the driver display.

> **Important**
>
> To prevent damage to any drive system components, the working temperature of the gearbox is checked. If there is a risk of overheating, a warning symbol illuminates in the driver display and a text message is shown - follow the recommendation given.

Symbol	Specification
	An error has occurred in the transmission. Read the message in the driver display.
	Hot or overheated gearbox. Read the message in the driver display.
	Temporary fault on drivetrain. Read the message in the driver display.

11.3.7. All-wheel drive *

All-wheel drive (AWD[1]) means that the car is driving all four wheels at the same time, which improves traction.

To achieve the best possible traction, the motive force is distributed automatically to the wheels with the best grip. The system continuously calculates the need for torque to the rear wheels, and can immediately redistribute up to half of the motor's torque to the rear wheels.

All-wheel drive also has a stabilising effect at higher speeds. Under normal driving conditions, the majority of power is transmitted to the front wheels. When stationary, the all-wheel drive is always engaged in preparation for maximum traction during acceleration.

All-wheel drive characteristics vary depending on the selected drive mode.

* Option/accessory.

[1] All-wheel drive

11.3.8. Manual gearbox

With a manual gearbox, the driver selects a suitable gear manually, according to speed and power requirements at the time.

Changing gear

Overview of gear lever and shift patterns.

1 Neutral position (**N**)

The manual gearbox has six gears; the shifting pattern is shown on the gear lever.

- Depress the clutch pedal fully during each gear change.

- Take your foot off the clutch pedal between gear changes.

Reverse gear inhibitor

The reverse gear inhibitor hinders the possibility of mistakenly attempting to engage reverse gear during normal forward travel.

- Follow the shifting pattern on the gear lever and start from neutral position before moving it to the R position.
- Engage reverse gear only when the car is stationary.

During parking

> **Warning**
>
> Always apply the parking brake when parking on a slope - leaving the car in gear is not sufficient to hold the car in all situations.

11.3.9. Gear selector inhibitor

The gear selector inhibitor prevents accidental changing between different gear positions in an automatic gearbox.

Automatic gear selector inhibitor

The automatic gear selector inhibitor has special safety systems.

From park position – P or neutral position – N

In order to move the gear selector from P or N position to another gear position, the engine must be running.

If the gear selector is in the N position and the car has been stationary for at least 3 seconds (irrespective of whether the engine is running) then the gear selector is locked.

Message in the driver display

If the gear selector is inhibited a message is shown in the driver display e.g. **Gear lever Press brake pedal to activate gear lever**.

The gear selector is not inhibited mechanically.

11.3.10. Gear shift indicator

The gear shift indicator in the driver display shows the current gear during manual gearshifting and when it is appropriate to engage the next gear for optimum fuel economy.

For eco-driving during manual gear changing, it is important to drive in the right gear and to change gear in good time.

With manual gearbox

An up-arrow indicates a recommended change to a higher gear, and a down-arrow a recommended change to a lower gear.

With automatic gearbox

The gear shift indicator shows the current gear in the driver display and indicates recommended shifting to a higher gear by a flashing plus sign.

11.4. Brakes

11.4.1. Foot brake

11.4.1.1. Brake assistance

The brake assist system (BAS[1]) helps to increase brake force during braking, and can thereby shorten the braking distance.

The system detects the way in which the driver brakes and increases brake force where necessary. The brake force can be boosted up to the level when the ABS system is engaged.

> **Note**
>
> When BAS is activated, depress (hold) the brake pedal as long as necessary.

[1] Brake Assist System

11.4.1.2. Braking on gritted roads

When driving on salted roads, a layer of salt may form on the brake discs and brake linings.

This may extend braking distance. You should therefore maintain a greater safety distance to vehicles in front. In addition, make sure you do the following:

- Brake now and again to remove any layer of salt. Make sure that other road users are not put at risk by the braking.
- Gently depress the brake pedal after finishing driving and before starting your next trip.

11.4.1.3. Braking on wet roads

When driving for a prolonged period of time in heavy rain without braking, the braking effect may be delayed slightly when next using the brakes.

This may also be the case after a car wash. It is then necessary to depress the brake pedal more forcefully. You should therefore maintain a greater distance to the vehicles in front.

Brake the car firmly after driving on wet roads or using a car wash. This warms up the brake discs, enabling them to dry faster and protecting them against corrosion. Bear in mind the current traffic situation when braking.

11.4.1.4. Foot brake

The foot brake is part of the brake system.

The car is equipped with two brake circuits. If a brake circuit is damaged, the brake pedal may engage deeper. Higher pressure on the pedal will therefore be needed to produce the normal braking effect.

The driver's brake pedal pressure is assisted by a brake servo.

> **Warning**
>
> The brake servo only works when the car is running.

If the foot brake is used when the engine is switched off then the pedal will feel stiff and a higher pedal pressure must be used to brake the car.

In very hilly terrain or when driving with a heavy load the brakes should be relieved by using engine braking in manual gearshift mode. Engine braking is most efficiently used if the same gear is used downhill as up. Use drive mode Off Road* for increased engine braking while driving on steep downhill gradients at low speeds.

Anti-lock braking system

The car has anti-lock brakes (ABS[1]), which prevents the wheels from locking while braking and allows maintained steering control. Vibration may be felt in the brake pedal when this is engaged and this is normal.

A short test of the ABS system is made automatically after the car has been started when the driver releases the brake pedal. A further automatic test of the system may be made at low speed. The test may be felt as pulses in the brake pedal.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	Check the brake fluid level. If the level is low, fill with brake fluid and check for the cause of the brake fluid loss.
	Constant glow for 2 seconds when the engine is started: Automatic function check. Constant glow for more than 2 seconds: Fault in the ABS system. The car's normal brake system is still working, but without the ABS function.

> **Warning**
>
> If both the warning lamps for brake fault and ABS fault illuminate at the same time, a fault has occurred in the brake system.
>
> - If the level in the brake fluid reservoir is normal at this stage, drive carefully to the nearest workshop and have the brake system checked - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.
> - If the brake fluid is below the MIN level in the brake fluid reservoir, do not drive further before topping up the brake fluid. The reason for the loss of brake fluid must be investigated.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Anti-lock Braking System

11.4.1.5. Brake system maintenance

Check brake system components regularly for wear.

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service intervals as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet. After replacing brake linings and brake discs, braking effect is only adapted after they have been "worn in" for a few hundred kilometres (miles). Compensate for the reduced braking effect by depressing the brake pedal harder. Volvo recommends only fitting brake linings that are approved for your Volvo.

> **Important**
>
> The wear on the brake system's components must be checked regularly.
>
> Contact a workshop for information about the procedure or engage a workshop to carry out the inspection - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

11.4.2. Parking brake

11.4.2.1. Parking brake

The parking brake prevents the car from rolling away from stationary by means of mechanically locking/blocking two wheels.

A faint electric motor noise can be heard when the electrically-operated parking brake is being applied. The noise can also be heard during the automatic function checking of the parking brake.

If the car is stationary when the parking brake is activated, it only acts on the rear wheels. If it is activated when the car is moving then the normal foot brake is used, i.e. the brake acts on all four wheels. Brake function changes over to the rear wheels when the car is almost stationary.

11.4.2.2. Activating and deactivating the parking brake

Use the parking brake to prevent the car from rolling from stationary.

Activating the parking brake

1 Pull the control upward.

> The symbol in the driver display illuminates when the parking brake is activated.

2 Check that the car is stationary.

Symbol in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	The symbol is illuminated when the parking brake is activated. If the symbol flashes, it indicates a fault has occurred. Read the message in the driver display.

Automatic activation

The parking brake is activated automatically

- when the car is switched off and the setting for automatic activation of the parking brake is activated in the centre display.
- when gear position P is selected on a steep hill[1].
- if the Auto hold (Automatic brake when stationary) function is activated and
  - the car has been stationary for a long time (5-10 minutes)
  - the car is switched off
  - the driver leaves the car.

Emergency brake

In an emergency, the parking brake can be activated when the car is in motion by pulling and holding up the control. Braking stops when the control is released, or if the accelerator pedal is depressed.

> **Note**
>
> An acoustic signal sounds while emergency braking is active at high speeds.

Deactivating the parking brake

Deactivate manually

To deactivate the parking brake, the engine needs to be running.

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. Press down the control.

> The parking brake releases and the symbol in the driver display extinguishes.

Deactivate automatically

1. Start the car.
2. With automatic gearbox:

   Depress the brake pedal firmly. Select gear position D or R and depress the accelerator pedal.

   With manual gearbox:

   Depress the clutch pedal and select an appropriate gear. Release the clutch pedal and accelerate.

> The parking brake releases and the symbol in the driver display extinguishes.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

> **Note**
>
> For automatic deactivation, either the driver has to have put on their seatbelt or the driver door has to be closed.

[1] Applies to automatic gearbox.

11.4.2.3. Parking on a hill

Always make sure that the parking brake has been activated when parking on a hill.

> **Warning**
>
> Always use the parking brake when parking on an inclined surface. Engaging a gear or the automatic transmission's **P** position is not sufficient to hold the car stationary in all situations.

If the car is parked facing uphill:

- Turn the wheels **away from** the kerb.

If the car is parked facing downhill:

- Turn the wheels **towards** the kerb.

Heavy load uphill

A heavy load, such as a trailer, can cause the car to roll backward when the parking brake is released automatically on a steep incline. Avoid this by pulling the control upwards while driving the car away. Release the control when the engine achieves traction.

11.4.2.4. Automatic parking brake activation setting

Choose whether the parking brake is to be activated automatically when the car is switched off.

To change setting:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Parking Brake and Suspension** to select or deselect the function **Auto Activate Parking Brake**.

11.4.2.5. In the event of a fault in the parking brake

Contact an authorised Volvo workshop if it is not possible to deactivate or activate the parking brake after several attempts.

An acoustic warning signal sounds when driving with the parking brake activated.

If the car has to be parked before a possible fault is rectified then the wheels must be turned as if parking on a hill and the gear selector must be in position P, or engage first gear if the car has a manual gearbox.

Low battery voltage

If the battery voltage is too low then the parking brake can be neither deactivated nor activated. Connect a donor battery if the battery voltage is too low.

Replacing the brake linings

The rear brake linings must be replaced at a workshop due to the design of the electrically-operated parking brake - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	If the symbol flashes, it indicates a fault has occurred. See the message in the driver display.
	Fault in brake system. See the message in the driver display.
	Information message in driver display.

11.4.3. Brake fluid – specifications

Brake fluid is the medium in a hydraulic brake system that is used to transfer pressure from e.g. a brake pedal via a master brake cylinder, which in turn acts on the brake callipers.

Prescribed grade: Volvo Original or equivalent fluid compliant with a combination of Dot 4, 5.1 and ISO 4925 class 6.

> **Note**
>
> It is recommended that brake fluid is changed or filled by an authorised Volvo workshop.

11.4.4. Brake functions

The car's brakes are used to reduce the speed or prevent the car from rolling.

Besides the foot brake and parking brake, the car is equipped with several automatic brake assist functions. These can assist the driver by not needing to keep his/her foot on the brake pedal when at a traffic light, or when starting on an uphill gradient.

Depending on the car's equipment, the following auto braking functions are available:

- Automatic brake when stationary (Auto Hold)
- Hill start assist (Hill Start Assist)
- Auto braking after a collision
- City Safety
- Hill descent control (Hill Descent Control)*

* Option/accessory.

11.4.5. Automatic braking when stationary

Automatic brake when stationary (Auto hold) means that the driver can release the brake pedal while maintaining braking effect when the car has stopped at traffic lights or a junction.

When the car has stopped, the brakes are activated automatically. The function can use either foot brake or parking brake to hold the car stationary and it works on all gradients. When driving off, the brakes are released automatically if the driver is wearing the seatbelt and/or the driver's door is closed.

> **Note**
>
> When braking to a standstill on an uphill or downhill slope, the brake pedal should be depressed a little harder before being released to ensure the car does not roll.

The parking brake is activated if

- the car is switched off
- the driver's door is opened
- the driver's seatbelt is unbuckled
- the car has been stationary for a longer time (5-10 minutes).

Auto hold can also change over to the parking brake in other situations.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	The symbol is illuminated when the function uses the foot brake to keep the car stationary.
	The symbol is illuminated when the function uses the parking brake to keep the car stationary.

11.4.6. Activating and deactivating the automatic brake at a standstill

The automatic brake function at a standstill is activated using the button in the tunnel console.

1 Press the button in the tunnel console to activate or deactivate the function.

> The indicator in the button illuminates when the function is activated. Activated function remains even when the car is started next time.

Applicable when switching off

If the function is active and holds the car with the foot brake (A-symbol illuminated in the driver display), the brake pedal must be depressed at the same time as the button is depressed in order to deactivate.

- The function remains deactivated until it is reactivated.
- When the function is deactivated, hill start assist (HSA) remains active to prevent the car from rolling backwards when starting on an uphill gradient.

11.4.7. Auto braking after a collision

In the event of a collision in which the activation level is reached for the pyrotechnic seatbelt tensioners or airbags, or if a collision with a large animal is detected, the car's brakes are automatically applied. This function is to prevent or reduce the effects of any subsequent collision.

After a serious collision there is a risk that it is no longer possible to control and steer the car. In order to avoid or mitigate a possible further collision with a vehicle or an object in the vehicle's path, the auto braking system is activated automatically and brakes the car in a safe manner.

Brake lights and hazard warning lights are activated during braking. When the car has stopped, the hazard warning lights continue to flash and the parking brake is applied.

If braking is not appropriate, e.g. if there is a risk of being hit by following traffic, the system can be overridden by the driver depressing the accelerator pedal.

The function assumes that the brake system is intact after the collision.

11.4.8. Help when starting on a hill

Hill start assist (HSA[1]) prevents the car from rolling backwards when starting on an uphill gradient. When reversing uphill, it prevents the car from rolling forwards.

The function means that the pedal pressure in the brake system remains for several seconds while the driver's foot is moved from brake pedal to accelerator pedal.

The temporary braking effect releases after several seconds or when the driver starts to drive away.

The Hill Start Assist is activated when stopping on a sleep slope. The function is available even when the automatic braking when stationary (Auto hold) function is deactivated.

[1] Hill Start Assist

11.4.9. Regenerative braking*

The car recovers kinetic energy during braking in order to reduce fuel consumption and emissions.

The battery symbol is shown in the driver display when the car is generating power for the battery[1].

The function is available in all drive modes together with gear position D or M.

Activating brake regeneration

Brake regeneration is activated by gentle pressure on the brake pedal or during engine braking.

Regeneration increases during engine braking when manual gearshift mode M is selected.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The symbol is valid for cars with 48V battery.

11.4.10. Low speed control*

The low speed control function (LSC [1]) facilitates and improves traction for driving off-road and on slippery surfaces, such as with a caravan on grass or a boat trailer on a launch ramp.
In a car with drive mode button*, the function is included in the **Off Road** drive mode.

The function is adapted for off-road driving and driving with a trailer at low speed, up to approx. 40 km/h (25 mph).

Low speed control prioritises low gears and traction. If the car is all-wheel drive, the motive force is distributed evenly in order to provide as good traction as possible on all wheels and to reduce the risk of wheel spin. The accelerator pedal is less responsive in order to facilitate traction and speed control at low speed.

The function is activated together with hill descent control, (HDC [2]) which means that speed down steep hills can be controlled with the accelerator pedal, reducing the need to use the brake pedal. The system facilitates a low and even speed while driving on steep downhill gradients.

> **Note**
>
> When LSC with HDC is activated, the feel of the accelerator pedal and engine response are changed.

> **Note**
>
> The driving mode is not designed to be used on public roads.

> **Note**
>
> The function is deactivated when driving at higher speeds and must be reactivated at a lower speed, if required.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Low Speed Control

[2] Hill Descent Control

11.4.11. Hill descent control*

Hill descent control (HDC[1]) is a low speed function with enhanced engine braking. The function makes it possible to increase or reduce the car's speed on steep downhill gradients using only the accelerator pedal, without using the foot brake.
In a car with drive mode button*, the function is included in the **Off Road** drive mode.

Hill descent control is adapted for off-road driving at low speeds and facilitates driving on steep downhill gradients with difficult surfaces. The driver does not need to use the brake pedal, but can instead focus on steering.

> **Warning**
>
> HDC does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.
>
> The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

Function

Hill descent control allows the car to roll at inching speed both forward and backward, assisted by the brake system. The speed can be increased by using the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is then released the car slows back down to crawling speed, regardless of the gradient of the hill and without the need for the foot brake to be used. The brake lights are switched on when the function is operating.

The driver can brake and reduce crawling speed, or stop the car at any time by using the foot brake.

The function is activated together with low speed control (LSC[2]) which facilitates driving and improves traction for driving off-road and on slippery surfaces. The systems are designed for use at low speed, up to approx. 40 km/h (25 mph).

Points to remember when driving with HDC

- If the function is disabled while driving on a steep downhill gradient, the braking effect will gradually decrease.

With automatic gearbox

- HDC can be used in gear position D, R, and with 1st or 2nd gear with manual gear changing.
- It is not possible to change to 3rd gear or higher with manual gear changing.

With manual gearbox

- HDC only brakes in 1st gear or with reverse gear (R). There is no active braking in higher gears even though the function is not deactivated until approx. 40 km/h (25 mph).

> **Note**
>
> When LSC with HDC is activated, the feel of the accelerator pedal and engine response are changed.

> **Note**
>
> The driving mode is not designed to be used on public roads.

> **Note**
>
> The function is deactivated when driving at higher speeds and must be reactivated at a lower speed, if required.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Hill Descent Control

[2] Low Speed Control

11.5. Drive modes

11.5.1. Regenerative braking*

The car recovers kinetic energy during braking in order to reduce fuel consumption and emissions.

The battery symbol is shown in the driver display when the car is generating power for the battery[1].

The function is available in all drive modes together with gear position D or M.

Activating brake regeneration

Brake regeneration is activated by gentle pressure on the brake pedal or during engine braking.

Regeneration increases during engine braking when manual gearshift mode M is selected.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The symbol is valid for cars with 48V battery.

11.5.2. Drive modes*

Selection of drive mode affects the car's driving characteristics in order to enhance the driving experience and facilitate driving in special situations.

Using the drive modes it is possible to quickly have access to the car's numerous functions and settings for different driving needs. The following systems are adapted to maintain driving characteristics that are as good as possible in each drive mode:

- Steering
- Engine/gearbox[1]/all-wheel drive*
- Brakes
- Driver display
- Start/stop function
- Climate settings

Select the drive mode adapted for the current driving conditions. Remember that not all drive modes are available in all situations.

Selectable drive modes

When the car starts, it is in **Comfort** mode and the start/stop function is activated. The drive mode can be changed when the car has been started, e.g. to the **Individual** mode. When the **Individual** mode is selected, it is possible to make adjustments for specific preferences, e.g. to show the tachometer.

Comfort

The **Comfort** mode is the car's normal mode. These settings mean that the car feels comfortable, the steering is light, the shock absorption is soft and body's movement is smooth.

This drive mode is the certification mode for carbon dioxide emissions.

Eco

- Adapt the car for more energy-efficient and environmentally-conscious driving with the **Eco** mode.

The drive mode means, for example, that the Start/Stop function is activated and the output of certain climate settings is reduced.

When driving in **Eco** mode, the driver display shows an eco-meter that indicates in real time how economical your driving is.

Off Road

- Maximise the car's traction when driving in difficult terrain and on poor roads.

The steering is light, the all-wheel drive* operation and low speed function with hill descent control (HDC[2]) are activated. Start/Stop function is deactivated.

The drive mode can only be activated at low speeds and the speedometer shows the range for speed limitation. If this speed is exceeded, **Off Road** mode is suspended and another drive mode is activated.

In the **Off Road** mode the driver display has a compass between the speedometer and tachometer.

> **Note**
>
> The driving mode is not designed to be used on public roads.

Dynamic

- **Dynamic** mode means that the car has sportier characteristics and faster response to accelerating.

The gear changes become faster and more distinct, and the gearbox prioritises a gear with greater traction.

Steering response is faster and shock absorption is harder[3] which means that the body follows the roadway in order to reduce roll during cornering.

Start/Stop function is deactivated.

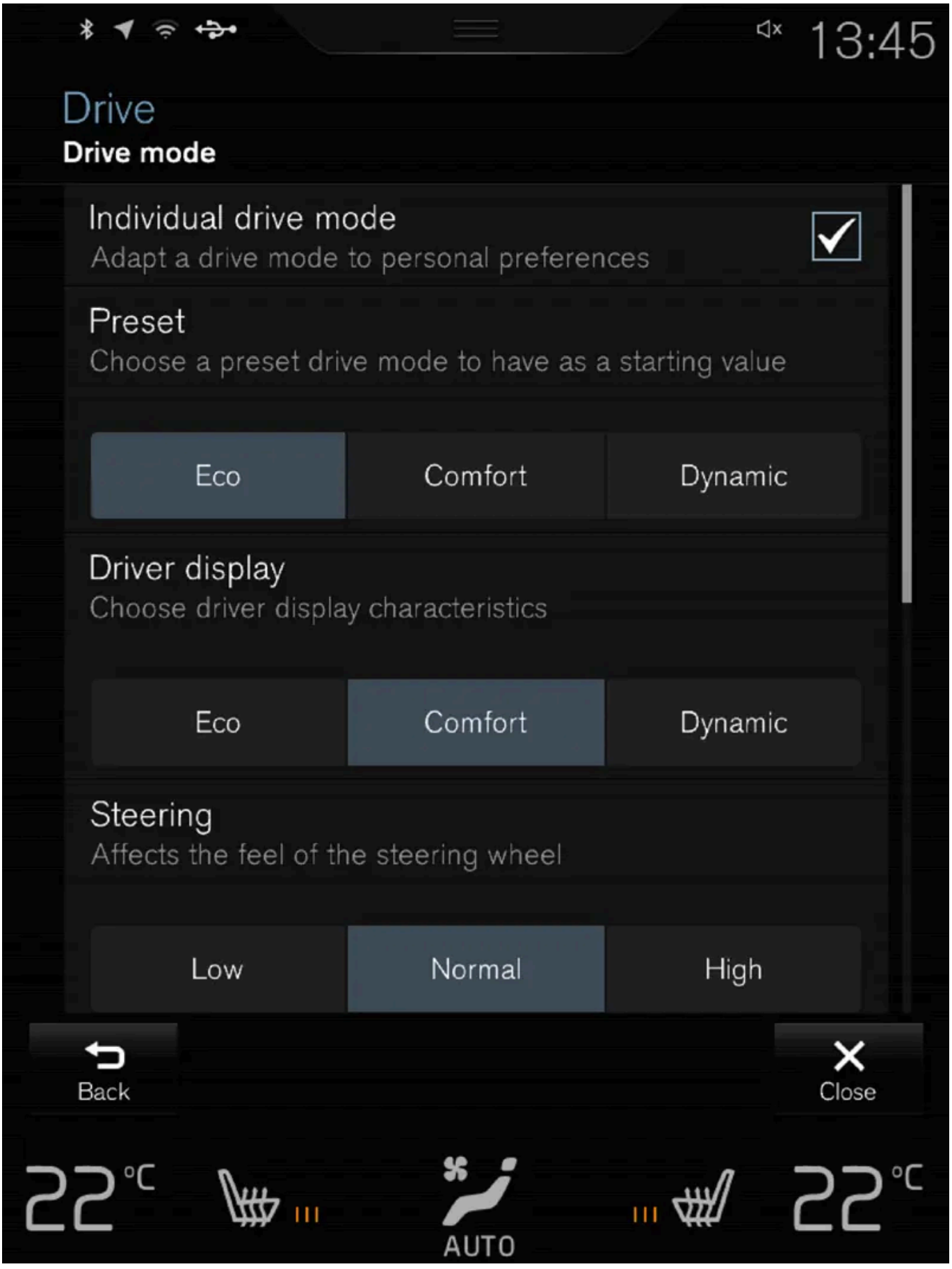
The **Dynamic** mode is also available in the **Polestar Engineered** version*.

Individual

- Adapting a drive mode according to individual preferences.

Select a drive mode to start from, and then adjust the settings according to the desired driving characteristics. These settings are saved in the active driver profile and are available each time the car is unlocked with the same key.

An individual drive mode is only available if it is first activated in the centre display.



Settings view[4] for individual drive mode.

1 Press **Settings** in the top view.

2 Press **My Car** → **Individual Drive Mode** and select **Individual Drive Mode**.

3 In **Presets**, select a drive mode to start from: **Eco**, **Comfort**, **Dynamic** or **Polestar Engineered***.

Possible adjustments apply to settings for:

- **Driver Display**
- **Steering Force**
- **Powertrain Characteristics**
- **Brake Characteristics**
- **Suspension Control**
- **ECO Climate**
- **Start/Stop**.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to automatic gearbox.

[2] Hill Descent Control

[3] Applies to Four-C.

[4] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

11.5.3. Changing drive mode*

Select the drive mode adapted for the current driving conditions.
Change the drive mode using the button in the centre console.

To change drive mode:

1

Press the DRIVE MODE button.

> A pop-up menu is opened in the centre display with the active drive mode highlighted.

2 Select the drive mode in one of two ways:

- Tap the desired drive mode directly on the touchscreen to select and activate the drive mode.
- Press the DRIVE MODE button again to move the cursor to the desired drive mode. The selected drive mode is activated after a short delay.

* Option/accessory.

11.5.4. Drive mode Eco

Drive mode **Eco** can help you with more eco-friendly driving, with greater fuel economy.

Use this drive mode to save fuel and the environment.

The following properties are adapted for **Eco** mode:

- Gearbox gearshift points[1].
- Engine management and response from the accelerator pedal.
- The Eco Coast[1] freewheel function is activated and engine braking is deactivated when the accelerator pedal is released at speeds between 65 and 140 km/h (40 and 87 mph).
- Some of the climate control system's settings work at reduced power or are deactivated.
- The driver display shows information in an ECO gauge which facilitates environmentally-conscious and fuel-efficient driving.

Free-wheel function Eco Coast[1]

The freewheel function Eco Coast means in practice that engine braking ceases, meaning in turn that the car's kinetic energy is used to freewheel for longer distances. When the driver releases the accelerator pedal the gearbox is automatically disengaged from the engine whose speed is reduced to idling speed with reduced consumption.

The function is best used where it is possible to freewheel a long way e.g. roads with a slight downhill gradient or when there is a predictable speed reduction to freewheel into a zone with a lower speed limit.

Activating the freewheel function

The function is activated when the accelerator pedal is fully released, in combination with the following parameters:

- Drive mode **Eco** is activated.
- The gear selector is in D position.
- Speed within the range of approx. 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph).
- The road's downhill gradient is not steeper than approx. 6%.

The driver display shows COASTING when the freewheel function is being used.

Limitations

The freewheel function is not available if

- engine and/or gearbox are not at normal operating temperature
- the gear selector is moved from the D position to manual position
- the speed is outside the range of approx. 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph)
- the road's downhill gradient is steeper than approx. 6%

Deactivating and switching off the freewheel function

In certain situations it may be desirable to deactivate or switch off the function in order to use engine braking. Examples of such situations may be on steep downhill gradients or before an imminent overtaking manoeuvre - in order to be able to do it in the safest way possible.

Deactivate the freewheel function as follows

- actuate the accelerator or brake pedal
- move the gear selector to manual position

Switch off the freewheel function as follows

- change drive mode*
- switch off drive mode **Eco** in the function view.

Even without the freewheel function, it is possible to freewheel for short distances. This, in turn, reduces consumption. However, for the best fuel economy it is better to have the freewheel function activated and be able to freewheel for longer distances.

Cruise control Eco Cruise

When using the cruise control in the **Eco** drive mode, the car's acceleration and deceleration will be lower compared to other drive modes, which enables further fuel savings. This means that the car's speed can be slightly above or below the set speed.

- On a smooth road, the car's speed can deviate from the set speed when the cruise control is active and the car free-rolls.
- On a steep uphill slope, the car's speed drops until a downshift is made[1], then reduced acceleration starts in order to achieve the set speed.
- On a downhill slope where the car free-rolls, the car's speed can be slightly above or below the set speed. The function uses normal engine braking to maintain the set speed. The foot brake is also used if necessary.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Eco gauge in the driver display

The ECO gauge indicates how fuel-efficient the driving is:

- With fuel-efficient driving, the gauge shows a low value with the pointer in the green zone.
- With non-fuel-efficient driving, e.g. during heavy braking or heavy acceleration, the gauge shows a high value.

The ECO gauge also has an indicator to show how a reference driver would drive the car under the same driving conditions. This is indicated with the short pointer on the gauge.

ECO climate control

In the **Eco** drive mode, eco climate control is activated automatically in the passenger compartment in order to reduce energy consumption.

> **Note**
>
> When the **Eco** drive mode is activated, several parameters in the climate control system's settings are changed, and several electricity consumer functions are reduced. Certain settings can be reset manually, but full functionality is only regained by switching off **Eco** drive mode or adapting **Individual*** drive mode with full climate functionality.

In the event of difficulties due to misting, press the button for max. defroster which has normal functionality.

[1] Only cars with automatic gearbox.

* Option/accessory.

11.5.5. Activating and deactivating drive mode Eco with the function button

There is a function button drive mode **Eco** in the centre display's function view.

The **Eco** mode is deactivated when the engine is switched off, and it must therefore be activated after each time the engine is started. The driver display shows ECO when the function is activated.

Selecting Eco drive mode in the centre display function view

1 Press the **Driving Mode ECO** button to activate or deactivate the function.

> An indicator in the button illuminates when the function is activated.

11.5.6. Launch function*

Launch can be used when maximum acceleration is required from stationary. The function is available in the following drive modes: **Dynamic**, **Comfort** and **Individual**.

Activate Launch

Make sure the car is stationary and the wheels are pointing straight forward.

1 Move to gear position D.

2 Depress the brake pedal fully.

3 Then fully depress the accelerator pedal.

4 Release the brake pedal within 2 seconds.

> **Note**
>
> If the Launch function does not work, wait a few minutes and let the drivetrain cool down to working temperature before retrying.

> **Important**
>
> The drivetrain is subject to wear and tear when using Launch and therefore the function is only available a limited number of times.

* Option/accessory.

11.5.7. Low speed control*

The low speed control function (LSC [1]) facilitates and improves traction for driving off-road and on slippery surfaces, such as with a caravan on grass or a boat trailer on a launch ramp.
In a car with drive mode button*, the function is included in the **Off Road** drive mode.

The function is adapted for off-road driving and driving with a trailer at low speed, up to approx. 40 km/h (25 mph).

Low speed control prioritises low gears and traction. If the car is all-wheel drive, the motive force is distributed evenly in order to provide as good traction as possible on all wheels and to reduce the risk of wheel spin. The accelerator pedal is less responsive in order to facilitate traction and speed control at low speed.

The function is activated together with hill descent control, (HDC [2]) which means that speed down steep hills can be controlled with the accelerator pedal, reducing the need to use the brake pedal. The system facilitates a low and even speed while driving on steep downhill gradients.

> **Note**
>
> When LSC with HDC is activated, the feel of the accelerator pedal and engine response are changed.

> **Note**
>
> The driving mode is not designed to be used on public roads.

> **Note**
>
> The function is deactivated when driving at higher speeds and must be reactivated at a lower speed, if required.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Low Speed Control

[2] Hill Descent Control

11.5.8. Activating and deactivating low speed control*

There is a function button for low-speed driving with **Hill Descent Control** in the centre display's function view unless the car was equipped with a drive mode button in the centre console.

Select low-speed driving in the centre display function view

1 Press the **Hill Descent Control** button to activate or deactivate the function.

> An indicator in the button illuminates when the function is activated.

This function is disabled automatically when the engine is switched off.

> **Note**
>
> The function is deactivated when driving at higher speeds and must be reactivated at a lower speed, if required.

* Option/accessory.

11.5.9. Hill descent control*

Hill descent control (HDC[1]) is a low speed function with enhanced engine braking. The function makes it possible to increase or reduce the car's speed on steep downhill gradients using only the accelerator pedal, without using the foot brake.
In a car with drive mode button*, the function is included in the **Off Road** drive mode.

Hill descent control is adapted for off-road driving at low speeds and facilitates driving on steep downhill gradients with difficult surfaces. The driver does not need to use the brake pedal, but can instead focus on steering.

> **Warning**
>
> HDC does not work in all situations but is designed merely as a supplementary aid.
>
> The driver always bears ultimate responsibility for ensuring that the vehicle is driven safely.

Function

Hill descent control allows the car to roll at inching speed both forward and backward, assisted by the brake system. The speed can be increased by using the accelerator pedal. When the accelerator pedal is then released the car slows back down to crawling speed, regardless of the gradient of the hill and without the need for the foot brake to be used. The brake lights are switched on when the function is operating.

The driver can brake and reduce crawling speed, or stop the car at any time by using the foot brake.

The function is activated together with low speed control (LSC[2]) which facilitates driving and improves traction for driving off-road and on slippery surfaces. The systems are designed for use at low speed, up to approx. 40 km/h (25 mph).

Points to remember when driving with HDC

- If the function is disabled while driving on a steep downhill gradient, the braking effect will gradually decrease.

With automatic gearbox

- HDC can be used in gear position D, R, and with 1st or 2nd gear with manual gear changing.
- It is not possible to change to 3rd gear or higher with manual gear changing.

With manual gearbox

- HDC only brakes in 1st gear or with reverse gear (R). There is no active braking in higher gears even though the function is not deactivated until approx. 40 km/h (25 mph).

> **Note**
>
> When LSC with HDC is activated, the feel of the accelerator pedal and engine response are changed.

> **Note**
>
> The driving mode is not designed to be used on public roads.

> **Note**
>
> The function is deactivated when driving at higher speeds and must be reactivated at a lower speed, if required.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Hill Descent Control

[2] Low Speed Control

11.5.10. Activating and deactivating hill descent control*

There is a function button for hill descent control with **Hill Descent Control** in the centre display's function view unless the car was equipped with a drive mode button in the centre console.

Selecting hill descent control in the centre display function view

Hill descent control only works at low speeds.

1 Press the **Hill Descent Control** button to activate or deactivate the function.

> An indicator in the button illuminates when the function is activated.

This function is disabled automatically when the engine is switched off.

> **Note**
>
> The function is deactivated when driving at higher speeds and must be reactivated at a lower speed, if required.

* Option/accessory.

11.5.11. All-wheel drive*

All-wheel drive (AWD[1]) means that the car is driving all four wheels at the same time, which improves traction.

To achieve the best possible traction, the motive force is distributed automatically to the wheels with the best grip. The system continuously calculates the need for torque to the rear wheels, and can immediately redistribute up to half of the motor's torque to the rear wheels.

All-wheel drive also has a stabilising effect at higher speeds. Under normal driving conditions, the majority of power is transmitted to the front wheels. When stationary, the all-wheel drive is always engaged in preparation for maximum traction during acceleration.

All-wheel drive characteristics vary depending on the selected drive mode.

* Option/accessory.

[1] All-wheel drive

11.6. Start/stop function

11.6.1. Start/stop function

With the start/stop function, the engine switches off temporarily when the car has stopped e.g. at traffic lights or in a traffic queue, and then starts again when it is needed.

The start/stop function reduces fuel consumption, which in turn can contribute to an environmentally conscious driving style and reduced emissions.

Points to remember when using the start/stop function

For the start/stop function to work requires that a number of conditions are met.

The start/stop function is not activated

One or more criteria may mean that the engine is not switched off/the function is not activated.

- the driver has not fastened the seatbelt
- the car has not been able to reach a speed of approx. 10 km/h (6 mph) after starting, or the function has been activated a number of times successively
- the engine has not reached normal operating temperature
- the windscreen's electric heating is activated
- the environment in the passenger compartment deviates from the set values
- the driver is making large steering wheel movements
- the road is very steep
- the bonnet is opened
- the ABS system has been activated
- in the event of heavy braking (even without the ABS system having been activated)
- the capacity of the starter battery has fallen below the minimum permissible level
- many starts during a short period of time have activated the starter motor's thermal protection
- the exhaust system's particulate filter is full
- a trailer is connected to the car's electrical system.

> **Note**
>
> High current take-off may lead to low battery level, which temporarily limits the start/stop function. The engine then starts automatically without the driver lifting his/her foot from the brake pedal.
>
> For cars with manual gearbox, the start/stop function is deactivated without the clutch pedal being depressed if the gear lever is in neutral position. The start/stop function will be available again when there is a sufficient level in the battery.

The start/stop function is not deactivated

One or more criteria may mean that the engine is not started/the function is not deactivated.

For cars with automatic gearbox:

- the driver has not fastened the seatbelt
- gear position P is engaged and the driver door is open.

For cars with manual gearbox.

- the driver has not fastened the seatbelt
- a gear is engaged but the clutch is still depressed.

The start/stop function is deactivated without the brake pedal being released

In the following cases, the function may be deactivated and the engine started without the driver releasing the brake pedal:

- high humidity in the passenger compartment forms misting on the windows
- the environment in the passenger compartment deviates from the set values
- repeated pumping of the brake pedal
- the bonnet is opened
- the capacity of the starter battery has fallen below the minimum permissible level

For cars with automatic gearbox:

- the driver's seatbelt is unbuckled and the gear selector is in position D or N
- the gear selector is moved from position D to position R or M
- the driver door is opened with the gear selector in position D.

> ⚠ **Warning**
>
> Do not open the bonnet when the start/stop function is active. Switch off the engine normally before raising the bonnet.

11.6.2. Activating and deactivating the start/stop function

The start/stop function is available when the car is started. When the function is activated, the engine is switched off temporarily. The engine then starts automatically when the function is deactivated or when the car requires this.

Activating the start/stop function

For cars with automatic gearbox:

1 Depress and hold the brake pedal depressed.

> The start/stop function is activated and the engine is switched off.

For cars with manual gearbox.

1 Depress and hold the brake pedal depressed.

2 Engage neutral position.

3 Release the clutch.

> The start/stop function is activated and the engine is switched off.

Note

- In **Comfort** or **Eco** drive mode, the start/stop function is activated before the car is completely stationary.
- When adaptive cruise control or Pilot Assist is activated, the start/stop function is activated for a few seconds after the car is completely stationary.

Note

All of the car's normal systems, such as lighting and radio, work normally even when the start/stop function is activated.

However, some equipment may have temporarily reduced function, such as the climate control's fan speed or loud-speaker volume.

Deactivating the start/stop function

For cars with automatic gearbox:

1 Release the brake pedal or gently depress the accelerator pedal.

> The start/stop function is deactivated and the engine starts.

For cars with manual gearbox.

1 Depress the clutch or the accelerator pedal.

> The start/stop function is deactivated and the engine starts.

Note

When the start/stop function is deactivated and:

- the function for automatic braking when stationary (Auto hold) is activated, start of the engine is delayed until the accelerator pedal is depressed
- adaptive cruise control or Pilot Assist is activated, the engine starts when the accelerator pedal is depressed or by pressing the button on the left-hand steering wheel keypad
- the car is facing uphill, hill start assist (HSA[1]) engages to prevent the car from rolling backwards
- the car is facing downhill, release the brake pedal slightly. A small increase in speed starts the engine.

Settings in the centre display[2]

The centre display shows whether the function is available or deactivated.

Illuminated indication: the start/stop function is available.

Extinguished indication: the start/stop function is deactivated.

Symbols in the driver display

The driver display's tachometer indicates when the start/stop function is available, active or unavailable.

Symbol	Specification
	White – the function is available.
	Green – the function is activated.
	Grey – the function is not available.

If no symbol is shown in the driver display, the function is disabled.

[1] Hill Start Assist

[2] For certain engine variants, there is no setting in the centre display.

11.6.3. Freewheel function with the engine not running*

When the freewheel function [1] is active, the engine may be switched off temporarily at higher speeds. The function can contribute to reduced fuel consumption.

Activating the freewheel function

The car needs to reach a speed of 45 km/h (27 mph) or higher.

1 Release the accelerator pedal.

> The engine switched is off and the car rolls freely.

> **Note**
>
> If the freewheel function is not activated, it may be blocked by the car's functions, such as the climate system, or insufficient distance to vehicles ahead, for example.

Deactivating the freewheel function

1 Proceed with one of the following

- Depress the accelerator pedal.
- Change to manual gear gearshift mode.

> The engine starts.

Indication in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	White – the function is available.
	Green – the function is activated.
	Grey – the function is not available.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only available for cars with the seven speed transmission.

11.7. Recommendations for driving

11.7.1. Towing

During towing, the car is towed by another vehicle by means of a towline.

Find out the statutory maximum speed limit for towing before the towing begins.

Important

Towing a car with the seven-speed gearbox is not permitted. Instead, the car must be transported raised with all the wheels on a recovery vehicle's platform. Contact a Volvo dealer to determine what applies for your car.

Preparations and towing

Important

Some gearbox variants prevent shifting out of the P position unless the engine is running. Contact an authorised Volvo workshop for assistance when towing, or summon professional help for recovery.

Important

Note that the car must always be towed with the wheels rolling forward.

- Do not tow cars with automatic transmission at speeds higher than 80 km/h(50 mph) or for distances in excess of 80 km (50 miles).

Warning

- Check that the steering lock is unlocked before towing.
- Ignition position II must be active - in ignition position I all airbags are deactivated.
- Always keep the key in the car when it is being towed.

Warning

The brake servo and power steering do not work when the engine is switched off - the brake pedal needs to be depressed about 5 times more heavily and the steering is considerably heavier than normal.

1 Activate the car's hazard warning flashers.

2 Secure the towline in the towing eye.

3 Deactivate the steering lock by unlocking the car.

4 Set the car in ignition position **II** – press the start button without depressing the brake pedal, and hold the button depressed for approx. 4 seconds. Then release the button.

5 Move the gear selector to neutral position and release the parking brake.

If the battery voltage is too low, the parking brake cannot be disengaged. Connect a donor battery if the battery voltage is too low.

> The towing vehicle can now start towing.

6 Keep the towline taut when the towing vehicle reduces speed by holding your foot gently pressed on the brake pedal - thereby avoiding unnecessary jerking.

7 Be prepared to brake to stop.

Jump starting

Do not tow the car to jump start the engine. Use a donor battery if the starter battery is discharged and the engine does not start.

> **Important**
>
> The catalytic converter may be damaged during attempts to tow-start the engine.

11.7.2. Help when starting on a hill

Hill start assist (HSA[1]) prevents the car from rolling backwards when starting on an uphill gradient. When reversing uphill, it prevents the car from rolling forwards.

The function means that the pedal pressure in the brake system remains for several seconds while the driver's foot is moved from brake pedal to accelerator pedal.

The temporary braking effect releases after several seconds or when the driver starts to drive away.

The Hill Start Assist is activated when stopping on a sleep slope. The function is available even when the automatic braking when stationary (Auto hold) function is deactivated.

[1] Hill Start Assist

11.7.3. Braking on gritted roads

When driving on salted roads, a layer of salt may form on the brake discs and brake linings.

This may extend braking distance. You should therefore maintain a greater safety distance to vehicles in front. In addition, make sure you do the following:

- Brake now and again to remove any layer of salt. Make sure that other road users are not put at risk by the braking.
- Gently depress the brake pedal after finishing driving and before starting your next trip.

11.7.4. Braking on wet roads

When driving for a prolonged period of time in heavy rain without braking, the braking effect may be delayed slightly when next using the brakes.

This may also be the case after a car wash. It is then necessary to depress the brake pedal more forcefully. You should therefore maintain a greater distance to the vehicles in front.

Brake the car firmly after driving on wet roads or using a car wash. This warms up the brake discs, enabling them to dry faster and protecting them against corrosion. Bear in mind the current traffic situation when braking.

11.7.5. Parking on a hill

Always make sure that the parking brake has been activated when parking on a hill.

> ⚠ **Warning**
>
> Always use the parking brake when parking on an inclined surface. Engaging a gear or the automatic transmission's **P** position is not sufficient to hold the car stationary in all situations.

If the car is parked facing uphill:

- Turn the wheels **away from** the kerb.

If the car is parked facing downhill:

- Turn the wheels **towards** the kerb.

Heavy load uphill

A heavy load, such as a trailer, can cause the car to roll backward when the parking brake is released automatically on a steep incline. Avoid this by pulling the control upwards while driving the car away. Release the control when the engine achieves traction.

11.7.6. Petrol particle filter[1]

Petrol cars are fitted with particle filters for more efficient emission control.

Particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the petrol particle filter during normal driving. In normal driving conditions, passive regeneration takes place, which leads to the particles being oxidised and burned away. The filter is emptied in this way.

If the car is driven at low speed or with repeated cold starts in low outside temperature, active regeneration may be necessary. Regeneration of the particulate filter is automatic and normally takes 10-20 minutes. Fuel consumption may temporarily increase during regeneration.

When driving short distances at low speeds in a petrol car

The capacity of the emissions system is affected by how the car is driven. Driving varying distances and at different speeds is important in order to achieve performance that is as energy-efficient as possible.

Driving short distances at low speeds (or in cold climates) frequently, where the engine does not reach normal operating temperature, can lead to problems that can eventually cause a malfunction and trigger a warning message. If the vehicle is mostly driven in city traffic, it is important to regularly drive at higher speeds to allow the emissions system to regenerate.

- The car should be driven on A-roads at speeds in excess of 90 km/h (55 mph) between each refuelling.

[1] Applicable to certain variants.

11.7.7. Petrol station

Use the car's navigation system* in order to find the route to the closest petrol station.

When stopping to refuel it is a good idea to make a general inspection of the car as well, such as checking tyre pressure, bulbs, wiper blades, topping up washer fluid, etc.

* Option/accessory.

11.7.8. Drive mode Eco

Drive mode **Eco** can help you with more eco-friendly driving, with greater fuel economy.

Use this drive mode to save fuel and the environment.

The following properties are adapted for **Eco** mode:

- Gearbox gearshift points [1].
- Engine management and response from the accelerator pedal.
- The Eco Coast [1] freewheel function is activated and engine braking is deactivated when the accelerator pedal is released at speeds between 65 and 140 km/h (40 and 87 mph).
- Some of the climate control system's settings work at reduced power or are deactivated.
- The driver display shows information in an ECO gauge which facilitates environmentally-conscious and fuel-efficient driving.

Free-wheel function Eco Coast [1]

The freewheel function Eco Coast means in practice that engine braking ceases, meaning in turn that the car's kinetic energy is used to freewheel for longer distances. When the driver releases the accelerator pedal the gearbox is automatically disengaged from the engine whose speed is reduced to idling speed with reduced consumption.

The function is best used where it is possible to freewheel a long way e.g. roads with a slight downhill gradient or when there is a predictable speed reduction to freewheel into a zone with a lower speed limit.

Activating the freewheel function

The function is activated when the accelerator pedal is fully released, in combination with the following parameters:

- Drive mode **Eco** is activated.
- The gear selector is in D position.
- Speed within the range of approx. 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph).
- The road's downhill gradient is not steeper than approx. 6%.

The driver display shows COASTING when the freewheel function is being used.

Limitations

The freewheel function is not available if

- engine and/or gearbox are not at normal operating temperature
- the gear selector is moved from the D position to manual position
- the speed is outside the range of approx. 65-140 km/h (40-87 mph)
- the road's downhill gradient is steeper than approx. 6%

Deactivating and switching off the freewheel function

In certain situations it may be desirable to deactivate or switch off the function in order to use engine braking. Examples of such situations may be on steep downhill gradients or before an imminent overtaking manoeuvre - in order to be able to do it in the safest way possible.

Deactivate the freewheel function as follows

- actuate the accelerator or brake pedal
- move the gear selector to manual position

Switch off the freewheel function as follows

- change drive mode*
- switch off drive mode **Eco** in the function view.

Even without the freewheel function, it is possible to freewheel for short distances. This, in turn, reduces consumption. However, for the best fuel economy it is better to have the freewheel function activated and be able to freewheel for longer distances.

Cruise control Eco Cruise

When using the cruise control in the **Eco** drive mode, the car's acceleration and deceleration will be lower compared to other drive modes, which enables further fuel savings. This means that the car's speed can be slightly above or below the set speed.

- On a smooth road, the car's speed can deviate from the set speed when the cruise control is active and the car free-rolls.
- On a steep uphill slope, the car's speed drops until a downshift is made[1], then reduced acceleration starts in order to achieve the set speed.
- On a downhill slope where the car free-rolls, the car's speed can be slightly above or below the set speed. The function uses normal engine braking to maintain the set speed. The foot brake is also used if necessary.

Eco gauge in the driver display

The ECO gauge indicates how fuel-efficient the driving is:

- With fuel-efficient driving, the gauge shows a low value with the pointer in the green zone.
- With non-fuel-efficient driving, e.g. during heavy braking or heavy acceleration, the gauge shows a high value.

The ECO gauge also has an indicator to show how a reference driver would drive the car under the same driving conditions. This is indicated with the short pointer on the gauge.

ECO climate control

In the **Eco** drive mode, eco climate control is activated automatically in the passenger compartment in order to reduce energy consumption.

> **Note**
>
> When the **Eco** drive mode is activated, several parameters in the climate control system's settings are changed, and several electricity consumer functions are reduced. Certain settings can be reset manually, but full functionality is only regained by switching off **Eco** drive mode or adapting **Individual*** drive mode with full climate functionality.

In the event of difficulties due to misting, press the button for max. defroster which has normal functionality.

[1] Only cars with automatic gearbox.

* Option/accessory.

11.7.9. Economical driving

A more economical driving style can contribute to lower fuel consumption.

Before driving

- If possible, precondition the car before driving.
- If preconditioning is not possible when it is cold outside, use seat heating and steering wheel heating first of all. Avoid warming up the whole of the interior which takes energy from the starter battery.
- Avoid warming up the car using idling.
- Choice of tyres and tyre pressure can affect energy consumption - seek advice on suitable tyres from an authorised Volvo dealer.
- Remove unnecessary items from the car - the greater the load the higher the consumption.

While driving

- Activate drive mode **Eco**.
- Use gear position D as often as possible[1].
- When driving with manual gear changing, drive in the highest gear possible. Use the gear shift indicator.
- Drive at a steady speed and keep a good distance to other vehicles and objects in order to avoid braking, use engine braking if possible.
- High speed results in increased energy consumption since the wind resistance increases with speed.
- In a cold climate, reduce electrical heating of windows, mirrors, seats and steering wheel, if possible.
- Avoid driving with open windows.
- Do not hold the car stationary on a hill with the accelerator pedal. Instead, activate the function for automatic braking when stationary.
- Use the trip computer to see instantaneous fuel consumption.

> **Warning**
>
> Never switch off the engine while moving, such as downhill, this deactivates important systems such as the power steering and brake servo.

After driving

- If possible, park in an acclimated garage.

[1] Applies to automatic gearbox.

11.7.10. Preparations for a long trip

Before a driving holiday or some other type of long journey, it is important to check the car's functions and equipment particularly carefully.

Check that

- the engine is working normally and that fuel consumption is normal
- there are no leaks (fuel, oil or other fluid)
- braking effect on braking works as intended
- the tyres have sufficient tread depth and pressure. Change to winter tyres when driving to areas where there is a risk of snowy or icy road surfaces
- starter battery charging is good
- the wiper blades are in good condition
- a warning triangle and high-visibility vest are located in the car - legally required in certain countries

It may also be advisable to make sure that the maps in the navigation system* are updated, and to check the regulations for loading and for travelling on a car ferry or train, if appropriate.

Note that additional data roaming costs may be charged when the car is online abroad.

* Option/accessory.

11.7.11. Overloading the starter battery

High power consumption without the car being able to charge the starter battery leads to low battery level and some electric functions being reduced or switched off. If the battery level decreases to below a certain limit, it is not possible to start the car without jump starting or charging with an external charger.

There are several measures that reduce power consumption. Avoid using the ignition position II when the car is switched off. Instead, use ignition position I - which consumes less power. Do not use functions which use a lot of power when the car is not being driven. Examples of such functions are:

- ventilation fan
- headlamps
- windscreen wiper
- audio system
- accessories that are activated in the car.

If the battery level is low, a message is shown in the driver display. The energy-saving function then shuts down certain functions or reduces certain functions such as the ventilation fan and audio system.

1 In which case, charge the starter battery by starting the car and then running it for at least 15 minutes - starter battery charging is more effective during driving than running the engine at idling speed while stationary.

If the battery level continues to be low after the measures have been taken, the car should be checked at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

> **Note**
>
> High current take-off may lead to low battery level, which temporarily limits the start/stop function. The engine then starts automatically without the driver lifting his/her foot from the brake pedal.
>
> For cars with manual gearbox, the start/stop function is deactivated without the clutch pedal being depressed if the gear lever is in neutral position. The start/stop function will be available again when there is a sufficient level in the battery.

11.7.12. Driving in water

Wading means the car being driven through water e.g. on a flooded road. Driving in water must be performed with great caution.

The car can be driven through water to a maximum depth of 45 cm (17 inches) at no more than walking speed. Extra caution should be exercised when passing through flowing water.

During driving in water, maintain a low speed and do not stop the car. When the water has been passed, depress the brake pedal lightly and check that full brake function is achieved. Water and mud for example can make the brake linings wet resulting in delayed brake function.

- If necessary, clean the contacts for the electric heater and trailer coupling after driving in water and mud.
- Do not let the car stand with water over the sills for any long period of time - this could cause electrical malfunctions.

Important

- Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.
- If water enters the transmission, it reduces the lubricating ability of the oil, which shortens the service life of related systems.
- Damage to any component, engine, transmission, turbocharger, differential or its internal components caused by flooding, hydrostatic locking or oil shortage, is not covered by the warranty.
- In the event of the engine stalling in water, do not try restart - tow the car from the water to a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. Risk of engine breakdown.

11.7.13. Winter driving

For winter driving it is important to perform certain checks of the car in order to ensure that it can be driven safely.

Check the following in particular before a cold season:

- The engine coolant must contain 50% glycol. This mixture protects the engine against frost down to approx. -35°C (-31°F). To avoid health risks, different types of glycol must not be mixed.
- The fuel tank must be kept filled to prevent condensation.
- Engine oil viscosity is important. Oils with lower viscosity (thinner oils) facilitate starting in cold weather and also reduce fuel consumption while the engine is cold.
- The condition of the starter battery and charge level must be inspected. Cold weather places great demands on the starter battery and its capacity is reduced by the cold.

- The condition of the battery and its charge level must be inspected. Cold weather places higher demands on the battery and its capacity is reduced by the cold.
- Use washer fluid with antifreeze to avoid ice forming in the washer fluid reservoir.

See the separate section for engine oil recommendations.

Slippery driving conditions

To achieve optimum roadholding Volvo recommends using winter tyres on all wheels if there is a risk of snow or ice.

Note

The use of winter tyres is a legal requirement in certain countries. Studded tyres are not permitted in all countries.

Practise driving on slippery surfaces under controlled conditions to learn how the car reacts.

11.7.14. Overheating in the engine and drive system

Under certain conditions, e.g. hard driving in hilly terrain and hot climate, there is an increased risk of overheating the engine and drive system – in particular with a heavy load.

- In the event of overheating, the engine's power may be limited temporarily.
- Remove any auxiliary lamps from in front of the grille when driving in hot climates.
- If the temperature in the engine's cooling system becomes too high then a warning symbol is illuminated and the driver display shows the message **Engine temperature High temperature Stop safely**. Stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for several minutes and cool down.
- If the message **Engine temperature High temperature Turn off engine** or **Engine coolant Level low, turn off engine** is shown, stop the car and switch off the engine.
- In the event of overheating in the gearbox, an alternative gear shift program will be selected[1]. In addition, a built-in protection function is activated that, amongst other things, illuminates a warning symbol and the driver display shows the message **Transmission warm Reduce speed to lower temperature** or **Transmission hot Stop safely, wait for cooling**. Follow the recommendation given, reduce speed or stop the car in a safe way and allow the engine to run at idling speed for several minutes to enable the gearbox to cool down.
- If the car overheats, the air conditioning may be switched off temporarily.
- Do not turn the engine off immediately you stop after hard driving.

> **Note**
>
> It is normal for the engine's cooling fan to operate for a time after the engine has been switched off.

Symbols in the driver display

Symbol	Specification
	High engine temperature. Follow the recommendation given.
	Low level, coolant. Follow the recommendation given.
	Gearbox hot/overheated/cooled. Follow the recommendation given.

[1] Applies to automatic gearbox.

11.7.15. Driving with a trailer

When driving with a trailer, there are a number of points that are important to think about regarding the towbar, the trailer and how the load is positioned in the trailer.

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories, e.g. towbar, reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight.

The car is supplied with the necessary equipment for towing a trailer.

- The car's towbar must be of an approved type.
- Distribute the load on the trailer so that the weight on the towbar complies with the specified maximum towball load. Towball load is calculated as part of the car's payload.
- Increase the tyre pressure to the recommended pressure for a full load.
- The engine is loaded more heavily than usual when driving with a trailer.
- Do not tow a heavy trailer when the car is brand new. Wait until it has been driven at least 1000 km (620 miles).
- The brakes are loaded much more than usual on long and steep downhill slopes. Downshift to a lower gear when shifting manually and adjust your speed.
- Follow the regulations in force for the permitted speeds and weights.
- Maintain a low speed when driving with a trailer up long, steep ascents.
- The maximum indicated trailer weight only applies to heights up to 1000 metres above sea level (3280 ft). At higher elevations, the engine output and the vehicle's climbing ability are reduced due to the reduced air density, and the maximum trailer load must therefore be reduced. The weight of the car and trailer must be decreased by 10% for each additional 1000 m (3280 ft) or part thereof.
- Avoid driving with a trailer on inclines of more than 12%.

Note

Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes, in combination with poorer fuel quality than recommended, are factors that considerably increase the car's fuel consumption.

Trailer weights

Warning

Follow the stated recommendations for trailer weights. Otherwise, the car and trailer may be difficult to control in the event of sudden movement and braking.

Note

The stated maximum permitted trailer weights are those permitted by Volvo. National vehicle regulations can further limit trailer weights and speeds. Towbars can be certified for higher towing weights than the car can actually tow.

Level control *

The car's system for level control endeavours to maintain a constant height regardless of load (up to the maximum permissible weight). When the car is stationary the rear of the car lowers slightly, which is normal.

When driving in hilly terrain

Under certain circumstances, there may be a risk of overheating when towing a trailer. If the engine and drive system overheats, a warning symbol comes on in the driver display and a message is displayed.

The following applies for cars with automatic gearbox:

The automatic gearbox adapts the gears depending on load and engine speed.

Steep inclines

Do not lock the automatic gearbox in a higher gear than the engine "can cope with" - it is not always a good idea to drive at a high gear with low engine speed.

Parking on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Activate the parking brake.
3. Select gear position P.
4. Release the brake pedal.

Block the wheels with chocks when parking a car with hitched trailer on a hill.

Starting on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Select gear position D.
3. Releasing the parking brake.
4. Release the brake pedal and start driving off.

* Option/accessory.

11.8. Towbar and trailer

11.8.1. Towing capacity and towball load

Towing capacity and towball load for driving with a trailer can be read in the tables.

Max. weight braked trailer

> **Note**
>
> Use of vibration dampers on the towbar is recommended for trailers heavier than 1800 kg.

Engine	Engine code[1]	Gearbox	Max. weight braked trailer (kg)	Max. towball load (kg)
T2	B3154T9	Manual select	1600	110
T2	B3154T9	Automatic	1600	110
T3	B3154T7	Manual select	1600	110
T3	B3154T2	Automatic	1600	110
T3	B3154T4	Automatic	1600	110
T4	B4204T31	Automatic	1800	110
T4 AWD	B4204T31	Automatic	2100	110
T5 AWD	B4204T18	Automatic	2100	110
T5 AWD	B4204T36	Automatic	2100	110
B3	B420T4	Automatic	1600	100
B4	B420T5	Automatic	2000	100
B4	B420T6	Automatic	2100	110
B4 AWD	B420T5	Automatic	2100	100
B4 AWD	B420T6	Automatic	2100	110
B5 AWD	B420T2	Automatic	2100	110
B5 AWD	B420T10	Automatic	2100	110

> **Important**
>
> When driving with a trailer, it is permitted to exceed the vehicle's gross vehicle weight (including towball load) by a maximum of 100 kg (220 lbs), provided that speed is limited to 100 km/h (62 mph). National legal requirements for the vehicle combination, such as speed, etc. must be observed.

> **Note**
>
> If there is no weight data in the table, this is available in an enclosed supplement.

Max. weight unbraked trailer

Unbraked trailer	
Max. weight (kg)	750
Max. towball load (kg)	50

[1] The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

11.8.2. Towbar*

The car can be equipped with a towbar that makes it possible to tow e.g. a trailer behind the car.

There may be different towbar variants available for the car. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

> **Important**
>
> When the car is switched off, the constant battery voltage to the trailer connector can be switched off automatically in order not to drain the starter battery.

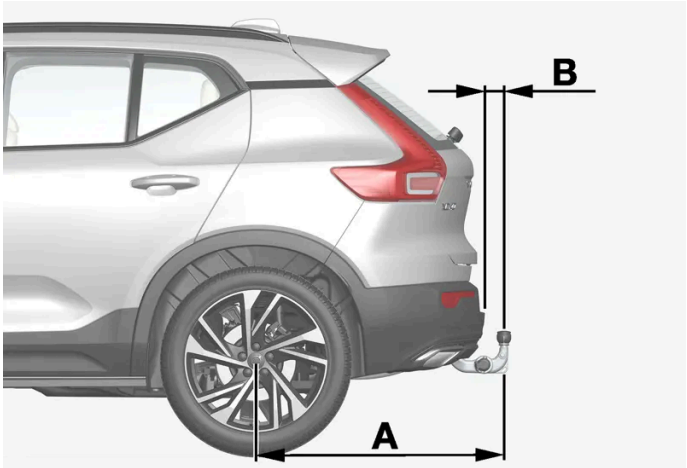
> **Important**
>
> The towball needs regular cleaning and lubrication with grease in order to prevent wear.

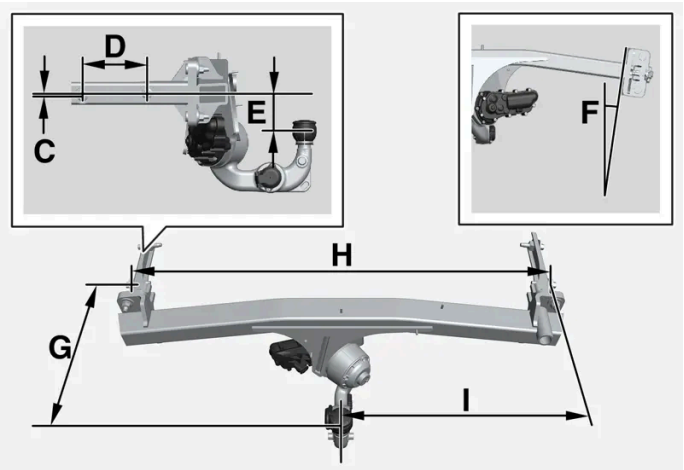
> **Note**
>
> When a hitch with a vibration damper is used, the towball must not be lubricated.
>
> This also applies when fitting a bicycle rack that is clamped in around the towball.

* Option/accessory.

11.8.3. Specifications for towbar*

Dimensions and mounting points for towbar.





Dimensions, mounting points in mm (inches)	
A	939 (37)
B	72 (2.8)
C	6 (0.24)
D	145 (5.7)
E	88 (3.5)
F	Side beam tilts 8 degrees
G	353 (13.9)
H	1048 (41.3)
I	524 (20.6)

* Option/accessory.

11.8.4. Towbar-mounted bicycle rack*

When using a bicycle rack, the bicycle racks that Volvo has developed are recommended.

This is in order to avoid damage to the car and in order to achieve the maximum possible safety during a journey. Volvo's bicycle racks are available for purchase at authorised Volvo dealers.

Carefully follow the instructions enclosed with the bicycle rack.

- Bicycle rack including load must weigh a maximum of 75 kg (165 pounds).

> **Warning**
>
> Incorrect use of the bicycle rack may cause damage to the towbar and car.
>
> The bicycle rack can loosen from the towbar if it
>
> - is incorrectly fitted on the towball
> - is overloaded, see the bicycle rack's instructions for maximum load weight
> - is used for carrying something other than bicycles.

The car's driving characteristics are affected when a bicycle rack is fitted on the towbar. For example due to:

- increased weight
- reduced acceleration capacity
- reduced ground clearance
- changed braking capacity.

Recommendations for loading bicycles on the bicycle rack

The larger the distance between the load's centre of gravity and the towball, the greater the load on the towbar.

Load according to the following recommendations:

- Fit the heaviest bicycle furthest in, closest to the car.
- Keep the load symmetrical and as close to the centre of the car as possible e.g. by loading the bicycles facing alternately if several bicycles are loaded.
- Remove loose objects from the bicycle for transportation, e.g. bicycle basket, battery, child seat. Partly to reduce the load on the towbar and bicycle rack, and partly to reduce the wind resistance, which affects fuel consumption.
- Do not use protective covers on the bicycles. This may affect manoeuvrability, impair visibility and increase fuel consumption. It may also lead to an increased load on the towbar.

* Option/accessory.

11.8.5. Extendable and retractable towbar*

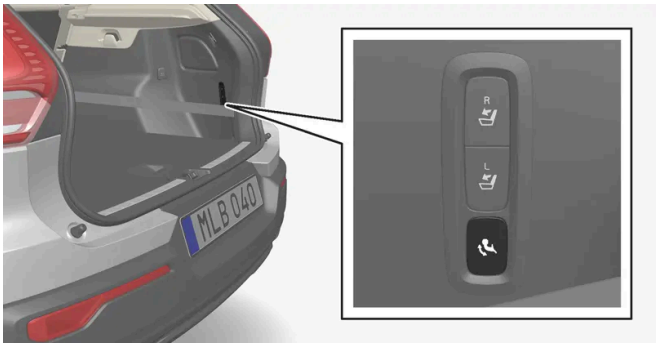
The retractable tow hook is easy to retract or extend as required. In the retracted position, the towbar is completely concealed.

> **Warning**
>
> Follow the instructions for retracting and extending the towbar carefully.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not press the extend/retract button if a trailer or accessory is attached to the tow bar.

Extending the towbar

> **Warning**
>
> Avoid standing close to the bumper in the centre behind the car when extending the towing hitch.

1 

Open the tailgate. A button for extending/retracting the towbar is located on the right-hand side at the rear of the cargo area. An indicator lamp in the button must illuminate with a constant orange glow for the extension function to be active.

2 Press and release the button – extension might not start if the button is pressed for too long.

> The towbar extends out and down in an unlocked position - the indicator lamp flashes orange. The tow hook is ready to continue moving to the locked position.

3

Move the towbar to its end position, where it is secured and locked in place - the indicator lamp illuminates with a constant orange glow.

> The towbar is ready for use.

Important

When the tow bar is activated by pressing a key and has been placed in the unlocked position:

Wait at least 2 seconds before the tow bar is moved to the locked position. If the tow bar does not remain in the locked position, wait another few seconds and try again.

Do not kick the tow bar.

Warning

Take care to secure the trailer's safety cable in the intended bracket.

Note

Power save mode activates after a while and the indicator lamp goes out. The system is reactivated by closing and opening the tailgate. This applies when retracting or extending the towbar.

If the car detects a connected trailer electrically, the indicator lamp stops illuminating with a constant glow. Towbar retraction and extension are then not possible.

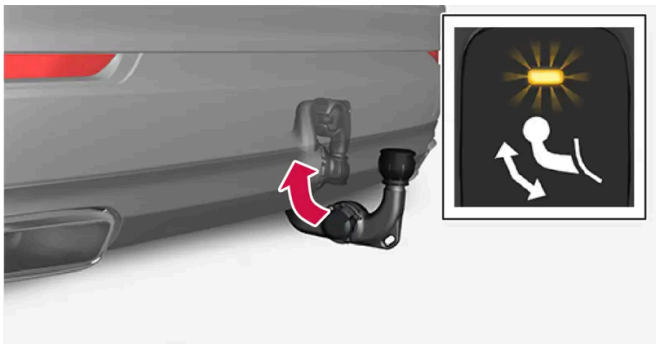
Retracting the towbar

Important

Make sure that there is no plug or adapter in the electrical socket when retracting the towbar.

1 Open the tailgate. Press and release the button on the right-hand side at the rear of the cargo area - retraction might not start if the button is pressed for too long.

> The towbar automatically lowers in an unlocked position - the indicator lamp in the button flashes orange.

2 

Lock the towbar by moving it back to its retracted position, where it is locked.

> The indicator lamp will now illuminate with a constant glow if the towbar is correctly retracted.

Important

When the tow bar is activated by pressing a key and has been placed in the unlocked position:

Wait at least 2 seconds before the tow bar is moved to the locked position. If the tow bar does not remain in the locked position, wait another few seconds and try again.

Do not kick the tow bar.

Important

The towbar must always be retracted when not in use.

* Option/accessory.

11.8.6. Low speed control*

The low speed control function (LSC [1]) facilitates and improves traction for driving off-road and on slippery surfaces, such as with a caravan on grass or a boat trailer on a launch ramp.
In a car with drive mode button*, the function is included in the **Off Road** drive mode.

The function is adapted for off-road driving and driving with a trailer at low speed, up to approx. 40 km/h (25 mph).

Low speed control prioritises low gears and traction. If the car is all-wheel drive, the motive force is distributed evenly in order to provide as good traction as possible on all wheels and to reduce the risk of wheel spin. The accelerator pedal is less responsive in order to facilitate traction and speed control at low speed.

The function is activated together with hill descent control, (HDC [2]) which means that speed down steep hills can be controlled with the accelerator pedal, reducing the need to use the brake pedal. The system facilitates a low and even speed while driving on steep downhill gradients.

Note

When LSC with HDC is activated, the feel of the accelerator pedal and engine response are changed.

Note

The driving mode is not designed to be used on public roads.

Note

The function is deactivated when driving at higher speeds and must be reactivated at a lower speed, if required.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Low Speed Control

[2] Hill Descent Control

11.8.7. Driving with a trailer

When driving with a trailer, there are a number of points that are important to think about regarding the towbar, the trailer and how the load is positioned in the trailer.

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories, e.g. towbar, reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight.

The car is supplied with the necessary equipment for towing a trailer.

- The car's towbar must be of an approved type.

- Distribute the load on the trailer so that the weight on the towbar complies with the specified maximum towball load. Towball load is calculated as part of the car's payload.
- Increase the tyre pressure to the recommended pressure for a full load.
- The engine is loaded more heavily than usual when driving with a trailer.
- Do not tow a heavy trailer when the car is brand new. Wait until it has been driven at least 1000 km (620 miles).
- The brakes are loaded much more than usual on long and steep downhill slopes. Downshift to a lower gear when shifting manually and adjust your speed.
- Follow the regulations in force for the permitted speeds and weights.
- Maintain a low speed when driving with a trailer up long, steep ascents.
- The maximum indicated trailer weight only applies to heights up to 1000 metres above sea level (3280 ft). At higher elevations, the engine output and the vehicle's climbing ability are reduced due to the reduced air density, and the maximum trailer load must therefore be reduced. The weight of the car and trailer must be decreased by 10% for each additional 1000 m (3280 ft) or part thereof.
- Avoid driving with a trailer on inclines of more than 12%.

Note

Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes, in combination with poorer fuel quality than recommended, are factors that considerably increase the car's fuel consumption.

Trailer weights

Warning

Follow the stated recommendations for trailer weights. Otherwise, the car and trailer may be difficult to control in the event of sudden movement and braking.

Note

The stated maximum permitted trailer weights are those permitted by Volvo. National vehicle regulations can further limit trailer weights and speeds. Towbars can be certified for higher towing weights than the car can actually tow.

Level control*

The car's system for level control endeavours to maintain a constant height regardless of load (up to the maximum permissible weight). When the car is stationary the rear of the car lowers slightly, which is normal.

When driving in hilly terrain

Under certain circumstances, there may be a risk of overheating when towing a trailer. If the engine and drive system overheats, a warning symbol comes on in the driver display and a message is displayed.

The following applies for cars with automatic gearbox:

The automatic gearbox adapts the gears depending on load and engine speed.

Steep inclines

Do not lock the automatic gearbox in a higher gear than the engine "can cope with" - it is not always a good idea to drive at a high gear with low engine speed.

Parking on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Activate the parking brake.
3. Select gear position P.
4. Release the brake pedal.

Block the wheels with chocks when parking a car with hitched trailer on a hill.

Starting on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Select gear position D.
3. Releasing the parking brake.
4. Release the brake pedal and start driving off.

* Option/accessory.

11.8.8. Trailer stability assist*

The function of trailer stability assist (TSA[1]), which is included in the stability system ESC[2], is to stabilise cars towing trailers in situations where they begin snaking. The function is available with towbar installation, contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

Reasons for snaking

The snaking phenomenon can occur with any car/trailer combination. Snaking normally occurs at high speeds. However, there is a risk of it occurring at lower speeds if the trailer is overloaded or the load is improperly distributed, e.g. too far back.

Triggering factors for snaking may, for example, include:

- Car with trailer subjected to a sudden and powerful side wind.
- Car with trailer drives on an uneven road surface or in a pothole.
- Sweeping steering wheel movements.

If snaking has started, it could be difficult or even impossible to suppress. This makes the car/trailer combination difficult to control and there is a risk that you could end up in the wrong lane or leave the carriageway.

Trailer stability assist function

The trailer stability assist function continually monitors the car's movements, particularly lateral movements. If snaking is detected, the front wheels are individually braked. This serves to stabilise the car/trailer combination. This is often enough to help the driver regain control of the car.

If snaking is not eliminated the first time that trailer stability assist intervenes, the car/trailer combination is braked with all wheels and the car's traction is reduced. Once snaking has been gradually suppressed and the car/trailer combination is stable once again, the system stops regulating and the driver once again has full control of the car.

> **Note**
>
> The stability function is deactivated if the driver chooses to activate **ESC Sport Mode** via the menu system in the centre display.

Trailer stability assist may fail to intervene if the driver uses severe steering wheel movements to try to rectify the snaking because in such a situation the system cannot determine whether it is the trailer or the driver causing the snaking.

When Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) is operating, the ESC symbol flashes in the driver display.

> **Note**
>
> Retrofitting a towbar requires an update of the car's software, contact a Volvo dealer.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Trailer Stability Assist

[2] Electronic Stability Control

11.8.9. Checking trailer lamps*

When connecting a trailer – check that the trailer lamps work before departure.

Checking trailer lamps*

Automatic checking

After a trailer is connected electrically, it is possible to check that the trailer lamps are working via an automatic lamp activation. The function helps the driver check that the trailer lamps are working before starting off.

The car must be switched off to perform the check.

1. When a trailer is connected to the towbar, the **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check** message is shown in the driver display.
2. Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.

> The lamp check starts.

3. Exit the car to check lamp functionality.

> All trailer lamps start to flash - then the lamps are switched on one at a time.

4. Visually check that all lamps available on the trailer are operational.
5. After a moment, all lamps on the trailer flash again.

> The check is complete.

Switching off automatic checking

The automatic checking function can be switched off in the centre display.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting**.
3. Deselect **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check**.

Manual checking

If the automatic checking is switched off then it is possible to start the check manually.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting**.
3. Select **Manual Trailer Lamp Check**.

> The lamp check starts. Exit the car to check lamp functionality.

Rear fog lamp on trailer

When connecting the trailer, the rear fog lamp may not light up on the car. In such cases, the rear fog lamp function switches to the trailer. Upon activation of the rear fog lamp, check therefore that the trailer is equipped with a rear fog lamp to travel safely.

Symbols and messages in the driver display

If one or more of the trailer's direction indicators or brake light bulbs is broken, the driver display shows a symbol and a message. Other lights on the trailer must be checked manually by the driver before setting off.

Symbol	Message
	• Trailer turn indicator Right turn indicator malfunction • Trailer turn indicator Left turn indicator malfunction
	• Trailer brake light Malfunction

If any lamp for the trailer's direction indicators is broken, the driver display symbol for direction indicators will also flash more quickly than normal.

* Option/accessory.

11.9. Fuel

11.9.1. Fuel gauge

The fuel gauge in the driver display shows the fuel level in the tank.

The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

The beige zone in the fuel gauge indicates the quantity of fuel in the tank.

When the fuel level is low, the fuel pump symbol illuminates and turns amber colour. The trip computer also shows the distance to empty tank.

11.9.2. Handling of fuel

Do not use fuel with a lower quality than that recommended by Volvo, as this will negatively affect engine power and fuel consumption.

Warning

Always avoid inhaling fuel vapour and getting fuel splashes in the eyes.

In the event of fuel in the eyes, remove any contact lenses and rinse the eyes in plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical attention.

Never swallow fuel. Fuels such as petrol, bioethanol and mixtures of them and diesel are highly toxic and could cause permanent injury or be fatal if swallowed. Seek medical attention immediately if fuel has been swallowed.

Warning

Fuel which spills onto the ground can be ignited.

Switch off the fuel-driven heater before starting to refuel.

Never carry an activated mobile phone when refuelling. The ring signal could cause spark build-up and ignite petrol fumes, leading to fire and injury.

Important

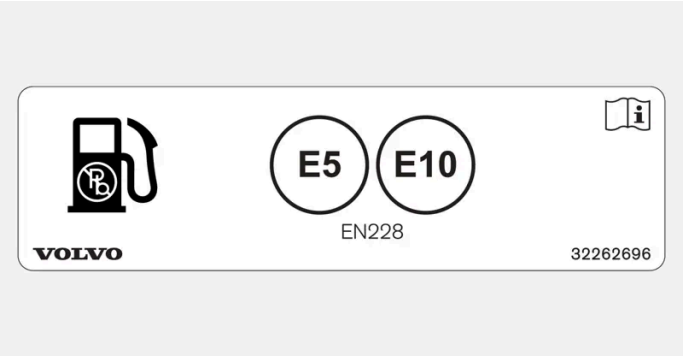
Mixtures of various fuel types or use of fuels which are not recommended will invalidate Volvo's guarantees and any supplementary service agreements; this is applicable to all engines.

11.9.3. Petrol

It is important to use the correct fuel during refuelling. Petrol is available with different octane ratings that are adapted for different types of driving.

Only use petrol from well-known producers. Never use fuel of dubious quality. The petrol must fulfil the EN 228 standard.

Identifier for petrol



Decal on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

The identifier in accordance with the CEN standard EN16942 is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap, and will be on corresponding fuel pumps and their nozzles at filling stations throughout Europe by 12 October 2018 at the latest.

These are the identifiers that apply for current standard fuels in Europe. Petrol with the following identifiers may be used in cars with petrol engine:

E5 is a petrol with maximum 2.7% oxygen and maximum 5 volume % ethanol.

E10 is a petrol with maximum 3.7% oxygen and maximum 10 volume % ethanol.

Important

- Fuel that contains up to 10 percent by volume ethanol is permitted.
- EN 228 E10 petrol (max 10 percent by volume ethanol) is approved for use.
- Ethanol higher than E10 (max. 10 percent by volume ethanol) is not permitted, e.g. E85 is not permitted.

Octane rating

- RON 95 can be used for normal driving.
- RON 98 is recommended for good power and low fuel consumption.
- An octane rating lower than RON 95 must not be used.

When driving in temperatures above +38 °C (100 °F), fuel with the highest octane rating is recommended for adapted performance and fuel economy.

Important

- Use only unleaded petrol to avoid damaging the catalytic converter.
- Fuel containing metallic additives must not be used.
- Do not use any additives which have not been recommended by Volvo.

11.10. Refuelling

11.10.1. Handling of fuel

Do not use fuel with a lower quality than that recommended by Volvo, as this will negatively affect engine power and fuel consumption.

Warning

Always avoid inhaling fuel vapour and getting fuel splashes in the eyes.

In the event of fuel in the eyes, remove any contact lenses and rinse the eyes in plenty of water for at least 15 minutes and seek medical attention.

Never swallow fuel. Fuels such as petrol, bioethanol and mixtures of them and diesel are highly toxic and could cause permanent injury or be fatal if swallowed. Seek medical attention immediately if fuel has been swallowed.

Warning

Fuel which spills onto the ground can be ignited.

Switch off the fuel-driven heater before starting to refuel.

Never carry an activated mobile phone when refuelling. The ring signal could cause spark build-up and ignite petrol fumes, leading to fire and injury.

Important

Mixtures of various fuel types or use of fuels which are not recommended will invalidate Volvo's guarantees and any supplementary service agreements; this is applicable to all engines.

11.10.2. Fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions

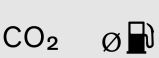
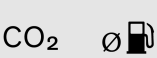
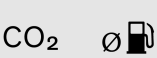
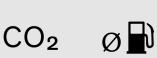
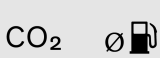
The information in the tables below is in accordance with WLTP (Worldwide Harmonised Light-Duty Vehicles Test Procedure), which is an international test method for vehicles.
The fuel consumption for a vehicle is measured in litres per 100 km and carbon dioxide emissions (CO_2) are measured in gram CO_2 per km.

	Explanation
	Urban driving (slow)

	Suburban driving (average speed)
	Extra-urban driving (fast)
	Motorway driving (very fast)
	Combined value (combined driving)
CO_2	Gram CO_2/km
	Litres/100 km
man	Manual gearbox
aut	Automatic gearbox
	Low value
	High value

Note

If there is no consumption and emissions data in the table, this is available in an enclosed supplement.

			CO_2		CO_2		CO_2		CO_2		CO_2	
T2(B3154T9)	man		203	8.9	152	6.7	135	5.9	164	7.2	158	7.0
			216	9.6	167	7.4	149	6.6	182	8.0	173	7.6
T2(B3154T9)	aut		226	10.0	163	7.2	140	6.2	164	7.3	165	7.3
			240	10.6	176	7.8	151	6.7	182	8.0	179	7.9
T3(B3154T7)	man		203	9.0	151	6.6	135	5.9	162	7.2	157	6.9
			212	9.4	168	7.4	150	6.6	181	8.0	173	7.6
T3(B3154T2)	aut		225	9.9	162	7.2	140	6.2	163	7.2	164	7.3
			240	10.6	176	7.8	151	6.7	182	8.0	179	7.9
B3(B420T4)	aut		208	9.1	139	6.1	126	5.6	153	6.8	150	6.6
			219	9.6	156	6.9	142	6.2	173	7.6	166	7.3
B4(B420T5)	aut		204	9.0	139	6.2	127	5.6	154	6.8	150	6.6
			221	9.7	158	7.0	141	6.2	172	7.6	166	7.3
B4 AWD(B420T5)	aut		217	9.6	150	6.6	135	6.0	161	7.1	158	7.0
			227	10.0	164	7.2	149	6.6	179	7.9	173	7.6

			CO_2	⌀	CO_2	⌀	CO_2	⌀	CO_2	⌀	CO_2	⌀
B5 AWD(B420T2)	aut		256	11.3	167	7.4	145	6.4	172	7.6	174	7.7
			265	11.7	179	7.9	157	6.9	188	8.3	187	8.2

The values in the table above for fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are based on special drive cycles (see below). The car's weight may increase depending on its equipment level. Together with how heavily the car is loaded, this affects fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions. According to WLTP, every car has unique fuel consumption and CO_2 emission values, depending on how the car is equipped. These values range between the low value and high value in the table above. In many markets, you can find your car's unique fuel consumption and CO_2 emission values in the car's registration document.

There are several reasons for fuel consumption that is higher than the values in the table. Examples of these include:

- If the car is equipped with extra equipment that affects its weight.
- Driving style.
- If the customer chooses wheels other than those mounted as standard on the basic version of the model, this could increase rolling resistance.
- High speed causes increased air resistance.
- Fuel quality, road and traffic conditions, weather and the condition of the car.

A combination of the examples above could increase consumption considerably.

There may be huge deviations in fuel consumption if comparing to the drive cycle profiles (see below), which are used in the certification of the car and on which consumption figures in the table are based. For further information, please refer to the referenced regulations.

> **Note**
>
> Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes, in combination with poorer fuel quality than recommended, are factors that considerably increase the car's fuel consumption.

WLTP standard

From and including 1 September 2018, a new standard was introduced for calculating consumption values in the car. The WLTP standard (Worldwide Harmonised Light-Duty Vehicles Test Procedure) represents the average driving conditions for everyday driving. In comparison with the previous standard (NEDC), WLTP takes into account more varied traffic situations and speeds, but also equipment and weight classes. Optional equipment that affects consumption is deactivated during testing, e.g. air conditioning, seat heating, etc. The new standard should provide more realistic figures when it comes to fuel consumption, carbon dioxide and emissions. The values are intended to allow comparison between different cars and not to represent your typical normal consumption.

Drive cycle profiles

A drive cycle simulates actual average driving of the car. The standard is based on four different drive cycle profiles, which are as follows:

- **Urban driving** – slow driving

- **Suburban driving** – average speed driving
- **Extra-urban driving** – fast driving
- **Motorway driving** – very fast driving.

Every drive cycle is determined by different conditions such as speed, time and mileage, for example.

The official value for combined driving, which is shown in the table, is a combination of the results from the four drive cycles, in accordance with legal requirements.

The exhaust gases are collected in order to extrapolate the carbon dioxide emissions (CO_2 emissions) during the four drive cycles. These were then analysed to determine the value for CO_2 emissions.

11.10.3. Petrol station

Use the car's navigation system* in order to find the route to the closest petrol station.

When stopping to refuel it is a good idea to make a general inspection of the car as well, such as checking tyre pressure, bulbs, wiper blades, topping up washer fluid, etc.

* Option/accessory.

11.10.4. Fuel tank - volume

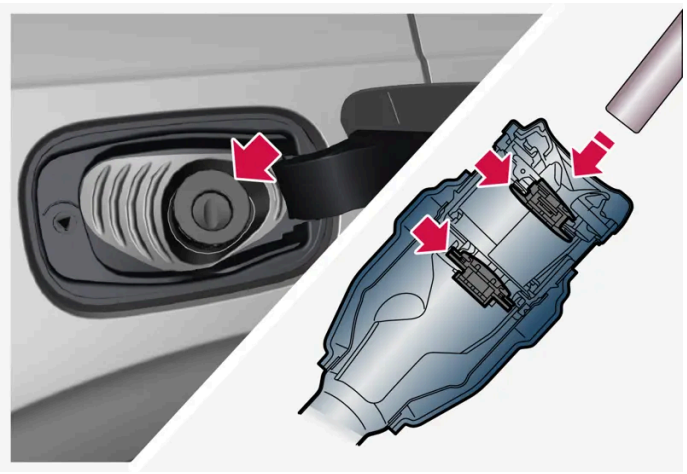
The fuel tank's filling capacity can be read in the table below.

	All engines
Litres (approx)	54
US gallons (approx)	14.2

11.10.5. Filling fuel

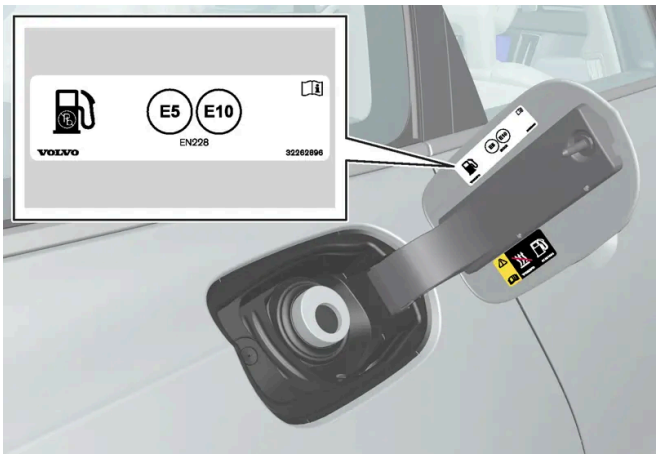
The fuel tank is fitted with a coverless fuel filler system.

Refuelling the car at a petrol station



It is important to feed the pump nozzle past the filler pipe's two openable hatches before starting to fuel the car.

Fuelling instruction:

1. Switch off the car and open the fuel filler flap.
2. 

Choose fuel that is approved for use in the car in accordance with the identifier[1] on the inside of the fuel filler flap. See information on approved fuels and identifier in the section on "Petrol".
3. Insert the pump nozzle in the fuel filler opening. The filler pipe has two opening caps. The pump nozzle must be pushed past both caps before refuelling is started.
4. Do not overfill the tank but fill until the pump nozzle cuts out the first time.

> The tank is full.

> **Note**
>
> Overfilled fuel in the tank can overflow in hot weather.

Topping up fuel from a fuel can

When filling with a fuel can, use the funnel located in the foam block under the floor hatch in the cargo area.

1. Open the fuel filler flap.
2. Insert the funnel in the fuel filler opening. The filler pipe has two opening caps. The funnel's pipe must be pushed past both caps before filling can be started.

Applicable to cars with fuel-driven auxiliary heater*

Never use the fuel-driven heater when the car is in a filling station area.

Decal on the inside of the fuel filler flap.

[1] The identifier in accordance with the CEN standard EN16942 is located on the inside of the fuel filler flap, and will be on corresponding fuel pumps and their nozzles at filling stations throughout Europe by 12 October 2018 at the latest.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

11.10.6. Opening and closing the fuel filler flap

The car must be unlocked for the fuel filler flap to be opened[1].

In the driver display, the arrow next to the tank symbol indicates which side of the car the fuel filler flap is located.

1. Open the fuel filler flap with a gentle press on the rear of the flap.
2. After refuelling is finished - close the flap with a gentle press.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only locking and unlocking with the key, keyless* or via Volvo On Call affects the status of the fuel filler flap.

11.11. Emission control

11.11.1. Petrol particle filter[1]

Petrol cars are fitted with particle filters for more efficient emission control.

Particles in the exhaust gases are collected in the petrol particle filter during normal driving. In normal driving conditions, passive regeneration takes place, which leads to the particles being oxidised and burned away. The filter is emptied in this way.

If the car is driven at low speed or with repeated cold starts in low outside temperature, active regeneration may be necessary. Regeneration of the particulate filter is automatic and normally takes 10-20 minutes. Fuel consumption may temporarily increase during regeneration.

When driving short distances at low speeds in a petrol car

The capacity of the emissions system is affected by how the car is driven. Driving varying distances and at different speeds is important in order to achieve performance that is as energy-efficient as possible.

Driving short distances at low speeds (or in cold climates) frequently, where the engine does not reach normal operating temperature, can lead to problems that can eventually cause a malfunction and trigger a warning message. If the vehicle is mostly driven in city traffic, it is important to regularly drive at higher speeds to allow the emissions system to regenerate.

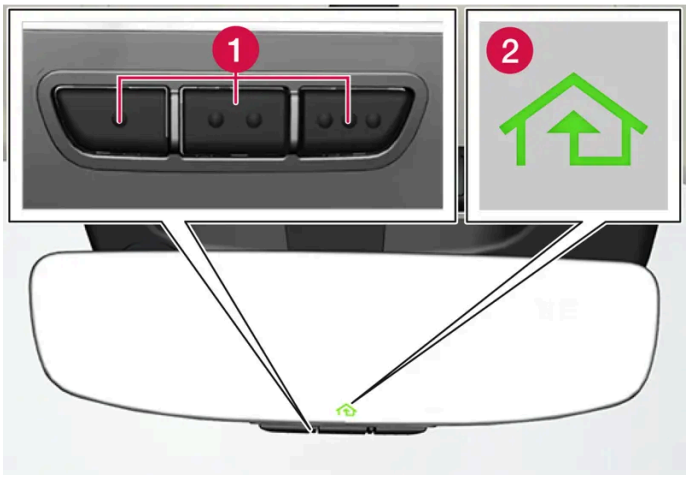
- The car should be driven on A-roads at speeds in excess of 90 km/h (55 mph) between each refuelling.

[1] Applicable to certain variants.

11.12. HomeLink

11.12.1. HomeLink® * [1]

HomeLink® [2] is a programmable remote control integrated into the car's electrical system.
It can control up to three different devices remotely, e.g. a garage door opener or alarm system, and hence replace the remote controls for these.



The figure is schematic - the version may vary.

1 Programmable buttons

2 Indicator lamp

HomeLink® is built into the interior rearview mirror and consists of three programmable buttons and one indicator lamp in the mirror glass.

> **Note**
>
> Save the original remote controls for future reprogramming (e.g. when changing to another car or for use in another vehicle).
>
> It is also recommended that the programming for the buttons should be deleted when the car is sold.

More information

Visit homelink.com or call 00 8000 466 354 65 (or premium charge number +49 6838 907 277) [3].

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] HomeLink and the HomeLink house symbol are registered trademarks of Gentex Corporation.

[3] Note that the toll-free number may not be available depending on operator.

11.12.2. Using HomeLink® * [1]

When HomeLink® is fully programmed it can be used in place of the separate original remote controls.

Depress the programmed button. The garage door, gate, alarm system or similar is activated (may take a few seconds). If the button is depressed for more than 20 seconds then the reprogramming is started. The indicator lamp illuminates or flashes when the button has been depressed. Naturally the original remote controls can still be used in parallel with HomeLink® if required.

> **Note**
>
> When the ignition has been switched off, HomeLink® works for at least 7 minutes.

> **Note**
>
> HomeLink® cannot be used if the car is locked and the alarm is armed* from the outside.

> **Warning**
>
> - If HomeLink® is used to control a garage door or gate, ensure that nobody is near the door or gate while it is in motion.
> - Do not use HomeLink® for any garage door that does not have safety stop and safety reverse.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

11.12.3. Programming HomeLink® * [1]

Program HomeLink®, reset programming or reprogram individual buttons.

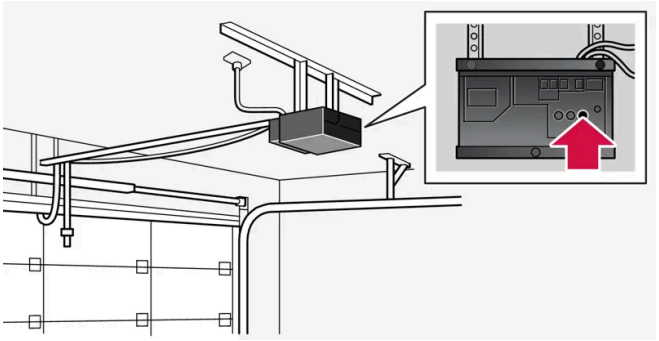
Programming

1 Aim the remote control towards the HomeLink® button to be programmed and hold it approx. 2-8 cm (approx. 1-3 inches) from the button. Do not obstruct the indicator lamp on HomeLink®.

2 Press and hold depressed both the button on the remote control and the button to be reprogrammed on HomeLink®.

3 Do not release the buttons until the indicator lamp has switched from flashing slowly (approx. once per second) to either flashing quickly (approx. 10 times per second) or illuminating with a constant glow.

> **If the indicator lamp illuminates with a constant glow:** Indication that the programming has finished.
Press the programmed button twice to activate.
If the indicator lamp flashes quickly: The device to be programmed to HomeLink® may have a security function that requires extra steps.
Test by pressing the programmed button twice to see whether the programming is working. Otherwise, continue with the following steps.

4 

Locate programming button [2] on the receiver for the garage door or similar. It is normally located close to the antenna's bracket on the receiver.

5 Depress and release the receiver's programming button once.

The programming must be completed within 30 seconds of the button being depressed.

6 Press and release the button on HomeLink® that you want to program. Repeat the sequence of pressing/holding/releasing a second time and, depending on the receiver model, even a third time.

> Programming is finished.

Note

The ability of some remote controls to program HomeLink® is improved at a distance of approx. 15–20 cm (approx. 6–12 inches).

Reprogramming individual buttons

1 Press the desired button and hold it depressed for approx. 20 seconds.

2 Once the indicator lamp on HomeLink® starts to flash slowly, programming can continue as normal.

> **Note**
>
> If the button to be reprogrammed is not programmed with a new unit, it will resume the previously saved programming.

Resetting the HomeLink® buttons

It is only possible to reset all HomeLink® buttons at the same time. Individual buttons can only be reprogrammed.

1 Press and hold depressed the outer buttons on HomeLink® for approx. 10 seconds.

> When the indicator lamp changes over from a constant glow to starting to flash, the buttons are reset and ready to be reprogrammed.

Problems with programming

Visit homelink.com or call 00 8000 466 354 65 (or premium charge number +49 6838 907 277) [3].

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] Button designation and colour varies between manufacturers.

[3] Note that the toll-free number may not be available depending on operator.

11.12.4. Type approval for HomeLink® * [1]

The type approval for HomeLink® can be read below.

Country/Area	Type approval
USA and Canada	This device complies with FCC rules part 15 and Industry Canada RSS-210. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference that may be received including interference that may cause undesired operation.
Europe	Gentex Corporation hereby declares that HomeLink® Model UAHL5 complies with the Radio equipment directive 2014/53/EU. Wavelength within which the radio equipment functions: • 433.05MHz-434.79MHz <10mW E.R.P. • 868.00MHz-868.60MHz <25mW E.R.P. • 868.70MHz-868.20MHz <25mW E.R.P. • 869.40MHz-869.65MHz <25mW E.R.P. • 869.70MHz-870.00MHz <25mW E.R.P. Certificate holder address: Gentex Corporation, 600 North Centennial Street, Zeeland MI 49464, USA

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

11.13. Compass

11.13.1. Compass*

The upper right-hand corner of the rearview mirror has an integrated display that shows the compass direction [1] in which the front of the car is pointing.

Rearview mirror with compass.

Eight different compass directions are shown by their English abbreviations:

- **N** – north
- **NE** – northeast
- **E** – east
- **SE** – southeast
- **S** – south
- **SW** – southwest
- **W** – west
- **NW** – northwest

* Option/accessory.

[1] A rearview mirror with a compass is available as an option on certain markets and models only.

11.13.2. Activating and deactivating the compass*

The upper right-hand corner of the rearview mirror has an integrated display that shows the compass direction[1] in which the front of the car is pointing.

The compass is activated automatically when the car is started.

Activating or deactivating the compass manually

1 Depress the button on the underside of the rearview mirror using e.g. a paper clip.

> If the compass is deactivated when the car is switched off, it will not be activated the next time the car is started. In this case, the compass needs to be activated manually.

* Option/accessory.

[1] A rearview mirror with a compass is available as an option on certain markets and models only.

11.13.3. Calibrating the compass*

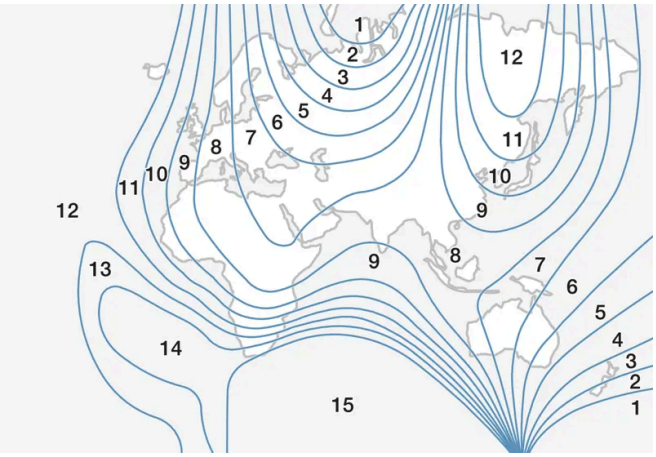
The earth is divided into 15 magnetic zones. The compass[1] should be calibrated if the car is moved between several magnetic zones.

1 Stop the car in a large open area free from steel structures and high-voltage power lines.

2 Start the car and switch off all electrical equipment (air conditioning, wipers, etc.) and ensure that all doors are closed.

> **Note**
>
> Calibration may fail or not start at all if electrical equipment is not switched off.

3 Hold the button on the underside of the rearview mirror depressed for approx. 3 seconds (use a paper clip, for example). The number for the current magnetic zone is shown.

4 

Magnetic zones.

Press the button repeatedly until the required magnetic zone (1–15) is shown. See the map of magnetic zones for the compass.

5 Wait until the display returns to showing the character C, or hold the button on the underside of the rearview mirror depressed for approx. 6 seconds until the character C is shown.

6 Drive slowly in a circle at a speed of no more than 10 km/h (6 mph) until a compass direction is shown in the display, indicating that calibration is complete. Then drive a further 2 circles to fine-tune calibration.

7 **Cars with heated windscreen*:** If the character C is shown in the display when the heated windscreen is activated, perform the calibration in accordance with point 6 above with the heated windscreen activated.

8 Repeat the above procedure as necessary.

* Option/accessory.

[1] A rearview mirror with a compass is available as an option on certain markets and models only.

11.14. Towing and recovery

11.14.1. Towing

During towing, the car is towed by another vehicle by means of a towline.

Find out the statutory maximum speed limit for towing before the towing begins.

Important

Towing a car with the seven-speed gearbox is not permitted. Instead, the car must be transported raised with all the wheels on a recovery vehicle's platform. Contact a Volvo dealer to determine what applies for your car.

Preparations and towing

Important

Some gearbox variants prevent shifting out of the P position unless the engine is running. Contact an authorised Volvo workshop for assistance when towing, or summon professional help for recovery.

Important

Note that the car must always be towed with the wheels rolling forward.

- Do not tow cars with automatic transmission at speeds higher than 80 km/h(50 mph) or for distances in excess of 80 km (50 miles).

Warning

- Check that the steering lock is unlocked before towing.
- Ignition position II must be active - in ignition position I all airbags are deactivated.
- Always keep the key in the car when it is being towed.

Warning

The brake servo and power steering do not work when the engine is switched off - the brake pedal needs to be depressed about 5 times more heavily and the steering is considerably heavier than normal.

1. Activate the car's hazard warning flashers.
2. Secure the towline in the towing eye.
3. Deactivate the steering lock by unlocking the car.
4. Set the car in ignition position **II** – press the start button without depressing the brake pedal, and hold the button depressed for approx. 4 seconds. Then release the button.
5. Move the gear selector to neutral position and release the parking brake.

   If the battery voltage is too low, the parking brake cannot be disengaged. Connect a donor battery if the battery voltage is too low.

> The towing vehicle can now start towing.

6 Keep the towline taut when the towing vehicle reduces speed by holding your foot gently pressed on the brake pedal - thereby avoiding unnecessary jerking.

7 Be prepared to brake to stop.

Jump starting

Do not tow the car to jump start the engine. Use a donor battery if the starter battery is discharged and the engine does not start.

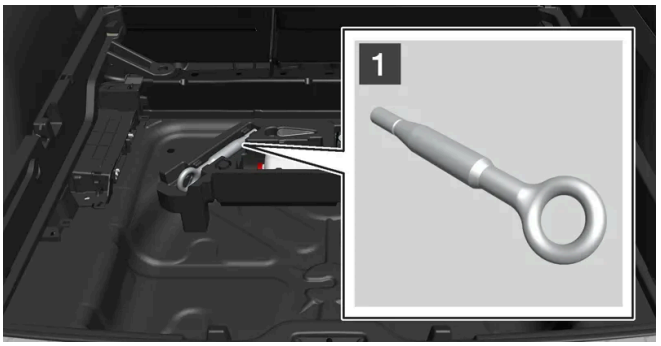
> **Important**
>
> The catalytic converter may be damaged during attempts to tow-start the engine.

11.14.2. Fitting and removing the towing eye

Use the towing eye for towing. The towing eye is screwed into a threaded socket behind a cover on the right-hand side of the bumper, front or rear.

Fitting the towing eye

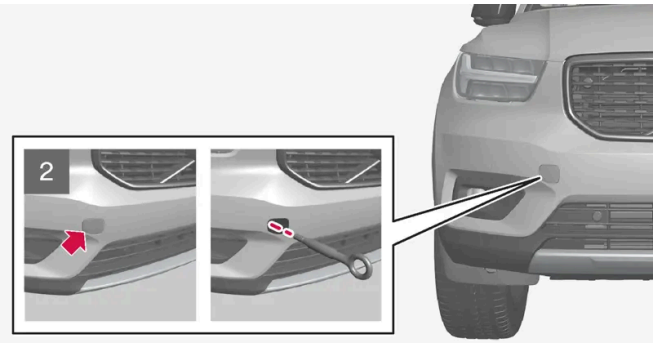
1



1

Take out the towing eye from the foam block under the floor in the cargo area.

2

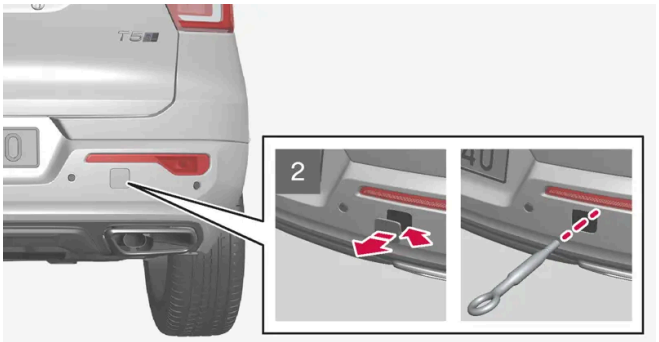


2

Front: Remove the cover – press the lid.

> The cover pivots around its centre line and can then be removed.

3

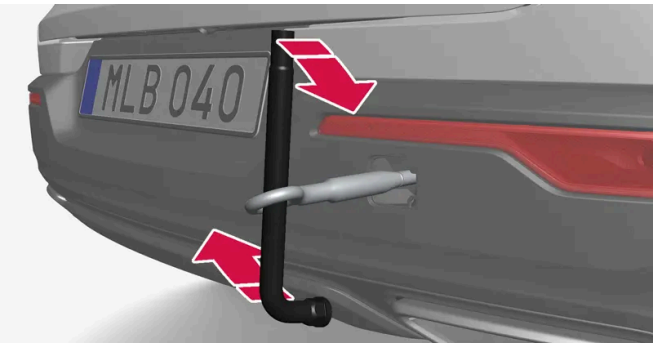


2

Rear: Remove the cover – Use a coin, key or similar to pry the lid out using the marking.

> Fold out the cover completely and detach.

4 Screw in the towing eye until it reaches its end stop.



Screw the eye in firmly. For example, thread through the wheel bolt wrench* and use it as a lever.

> **Important**
>
> It is important that the towing eye is firmly screwed into place - right in until it stops.

Points to remember before using the towing eye

- The towing eye may be used to pull the car up onto a recovery vehicle with a flatbed platform. The car's position and ground clearance determine whether it is possible.
- If the slope of the recovery vehicle's ramp is too steep, or if the ground clearance under the car is inadequate, then the car may be damaged if you try to pull it up using the towing eye.
- If necessary, raise the car by using the recovery vehicle's lifting device. Do not use the towing eye.

> **Warning**
>
> No one/nothing is allowed to remain behind the recovery vehicle while the car pulled up onto the flatbed platform.

> **Important**
>
> The towing eye is only designed for towing on roads - not for pulling the car unstuck or out of a ditch. Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

Removing the towing eye

1 Unscrew and remove the towing eye after use and return it to its foam block.

Finish by refitting the cover onto the bumper.

* Option/accessory.

11.14.3. Recovery

For recovery, the car is taken away with the help of another vehicle.

Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

The towing eye can be used to pull the car up onto a recovery vehicle with a flatbed platform.

The car's position and ground clearance determine whether it is possible to pull it up onto a flatbed platform. If the slope of the recovery vehicle's ramp is too steep, or if the ground clearance under the car is inadequate, then the car may be damaged if you try to pull it up. The car should then be lifted using the recovery vehicle's lifting device.

> **Warning**
>
> No one/nothing is allowed to remain behind the recovery vehicle while the car pulled up onto the flatbed platform.

Important

The towing eye is only designed for towing on roads - **not** for pulling the car unstuck or out of a ditch. Call a recovery service for recovery assistance.

Important

Note that the car must always be transported with the wheels rolling forward.

Cars with all-wheel drive* recovered with front wheels raised must not be towed at a speed above 70 km/h (40 mph) or for a distance longer than 50 km (30 miles).

* Option/accessory.

11.14.4. Safety mode

Safety mode is a protective state that is triggered when a collision may have damaged any of the car's vital functions, such as the fuel lines, sensors for any of the safety systems, or the brake system.

If the car has been in a collision, the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** may be shown on the driver display with a warning symbol as long as the display is not damaged and the car's electrical system is still in working order. This message means that the car has reduced functionality.

Warning

Never, under any circumstances, attempt to restart the car if it smells of fuel when the **Safety mode See Owner's manual** message is shown in the driver display. Leave the car at once.

If the car is in safety mode, it is possible to attempt to reset the system in order to start and move the car for a short distance, if in a dangerous traffic situation for example.

Warning

Never attempt to repair your car or reset the electronics yourself if the car has been in safety mode. This could result in personal injury or the car not functioning as normal. Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to check and restore the car to normal status after **Safety mode See Owner's manual** has been shown.

Warning

If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

11.14.5. Starting and moving the car after safety mode

If the car is in safety mode, it is possible to attempt to reset the system in order to start and move the car for a short distance, if in a dangerous traffic situation for example.

Reset and start the car after safety mode

1. Check the general damage situation of the car and whether any fuel has been leaking. There must be no smell of fuel either.

   If there is only minor damage and a check has revealed no fuel leaks, starting can be attempted.

   > **Warning**
   >
   > Never, under any circumstances, attempt to restart the car if it smells of fuel when the **Safety mode See Owner's manual** message is shown in the driver display. Leave the car at once.

2. Switch off the car.
3. Then try to start the car.

> The car's electronics carry out a systems check and then try to resume normal status.

> **Important**
>
> If the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual** is still shown on the display the car must not be driven or towed but a vehicle recovery service must then be used instead. Even if the car appears to be driveable, hidden damage may make the car impossible to control once moving.

Moving the car after safety mode

1. If the driver display shows the message **Normal mode The car is now in normal mode** after a start attempt, the car can be carefully moved if standing in a dangerous position.
2. Do not move the car further than necessary.

> **Warning**
>
> If the car is in safety mode it must not be towed. It must be transported from its location. Volvo recommends that it is transported to an authorised Volvo workshop.

11.15. Operational disruption

If you experience an operational disruption or deviation from the car's normal function then it may be due to a fault or the specific circumstances of the situation.

Some functions have limitations in particular situations and require that certain conditions are fulfilled in order to work. The driver display and centre display may show messages in order to inform about such a situation.

Find out more about fault-tracing and the limitations of various functions in related articles below.

If the car is not drivable

Activate the hazard warning flashers if the car has broken down or been forced to stop unexpectedly in a trafficked environment. Think about safety and, if possible, move the car out of danger from traffic. Put on a reflective vest and then position the warning triangle so that other road users are warned in good time. Call roadside assistance if the cause cannot be remedied at your location.

11.16. Traffic accident

If your car is involved in a traffic accident, activate the hazard warning flashers and move the car into a safer position if possible.
Do not attempt to restart the car if there is a smell of fuel when the driver display shows the message **Safety mode See Owner's manual**. If so, leave the car at once!

Call the emergency services or roadside assistance as necessary.

Depending on the car's equipment, the car itself can detect an accident and contact the nearest emergency call centre. If the car does not have Volvo On Call*, there is a European legal requirement, Pan-European eCall, that provides access to an automatic collision alarm and urgent assistance in emergency situations[1].

- Think about safety when exiting the car!
- Use a reflective vest and position the warning triangle so that other road users are warned.

If you collide with a wild animal

Be careful, injured animals can feel trapped and then defend themselves.

Call the police to get help with humane killing if the animal is seriously injured, or move a dead animal away from the road so that it is not a danger to other road users.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

12. Sound, media and Internet

12.1. Radio

12.1.1. Digital radio

12.1.1.1. Digital radio*

Digital radio (DAB[1]) is a digital broadcasting system for radio. The radio supports DAB, DAB+ and DMB[2].

The radio can be operated using voice control, the steering wheel keypad or the centre display.

The digital radio app is launched from app view in the centre display.

Digital radio is played back in the same way as other radio bands, such as FM. Besides the option to select playback from **Stations**, **Favourites** and **Genres**, there is also the option to select playback from subchannels and **Ensembles**. An ensemble is a set of radio channels (a channel group) broadcasting on the same frequency.

In the cases where the radio channel transmits its logotype, it is downloaded and shown beside the station name (download time varies).

DAB subchannel

Secondary components are usually named subchannels. These are temporary and can contain e.g. translations of the main programme into other languages. Subchannels are indicated with an arrow symbol in the channel list.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Digital Audio Broadcasting

[2] Digital Multimedia Broadcasting

12.1.1.2. Link between FM and digital radio*

The function enables the digital radio (DAB) to switch from a channel with poor or no reception to the same channel in another channel group (ensemble) with better reception, within DAB and/or between DAB and FM.

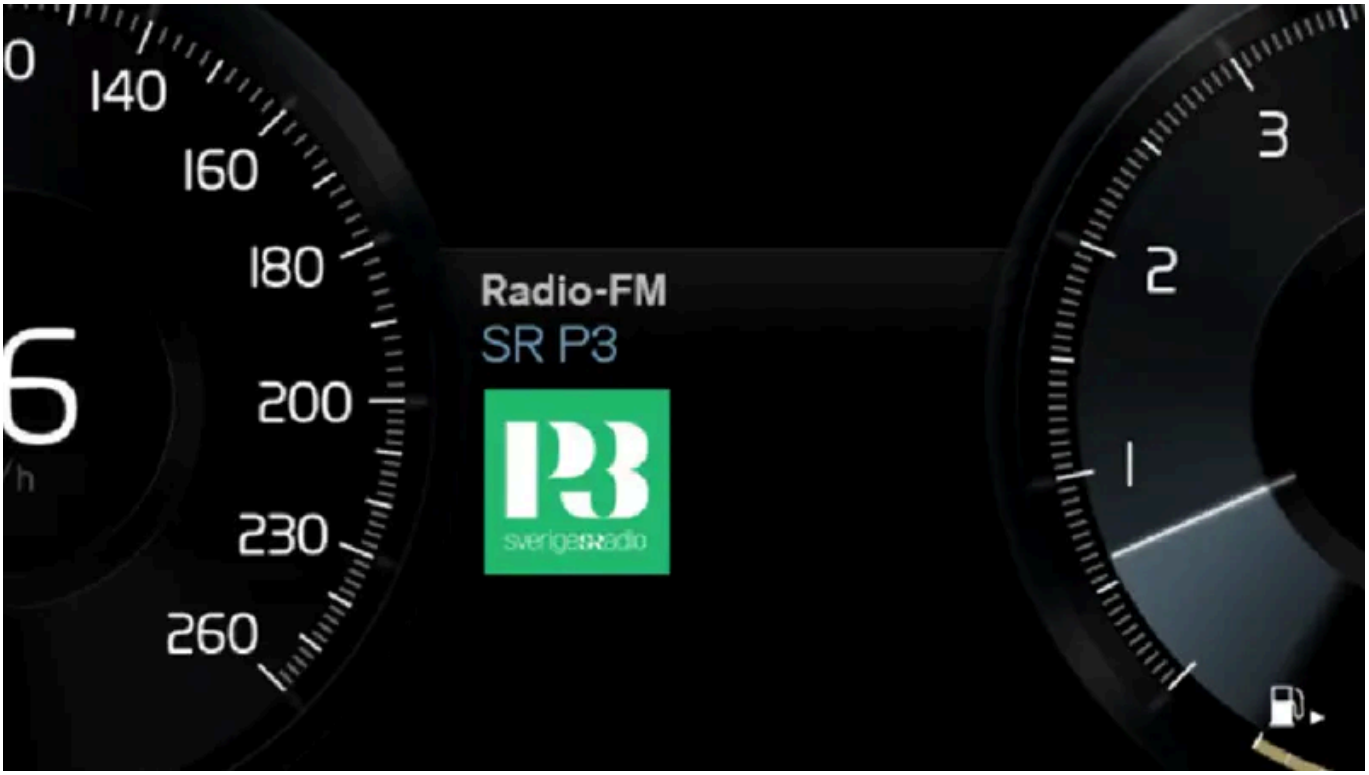
DAB to DAB and DAB to FM linking

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Media** → **DAB**.
3. Tick/untick **DAB To DAB Handover** and/or **DAB To FM Handover** in order to activate/deactivate the respective functions.

* Option/accessory.

12.1.2. Voice control of radio and media

Commands for radio and media player voice control are shown below[1].



Tap on and say one of the following commands:

- "**Media**" - starts a dialogue for media and radio and shows examples of commands.
- "**Play [artist]**" - plays back music by the selected artist.

- "**Play [song title]**" - plays back the selected song.
- "**Play [song title] from [album]**" - plays back the selected song from the selected album.
- "**Play [radio station]**" - starts playing back the selected radio channel.
- "**Tune to [frequency]**" - starts the selected radio frequency in the current frequency band. If no radio source is active, the FM band is started by default.
- "**Tune to [frequency] [wavelength]**" - starts the selected radio frequency in the selected frequency band.
- "**Radio**" - starts FM radio.
- "**Radio FM**" - starts FM radio.
- "**DAB** " - starts DAB radio*.
- "**USB**" - starts playback from USB.
- "**iPod**" - starts playback from iPod.
- "**Bluetooth**" - starts playback from a Bluetooth-connected media source.
- "**Similar music**" — plays back music similar to the music currently playing back from USB devices.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

* Option/accessory.

12.1.3. Radio

It is possible to listen to the FM bands and to digital radio (DAB)*. When the car is online, it is also possible to listen to Internet radio.

The radio can be operated using voice control, the steering wheel keypad or the centre display.

* Option/accessory.

12.1.4. Start radio

The radio is started from the centre display app view.

1 Open the required frequency band (e.g. **FM**) from the app view.

2 Select a radio station.

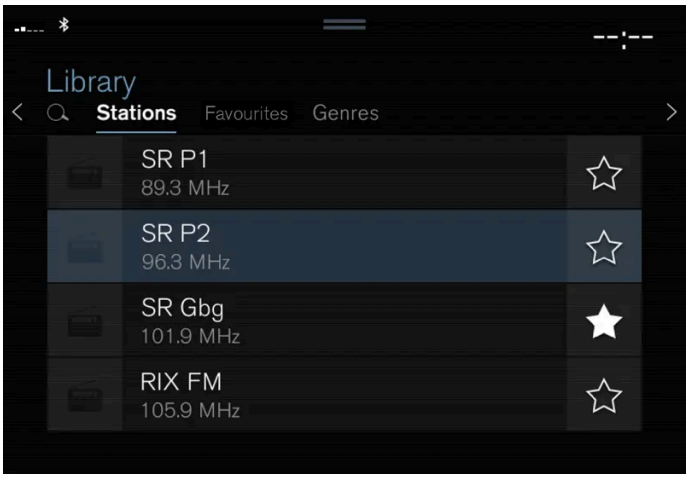
12.1.5. Changing radio band and radio station

There are instructions here for changing the radio band, the list in the radio band and the radio station in the selected list.

Changing radio band

Swipe to show the app view in the centre display and select the preferred radio band (e.g. **FM**), or open the driver display's app menu using the right-hand keypad on the steering wheel and make your selection from there.

Changing lists within the frequency band



1 Press **Library**.

2 Select playback from **Stations**, **Favourites**, **Genres** or **Ensembles**[1].

3 Tap on the desired station from the list.

Favourites - only plays back selected favourite channels.

Genres — only plays back channels broadcasting the selected genre/programme type, e.g. pop or classical.

Changing stations within the selected list

1 Press on ⏮ or ⏭ under the centre display or the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

> The highlight moves up or down one place in the selected playlist.

You can also change radio station in the selected list via the centre display.

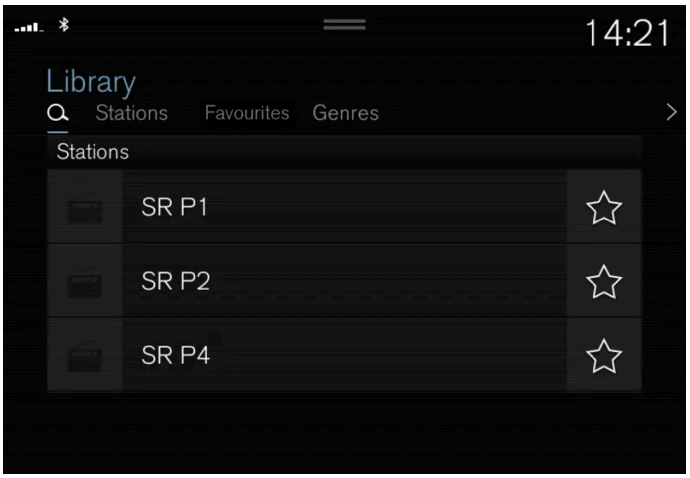
The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only applies to digital radio (DAB*).

12.1.6. Searching for radio stations

The radio automatically compiles a station list of the radio stations within the area that are transmitting the strongest signals.



The parameters you can search on depend on the frequency band selected:

- FM - station, genre and frequency.
- DAB* - ensembles and stations.

1 Press **Library**.

2 Press .

> Search view with keyboard is opened.

3 Enter the search terms.

> Searching takes place with each input of a character and the search results are shown by category.

Manual tuning

Searching manually makes it possible to find and tune to stations that are not on the automatically compiled list of the strongest stations in the area.

On changing over to manual tuning, the radio no longer changes frequency automatically when reception is poor.

1 Press **Manual tuning**, pull the control or press ⏮ or ⏭. With a long press, the search jumps to the next available station in the frequency band. It is also possible to use the right keypad on the steering wheel.

* Option/accessory.

12.1.7. Settings for radio

There are various radio functions to activate and deactivate.

Cancelling traffic messages

The broadcast of traffic messages etc. can be temporarily interrupted by tapping on ○ in the right-hand steering wheel keypad or by tapping on **Cancel** in the centre display.

Activating and deactivating radio functions

Drag down the top view and select **Settings** → **Media** and the desired radio band to view available functions.

FM Radio

- **Show Broadcast Information**: shows information on programme content, artists, etc.
- **Freeze Program Name**: select to stop the programme service name from scrolling continuously. It will freeze after 20 seconds instead.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

- **Select Announcements**: [1]
  - **Local Interruptions**: interrupts the current media playback and broadcasts information about traffic disruptions in the neighbourhood. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished. The **Local Interruptions** function is a geographically restricted version of the **Traffic Announcements** function. The **Traffic Announcements** function must be activated at the same time.
  - **News** : interrupts the current media playback and broadcasts news. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the news broadcast is finished.
  - **Alarm**: interrupts the current media playback and sends alerts about major accidents and disasters. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.
  - **Traffic Announcements**: interrupts the current media playback and broadcasts information about traffic disruptions. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.

DAB* (digital radio)

- **Sort Services**: option for how channels will be sorted. Either alphabetically or by service number.
- **DAB To DAB Handover**: starts the function for linking within DAB. If reception of a radio channel is lost, another channel is found automatically in another channel group (ensemble).
- **DAB To FM Handover**: starts the function for linking between DAB and FM. If reception of a radio channel is lost, an alternative FM frequency is searched for automatically.
- **Show Broadcast Information**: select to show radio text or selected types of radio text, e.g. artist.
- **Show Program Related Images**: select whether or not to show images for programmes on the screen.
- **Select Announcements**: select the types of messages to be received while DAB is playing. Selected messages will interrupt the current media playback to play back the message. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.
  - **Alarm**: interrupts the current media playback and sends alerts about major accidents and disasters. Playback of previous media source is resumed when the message is finished.
  - **Traffic Flash**: receives information about traffic disruptions.
  - **News Flash**: receives news.
  - **Transport Flash**: receives information about public transport, e.g. ferry and train timetables.
  - **Warning/Services**: receives information about incidents of lower significance than the Alarm function, e.g. power failures.

[1] Not all stations support all message types.

* Option/accessory.

12.1.8. RDS radio

RDS (Radio Data System) means that the radio automatically changes to the strongest transmitter. RDS provides the ability to receive e.g. traffic information and to search for certain programme types.

RDS links FM transmitters into a network. An FM transmitter in such a network sends information that gives an RDS radio the following functions:

- Switch automatically to a stronger transmitter if reception in the area is poor.
- Search for programme category, e.g. programme types or traffic information.
- Receive text information on current radio programme.

> **Note**
>
> Some radio stations do not use RDS or only selected parts of its functionality.

When broadcasting news or traffic messages, the radio can switch stations, interrupting the audio source currently in use. The radio returns to the previous audio source and volume when the set programme type is no longer broadcast. To go back earlier, press ◯ on the right-hand steering wheel keypad or tap **Cancel** in the centre display.

12.1.9. Save radio channels in the Radio Favourites app

It is possible to add a radio channel to the **Radio favourites** app and the favourites list for the radio band (e.g. FM). Instructions on how to add and remove radio channels can be found below.

Radio Favourites

The Radio Favourites app shows saved radio channels from all frequency bands.

1. Open the app **Radio favourites** from the app view.
2. Tap on the desired station in the list to start listening.

Adding and removing radio favourites

1. Tap on ☆ to add a channel to or from frequency band favourites and the Radio Favourites app.
2. Tap on **Library**, select **Edit** and tap on 🗑 to remove a radio channel from the favourites.

When a radio channel is saved from a station list, the radio will automatically search for the best frequency. But if a radio channel is saved from a manual station search, the radio does not automatically change to a stronger frequency.

If a radio channel is removed from the Radio Favourite app, the channel will also be removed from the favourites list for the relevant frequency band.

12.2. Media player

12.2.1. Video

12.2.1.1. Video

Videos on USB-connected devices can be played back using the media player.

No picture is shown when the car starts to move, but only the audio is played back. The picture is shown again when the car is stationary.

Information on compatible formats for media can be found in a separate section.

12.2.1.2. Playing a video

Videos are played using the **USB** app in the app view.

1. Connecting a media source (USB device).
2. Open the app **USB** from the app view.
3. Tap on the title of the desired item to play back.

> Playback begins.

Finding video files may be problematic if the USB device also contains music and audio tracks. In this case, it is possible to find them by going to **Library** and selecting the video tab.

12.2.1.3. Playing back DivX®

This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play back purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) films.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Tap **Video** → **DivX® VOD** and retrieve the registration code.
3. Go to vod.divx.com for more information and to complete the registration.

12.2.1.4. Settings for video

Certain language settings can be changed for video playback.

With the video player in full screen mode, or by opening the top view and pressing **Settings** → **Media** → **Video**, the following can be adjusted: **Audio Language** and **Subtitle Language**.

12.2.2. Media via Bluetooth®

The car's media player is equipped with Bluetooth and can wirelessly play audio files from external Bluetooth devices, such as mobile phones and tablets.

For the media player to be able to play back audio files wirelessly from an external device, the device must first be connected to the car via Bluetooth.

12.2.3. Connecting a device via Bluetooth®

Connect a Bluetooth® device to the car for wireless playback of media and to provide the car with an Internet connection where possible.

Many phones on the market now have wireless Bluetooth® technology, but not all of them are fully compatible with the car.

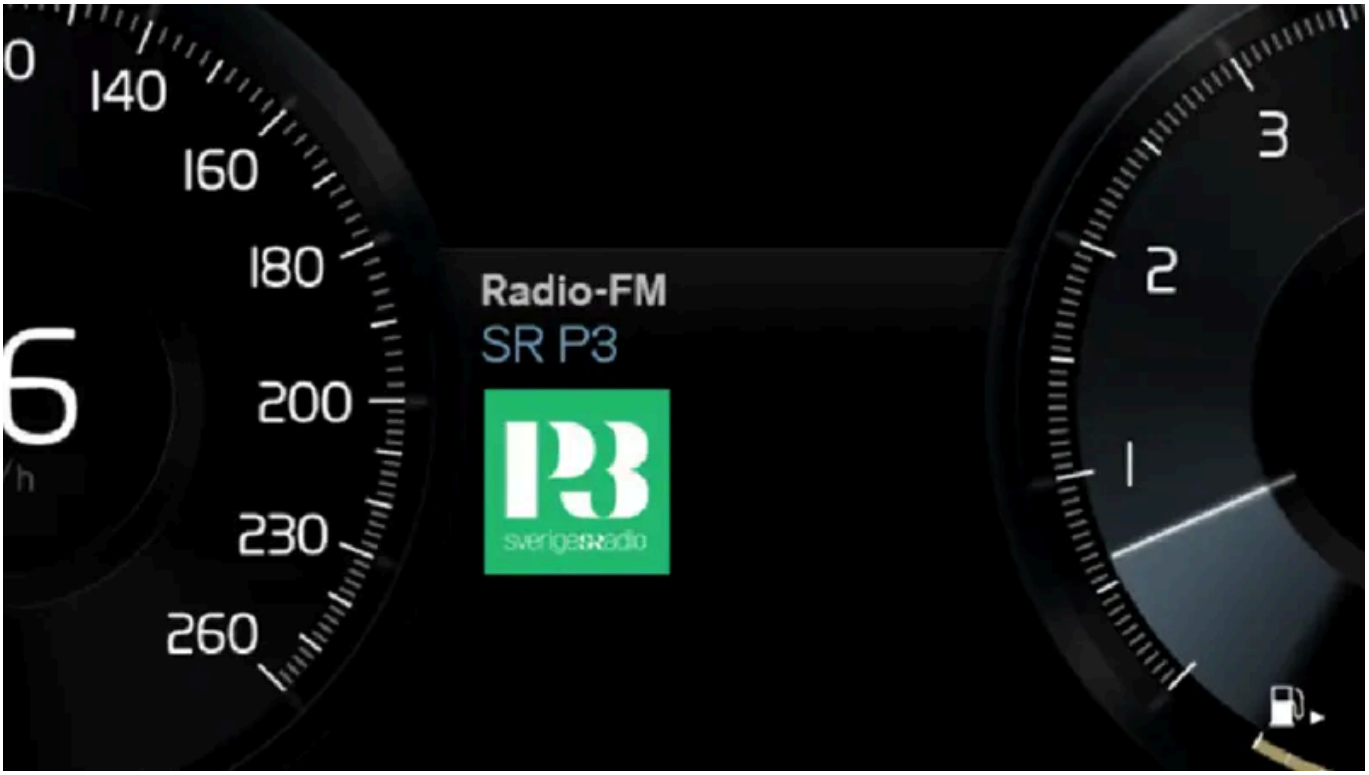
The procedure for connecting a media device is the same as for connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth® [1].

> **Note**
>
> Some phones require that the phone's Bluetoothvolume is manually set to 100% in order for the audio volume in the car to be sufficiently high. This setting needs to be made for each phone connected. The setting is made once for phone calls and once for streaming media. The system will then remember the setting and it does not need to be repeated next time the phone is connected.

[1] Note that the device must be connected for media playback in order for playback via Bluetooth to work.

12.2.4. Voice control of radio and media

Commands for radio and media player voice control are shown below[1].



Tap on and say one of the following commands:

- "**Media**" - starts a dialogue for media and radio and shows examples of commands.
- "**Play [artist]**" - plays back music by the selected artist.
- "**Play [song title]**" - plays back the selected song.
- "**Play [song title] from [album]**" - plays back the selected song from the selected album.
- "**Play [radio station]**" - starts playing back the selected radio channel.
- "**Tune to [frequency]**" - starts the selected radio frequency in the current frequency band. If no radio source is active, the FM band is started by default.
- "**Tune to [frequency] [wavelength]**" - starts the selected radio frequency in the selected frequency band.
- "**Radio**" - starts FM radio.
- "**Radio FM**" - starts FM radio.
- "**DAB** " - starts DAB radio*.
- "**USB**" - starts playback from USB.
- "**iPod**" - starts playback from iPod.
- "**Bluetooth**" - starts playback from a Bluetooth-connected media source.
- "**Similar music**" — plays back music similar to the music currently playing back from USB devices.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Note

Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

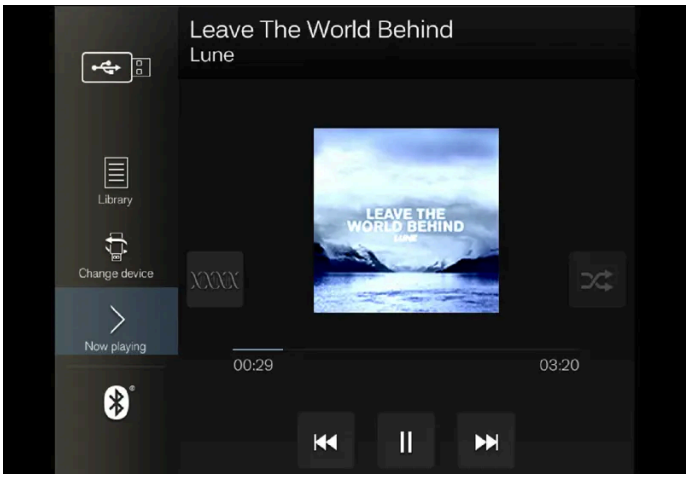
[1] Applies to certain markets.

* Option/accessory.

12.2.5. Media player

The media player can play back audio from external audio sources connected via the USB port or Bluetooth. It can also play back video format via the USB port.

When the car is connected to the internet, it is also possible to listen to web radio, audio books and music services via apps.



The media player is operated from the centre display, but several functions can be operated using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad or voice control.

The radio is operated in the media player and is described in a separate section.

12.2.6. Media playback

The media player is controlled from the centre display. Several functions can also be operated using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad or voice control.
The media player also operates the radio, which is described in a separate section.

Starting the media source

App view. (Generic image, basic apps vary by market and model.)

USB memory

1. Insert the USB memory.
2. Open the app **USB** from the app view.
3. Select what to play back.

> Playback begins.

Mp3 player and iPod®

> **Note**
>
> To start playback from iPod, use the iPod app (not USB).
>
> When an iPod is used as audio source, the car's audio and media system has a menu structure that is similar to the iPod player's own menu structure.

1. Connect media source.
2. Start playback from the connected media source.
3. Open the app (**iPod**, **USB**) from the app view.

> Playback begins.

Bluetooth connected device

1. Activate Bluetooth in the media source.
2. Connect media source[1].
3. Start playback from the connected media source.
4. Open the app **Bluetooth** from the app view.

> Playback begins.

> **Note**
>
> Some phones require that the phone's Bluetoothvolume is manually set to 100% in order for the audio volume in the car to be sufficiently high. This setting needs to be made for each phone connected. The setting is made once for phone calls and once for streaming media. The system will then remember the setting and it does not need to be repeated next time the phone is connected.

Media with Internet connection

Play back media from Internet-connected apps:

1. Connect the car to the Internet.
2. Open the current app from the app view.

> Playback begins.

Read the separate section on how apps are downloaded.

Video

1. Connect media source.
2. Open the app **USB** from the app view.
3. Tap on the title of the desired item to play back.

> Playback begins.

Apple CarPlay

CarPlay is described in a separate section.

Android Auto

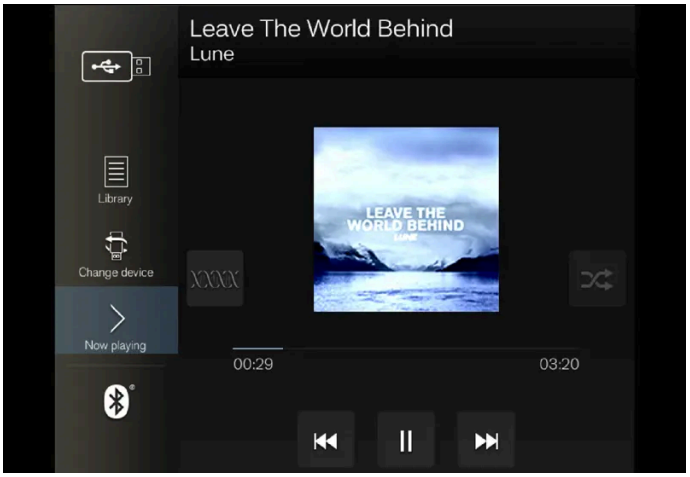
Android Auto is described in a separate section.

[1] Note that the device must be connected for media playback in order for playback via Bluetooth to work.

12.2.7. Controlling and changing media

The playback of media can be controlled with voice control, steering wheel keypad or the centre display.

The media player can be operated by voice control, from the steering wheel keypad or the centre display.



Volume - turn the control knob under the centre display or press ▲ ▼ on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad in order to increase or decrease the volume.

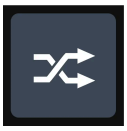
Play/pause - tap on the image belonging to the song being played back, the physical button under the centre display or ○ on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Change track/song - tap on the desired track in the centre display, press on ⏮ or ⏭ under the centre display or on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Fast forward/move in time - tap on the time axis in the centre display and drag sideways, or press and hold ⏮ or ⏭ under the centre display or on the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.

Changing media - select from previous sources in the app, in the app view, press on the desired app or select with the steering wheel's right-hand keypad via the app menu .

Library - tap on the button to play back from the library.



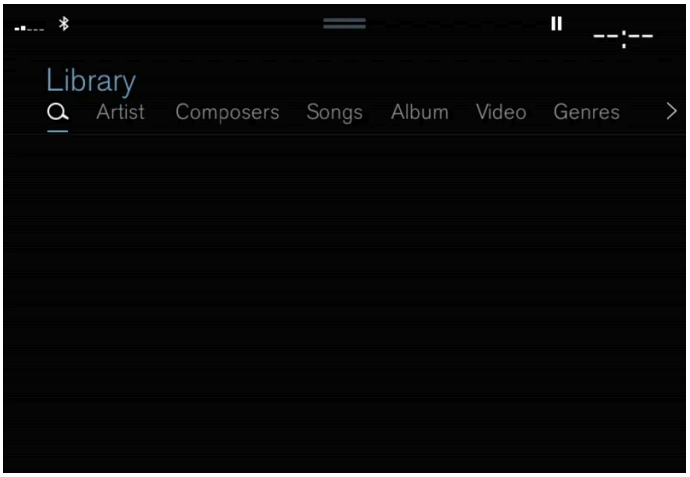
Shuffle - tap on the button to shuffle the playback order.

Similar - tap on the button in order to use Gracenote to search for similar music on the USB device and to create a playlist from it. The playlist can contain a maximum of 50 songs.

Change device - tap on the button in order to switch between USB devices when several are connected.

12.2.8. Searching media

It is possible to search by artist, composer, song titles, album, video, audio book, playlist and, when the car is connected to the Internet, podcasts (digital media via Internet).



1 Press .

> Search view with keyboard is opened.

2 Enter the search terms.

3 Press **Search**.

> Connected devices are searched and the search results are listed by category.

Swipe sideways across the screen to show each category separately.

12.2.9. Compatible media formats

The following file formats must be used for media playback.

Audio files

Format	File extension	Codec
MP3	.mp3	MPEG1 Layer III, MPEG2 Layer III, MP3 Pro (mp3 compatible), MP3 HD (mp3 compatible)
AAC	.m4a, .m4b, .aac	AAC LC (MPEG-4 part III Audio), HE-AAC (aacPlus v1/v2)
WMA	.wma	WMA8/9, WMA9/10 Pro
WAV	.wav	LPCM
FLAC	.flac	FLAC

Video files

Format	File extension
MP4	.mp4, .m4v
MPEG-PS	.mpg, .mp2, .mpeg, .m1v
AVI	.avi
AVI (DivX)	.avi, .divx
ASF	.asf, .wmv

Subtitles

Format	File extension
SubViewer	.sub
SubRip	.srt
SSA	.ssa

DivX®

DivX certified devices have been tested for high-quality DivX (.divx, .avi) video playback. When you see the DivX logo, you have the freedom to play DivX films.

Profile	DivX Home Theater
Video codec	DivX, MPEG-4
Resolution	720x576
Bit rate	4.8Mbps
Frame rate	30 fps
File extension	.divx, .avi
Max file size	4 GB
Audio codec	MP3, AC3
Subtitles	XSUB
Special functions	Multiple subtitles, multiple audio, resume play
Reference	Meets all requirements of the DivX Home Theater profile. Visit divx.com for more information and software tools to convert your files into DivX Home Theater video.

12.2.10. Gracenote®

Gracenote identifies artist, album, song titles and associated images, which are shown during playback.

Gracenote MusicID® is a standard for music recognition. Information on the music can be presented by means of the identification and analysis of the metadata in the music files. Sometimes metadata from different sources can be inconsistent or inadequate.

Gracenote has support for phonetic processing of artist name, album titles and genres, and in this way, voice control can be used to play back music.

1 Press **Settings** in the top view.

2 Press **Media → Gracenote®**.

3 Select settings for Gracenote data:

- **Gracenote® Online Search** - searches in Gracenote's online database for playing media.
- **Gracenote® Multiple Results** - selects how to display Gracenote data if there are more than one search results.

1 - the file's original data are used.

2 - Gracenote data are used.

3 - Gracenote or original data can be selected.

- **None** - no results are shown.

Updating Gracenote

The content of the Gracenote database is updated continuously. Download the latest update to take advantage of improvements.

12.2.11. Updating Gracenote®

Volvo is constantly working to keep your car up to date. It is therefore a good idea to update Gracenote® at regular intervals. Updating occurs in two stages using an empty USB memory.

Download files and update Gracenote®

It is a good idea to update Gracenote® at regular intervals. A description of how to download update files and update Gracenote® in your Volvo can be found below.

Preparations

The files can be downloaded to an empty USB memory of at least 8 GB. The memory must have one of the following formats: FAT32, NTFS or exFAT.

Download program

Gracenote® files are downloaded using a program that is installed on your computer when you download update files.

Update Gracenote® files

To download update files for Gracenote®, go to volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] , select your market, and then click on **Downloads** in the top menu. Under the heading **Gracenote®**, click on **Update Gracenote** and then select the relevant system for your car. Then follow the instructions below:

Instructions

1. Depending on which system you have, select the download link for either Windows or Mac.
2. Select **Run**to install the download program.
3. Click on **New download** to download the file to a USB memory stick.
4. You can verify that the download/copying to the USB memory stick has worked correctly before you install the file in the car by repeating steps 1-2 and then pressing on **Check download** in the download program.
5. Take the USB memory with the downloaded file to your car and switch on the infotainment system.
6. Insert the USB memory in the USB port. If there are two USB ports, the second one must not be used at the same time.

The position of this port may vary depending on the car model.

7. The system automatically detects the availability of an update and a message appears on screen showing that updating is in progress.
8. When installation is complete, a notification is displayed indicating that the update has been installed. The USB memory can now be removed.

   If there are any problems with the update, contact your customer support or Volvo dealer.

Updating tips

- An update takes about 15 minutes and the infotainment system must be on. Use a battery charger or keep the car's engine running while the update is in progress, for example during a journey.
- Gracenote® is updated all the time. Keep an eye out for new updates.

12.2.12. Media via USB port

An external audio source, e.g. an iPod® or MP3 player, can be connected to the audio system via the car's USB port.

Devices with rechargeable batteries are recharged when connected via USB and the ignition is in position **I**, **II** or the engine is running.

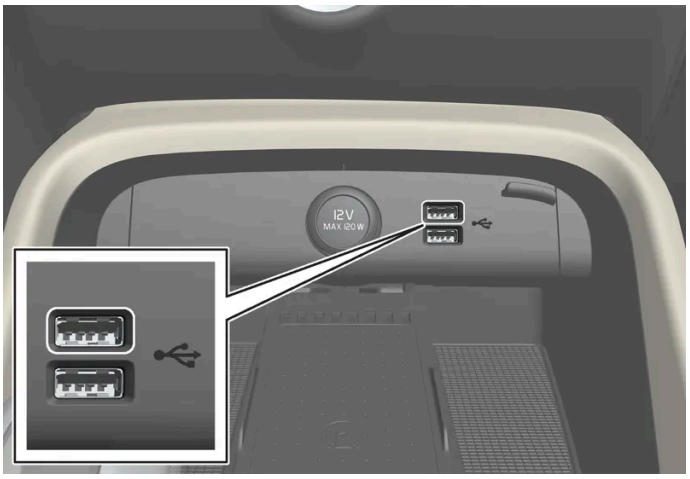
The content of the external source can be loaded more quickly if it only consists of compatible formats. Video files can also be played back via the USB port.

Certain MP3 players have their own file system that the car does not support.

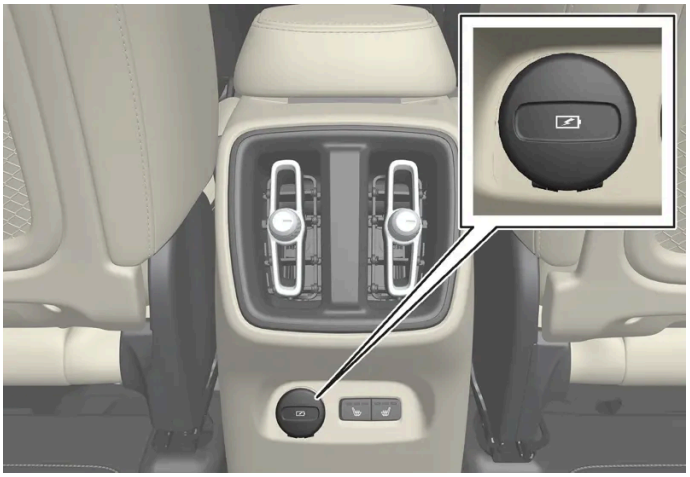
12.2.13. Connecting a device via USB port

An external audio source, e.g. an iPod® or MP3 player, can be connected to the audio system via one of the car's USB ports.

The phone must be connected to the USB port with white frame (when there are two USB ports) when using Apple CarPlay* and Android Auto*.



USB ports (type A) under the centre display.



USB ports* (type C) on rear of tunnel console for charging phones and tablets[1], for example.

* Option/accessory.

[1] It is not possible to playback media in the car's audio or media system via this port.

12.2.14. Technical specifications for USB devices

The following specifications must be met to allow the contents of the USB devices to be read.

No folder structure will be shown in the centre display during playback.

	Max number
Files	15 000
Folder levels	8
Folders	1 000
Items in a playlist	1 000
Playlists	100
Subfolders	No limit

Technical specification for USB A connector

- Type A socket
- Version 2.0
- Voltage supply 5 V
- Current supply max. 2.1 A

Technical specification for USB C connector

- Type C socket
- Version 3.1
- Voltage supply 5 V
- Current supply max. 3.0 A

12.3. Phone

12.3.1. Phone connection

12.3.1.1. Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth automatically

It is possible to connect a phone to the car automatically via Bluetooth. The phone has to have been connected to the car for the first time.

It is only the two last connected phones that can be connected automatically.

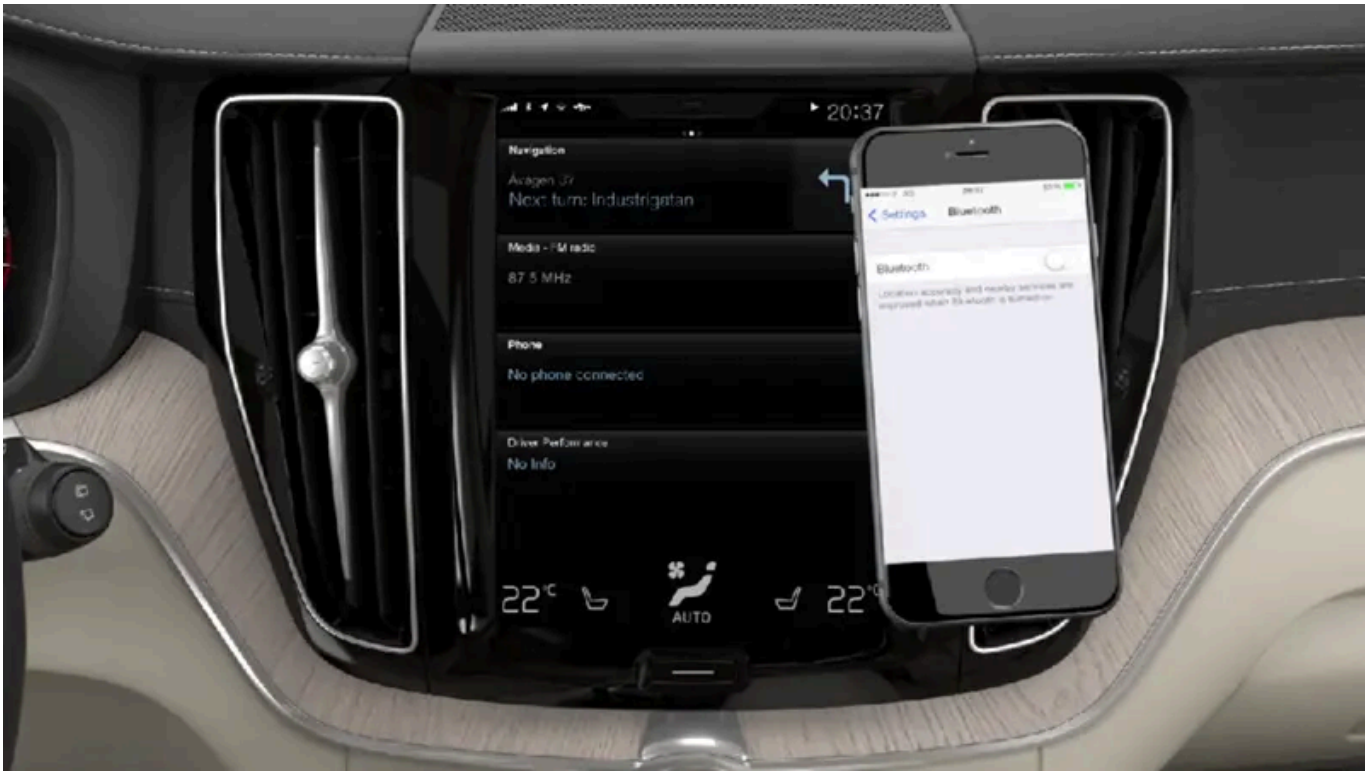
1 Activate Bluetooth in the phone before setting the car in ignition position I.

2 Set the car in ignition position I or higher.

> The phone will connect.

12.3.1.2. Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth for the first time

Connect a phone with Bluetooth activated to then be able to make calls from the car, send/receive messages, play back media wirelessly and connect the car to the Internet.



It is possible to have two Bluetooth devices connected at once, in which case one of them can only play back wirelessly. The most recently connected phone will automatically be connected to make calls, send/receive messages, play back media and provide an Internet connection [1]. It is possible to change what the phone is to be used for under **Bluetooth Devices** via the settings menu in the centre display's top view. Your mobile phone needs to be equipped with Bluetooth and support tethering.

After the device has been connected/registered a first time via Bluetooth, it no longer needs to be visible/discoverable, but only have Bluetooth activated. A maximum of 20 connected Bluetooth devices can be stored in the car.

If you have a new device and it has the same name as one you have previously connected to the car, you may first have to delete the old device from the car's list of previously connected devices. After that, the new device is connected as normal.

There are two options for connecting. Either search the phone from the car or search the car from the phone.

Option 1 - search phone from car

1 Make the phone searchable/visible via Bluetooth.

2 Open the phone tile in the centre display.
- If there is no phone connected to the car, tap on **Add phone**.
- If there is a phone connected to the car, tap on **Change**. In the pop-up window, tap on **Add phone**.

> Available Bluetooth devices are listed. The list is updated as new devices are detected.

3 Tap on the name of the phone to be connected.

4 Check that the specified number code in the car matches that in the phone. In which case, choose to accept in both places.

5 On the phone, choose to accept or reject any options for phone contacts and messages.

Note

- The message function must be activated in certain phones.
- Not all phones are fully compatible and may therefore not show contacts and messages in the car.

Option 2 - search car from phone

1 Open the phone tile in the centre display.
- If there is no phone connected to the car, tap on **Add phone** → **Make car discoverable**.
- If there is a phone connected to the car, tap on **Change**. In the pop-up window, tap on **Add phone** → **Make car discoverable**.

2 Activate Bluetooth on the phone.

3 Search on the phone for Bluetooth devices.

> Available Bluetooth devices are listed.

4 Select the name of the car on the phone.

5 A pop-up window for the connection is shown in the car. Confirm the connection.

6 Check that the specified number code in the car matches the one shown in the external device. In which case, choose to accept in both places.

7 On the phone, choose to accept or reject any options for phone contacts and messages.

Note

- The message function must be activated in certain phones.
- Not all phones are fully compatible and may therefore not show contacts and messages in the car.

Note

If the phone's operating system is updated then the connection may be broken. In which case, delete the phone from the car and then connect again.

[1] You can also adjust manually under the settings.

12.3.1.3. Disconnecting a Bluetooth-connected phone

It is possible to disconnect a phone connected to Bluetooth, and it will then no longer be connected to the car.

- When the phone is out of range of the car it is automatically disconnected. If disconnection occurs during an active call, then the call will be continued on the phone.
- It is also possible to disconnect the phone by manually deactivating Bluetooth.

12.3.1.4. Switch between Bluetooth-connected phones

It is possible to switch between a number of Bluetooth-connected phones.

1 Open the subview for phone.

2 Tap on **Change** or drag down the top view and tap on **Settings** → **Communication** → **Bluetooth Devices** → **Add device**.

> Available Bluetooth devices are listed.

3 Tap on the phone to be connected.

12.3.1.5. Removing devices connected to Bluetooth

It is possible to remove phones from the list of registered Bluetooth devices, for example.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication** → **Bluetooth Devices**.

> Registered Bluetooth devices are listed.

3. Tap on the device to be removed.
4. Tap on **Remove device** and confirm your selection.

> The device is no longer registered to the car.

If you have a new device and it has the same name as one you have previously connected to the car, you may first have to delete the old device from the car's list of previously connected devices. After that, the new device is connected as normal.

12.3.1.6. Bluetoothprofiles for Sensus Connect

Sensus Connect IHU[1] supports Bluetooth Core version 2.1+EDR[2]. The table provides information about which Bluetoothprofiles are supported by your car's infotainment system. (The article is relevant for cars with the Sensus Connect IHU 3.2 infotainment system.)

Centre display for Sensus Connect.

Profile	Version
Hands-Free Profile (HFP)	Hands-Free (HF)
	HFP-version 1.6
Phone Book Access Profile (PBAP)	Phone Book Client Equipment (PCE)
	PBAP version 1.0

Profile	Version
Audio/Video Remote Control Profile (AVRCP)	Controller (CT)
	AVRCP version 1.4
Advanced Audio Distrubtion Profile (A2DP)	Sink (SNK)
	A2DP version 1.2
Object Push Profile (OPP)	Object Push Server

IHU versions per car model and date of manufacture

Model	Week of manufacture/Structure week	Version
All 40-models XC40 and XC40 Recharge	From week 17, 2018	IHU 3.2
All 60-models S60, S60 Recharge, V60, V60 Recharge, V60 Cross Country, XC60 and XC60 Recharge	From week 17, 2018	IHU 3.2
All 90-models S90, S90 Recharge, V90, V90 Recharge, V90 Cross Country, XC90 and XC90 Recharge	From week 17, 2018	IHU 3.2

[1] Infotainment Head Unit

[2] Enhanced Data Rate

12.3.1.7. Connecting a phone to the car via Bluetooth manually

It is possible to connect a phone to the car manually via Bluetooth. The phone has to have been connected to the car for the first time.

1 Activate Bluetooth on the phone.

2 Open the subview for phone.

> Connected phones are listed.

3 Tap on the name of the phone to be connected.

> The phone will connect.

12.3.2. Apple CarPlay

12.3.2.1. Apple® CarPlay® *

CarPlay [1] gives you the option to listen to music, make phone calls, get directions, send/receive messages and use Siri, all while you stay focused on your driving.

CarPlay works with selected iOS devices. If the car does not already support CarPlay there is the option to install it retroactively. Contact a Volvo dealer to install CarPlay.

Information about which apps are supported and which iOS devices are compatible is available on Apple's website: www.apple.com/ios/carplay/ [https://www.apple.com/ios/carplay/] . Using apps that are not compatible with CarPlay may sometimes mean that the connection between the device and the car is interrupted. Please note that Volvo is not responsible for the content in CarPlay.

When using map navigation via CarPlay no guidance is shown in the driver display, but only in the centre display.

When navigation is started through Apple CarPlay, ongoing native turn-by-turn route guidance will be ended.

The CarPlay apps can be controlled via the centre display, the iOS device or using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad (applies to certain functions). The apps can also be voice-controlled using Siri. A long press on the steering wheel button starts voice control using Siri and a short press activates the car's own voice control. If Siri breaks off too early, hold the steering wheel button depressed [2].

By using Apple CarPlay you acknowledge the following: Apple CarPlay is a service provided by Apple Inc. under its terms and conditions. Volvo Cars is thus not responsible for Apple CarPlay or its features/applications. When using Apple CarPlay, certain information from your car (including its position) is transferred to your iPhone. In relation to Volvo Cars, you are fully responsible for your and any others person's use of Apple CarPlay.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

[2] Apple and CarPlay are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

12.3.2.2. Using Apple® CarPlay® *

To use CarPlay[1], Siri voice control must be activated on your iOS device. The device also needs an Internet connection via Wi-Fi or the mobile network for all functions to work.

Connect an iOS device and start CarPlay

> **Note**
>
> CarPlay can only be used if Bluetooth is deactivated. A phone or media player connected to the car via Bluetooth will therefore not be available when CarPlay is active. An alternative Internet source must be used to connect to the Internet for the car's apps. Use Wi-Fi or the car's built-in modem*.

To start CarPlay from an iOS device that has not been connected previously:

1. Connect an iOS device with support for CarPlay to the USB port. In the cases where there are two USB ports, the one with the white frame around the port must be used.
2. Read the terms and conditions and then tap on **Accept** to connect.

> The subview with CarPlay is opened and compatible apps are shown.

3. Tap on the desired app.

> The app starts.

Starting CarPlay

To start CarPlay from an iOS device that has been connected previously:

1 Connect an iOS device to the USB port. In the cases where there are two USB ports, the one with the white frame around the port must be used.

> **If the setting for automatic start is selected** - the name of the device will be shown. The tile with CarPlay is opened automatically in the cases where the home view is shown when connecting the iOS device.

2 If the tile with CarPlay does not open automatically, tap on the device name. The subview with CarPlay is opened and compatible apps are shown.

3 If an app is active in the same tile, tap on **Apple CarPlay** in the app view.

> The subview with CarPlay is opened and compatible apps are shown.

4 Tap on the desired app.

> The app starts.

CarPlay runs in the background if another app is started, or is already active when connecting, in the same tile. To show CarPlay in the subview again - tap on the CarPlay icon in the app view.

Switch the connection between CarPlay and iPod

CarPlay to iPod

1 Press **Settings** in the top view.

2 Continue to **Communication** → **Apple CarPlay**.

3 Untick the box for the iOS device that shall no longer start CarPlay automatically when the USB cable is connected.

4 Disconnect and connect the iOS device to the USB port.

5 Open the app **iPod** from the app view.

iPod to CarPlay

1 Tap on **Apple CarPlay** in the app view.

2 Read the information in the pop-up window and then tap on **OK**.

3 Disconnect and connect the iOS device to the USB port.

> The subview with Apple CarPlay is opened and compatible apps are shown [2].

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

[2] Apple, CarPlay, iPhone and iPod are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

12.3.2.3. Tips for using Apple® CarPlay® *

Here are some useful tips for using CarPlay® [1].

- Update your iOS device with the latest version of the iOS operating system and ensure that the apps have been updated.
- In the event of a problem with CarPlay, disconnect the iOS device from the USB port and reconnect. Otherwise, try to close the app on the device that is not working and then restart the app, or try closing all apps and restart your device.
- If the apps do not appear when CarPlay starts (black screen), try minimising and expanding the tile for CarPlay.
- Using apps that are not compatible with CarPlay may sometimes mean that the connection between the iOS device and the car is broken. Information about supported apps and compatible telephone devices can be found on the Apple website. You can also search for CarPlay in the App Store to find information about apps that are compatible with CarPlay on your market.
- Using Siri it is possible to write/dictate and read out messages. Messages are read out and dictated in the language selected in the settings for Siri. When the message is written/dictated, no text will be shown in the centre display – instead, the text will appear on the iOS device. When Siri is used, note that the telephone's microphones are used and that the quality is therefore dependent on the position of the telephone.
- If the device is connected to the car via Bluetooth, the connection will be interrupted when CarPlay is used. Resume the Internet connection in the car by sharing the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot from the device.
- Some of the CarPlay functions (such as voice call and messages) mean that use of the car's own functions is stopped and CarPlay is shown automatically instead. If this behaviour is not wanted, deselect the display of the equivalent function in CarPlay under the phone's settings for notifications.
- CarPlay only works with iPhone[2].

> **Note**
>
> Availability and functionality may vary depending on market.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

[2] Apple, CarPlay and iPhone are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

12.3.2.4. Settings for Apple® CarPlay® *

Settings for iOS device connected with CarPlay[1], [2].

Automatic start

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Continue to **Communication** → **Apple CarPlay** and select setting:
   - Tick the box - CarPlay starts automatically when the USB cable is connected.
   - Untick the box - CarPlay does not start automatically when the USB cable is connected.

If the car is shared by a lot of people, such as in a car pool, it is worth noting that a maximum of 20 iOS devices can be stored simultaneously in the list. When the list is full and a new device is connected the oldest one is deleted.

To delete the list, the settings must be reset in the centre display (factory reset).

System volumes

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Tap on **Sound** → **System Volumes** and make the settings for the following:
   - **Voice Control**
   - **Navi Voice Guidance**
   - **Phone Ringtone**

* Option/accessory.

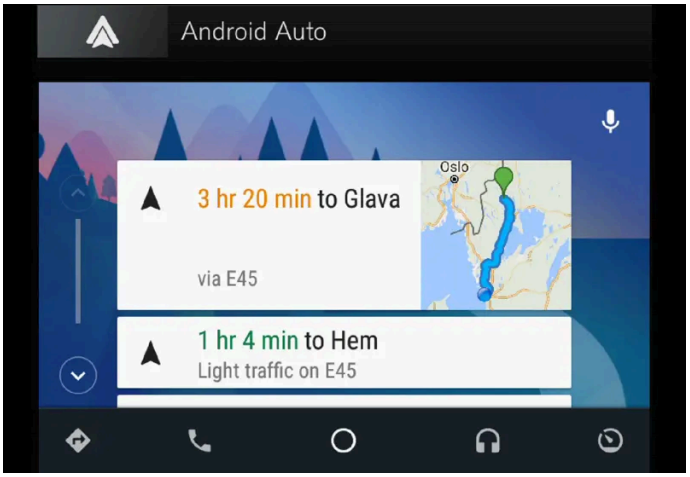
[1] Apple and CarPlay are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

[2] Availability may vary depending on market.

12.3.3. Android Auto

12.3.3.1. Android Auto*

Android Auto[1] gives you the option to listen to music, make phone calls, get directions and use car-adapted apps from an Android device. Android Auto works with selected Android devices.



Information about which apps are supported and which Android devices are compatible is available on the website: www.android.com/auto/ [https://www.android.com/auto/] . For third-party apps, see Google Play. Please note that Volvo is not responsible for the content in Android Auto.

Android Auto is started from the app view. After Android Auto has been started once, the app will be started automatically the next time the device is connected. Automatic start can be deactivated under settings.

> **Note**
>
> When a device is connected to Android Auto it is possible to stream via Bluetooth to another media player. Bluetooth is active while Android Auto is being used.

When using map navigation via Android Auto there is no guidance in the driver display, but only in the centre display.

Android Auto can be controlled via the centre display using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad or voice control. A long press on the steering wheel button starts Google Assistant and a short press deactivates it.

By using Android Auto, you acknowledge the following: Android Auto is a service provided by Google Inc. under its terms and conditions. Volvo Cars is not responsible for Android Auto or its features or applications. When you use Android Auto, your car transfers certain information (including its location) to your connected Android phone. You are fully responsible for your and any other person's use of Android Auto.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

12.3.3.2. Using Android Auto*

To use the **Android Auto**[1] app, the app must be installed on your Android device and the device must be connected to the car's USB port.

> **Note**
>
> For installation of Android Auto to be possible, the car must be equipped with two USB ports (USB hub)*. If the car only has one USB port, it is not possible to use Android Auto.

The first time an Android is connected

1. Connect your Android device to the USB port with a white frame.
2. Read the information in the pop-up window and then tap on **OK**.
3. Tap on **Android Auto** in the app view.
4. Read the terms and conditions and then tap on **Accept** to connect.

> The subview with Android Auto is opened and compatible apps are shown.

5. Tap on the desired app.

> The app starts.

Previously connected Android

1 Connect your device to the USB port with a white frame.

> **If the setting for automatic start is selected** - the name of the device is shown.

2 Tap on the device name – the tile with Android Auto is opened and compatible apps are shown.

3 **If the setting for automatic start is not selected** - open the **Android Auto** app from the app view.

> The subview with Android Auto is opened and compatible apps are shown.

4 Tap on the desired app.

> The app starts.

Android Auto runs in the background if another app is started in the same subview. To show Android Auto in the subview again - tap on the Android Auto icon in the app view.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

12.3.3.3. Tips for using Android Auto*

Here are some useful tips for using Android Auto[1].

- Ensure that your apps are updated.
- When starting the car, wait until the centre display has started, connect the device and then open Android Auto from the app view.
- In the event of problems with Android Auto, disconnect your Android device from the USB port and then reconnect via USB. Otherwise, try closing the app on the device and then restarting the app.
- When a device is connected to Android Auto it is still possible to playback media via Bluetooth to another media player. The Bluetooth function is on when Android Auto is used.
- If the icon for Android Auto is greyed out, this means no device is connected. When you connect your device the icon will be illuminated. If the icon is not visible at all then the car does not have support for connecting a device for this purpose.
- If the device is connected to the car via Bluetooth, the connection will be interrupted when Android Auto is used. Resume the Internet connection in the car by sharing the Internet via the Wi-Fi hotspot from the device.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

12.3.3.4. Settings for Android Auto*

Settings for an Android device that has been connected for the first time with Android Auto[1].

Automatic start

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication** → **Android Auto** and select setting:
   - Tick the box - Android Auto starts automatically when the USB cable is connected.
   - Untick the box - Android Auto does not start automatically when the USB cable is connected.

A maximum of 20 Android devices can be stored in the list. When the list is full and a new device is connected the oldest one is deleted.

A factory reset has to be executed in order to clear the list.

System volumes

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Tap on **Sound** → **System Volumes** and make the settings for the following:
   - **Voice Control**
   - **Navi Voice Guidance**
   - **Phone Ringtone**

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

12.3.4. Settings for Bluetooth devices

Settings for Bluetooth-connected devices.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication** → **Bluetooth Devices** and select settings:

- **Add device** - starts the pairing of a new device.
- **Previously paired devices** - lists registered/paired devices.
- **Remove device** - removes the connected device.
- **Allowed services for this device** - sets device usage options: calling, sending/receiving messages, streaming media and as Internet connection.
- **Internet connection** - connects the car to the Internet via the device's Bluetooth connection.

> **Note**
>
> Some phones require that the phone's Bluetoothvolume is manually set to 100% in order for the audio volume in the car to be sufficiently high. This setting needs to be made for each phone connected. The setting is made once for phone calls and once for streaming media. The system will then remember the setting and it does not need to be repeated next time the phone is connected.

12.3.5. Bluetooth compatibility with phones

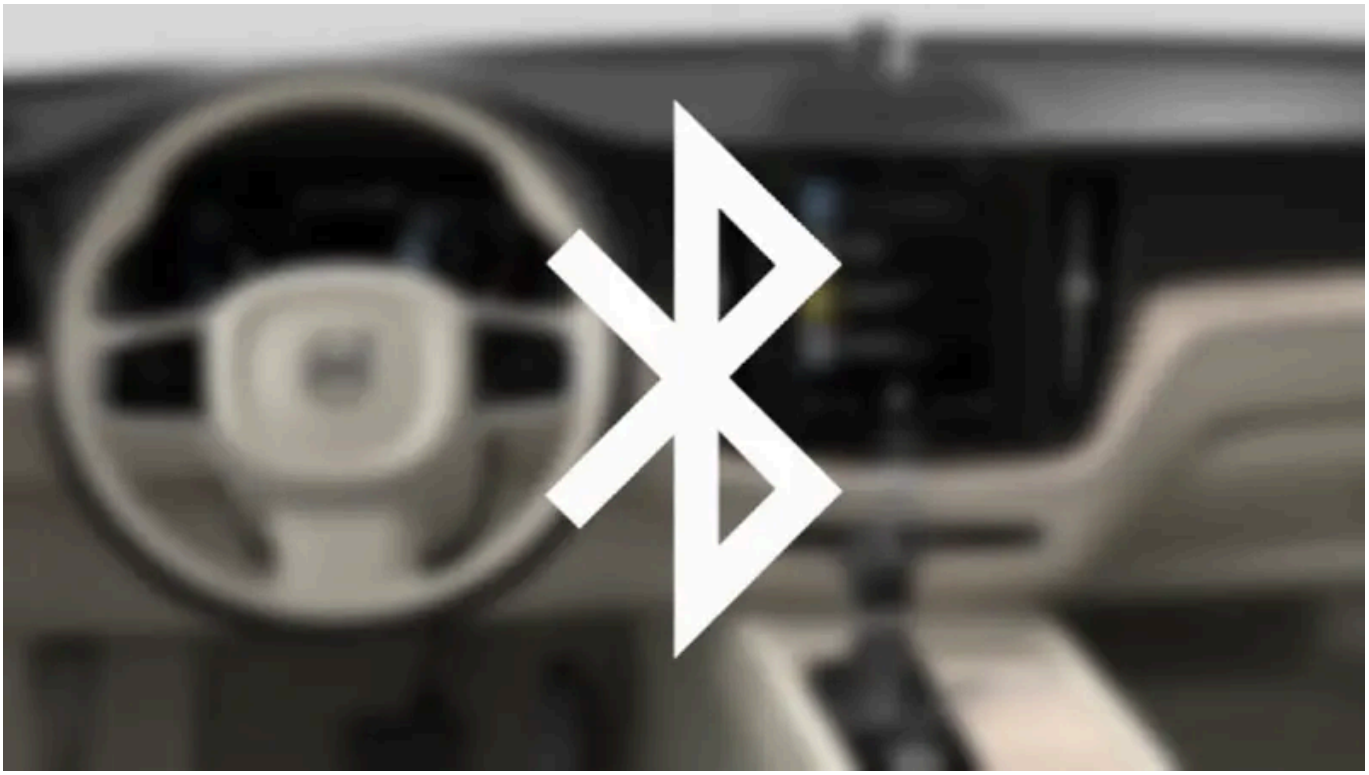
Bluetooth is a wireless technology that enables connectivity between multiple media devices. To connect a phone to Volvo's Bluetooth system, the phone must be compatible with the car.

Compatible phones and functions

Not all phones are compatible with Volvo's Bluetooth system. The phones that can be connected to Volvo's Bluetooth system may also have different functions, and not all functions in the system are available on all phones.

12.3.6. Connect the car to the Internet via a Bluetooth-enabled phone

Create an Internet connection via Bluetooth by sharing your phone's Internet access and access several online services in the car.



1 To be able to connect the car to the Internet via a Bluetooth-connected phone, the phone has to have already been connected to the car via Bluetooth for a first time.

2 Make sure that your phone supports tethering and that this function is activated. On an iPhone, this function is known as "tethering". On Android phones, this function may have different names but is frequently known as "hotspot". For iPhones, the menu page "tethering" must also be open until the Internet connection has been established.

3 If the phone has been connected via Bluetooth previously, press **Settings** in the centre display top view.

4 Press **Communication** → **Bluetooth Devices**.

5 Tick the box for **Bluetooth Internet connection** under the heading **Internet connection**.

6 If another connection source has been used, confirm the option to change connection.

> Your car is now connected to the Internet via the Bluetooth-connected phone.

Note

The telephone and network provider must support tethering (Internet connection sharing), and the subscription must include data.

Note

When using Apple CarPlay, it is only possible to connect the car to the Internet using Wi-Fi or the car modem*.

* Option/accessory.

12.3.7. Phone

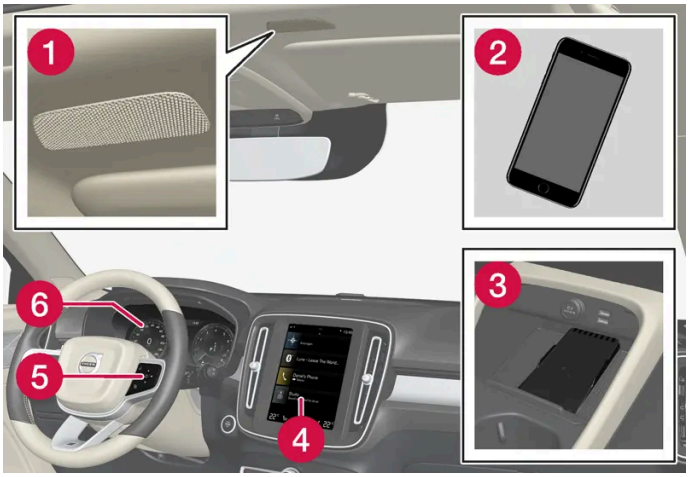
A phone with Bluetooth can be connected wirelessly to the car's built-in hands-free system.

The audio and media system acts as hands-free, with the facility to remotely control a selection of the phone's functions. The phone can still be operated with its own keys even if it is connected to the car.

When a phone has been connected online and connected with the car, it can be used make calls, send/receive messages, play back media wirelessly and be used as an Internet connection.

The phone is operated from the centre display, but also via voice control and the app menu, which are accessed from the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

Overview



1 Microphone.

2 Phone.

3 Wireless phone charger.

4 Phone operation from centre display.

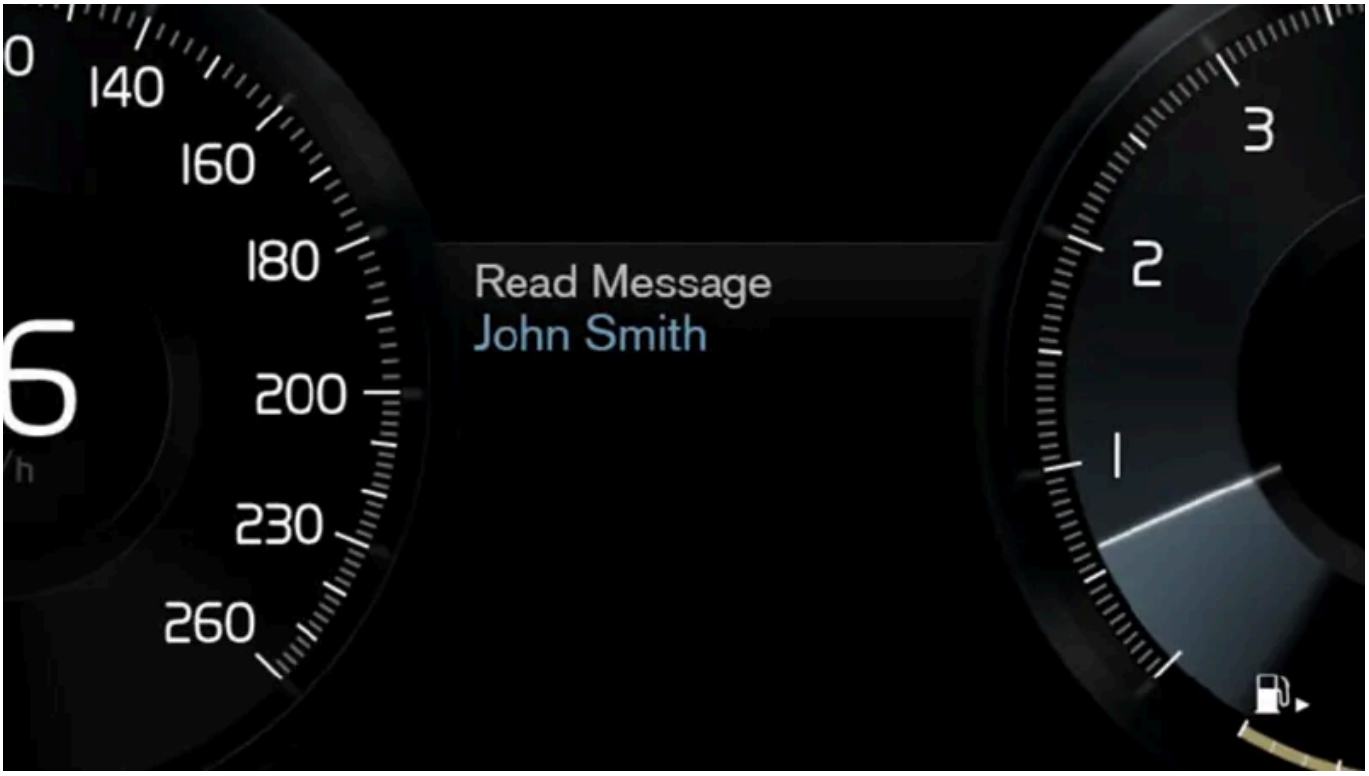
5 Keypad for operating phone functions that are shown in the driver display and voice control.

6 Driver display.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

12.3.8. Controlling a telephone with voice control

Call a contact, have messages read aloud or dictate brief messages with voice control commands to a Bluetooth connected telephone. [1]



To specify a contact in the phone book, the voice control command must include contact information that is entered in the phone book. If a contact, e.g. **Robyn Smith**, has several phone numbers then the number category can also be stated, e.g. **Home** or **Mobile**: "**Call Robin Smith Mobile**".

Press and say one of the following commands:

- "**Call [contact]**" - dials the selected contact from the phone book.
- "**Call [phone number]**" - dials the phone number.
- "**Recent calls**" - displays the call list.
- "**Read message**" - message is read out. If there are several messages - select which message should be read out.
- "**Message to [contact]**" - the user is prompted to speak a short message. The message is then repeated aloud and the user can choose to send[2] or revise the message. For this function to work, the car must be connected to the Internet.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] Only certain phones can send messages via the car.

12.3.9. Settings for phone

When the telephone is connected to the car, the following settings can be made:

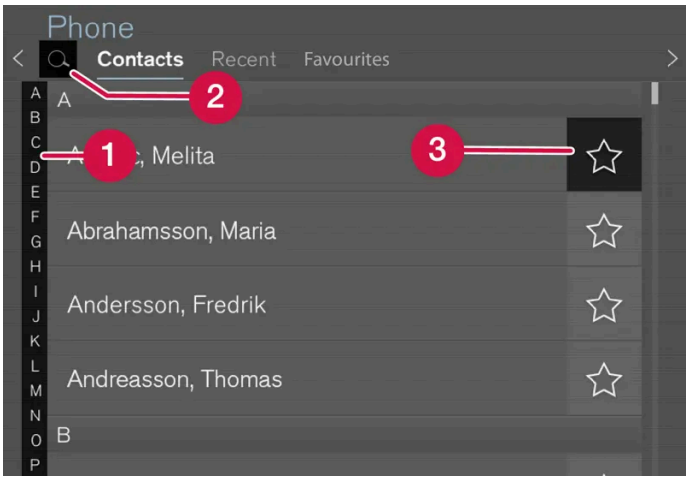
1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication** → **Phone** and select settings:
   - **Ringtones** - select ringtone. It is possible to use a ringtone from the phone or the car. Some phones are not fully compatible and their ringtones may therefore not be available for use in the car.
   - **Sort Order** - select sort order of contact list.

> **Note**
>
> Some phones require that the phone's Bluetoothvolume is manually set to 100% in order for the audio volume in the car to be sufficiently high. This setting needs to be made for each phone connected. The setting is made once for phone calls and once for streaming media. The system will then remember the setting and it does not need to be repeated next time the phone is connected.

12.3.10. Managing the phone book

When a phone is connected to the car with Bluetooth, contacts can be managed directly in the centre display.

Up to 3000 contacts can be shown from the phone selected in the centre display.



1 Browse between the letters and # to find a matching contact. Depending on existing contacts in the phone book, only matching letters are shown.

2 **Search contacts** - tap on to search for a phone number of name in the contact list.

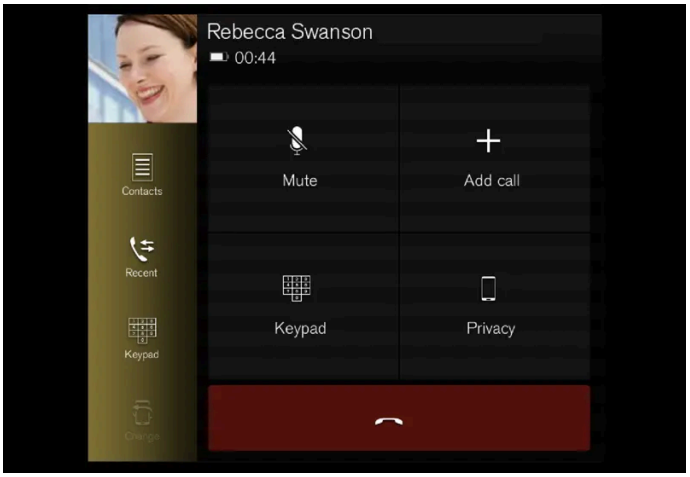
3 **Favourites** - tap on ☆ to add/remove a contact to/from the favourites list.

Sorting

The contact list is sorted in alphabetical order where special characters and numbers are sorted under # . It is possible to sort by first name or surname, and this setting is adjusted in the telephone setup.

12.3.11. Managing phone calls

Call handling in the car for a Bluetooth-connected phone.



The figure is schematic.

Making phone calls

1. Open the subview for phone.
2. Select call from call history, enter number using the keypad or via the contact list. It is possible to search or browse in the contact list. Tap on ☆ in the contact list in order to add a contact under **Favourites**.
3. Press to make a call.
4. Tap on to end the call.

You can also make calls from the call log via the app menu, which is accessed from the right-hand steering wheel keypad.

Making multi-party calls

During a call:

1. Press **Add call**.
2. Choose to make a call from the call log, favourites or the contact list.
3. Tap on an entry/row in the call log, or tap on alongside the contact in the contact list.
4. Tap on **Swap call** to switch between the parties.
5. Tap on to end the active call.

Conference calls

During an active multi-party call:

1. Tap on **Join calls** to merge the active multi-party call.
2. Tap on to end the call.

Incoming phone calls

Incoming phone calls are shown in the driver display and the centre display. Manage the call on the right-hand steering wheel keypad or in the centre display.

1. Tap on **Answer**/**Reject**.

2 Tap on to end the call.

Incoming phone call during an active call

1 Tap on **Answer/Reject**.

2 Tap on to end the call.

Private call

1 During the current call, press **Privacy** and select setting:

- **Switch to mobile phone** - the handsfree function is disconnected and the call continues on your mobile phone.
- **Driver focused** - the microphone in the roof on the passenger side is switched off and the call continues with the car's handsfree function.

> **Note**
>
> Some phones require that the phone's Bluetoothvolume is manually set to 100% in order for the audio volume in the car to be sufficiently high. This setting needs to be made for each phone connected. The setting is made once for phone calls and once for streaming media. The system will then remember the setting and it does not need to be repeated next time the phone is connected.

12.3.12. Managing text messages

Message handling in the car for a Bluetooth-connected phone. [1]

In some phones, the message function must be activated. Not all phones are compatible. In such cases, they cannot display contacts and messages in the car.

Managing text messages in the centre display

Text messages are only shown in the centre display if the setting is selected.

Press **Messages** in the app view to manage text messages in the centre display.

Reading text messages in the centre display

Press the icon to get the message read aloud.

Sending text messages in the centre display[2]

1. You can reply to a message or create a new message.
   - Reply to message - tap on the contact whose message you wish to reply to, then tap on **Answer**.
   - Create new message - tap on **Create new**. Select a contact or enter a number.
2. Compose the message.
3. Press **Send**.

Managing text messages in the driver display

Text messages are only shown in the driver display if the setting is selected.

Reading a new text message in the driver display

1. To have the message read aloud – select **Read out** with the steering wheel keypad.

Dictating a reply in the driver display

After the text message has been read out, it is possible to reply briefly with dictation if the car is connected to the Internet.

1. Press **Answer** with the steering wheel keypad. A dictation dialogue starts.

Message notification

It is possible to activate and deactivate notifications in the text message settings.

[1] Valid in certain markets only. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

[2] Only certain phones can send messages via the car. The connected phone must support the Bluetooth profile Message Access Profile (MAP).

12.3.13. Settings for text messages

Settings for text messages on connected phone.

1 Press **Settings** in the top view.

2 Press **Communication** → **Text Messages** and select settings:

- **Notification in centre display** - shows message notifications in the centre display's status bar.
- **Notification in driver display** - displays notifications in the driver's display and incoming messages can be managed using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad.
- **Text message tone** - select tone for incoming text messages.

12.3.14. Wireless phone charger*

There is a charging plate for wireless phone charging located in the tunnel console.

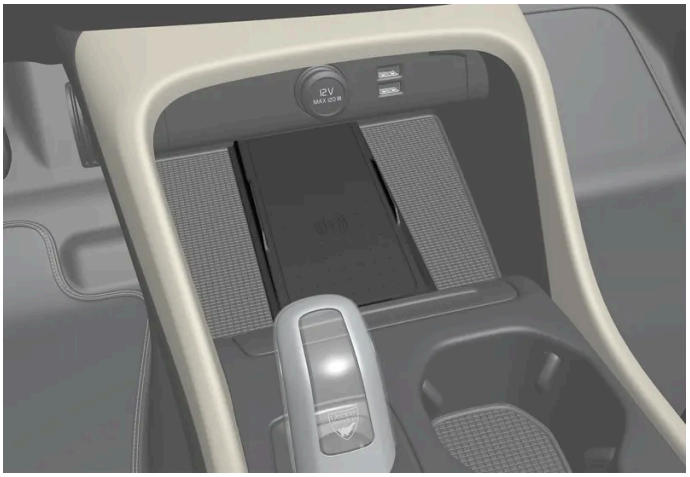
A condition for being able to charge the phone is that it supports wireless charging (Qi). Phones not equipped with wireless charging receivers can often be supplemented with a shell that makes wireless charging possible.

> **Warning**
>
> Wireless charging may affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.

* Option/accessory.

12.3.15. Using the wireless phone charger*

The rubber plate under the centre display makes it possible to charge phones without the need to use the phone's cable.



Wireless phone charger in front of gear lever

Warning

Wireless charging may affect the operation of an implanted pacemaker or other medical devices. If you have one, it is recommended to consult with your doctor before using the wireless charging system.

To use the wireless charging plate:

1 Remove all other objects from the charging plate and position the phone in the centre of the charging plate.

> Phone charging is started and the symbol is shown at the top in the centre display.

Important

Avoid storing cards with Near Field Communication (NFC), such as debit cards for contactless payment, together with the phone. This type of card can be destroyed when charging is in progress.

Note

Some phones may become hot during wireless charging. This is normal.

If the phone does not charge:

- Check that the charging plate is free from other objects.
- Check that the phone supports wireless charging (Qi).
- Remove the case from the phone if one is fitted.
- Lift the phone and position it in the centre of the charging plate once again.

- Check that the car is running.
- Check that your phone has not slid off the charging pad while driving.
- If battery temperature becomes too high during charging, the charging function is deactivated.
- If any of the doors are opened, charging is interrupted for several seconds.

If objects prevent charging on the charging plate, a message is shown in the centre display.

> **Important**
>
> Keep the phone and charging plate free of other objects while charging to avoid overheating.

* Option/accessory.

12.3.16. Certificate for wireless charger

Country/Area	
China:	（一）符合“微功率短距离无线电发射设备目录和技术要求”的具体条款和使用场景，采用的天线类型和性能，控制、调整及开关等使用方法； （二）不得擅自改变使用场景或使用条件、扩大发射频率范围、加大发射功率（包括额外加装射频功率放大器），不得擅自更改发射天线； （三）不得对其他合法的无线电台（站）产生有害干扰，也不得提出免受有害干扰保护； （四）应当承受辐射射频能量的工业、科学及医疗（ISM）应用设备的干扰或其他合法的无线电台（站）干扰； （五）如对其他合法的无线电台（站）产生有害干扰时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用； （六）在航空器内和依据法律法规、国家有关规定、标准划设的射电天文台、气象雷达站、卫星地球站（含测控、测距、接收、导航站）等军民用无线电台（站）、机场等的电磁环境保护区域内使用微功率设备，应当遵守电磁环境保护及相关行业主管部门的规定； （七）禁止在以机场跑道中心点为圆心、半径5000米的区域内使用各类模型遥控器； （八）微功率设备使用时温度和电压的环境条件。
Mexico:	RCPVAPVO 18-1919 [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/VOLVO_Mexico_57442C.pdf]
Paraguay:	 2018-11-1-000541 [https://az685612.vo.msecnd.net/pdfs/certificates/Volvo_Paraguay_57442C.pdf]
Taiwan:	根據NCC低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 規定: 第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立即停用，並改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。 前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。 低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

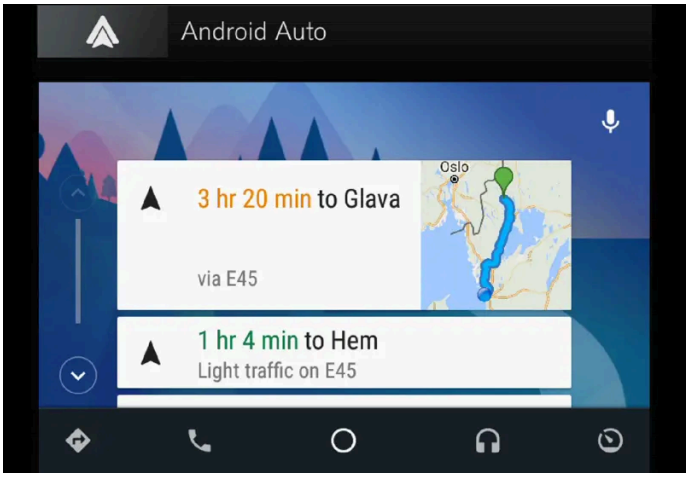
Country/Area	
Ukraine:	Ци Діапазон частот: 107 кГц - 115 кГц Максимальна потужність радіосигналу: 5 Вт (сполучена), 63 Вт наномасштабів (випромінюється) Коефіцієнт викидів: N / A Модуляції: 2 кГц NFC Діапазон частот: 13,56 МГц, у межах +/- 0,01% Максимальна вихідна потужність РФ: 10 мВт – виробник: Ел-Джі Електронікс Інк.(LG Electronics Inc) 10, Магок'юнганг 10-ро, Гангсео-гу, Сеул, 07796, Корея Frequency range 111 кГц / Максимальна потужність РЧ: 42 дБмк А / м справжнім Ел-Джі Електронікс Інкзаявляє, що тип радіообладнання WC510MVV20 відповідає Технічному регламенту радіообладнання; повний текст декларації про відповідність доступний на веб-сайті за такою адресою:https://www.lg.com/global/support/cedoc/cedoc. імпортер : Віннер Імпортс Україна Вул. Дачна, 5-А, с.Капітанівка, Київська область, 08112, Україна Тел.: +38(044) 585 63 00 Контактна особа : Alla Haidai (ahaidai@winner.ua)
USA/Canada	FCC ID : BEJWC510MVV20 IC : 2703H-WC510MVV20 This device complies with part 15 of the FCC rules and with RSS-Gen,RSS-216 rules of Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions: (1) This device may not cause harmful interference, and (2) This device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation. Any changed or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate this equipment. FCC RF Radiation Exposure Statement: This equipment complies with FCC RF Radiation exposure limits set forth for an uncontrolled environment. This device and its antenna must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter. This equipment should be installed and operated with a minimum distance of 15cm between the radiator and your body. – IDéclaration d'avertissement ISED Son fonctionnement est soumis aux deux conditions suivantes: (1) Cet appareil ne doit pas provoquerd'interferences nuisibles, et (2) Cet appareil doit accepter toute interference recue, y compris les interferences pouvant entrainerun fonctionnement indesirable. Les changements ou modifications non expressement approuves par LG Vehicle Components Company pourraient annuler l'autorite de l'utilisateura utilizer l'equipement. Déclaration d'exposition aux radiations RF de l'ISED: Cet équipement est conforme aux limites d'exposition aux rayonnements RF de l'ISED définies pour un environnement non contrôlé. Cet appareil et son antenne ne doivent pas être situés ou fonctionner conjointement avec une autre antenne ou un autre émetteur. Cet équipement doit être installé pour fonctionner avec une distance minimale de 10cm entre le radiateuret le corps de l'utilisateur final.

12.4. Apps

12.4.1. Available in-car apps

12.4.1.1. Android Auto*

Android Auto[1] gives you the option to listen to music, make phone calls, get directions and use car-adapted apps from an Android device. Android Auto works with selected Android devices.



Information about which apps are supported and which Android devices are compatible is available on the website: www.android.com/auto/ [https://www.android.com/auto/] . For third-party apps, see Google Play. Please note that Volvo is not responsible for the content in Android Auto.

Android Auto is started from the app view. After Android Auto has been started once, the app will be started automatically the next time the device is connected. Automatic start can be deactivated under settings.

> **Note**
>
> When a device is connected to Android Auto it is possible to stream via Bluetooth to another media player. Bluetooth is active while Android Auto is being used.

When using map navigation via Android Auto there is no guidance in the driver display, but only in the centre display.

Android Auto can be controlled via the centre display using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad or voice control. A long press on the steering wheel button starts Google Assistant and a short press deactivates it.

By using Android Auto, you acknowledge the following: Android Auto is a service provided by Google Inc. under its terms and conditions. Volvo Cars is not responsible for Android Auto or its features or applications. When you use Android Auto, your car transfers certain information (including its location) to your connected Android phone. You are fully responsible for your and any other person's use of Android Auto.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

12.4.1.2. Available apps

Volvo provides a wide selection of services, apps and programs that you can use in your car.

Sensus Connect gives you access to apps for entertainment, navigation and service in the car. To see which apps are available for download, go to **Download Centre** in the car's centre display[1].

Tips for using apps

Many apps need an online connection to use certain functions[2].

If you notice that an app stops working, try uninstalling and reinstalling the app.

> **Note**
>
> The range of apps available may vary depending on market. Support for services from Volvo's third-party suppliers may also vary. One or more apps may not be available on the market in which the car is sold or used.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

[2] Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.

12.4.1.3. Apple® CarPlay®*

CarPlay[1] gives you the option to listen to music, make phone calls, get directions, send/receive messages and use Siri, all while you stay focused on your driving.

CarPlay works with selected iOS devices. If the car does not already support CarPlay there is the option to install it retroactively. Contact a Volvo dealer to install CarPlay.

Information about which apps are supported and which iOS devices are compatible is available on Apple's website: www.apple.com/ios/carplay/ [https://www.apple.com/ios/carplay/] . Using apps that are not compatible with CarPlay may sometimes mean that the connection between the device and the car is interrupted. Please note that Volvo is not responsible for the content in CarPlay.

When using map navigation via CarPlay no guidance is shown in the driver display, but only in the centre display.

When navigation is started through Apple CarPlay, ongoing native turn-by-turn route guidance will be ended.

The CarPlay apps can be controlled via the centre display, the iOS device or using the steering wheel's right-hand keypad (applies to certain functions). The apps can also be voice-controlled using Siri. A long press on the steering wheel button starts voice control using Siri and a short press activates the car's own voice control. If Siri breaks off too early, hold the steering wheel button depressed [2].

By using Apple CarPlay you acknowledge the following: Apple CarPlay is a service provided by Apple Inc. under its terms and conditions. Volvo Cars is thus not responsible for Apple CarPlay or its features/applications. When using Apple CarPlay, certain information from your car (including its position) is transferred to your iPhone. In relation to Volvo Cars, you are fully responsible for your and any others person's use of Apple CarPlay.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability may vary depending on market.

[2] Apple and CarPlay are registered trademarks owned by Apple Inc.

12.4.1.4. Air Quality app

A climate sensor measures the content of $PM_{2.5}$ particles (particles smaller than 2.5 µm) in the passenger compartment*.

The content of contaminants outside the car is measured by an external service and is based on official data.

To be able to use this app, the following is required:

- The car must have access to the network for at least 1 minute when the app is started or the car is restarted.
- The car must be running in order for the $PM_{2.5}$ sensor to take measurements.

* Option/accessory.

12.4.1.5. Google Local Search

Using the Google Local Search[1] app you can search for restaurants, hotels and petrol stations and a lot more along your route directly in Volvo's centre display.

Functions in Google Local Search

Google Local Search is a free service. You do not need to register for access to the online database. However, you need an Internet connection to be able to use the service[2].

Using the Google Local Search app you can, amongst other things, search for locations, restaurants, hotels and other businesses along the route and in the vicinity of your destination.

In Google Local Search you can see information on different search results such as addresses, distances, opening times and telephone numbers. The app includes the option to call a business directly from the car, and you can get directions to a destination by sending an address to Sensus Navigation.

In Google Local Search you can read, and in some cases listen to, reviews and see user ratings for, amongst other things, restaurants and hotels. You can also browse through and look at images linked to search results and you have access to photographs from Google Street View which can make it easier to find your way to a desired location or business.

Operating

Google Local Search can be used while you drive.

Tips for using Google Local Search

If you experience problems with Google Local Search, make sure you have an Internet connection and good signal strength.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

[2] Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.

12.4.1.6. Park and Pay

Park and Pay[1] is an app that can help you find vacant parking spaces. In some cases, you can also pay for your parking via the app. Park and Pay can be used if the car is equipped with Sensus Connect and Sensus Navigation.

The Park and Pay app

You can use the Park and Pay app to search for vacant parking spaces and pay for your parking. The pay service works for the parking spaces that are connected to payment providers that are supported by Park and Pay. The spaces are displayed in the app with an icon in list view, and under "detailed information" for each parking space. You can also find information there on payment providers and parking identification.

Using Park and Pay

To use the Park and Pay app, an account does not need to be registered, but in order to be able to pay for parking via the app, you need to register on the payment provider's website.

The Park and Pay app is a free service, but you will be charged by the payment provider if you use the pay function. Note that a data usage costs may be incurred, depending on your subscription. Contact your Internet service provider for more information about the costs that apply for data usage.

Price example

A price example is shown in the detailed view for parking spaces, and the price may vary depending on time and date. The price stated once you have set the estimated time for parking is the actual cost of the parking for the estimated time.

Ending the parking stay

If you use a parking space where you only pay for the time you park then the app asks you to enter an estimated time for parking in advance, so that you avoid forgetting to end the parking stay. If you end the parking stay before the estimated time has elapsed then you only need to pay for the time you were parked[2].

Tips for using Park and Pay

If you experience problems with Park and Pay, make sure you have an Internet connection and good signal strength.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

[2] Only applicable to payment providers that support payment on completion of parking.

12.4.1.7. Record & Send

Record & Send[1] is an in-car app that allows you to record personal voice messages and send them to a selected recipient.

Record and send recording

Two options are given when the app is started: enter recipient and record by tapping on the microphone symbol.

1. Tap on **Recipient** and enter the e-mail address the recording shall be sent to.
2. Tap on the microphone symbol to start recording.
3. Say the message.
4. Tap on the microphone symbol again to end the recording.

> The option appears to send or discard the recording.

Opening the voice recording

When the recording has been sent, the recipient receives an e-mail message that can be opened in a normal e-mail program, either on a mobile or in a computer. The recording is included as an attached file in MP3 format.

Open software

Use the LAME open software library to compress your recordings in MP3 format. You can find out more about LAME on their website: www.mp3dev.org.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

12.4.1.8. Spotify

You can use the Spotify[1] app in your Volvo to listen to music when the car has an Internet connection.

Getting started with Spotify

To use Spotify requires a Spotify Premium account. Currently, it is not possible to create an account from the app in the car, but you can easily create an account from the Spotify website. If you already have a Spotify Premium account then you can of course use it.

Internet connection when using Spotify

To use Spotify in your car, the app must have access to the Internet. Offline mode is currently not available.

Sound quality

You can choose which sound quality you prefer in the app's settings. You can choose between Normal, High and Extreme sound quality.

- Normal (96 kbps)
- High (160 kbps)
- Extreme (320 kbps)

Functions

The Spotify app offers a range of options and functions, such as:

- Free text searching
- Auto search
- Play/Pause/Resume
- Browse through albums, playlists, news, etc.
- Add/remove tracks from the library
- Logging in/out
- Skip between tracks

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

- Spotify Connect
- Spotify Radio

> **Note**
>
> Volvo does not save information that is used in the Spotify app with the exception of locally stored data that is necessary for the app to work. Your password is never saved and if you have logged out of the app you must enter both your username and password to login again.

Deleting user information

To delete user information, logout from the Spotify app via the Settings menu. The user information is also deleted during a factory reset of the centre display.

Tips for using Spotify

If you experience problems with Spotify, make sure you have an Internet connection and good signal strength.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

12.4.1.9. TuneIn

TuneIn[1] is a radio app that can be used when the car has an Internet connection. TuneIn offers over 100,000 global live radio stations from all continents and over two million on-demand programmes (e.g. podcasts, concerts and interviews).

TuneIn account

When using TuneIn, you are recommended to have a TuneIn account, which can be created at www.tunein.com. You do not need to have a TuneIn account to be able to use the service, but it is recommended. An account will allow you to choose your preferred radio stations which you can then easily listen to in your car.

Sound quality

You can choose a stream quality among basic, medium to high bitrates. The amount of bandwidth used depends on which quality you choose, see specifications below.

Speed (kbps)	Duration (hours)	Size (MB)
32 (Basic sound quality)	1	14
64 (Basic sound quality)	1	28
96 (Medium sound quality)	1	42
128 (High sound quality)	1	56

Tips for using TuneIn

If you experience problems with TuneIn, make sure you have an Internet connection and good signal strength.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

12.4.1.10. Using TuneIn

The Internet radio service TuneIn [1] has several different functions. You can, for example, play local radio, add favourites to radio stations or create shortcuts to radio stations if you prefer. This article describes how you use these services and how you access them from your car.

Starting TuneIn

1. Download the TuneIn app from **Download Centre** in the app view.
2. Open the TuneIn app in the app view.

> The car connects to TuneIn. The music buffers the first time you connect, which can take several seconds.

Access your account information for TuneIn

1. Open the TuneIn app in the app view.
2. Expand the view and click on **Sign in**.

> A pop-up box opens, where you can log in.

3. Enter your username and password, then press **Sign in**.

> You can now access account information.

TuneIn categories

TuneIn makes it easy to scroll through different categories.

1. Open the TuneIn app in the app view.
2. Expand the view and click on **Library**.

> A list of stations and categories is shown.

TuneIn favourites

If you are logged in to TuneIn in the car, your selected favourites will be synchronised with your account. Otherwise your selected favourites will only be available in the car.

1 In Expanded view: Click on the radio station you want to set as a favourite.

2 Mark the star icon on the right.

> The station has now been added to your favourites.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

12.4.1.11. Weather

The Weather[1] app provides you with weather information in the car's local area or in a selected location. Weather can only be used if the car is equipped with Sensus Navigation.

The Weather app

Weather gives you daily and weekly weather forecasts. You set the location for which you want updated weather in the app settings. You can access the settings in the display mode for the app. You can also change settings for measuring wind speed here.

Using Weather

Weather is a free service and you do not need to register an account to use the service.

Note that a data usage cost may be incurred, depending on your subscription. Contact your Internet service provider for more information.

Tips for using Weather

If you experience problems with Weather, make sure you have an Internet connection and good signal strength.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

12.4.1.12. WikiLocations

Using the WikiLocations[1] app, you can read Wikipedia articles that are related to your car's position and destination.

The WikiLocations app

Using WikiLocations, you have access to content based on Wikipedia. This is a service which does not form part of the car's navigation system, but you can view items, images and summaries related to your car's position and destination.

The items shown in WikiLocations have been assigned a geographical location. WikiLocations only shows items which match the car's language settings, as well as items in English.

Using WikiLocations

WikiLocations is a free service and you do not need an account to use the service.

Note that a data usage cost may be incurred, depending on your subscription. Contact your Internet service provider for more information.

Use the steering wheel knob for safer use of the app while you drive.

Tips for using WikiLocations

If you experience problems with WikiLocations, make sure you have an Internet connection and good signal strength.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

12.4.1.13. Yelp

You can use the Yelp[1] app to find local companies (e.g. restaurants or shops) and can read other users' ratings and reviews of companies near to you. Yelp can only be used if the car is fitted with both Sensus Connect and Sensus Navigation.

The Yelp app

You can use Yelp to search for e.g. restaurants, shops, spas and local services. You can read reviews on companies that you are interested in and would like to know more about.

Note that the display of reviews depends on the language they were written in.

Using Yelp

Yelp is a free service and you do not need to register an account to use the service.

Note that a data usage cost may be incurred, depending on your subscription. Contact your Internet service provider for more information on what applies for your subscription.

Use the steering wheel knob for safer use of the app while you drive.

Search for companies nearby

To search for companies near to your destination, this destination needs to be set in your navigation system.

Try to use specific terms to make your search results as good as possible, since the free text search matches both the name of the company and the text in the reviews.

Tips for using Yelp

If it is not possible to start navigation to a selected company, this is probably because Yelp does not have information about the company's precise position. The same is true if it is not possible to display the location on the map.

If you experience problems with Yelp, make sure you have an Internet connection with good signal strength.

[1] Availability varies depending on market.

12.4.1.14. Car status

Information on the general status of the car can be shown in the centre display.

Car Status is opened in the centre display's app view. This shows the following tabs:

- **Messages** - status messages
- **Status** - checking engine oil level and AdBlue level[1]
- **TPMS** - checking the tyre pressure
- **Appointments** – car information[2]

[1] AdBlue Applies to cars with diesel engines.

[2] Applies to certain markets.

12.4.1.15. Download Center

Use the Download Centre app in the car's centre display to handle software[1] such as apps and maps.

Download Centre is started from the app view in the centre display and enables:

- searching for and updating specific software
- updating map data for Sensus Navigation*
- downloading, updating and uninstalling apps.

[1] Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.

* Option/accessory.

12.4.2. Apps

The app view contains apps that give access to some of the car's services.

Swipe from right to left[1] across the centre display's screen in order to access the app view from the home view. Apps that

have been downloaded (third-party apps) and apps for embedded functions, such as **FM radio**, are found here.

App view (schematic image, basic apps vary by market and model)

Some basic apps are always available. More apps such as web radio and music services can be downloaded when the car is connected to the Internet.

Certain apps are only available for use if the car is connected to the Internet.

Start an app by tapping on it.

All the apps used should be updated to the latest version.

[1] Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

12.4.3. Downloading apps

New apps can be downloaded when the car is connected to the Internet.

> **Note**
>
> The speed of other online services may be affected during the download. You can cancel the download and restart it later, or prioritise the update by switching off other online services, such as Internet radio.

> **Note**
>
> When downloading using a phone, pay extra attention to the data traffic costs.

1 Open the **Download Centre** app in the app view.

2 Select **New apps** in order to open a list of apps that are available but not installed in the car.

3 Tap on the row for an app in order to expand in the list and get more information about the app.

4 Select **Install** in order to start the download and installation of the desired app.

> The status of the download and installation is shown while it is in progress.
> A message is shown if a download cannot be started for the moment. The app will remain in the list and it is possible to try to start a download again.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

1 Tap on **Abort** to cancel a download in progress.

Note that only the download can be cancelled, when the installation phase has started, this cannot be cancelled.

12.4.4. Deleting apps

Apps can be uninstalled when the car is connected to the Internet.

An app that is being used must be closed in order for the uninstallation to be completed.

1 Open the **Download Centre** app in the app view.

2 Select **Application updates** in order to open a list of all installed apps.

3 Locate the desired app and select **Uninstall** in order to start the uninstallation of the app.

> When the app has been uninstalled, it disappears from the list.

12.4.5. Updating apps

The apps can be updated when the car is connected to the Internet.

> **Note**
>
> The speed of other online services may be affected during the download. You can cancel the download and restart it later, or prioritise the update by switching off other online services, such as Internet radio.

> **Note**
>
> When downloading using a phone, pay extra attention to the data traffic costs.

If an app is being used during an ongoing update, it will be restarted in order for the installation to be completed.

Update all

1 Open the **Download Centre** app in the app view.

2 Select **Install all**.

> Updating is started.

Update some

1 Open the **Download Centre** app in the app view.

2 Select **Application updates** in order to open a list of all available updates.

3 Locate the desired app and select **Install**.

> Updating is started.

12.4.6. Volvo ID

Volvo ID is a personal ID that gives access to a wide range of services via a single username and password.

> **Note**
>
> The services available may vary over time and depend on equipment level and market.

One example of a service when Volvo ID is needed is when checking the car on your phone using the Volvo Cars app[1].

> **Note**
>
> If the username/password for a service (e.g. Volvo On Call) is changed, then it is also changed automatically for other services.

Volvo ID is created from the car, volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] or the Volvo Cars app.

When a Volvo ID is registered in the car, several services will be made available. Several Volvo IDs can be used for the same car and several cars can even be connected to the same Volvo ID.

* Option/accessory.

[1] If you have Volvo On Call*.

12.4.7. Creating a Volvo ID

It is possible to create a Volvo ID in different ways. If the Volvo ID is created at volvoid.eu.volvocars.comm/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] or with the Volvo Cars app, the Volvo ID must also be registered to the car in order to enable use of the various Volvo ID services.

Create a Volvo ID with the Volvo ID app

1. Download the Volvo ID app from **Download Centre** in the centre display's app view.
2. Start the app and register a personal email address or mobile number.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address/mobile number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and automatically registered to the car. Volvo ID services can now be used.

Create a Volvo ID with the Volvo Cars app

1. Download the latest version of the Volvo Cars app to the phone[1].
2. Select to create Volvo ID.
3. The web page for creating a Volvo ID is shown.
4. Enter a personal email address or mobile number.
5. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address/mobile number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and is ready for use.

Create a Volvo ID via the Volvo Cars website

1. Go to volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/]. Select to create a Volvo ID.
2. Enter a personal email address or mobile number.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address/mobile number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and is ready for use.

Registering your Volvo ID to the car

If your Volvo ID was created online or using the Volvo Cars app, register it to your car:

1 If not done already, download the Volvo ID app from **Download Centre** in the centre display's app view.

> **Note**
>
> To download apps, the car must be connected to the Internet.

2 Start the app and enter your Volvo ID.

3 Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the email address/mobile number linked to your Volvo ID.

> Your Volvo ID is now registered to the car. Volvo ID services can now be used.

[1] Available to download via e.g. Apple App Store or Google Play.

12.5. Internet connection

12.5.1. Online services

12.5.1.1. Connected Safety

Connected Safety[1] communicates information between your own car and other vehicles via the Internet[2]. The function is intended to make a driver aware that there may be a potentially dangerous traffic situation further ahead on the same road.

The function can inform the driver whether another vehicle further ahead on the same road has activated its hazard warning flashers or detected slippery driving conditions. Information about slippery driving conditions is also given if your own car detects slippery surfaces.

Connected Safety can help the driver with the following:

- Alarm on hazard warning flashers
- Alarm on slippery driving conditions

Connected Safety communication between vehicles only works for vehicles equipped with the function and which have it activated.

Alarm on hazard warning flashers

If your own car's hazard warning flashers are activated, information about this can be sent to vehicles approaching your own car's position.

When your own car is approaching a vehicle with flashing hazard warning flashers, this symbol is shown on the driver display.

Alarm on slippery driving conditions

If your own car detects reduced friction between your tyres and the road, information on this can be sent to vehicles approaching your own car's position.

If an ice alert is triggered, this symbol is displayed on the Driver display when a vehicle approaches the slippery road section, both in your own car and in other vehicles that have received the information via Connected Safety.

Warning

- The function is supplementary driver support intended to facilitate driving and make it safer – it cannot handle all situations in all traffic, weather and road conditions.
- The driver is advised to read all sections in the Owner's Manual that relate to this function to learn about factors such as its limitations and what the driver should be aware of before using the system.
- Driver support functions are not a substitute for the driver's attention and judgement. The driver is always responsible for ensuring the car is driven in a safe manner, at the appropriate speed, with an appropriate distance to other vehicles, and in accordance with current traffic rules and regulations.

[1] Not available on all markets.

[2] Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.

12.5.1.2. Apps

The app view contains apps that give access to some of the car's services.

Swipe from right to left[1] across the centre display's screen in order to access the app view from the home view. Apps that

have been downloaded (third-party apps) and apps for embedded functions, such as **FM radio**, are found here.

App view (schematic image, basic apps vary by market and model)

Some basic apps are always available. More apps such as web radio and music services can be downloaded when the car is connected to the Internet.

Certain apps are only available for use if the car is connected to the Internet.

Start an app by tapping on it.

All the apps used should be updated to the latest version.

[1] Applies to left-hand drive cars. For right-hand drive cars - swipe in the opposite direction.

12.5.1.3. User terms and conditions and data sharing

The first time certain services and apps are started, a pop-up window with the headings **Terms and conditions** and **Data sharing** may be shown.

The purpose is to inform about Volvo's user terms and conditions and policy for data sharing. By accepting data sharing, the user accepts that certain information is sent from the car. This is required so that certain services and apps can have full functionality.

The data sharing function for online services and apps is deactivated as default[1]. Data sharing needs to be activated so that certain online services and apps in the car can be used. Data sharing can be set from the centre display's settings menu or in connection with the services or apps being started in the centre display.

Privacy and data sharing

With the software update made available November 2017, privacy and data sharing settings were introduced for online services and downloaded apps. The settings can be found under **Privacy and data** in the settings menu in the car's centre display.

There you can select the online services which are allowed to share data. Data sharing for downloaded apps can also be deactivated there. Note that services and apps cannot be used as intended if data sharing is deactivated.

After a factory reset or e.g. a workshop visit or software update, the data sharing settings may have been reset to their default settings. In which case, reactivate data sharing for online services and for downloaded apps.

> **Note**
>
> Privacy and data sharing settings are unique for every driver profile.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Does not apply to Volvo On Call*.

12.5.1.4. Activating and deactivating data sharing

Data sharing for services and apps required can be set in the centre display's settings menu.

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **System** → **Privacy and data**.
3. Select activation or deactivation of data sharing for individual services and all apps.

If data sharing has not been activated for an online service or downloaded apps, this can be done when they are started in the centre display. If this is the first time a service is started, or e.g. after a factory reset or certain software updates, Volvo's terms and conditions for online services need to be approved. Note that data sharing will then also be activated for other services or apps for which sharing has already been approved.

> **Note**
>
> After a visit to a Volvo workshop, you may need to reactivate data sharing so that the online services and apps shall work again.

12.5.1.5. Data sharing for Volvo On Call

Data sharing for the Volvo On Call service is activated as standard. This means that you do not need to activate data sharing for this service yourself when you buy a new car or after e.g. a factory reset.

You can choose yourself to deactivate data sharing for Volvo On Call. Note that most of the Volvo On Call functions need to be able to share data for you to be able to use them. If you have paired the Volvo Cars app with your car, a notification is shown in the app if the data sharing function is deactivated for Volvo On Call.

The data sharing settings are only activated as standard for your Volvo On Call services. Sharing of data for your other online services and downloaded apps will continue to be deactivated and will need to be selected for activation in order to enable their use.

12.5.1.6. Data sharing for driver profile

When you start to use a new driver profile, the data sharing settings for the profile will be set to the car's standard settings and deactivated.

If you choose to start to use a new driver profile, data sharing needs to be activated for the online services to be used by the profile. This also applies if you have previously activated data sharing for online services in other driver profiles.

On some occasions, after a workshop visit or after a software update, some settings in your car may have been reset to their standard settings. Since the data sharing settings are unique to each driver profile, data sharing needs to be reactivated individually for each profile.

Note

When you buy a Volvo, the dealer can often provide assistance with settings in the car and go through the various setting options with you as customer. Among other things, this could mean that data sharing was already activated for connected services in the new car at the time of delivery.

If you then start to use a new driver profile, the data sharing settings for the new profile will be deactivated and need to be activated for the connected services that shall be used. This also applies to data sharing settings for downloaded apps.

Check which driver profile is in use

The data sharing settings may have different appearances in different driver profiles in your car. For example, a profile may have data sharing activated for only one online service, while another has the function activated for all services and downloaded apps.

If you notice that some apps or online services do not seem to work properly in your car, e.g. if you are repeatedly prompted to allow data sharing for certain functions, check which driver profile is active and the services for which the profile has activated data sharing.

You can change driver profile under **Profile** in the top view in your centre display.

You can always choose to activate data sharing for the online services you want available to use in a driver profile, but if the profile's settings are protected and saved then all changes you make will be temporary. This is because all settings for a protected driver profile will return to the last saved value when the car is switched off and locked.

To save changes made in a protected driver profile, go to **Settings** → **System** → **Driver Profiles** → **Edit Profile** in your centre display and tap to save changes for the profile at the bottom of the screen.

12.5.1.7. Data sharing for services

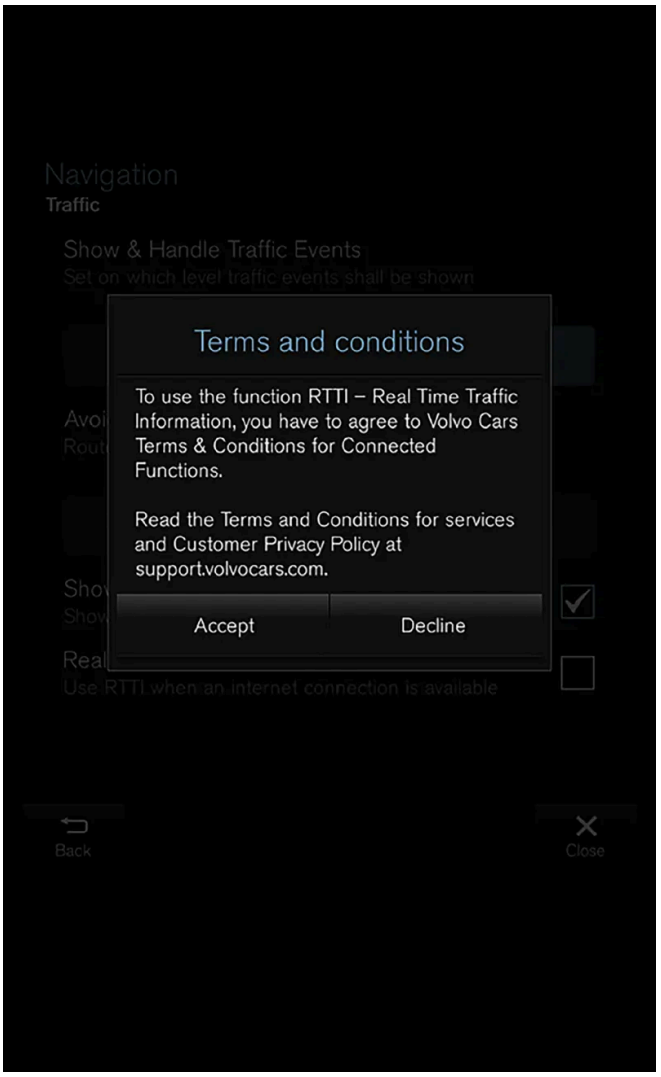
If you have not activated data sharing for an online service or for downloaded apps, you can do this in connection with starting them in your centre display. If this is the first time you are starting a service, or e.g. after a factory reset or certain software updates, you also need to approve Volvo's terms and conditions for online services.

Activate data sharing when you start a service

1 Select the function or service to be activated.

> If this is the first time you are using the service and also after e.g. a factory reset or certain software updates, you first

need to approve Volvo's terms and conditions for online services in order to continue.



2 Select to approve data sharing for the service or to cancel.

If you select to approve, data sharing is activated and you can start to use the service.

Activate data sharing when you start an app

To approve data sharing for an app that needs the function, start the app and tap on **Allow** in the pop-up window.

You can deactivate data sharing for services and apps in the settings menu under **System → Privacy and data → Data Sharing**.

12.5.1.8. Volvo ID

Volvo ID is a personal ID that gives access to a wide range of services via a single username and password.

> **Note**
>
> The services available may vary over time and depend on equipment level and market.

One example of a service when Volvo ID is needed is when checking the car on your phone using the Volvo Cars app[1].

> **Note**
>
> If the username/password for a service (e.g. Volvo On Call) is changed, then it is also changed automatically for other services.

Volvo ID is created from the car, volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] or the Volvo Cars app.

When a Volvo ID is registered in the car, several services will be made available. Several Volvo IDs can be used for the same car and several cars can even be connected to the same Volvo ID.

* Option/accessory.

[1] If you have Volvo On Call*.

12.5.1.9. Creating a Volvo ID

It is possible to create a Volvo ID in different ways. If the Volvo ID is created at volvoid.eu.volvocars.comm/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] or with the Volvo Cars app, the Volvo ID must also be registered to the car in order to enable use of the various Volvo ID services.

Create a Volvo ID with the Volvo ID app

1. Download the Volvo ID app from **Download Centre** in the centre display's app view.
2. Start the app and register a personal email address or mobile number.
3. Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address/mobile number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and automatically registered to the car. Volvo ID services can now be used.

Create a Volvo ID with the Volvo Cars app

1. Download the latest version of the Volvo Cars app to the phone[1].
2. Select to create Volvo ID.

3 The web page for creating a Volvo ID is shown.

4 Enter a personal email address or mobile number.

5 Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address/mobile number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and is ready for use.

Create a Volvo ID via the Volvo Cars website

1 Go to volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account [https://volvoid.eu.volvocars.com/Account/] . Select to create a Volvo ID.

2 Enter a personal email address or mobile number.

3 Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the specified email address/mobile number.

> A Volvo ID has now been created and is ready for use.

Registering your Volvo ID to the car

If your Volvo ID was created online or using the Volvo Cars app, register it to your car:

1 If not done already, download the Volvo ID app from **Download Centre** in the centre display's app view.

> **Note**
>
> To download apps, the car must be connected to the Internet.

2 Start the app and enter your Volvo ID.

3 Follow the instructions that are automatically sent to the email address/mobile number linked to your Volvo ID.

> Your Volvo ID is now registered to the car. Volvo ID services can now be used.

[1] Available to download via e.g. Apple App Store or Google Play.

12.5.1.10. Real Time Traffic Information

When the car is connected to the Internet, the driver can access extended traffic information [1] (RTTI [2]) concerning congestion, closed roads and anything else that may affect the travelling time.

If the RTTI service has been activated, information on traffic incidents and traffic flow will be retrieved constantly from an Internet service. When a car requests traffic flow information, anonymous data about the traffic flow at the car's position is provided at the same time, which contributes to the function of the service. The anonymous data is only sent when RTTI is activated. No data is provided if this service is not activated.

The service may need to be activated again, e.g. after certain software updates, after workshop visits or when creating a new driver profile.

Current traffic conditions are shown in the navigation system* for motorways, major roads and extra-urban roads, as well as certain intercity routes.

The amount of traffic information shown on the map depends on the distance to the car and is only shown within approximately 120 km (75 miles) from the car's position.

Text and symbols on the map are shown as usual and the traffic flow shows how quickly the traffic is moving on a road compared with the road's speed limit. The traffic flow is shown on the map on each side of the road with one coloured line per travel direction:

- Green - no disruptions.
- Orange - slow traffic.
- Red - congestion/traffic jam/accident.
- Black - road closed.

> **Note**
>
> Traffic information is not available in all areas/countries.
>
> Coverage areas for traffic information are being increased continuously.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] Real Time Traffic Information

* Option/accessory.

12.5.1.11. Volvo On Call*

Volvo On Call[1] provides direct contact to the car as well as extra comfort and assistance 24 hours a day.

The functions are available via the Volvo Cars app[2] as well as the ON CALL button and the SOS button in the roof of the car:

For example, you can lock and unlock the car directly from a phone via the Volvo Cars app. If an accident occurs, emergency assistance can be sent to the car, e.g. ambulance or police. Roadside assistance can be called for less urgent problems, such as a puncture.

> **Note**
>
> The SOS button must only be used in the event of accident, illness or an external threat against the car and its passengers. The SOS function is only intended for emergency situations. Abuse may lead to supplementary charges.
>
> The Volvo Cars app and ON CALL button can be used for all other services[3], including roadside assistance.

Volvo On Call system

Volvo On Call is linked to the car's safety and alarm systems as well as other systems in the car, such as locking and climate control. The car has a built-in modem for communication with a Volvo On Call service centre and the Volvo Cars app. GNSS (Global Navigation Satellite System) is used to locate the car.

Processing of personal data

Certain information, including personal data, will need to be processed in order to be able to make use of all the functions in connection with the Volvo On Call service. Read more about terms and conditions and privacy at volvocars.com/intl/legal [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/legal] .

Contact service centre

Use the car's ON CALL button or the Volvo Cars app to contact the Volvo On Call service centre.

> **Note**
>
> All calls with the Volvo On Call service centre may be recorded.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability depends on market.

[2] Available functions vary depending on the market.

[3] Available services vary depending on the market.

12.5.2. Tips for using the Bluetooth connection

If you find that the connection or functionality between your car and the Bluetooth device does not work as expected, the following tips may be of assistance.

When connecting a mobile device to the car via Bluetooth

If you experience difficulties when connecting a mobile device to the car via Bluetooth:

- Check that the device's battery is sufficiently charged (a good idea can be to check that the device is charged to at least 50%)
- Check that you have Bluetooth switched on in your device and in the car
- Check that you have established a Bluetooth connection and have connected the car to the device to be used
- If possible, try to connect another device to the car via Bluetooth in order to check whether the problem is in the device or in the car

If the problem persists:

1. Clear all previously added devices in the Bluetooth settings in the car
2. Restart the device you want to connect
3. Try to connect the device again

Playback of media via Bluetooth

If you have problems with the playback of media in the car via a mobile device:

- Try restarting the app or the source from which you want to play back media
- By playing back media from another source on the mobile device, you can check whether the problem is in the source or in the device
- Change the position of the device and check whether the playback works better
- Close apps that are open in the background
- Restart the device from which you want to play back media

If none of the above seems to help, check the Bluetooth connection between the mobile device and the car. See the section "When connecting a mobile device to the car via Bluetooth".

Audio volume

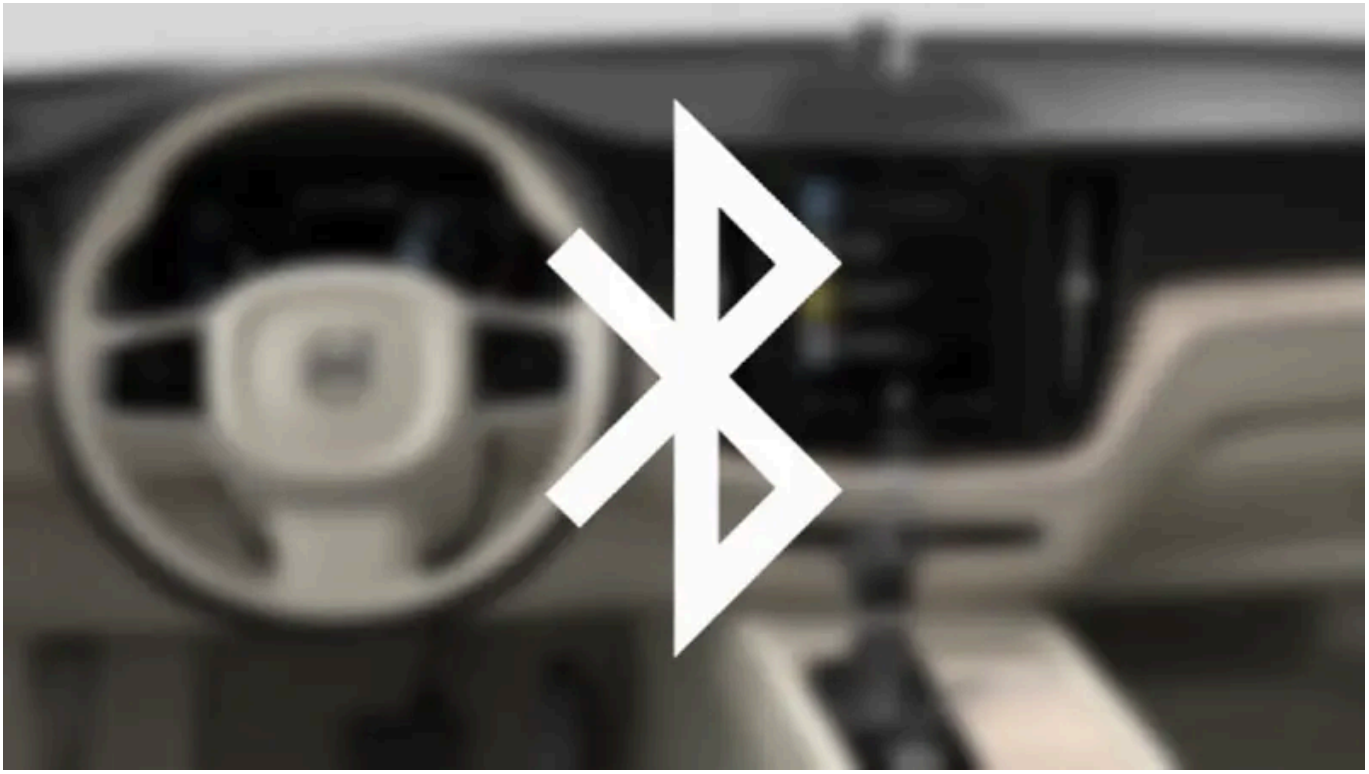
If you find that the volume is lower than expected when you use the handsfree function via Bluetooth, first check whether it is the sound settings on the mobile device that need to be adjusted up before increasing the audio volume in the car.

Note

Some phones require that the phone's Bluetoothvolume is manually set to 100% in order for the audio volume in the car to be sufficiently high. This setting needs to be made for each phone connected. The setting is made once for phone calls and once for streaming media. The system will then remember the setting and it does not need to be repeated next time the phone is connected.

12.5.3. Connect the car to the Internet via a Bluetooth-enabled phone

Create an Internet connection via Bluetooth by sharing your phone's Internet access and access several online services in the car.



1. To be able to connect the car to the Internet via a Bluetooth-connected phone, the phone has to have already been connected to the car via Bluetooth for a first time.
2. Make sure that your phone supports tethering and that this function is activated. On an iPhone, this function is known as "tethering". On Android phones, this function may have different names but is frequently known as "hotspot". For iPhones, the menu page "tethering" must also be open until the Internet connection has been established.
3. If the phone has been connected via Bluetooth previously, press **Settings** in the centre display top view.
4. Press **Communication** → **Bluetooth Devices**.
5. Tick the box for **Bluetooth Internet connection** under the heading **Internet connection**.

6 If another connection source has been used, confirm the option to change connection.

> Your car is now connected to the Internet via the Bluetooth-connected phone.

Note

The telephone and network provider must support tethering (Internet connection sharing), and the subscription must include data.

Note

When using Apple CarPlay, it is only possible to connect the car to the Internet using Wi-Fi or the car modem*.

* Option/accessory.

12.5.4. Internet-connected car*

When the car is connected to the Internet, it is possible – for example – to use web radio and music services via apps, download software and contact your retailer from the car.

The car is connected via Bluetooth, Wi-Fi or with the car's built-in modem* (SIM card).

When the car is connected to the Internet, it is possible to share the car's Internet connection (Wi-Fi hotspot) so that other devices such as tablets can access the Internet[1].

The Internet status is indicated by a symbol in the centre display's status bar.

Note

Data is transferred when using the internet (data traffic), which can have a cost.

Activation of data roaming can result in further charges.

Contact your network operator about the cost for data traffic.

Note

When using Apple CarPlay, it is only possible to connect the car to the Internet using Wi-Fi or the car modem*.

Note

When using Android Auto, it is possible to connect the car to the Internet using Wi-Fi, Bluetooth or the car modem*.

Before connecting the car to the Internet, search support information on terms and conditions for services and privacy policy for customers at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] .

* Option/accessory.

[1] This does not apply in the case of connection with Wi-Fi.

12.5.5. Tips in the event of problems with Internet connection

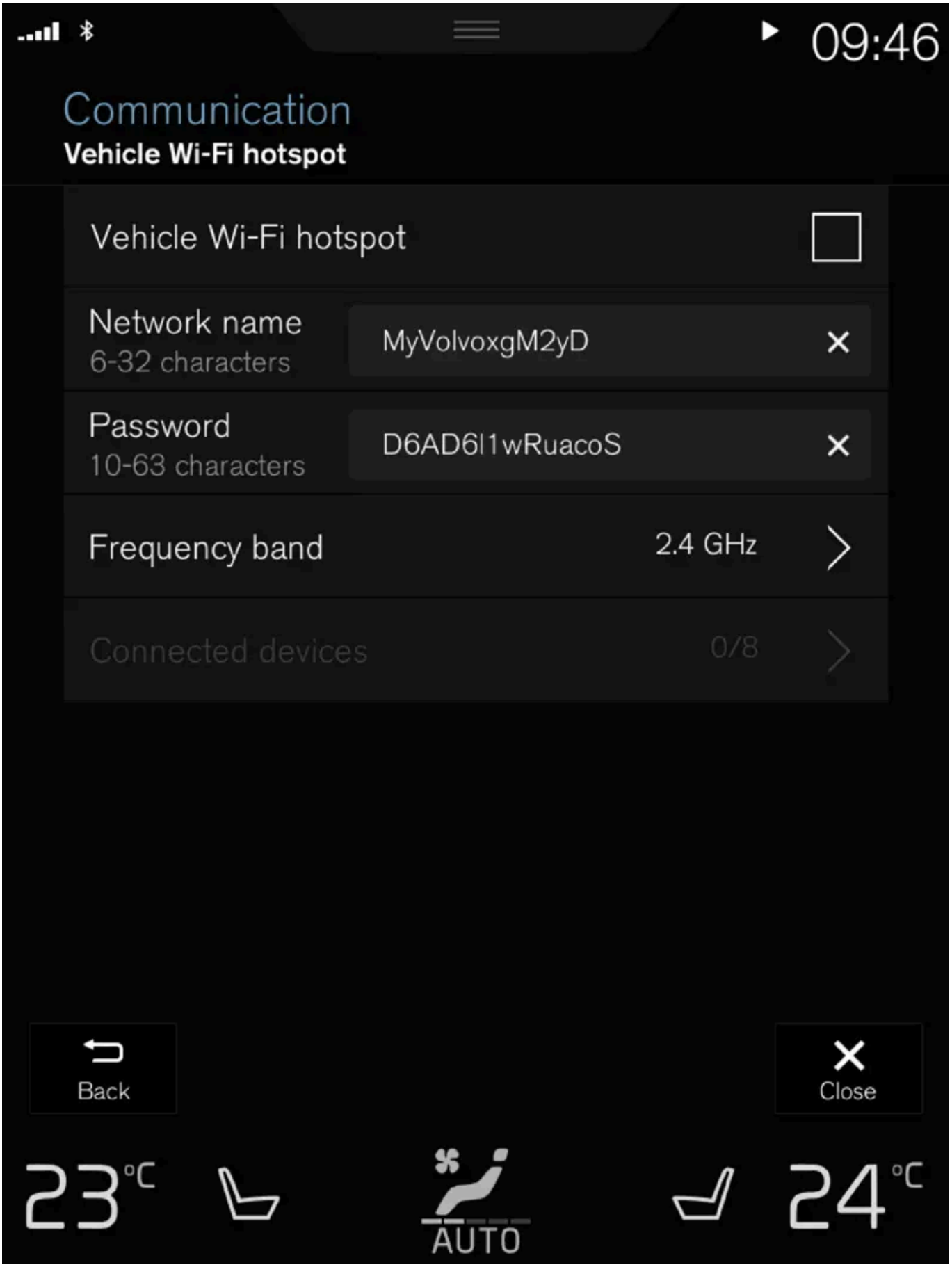
Here you can find tips that may be useful if you encounter problems when you try to connect the car to the Internet.

- If the clock has been reset, e.g. after the current to the battery has been disconnected during a visit to a service workshop, you need to set it again before you can connect to the Internet.
- Certain phones deactivate tethering after contact with the car has been disconnected, e.g. if the phone sharing the Wi-Fi network is taken out of the car. To reconnect to the Internet, activate tethering (portable/personal hotspot) in the phone.
- Volvo On Call*-connected cars can connect to the Internet via car modem (P-SIM). If the connection is interrupted, the car will automatically attempt to reconnect to the Internet.

* Option/accessory.

12.5.6. Sharing Internet access from the car via a Wi-Fi hotspot

When the car is online, its Internet connection can be shared to allow other devices to use it[1].



The network operator (SIM card) must support tethering (sharing of the Internet connection).

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Communication** → **Car Wi-Fi Hotspot**.
3. Tap on **Network name** and name the shared connection.
4. Tap on **Password** and select a password to be entered on connecting devices.
5. Tap on **Frequency band** and select the frequency on which the hotspot is to transmit data. Note that selection of frequency band is not available in all markets.
6. Activate/deactivate by ticking/unticking the box for **Car Wi-Fi Hotspot**.
7. If Wi-Fi has been used as a connection source, confirm the option to change connection.

> It is now possible for external devices to connect to the car's tethering (Wi-Fi hotspot).

Note

Activation of Wi-Fi-hotspot can result in further charges from your network operator.

Contact your network operator about the cost for data traffic.

Connection status is indicated by the symbol in the centre display's status bar.

Press **Connected devices** to see a list of the currently connected devices.

[1] Does not apply when the car is online via Wi-Fi.

12.5.7. Connect the car to the Internet via a phone (Wi-Fi)

Create an Internet connection via Wi-Fi by tethering your phone and access online services in the car.

1. Make sure that your phone supports tethering and that this function is activated. On an iPhone, this function is known as "tethering". On Android phones, this function may have different names but is frequently known as "hotspot". For iPhones, the menu page "tethering" must also be open until the Internet connection has been established.
2. Press **Settings** in the top view.
3. Continue to **Communication** → **Wi-Fi**.
4. Activate/deactivate by ticking/unticking the box for Wi-Fi.
5. If another connection source has been used, confirm the option to change connection.
6. Tap on the network name of the network to be connected.
7. Enter the network password.

> The car connects to the network.

Note that certain phones switch off tethering after the contact with the car has been disconnected, e.g. when leaving the car and until the next time it is used. The tethering in the phone therefore needs to be reactivated the next time it is used.

When a phone is connected to the car, it is saved for future use. To show a list of saved networks or manually delete saved networks, go to **Settings** → **Communication** → **Wi-Fi** → **Saved networks**.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Note

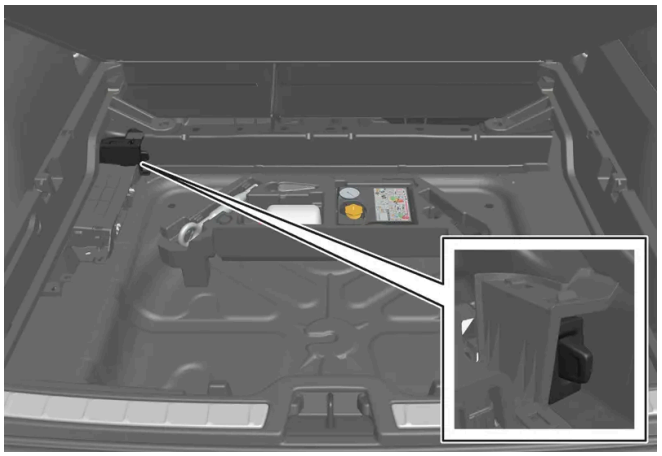
The telephone and network provider must support tethering (Internet connection sharing), and the subscription must include data.

Technical and safety requirements for Wi-Fi connection, are described in a separate section.

12.5.8. Connect the car to the Internet via car modem (SIM card)

It is possible to establish an Internet connection via the car modem and a personal SIM card (P-SIM)*.

Cars equipped with Volvo On Call will use the Internet connection with car modem for the services.

1 

Fit a personal SIM card into the holder under the cargo area floor.

Note that a **mini SIM** is required to fit the car's card reader.

2 Press **Settings** in the top view.

3 Press **Communication** → **Car Modem Internet**.

4 Activate/deactivate by ticking/unticking the box for **Car modem Internet**.

5 If another connection source has been used, confirm the option to change connection.

6 Enter the SIM card's PIN code.

> The car connects to the network.

Note

Note that the SIM card used for Internet connection via P-SIM cannot have the same telephone number as the SIM card that the phone uses. If this is disregarded, it will not be possible to route calls correctly to the telephone. Therefore, use a SIM card with a separate telephone number for the Internet connection, or a data card that does not handle telephone calls and is therefore unable to disrupt the function of the telephone.

* Option/accessory.

12.5.9. Settings for car modem*

The car is equipped with a modem that can be used to connect the car to the Internet. It is also possible to share the Internet connection via Wi-Fi.

1 Press **Settings** in the top view.

2 Press **Communication** → **Car Modem Internet** and select settings:

- **Car modem Internet** - select whether to use the car modem as Internet connection.
- **Data usage** - tap on **Reset** resets the counters for received and sent data volume.
- **Network**

Select network operator - automatic or manual selection of network operator.

Data roaming - if the box is ticked, the car modem will attempt to connect to the Internet when the car is abroad and outside its home network. Note that this may result in heavy costs. Check your roaming agreement for data traffic abroad with your network provider in your home country.

- **SIM card PIN**

Change PIN - a maximum of 4 digits can be entered.

Disable PIN - select whether the PIN code shall be required for access to the SIM card.

- **Send request code** — used e.g. to top up or check the balance on a prepaid card. Functionality depends on the provider.

> **Note**
>
> Note that the SIM card used for Internet connection via P-SIM cannot have the same telephone number as the SIM card that the phone uses. If this is disregarded, it will not be possible to route calls correctly to the telephone. Therefore, use a SIM card with a separate telephone number for the Internet connection, or a data card that does not handle telephone calls and is therefore unable to disrupt the function of the telephone.

* Option/accessory.

12.5.10. No or poor Internet connection

Factors that affect the Internet connection.

The amount of data transferred is dependent on the services or apps in use in the car. For example, streaming audio can require large amounts of data which requires a good connection and good signal strength.

Phone to car

The speed of the Internet connection may vary depending on the location of the phone in the car. Move the phone closer to the centre display in order to increase the signal strength. Ensure that there is no source of interference in between.

Phone to network operator

The speed of the mobile network varies depending on the coverage in the present location. Poor network coverage may occur, for example in tunnels, in mountainous country, in deep valleys or indoors. The speed also depends on the agreement you have with your network.

> **Note**
>
> In the event of problems with data traffic, contact your network operator.

Restarting the phone

If there are problems with the Internet connection then it may help to restart the phone.

12.5.11. Remove Wi-Fi network

Removing a network that is not to be used.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Continue to **Communication** → **Wi-Fi** → **Saved networks**.
3. Tap on **Forget** alongside the network to be removed.
4. Confirm the selection.

> The car will no longer connect to the network in future.

Remove all networks

All networks can be removed simultaneously by restoring factory settings. Please note that all user data and system settings are reset to original factory settings.

12.5.12. Wi-Fi technologies and security

Possible network types to connect to.

It is only possible to connect to the following types of network:

- Frequency — 2.4 or 5 GHz[1].
- Standards — 802.11 a/b/g/n.
- Security type — WPA2-AES-CCMP.

The car’s Wi-Fi system is designed to handle Wi-Fi devices inside the car.

If several devices operate on the frequency at the same time then it may result in reduced performance.

[1] Selection of frequency is not available on all markets.

12.6. Sound, media and Internet

The audio and media system consists of media player and radio. You can also connect a phone via Bluetooth to use handsfree functions or play music wirelessly in the car. When the car is connected to the Internet you can also use apps for media playback.

Overview of audio and media

Control the functions with your voice, steering wheel keypad or the centre display. The number of speakers and amplifiers depends on which audio system the car is equipped with.

System updating

The audio and media system is continuously improved. It is recommended to download system updates when new ones are available.

12.7. License agreement for audio and media

A license is an agreement for the right to operate a certain activity or the right to use someone else's entitlement according to the terms and conditions in the agreement. The following texts are Volvo's agreements with manufacturers/developers.

Dirac Unison®

Dirac Unison co-optimises the loudspeakers in frequency, time and space for the best possible bass integration and clarity. It enables a faithful reproduction of the acoustic characteristics of specific performance venues.Using advanced algorithms, Dirac Unison controls all loudspeakers digitally based on acoustic high-precision measurements. Like a conductor of an orchestra, it guarantees that the loudspeakers perform in perfect unison.

DivX®

DivX®, DivX Certified® and associated logotypes are trademarks belonging to DivX, LLC and are used under licence.

This DivX Certified® device can play back DivX® Home Theater video files up to 576p (including .avi, .divx). Download free software on www.divx.com to create, play back and stream digital video.

ABOUT DIVX VIDEO-ON-DEMAND: This DivX Certified® device must be registered in order to play back purchased DivX Video-on-Demand (VOD) films. Get the registration code by locating the DivX VOD section in the device's settings menu. Go to vod.divx.com for more information on how to complete the registration.

Patent numbers

Protected by one or more of the following US patents. 7,295,673; 7,460,668; 7,515,710; 8,656,183; 8,731,369; RE45,052.

Gracenote®

Portions of the content are copyright © of Gracenote or its providers.

Gracenote, the Gracenote logo and logotype, "Powered by Gracenote" and Gracenote MusicID are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement

This program or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California, USA ("Gracenote"). The software from Gracenote ("Gracenote software") activates this program to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track and title ("Gracenote data") from online servers or embedded databases (together called "Gracenote servers") and in order to perform other actions. You may only use Gracenote data in accordance with the intended end-user functions for this program or this device.

You agree to only use Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers for your own personal non-commercial use. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit this Gracenote software or any Gracenote data to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED IN THIS AGREEMENT.

You agree that your non-exclusive right to use Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers will be terminated if you violate these restrictions. If your license is terminated you agree to cease all use of Gracenote data, Gracenote software and Gracenote servers. Gracenote holds exclusive rights to all Gracenote data, all Gracenote software and all Gracenote servers, including all ownership rights. Gracenote will under no circumstances have any obligation to pay you for any information you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce the company's rights under this agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track enquiries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to enable the Gracenote service to count enquiries without knowing anything about who you are. Additional information is available on the web page for Gracenote's privacy policy for the Gracenote service.

The Gracenote software and everything included in Gracenote data are licensed to you "as is". Gracenote provides no undertakings or warranties, express or implied, as to the accuracy of the Gracenote data contained in the Gracenote servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote servers or to change data categories for any reason that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is provided that the Gracenote software or Gracenote servers are fault-free or that the Gracenote software or Gracenote servers will operate without interruption. Gracenote has no obligation to provide you with new, improved or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future, and the company reserves the right to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. GRACENOTE DOES NOT GUARANTEE THE RESULTS OBTAINED THROUGH YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR A GRACENOTE SERVER. GRACENOTE WILL IN NO EVENT BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGE OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR REVENUES.

© Gracenote, Inc. 2009

Sensus software

This software uses parts of sources from clib2 and Prex Embedded Real-time OS - Source (Copyright (c) 1982, 1986, 1991, 1993, 1994), and Quercus Robusta (Copyright (c) 1990, 1993), The Regents of the University of California.All or some portions are derived from material licensed to the University of California by American Telephone and Telegraph Co. or Unix System Laboratories, Inc. and are reproduced herein with the permission of UNIX System Laboratories, Inc. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met: Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution. Neither the name of the <ORGANIZATION> nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission. THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT OWNER OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This software is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

This software uses parts of sources from "libtess". The Original Code is: OpenGL Sample Implementation, Version 1.2.1, released January 26, 2000, developed by Silicon Graphics, Inc. The Original Code is Copyright (c) 1991-2000 Silicon Graphics, Inc. Copyright in any portions created by third parties is as indicated elsewhere herein. All Rights Reserved. Copyright (C) [1991-2000] Silicon Graphics, Inc. All Rights Reserved. Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions: The above copyright notice including the dates of first publication and either this permission notice or a reference to http://oss.sgi.com/projects/FreeB/ shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software. THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL SILICON GRAPHICS, INC. BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE. Except as contained in this notice, the name of Silicon Graphics, Inc. shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in this Software without prior written authorization from Silicon Graphics, Inc.

This software is based in parts on the work of the FreeType Team.

This software uses parts of SSLeay Library: Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). All rights reserved

Linux software

This product contains software licensed under GNU General Public License (GPL) or GNU Lesser General Public License (LGPL), etc.

You have the right of acquisition, modification, and distribution of the source code of the GPL/LGPL software.

You may download Source Code from the following website at no charge: http://www.embedded-carmultimedia.jp/linux/oss/download/TVM_8351_013

The website provides the Source Code "As Is" and without warranty of any kind.

By downloading Source Code, you expressly assume all risk and liability associated with downloading and using the Source Code and complying with the user agreements that accompany each Source Code.

Please note that we cannot respond to any inquiries regarding the source code.

camellia:1.2.0

Copyright (c) 2006, 2007

NTT (Nippon Telegraph and Telephone Corporation). All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer as the first lines of this file unmodified.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY NTT ``AS IS'' AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL NTT BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Unicode: 5.1.0

COPYRIGHT AND PERMISSION NOTICE

Copyright c 1991-2013 Unicode, Inc. All rights reserved. Distributed under the Terms of Use in http://www.unicode.org/copyright.html.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of the Unicode data files and any associated documentation (the "Data Files") or Unicode software and any associated documentation (the "Software") to deal in the Data Files or Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, and/or sell copies of the Data Files or Software, and to permit persons to whom the Data Files or Software are furnished to do so, provided that (a) the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear with all copies of the Data Files or Software, (b) both the above copyright notice(s) and this permission notice appear in associated documentation, and (c) there is clear notice in each modified Data File or in the Software as well as in the documentation associated with the Data File(s) or Software that the data or software has been modified.

THE DATA FILES AND SOFTWARE ARE PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE COPYRIGHT HOLDER OR HOLDERS INCLUDED IN THIS NOTICE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, OR ANY SPECIAL INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE DATA FILES OR SOFTWARE.

Except as contained in this notice, the name of a copyright holder shall not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealings in these Data Files or Software without prior written authorization of the copyright holder.

Declaration of Conformity

MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC
Changes for the Better

MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION
SANDA WORKS
2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-City, Hyogo 669-1513, Japan
Phone: +81-79-559-3952

DECLARATION of CONFORMITY
For

CE

Product: Audio Navigation Unit
Model: NR-0V

Supplied by	**Technical File held by**
Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan	Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city, Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan

	Standard used for comply
R&TTE Directive (Safety)	EN 60950-1: 2006 + Amd.11: 2009 + Amd.1: 2010 + Amd.12: 2011 + Amd.2: 2013 EN 62479: 2011
RE Directive (EMC)	EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1: 2017-02 EN 301 489-17 V3.3.1: 2017-02
RE Directive (Spectrum)	EN 300 328 V2.2.1: 2016-11 EN 303 345 V1.1.7: 2017-03(Final Draft)

Means of Conformity
We declare under our sole responsibility that the Product (s) is conformity with the essential requirements and other relevant requirements of the Radio Equipment (RE) Directive (2014/53/EU).

Date of issue: May 30, 2017

Signature of Responsible Person:

Hirotaka Minato
Senior Manager
Design B
Car Multimedia Manufacturing-A Dept.
MITSUBISHI ELECTRIC CORPORATION
SANDA WORKS
Minato.Hirotaka@ap.MitsubishiElectric.co.jp

Country/Area	
Brazil:	ANATEL Este equipamento opera em caráter secundário isto e, não tem direito a protecão contra interferéncia prejudicial, mesmo tipo, e não pode causar interferéncia a sistemas operando em caráter primário. Para consultas, visite: www.anatel.gov.br
The United Arab Emirates:	TRA REGISTERED No.: ER013275/14 DEALER No.: DA0088122/12
Kazakhstan:	EAC Model name: NR 0V Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Exporting country: Japan

Country/Area	
China:	1. ■使用频率：2.4 - 2.4835 GHz ■等效全向辐射功率(EIRP)： 天线增益＜10dBi 时：≤100 mW 或≤20 dBm ① ■最大功率谱密度： 天线增益＜10dBi 时：≤20 dBm / MHz(EIRP) ① ■载频容限：20 ppm ■带外发射功率(在 2.4-2.4835GHz 頻段以外) ≤-80 dBm / Hz (EIRP) ■杂散发射(辐射)功率(对应载波±2.5 倍信道带宽以外)： • ≤-36 dBm / 100 kHz (30 - 1000 MHz) • ≤-33 dBm / 100 kHz (2.4 - 2.4835 GHz) • ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (3.4 - 3.53 GHz) • ≤-40 dBm / 1 MHz (5.725 - 5.85 GHz) • ≤-30 dBm / 1 MHz (其它1 - 12.75 GHz) 2.不得擅自更改发射频率、加大发射功率(包括额外加装射频功率放大器)，不得擅自外接天线或改用其它发射天线； 3.使用时不得对各种合法的无线电通信业务产生有害干扰；一旦发现有干扰现象时，应立即停止使用，并采取措施消除干扰后方可继续使用； 4.使用微功率无线电设备，必须忍受各种无线电业务的干扰或工业、科学及医疗应用设备的辐射干扰； 5.不得在飞机和机场附近使用。
Korea:	B 급 기기 (가정용 방송통신기자재) 이 기기는 가정용(B 급) 전자파적합기기로서 주로 가정에서 사용하는 것을 목적으로 하며, 모든 지역에서 사용할 수 있습니다. 해당 무선설비는 전파혼신 가능성이 있으므로 인명안전과 관련된 서비스는 할 수 없습니다 .
Malaysia:	MCMC HIDF1500171 This device has been certified under the Communications & Multimedia Act of 1998, Communications and Multimedia (Technical Standards) Regulations 2000. To retrieve your device's serial number, please visit (volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support]) and search for “SIRIM Label Verification”. Device category: Navigation equipment for vehicle (Bluetooth) Model: NR-0V Type Approval No.: RDBV/25A/1118/S(18-4228), RDBV/26A/1118/S(18-4229), RDBV/37A/0619/S(19-2241), RDBV/39A/0619/S(19-2240)
Mexico:	NOM-ANCE
EU:	CE Manufacturer: Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works 2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-city. Hyogo, 669-1513, Japan Mitsubishi Electric Corporation hereby declares that this type of radio equipment [Audio Navigation Unit] conforms with directive 2014/53/EU. For more information, search support information at www.volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] .
Taiwan:	低功率電波輻射性電機管理辦法 第十二條 經型式認證合格之低功率射頻電機，非經許可，公司、商號或使用者均不得擅自 變更頻率、加大功率或變更原設計之特性及功能。 第十四條 低功率射頻電機之使用不得影響飛航安全及干擾合法通信；經發現有干擾現象時，應立停用，改善至無干擾時方得繼續使用。前項合法通信，指依電信法規定作業之無線電通信。低功率射頻電機須忍受合法通信或工業、科學及醫療用電波輻射性電機設備之干擾。

MPEG4-AVC (H.264):

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE AVC PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE AVC STANDARD (“AVC VIDEO”) AND/OR (ii) DECODE AVC VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE AVC VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM

VC-1:

THIS PRODUCT IS LICENSED UNDER THE VC-1 PATENT PORTFOLIO LICENSE FOR THE PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL USE OF A CONSUMER TO (i) ENCODE VIDEO IN COMPLIANCE WITH THE VC-1 STANDARD ("VC-1 VIDEO") AND/OR (ii) DECODE VC-1 VIDEO THAT WAS ENCODED BY A CONSUMER ENGAGED IN A PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITY AND/OR WAS OBTAINED FROM A VIDEO PROVIDER LICENSED TO PROVIDE VC-1 VIDEO. NO LICENSE IS GRANTED OR SHALL BE IMPLIED FOR ANY OTHER USE. ADDITIONAL INFORMATION MAY BE OBTAINED FROM MPEG LA, L.L.C. SEE HTTP://WWW.MPEGLA.COM

MPEG-4 VISUAL:

USE OF THE PRODUCT IN ANY MANNER THAT COMPLIES WITH THE MPEG-4 VISUAL STANDARD IS PROHIBITED, EXCEPT FOR USE BY A CONSUMER ENGAGING IN PERSONAL AND NON-COMMERCIAL ACTIVITIES.

12.8. Storage space on hard disk

It is possible to view how much free space there is on the car's hard disk.

Storage information for the car's hard disk, including total capacity, available capacity and how much space is used for installed apps can be shown. The information is available under **Settings** → **System** → **System Information** → **Storage**.

12.9. Sound settings

The sound reproduction quality is preset, but it can be adjusted as well.

The volume is normally adjusted with the volume control below the centre display or with the right-hand steering wheel keypad. This applies, for example, during playback of music, radio, ongoing phone calls and active traffic messages.

> **Note**
>
> Some phones require that the phone's Bluetoothvolume is manually set to 100% in order for the audio volume in the car to be sufficiently high. This setting needs to be made for each phone connected. The setting is made once for phone calls and once for streaming media. The system will then remember the setting and it does not need to be repeated next time the phone is connected.

Sound reproduction

The sound system is pre-calibrated by means of digital signal processing. This calibration takes into account loudspeakers, amplifiers, passenger compartment acoustics, listener position, etc., for each combination of car model and audio system. There is also a dynamic calibration that takes into account the setting of the volume control and vehicle speed.

Personal preferences

Various settings are available in the top view under **Settings** → **Sound** depending on the car's audio system.

Premium Sound* (Harman Kardon)

- **Equaliser** – equalizer setting.
- **Balance** – balance between right/left loudspeakers and balance between front/rear loudspeakers.
- **System Volumes** – adjusts volume in the various systems of the car, e.g. **Voice Control**, **Park Assist** and **Phone Ringtone**.

High Performance*

- **Tone** – settings for bass, treble, equalizer, etc.
- **Balance** – balance between right/left loudspeakers and balance between front/rear loudspeakers.
- **System Volumes** – adjusts volume in the various systems of the car, e.g. **Voice Control**, **Park Assist** and **Phone Ringtone**.

Performance

- **Tone and Balance** – balance between speakers and setting of e.g. bass and treble.
- **System Volumes** – adjusts volume in the various systems of the car, e.g. **Voice Control**, **Park Assist** and **Phone Ringtone**.

* Option/accessory.

12.10. Sound experience*

Sound experience is an app that provides access to further sound settings.

Sound Experience is opened from the app view in the centre display. The option is available to make the following settings:

- **Seat Optimisation** – the sound can be adjusted so that it can primarily be adapted for **Driver**, **All** and **Rear**.
- **Surround** – surround sound mode with level settings.
- **Tone** – settings for bass, treble, equalizer, etc.

* Option/accessory.

12.11. Customer Privacy Policy

Volvo respects and safeguards the personal integrity of everyone visiting our website.

This policy regards to the handling of customer data and personal information. The purpose is to give current, past and potential customers a general understanding of:

- The circumstances in which we gather and process your personal data.
- The types of personal data we gather.
- The reason we gather your personal data.
- How we handle your personal data.

For more information on the policy, search support information at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] .

12.12. Sensus - online connectivity and entertainment

Sensus makes it possible to use different types of apps and turn the car into a Wi-Fi hotspot.

This is Sensus

Sensus offers an intelligent interface and online connectivity with the digital world. An intuitive navigation structure makes it possible to receive relevant support, information and entertainment when it is necessary.

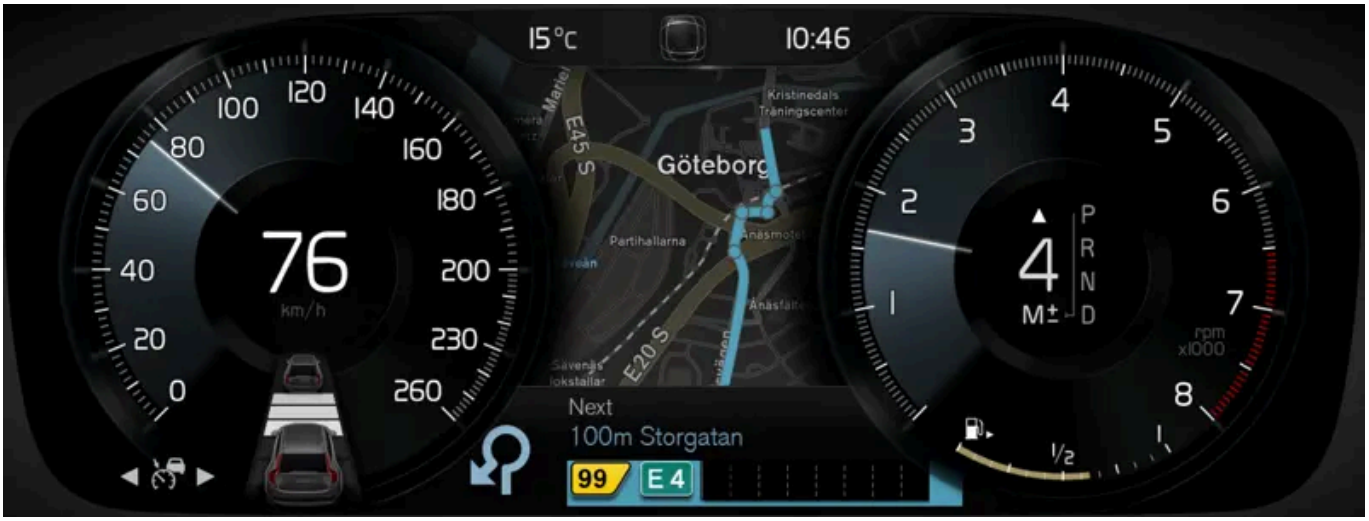
Sensus covers all solutions in the car that are connected with entertainment, online connectivity, navigation* and the user interface between driver and car. It is Sensus that makes communication possible between you, the car and the outside world.

Information when it is needed, where it is needed

The different displays in the car provide information at the right time. The information is shown in different locations based on how it should be prioritised by the driver.

Different types of information are shown in different displays depending on how the information should be prioritised.

Driver display



Driver display[1].

The driver display shows information on speed and e.g. incoming calls or song tracks being played. The display is operated via the two steering wheel keypads.

Centre display

Many of the main functions of the car are controlled from the centre display, a touch screen which reacts to touch. The number of physical buttons and controls in the car is therefore minimal. The screen can even be operated while wearing gloves.

From here, for example, you can control the climate control system, the entertainment system and seat position*. The information that is shown in the centre display can be acted on by the driver or someone else in the car when the opportunity arises.

Voice control system

The voice control system can be used without the driver needing to take his/her hands off the steering wheel. The system can understand natural speech. Use voice control to, for example, play back a song, call someone, increase the temperature or read out a text message.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

[1] The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on car model.

12.13. Terms & Conditions for Services

Volvo offers services that help to enhance car safety and comfort.

These services include everything from assistance in emergencies to navigation and various maintenance services.

Before using the services, it is important for you to read the support information relating to the Terms & Conditions for Services at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] .

---

13. Volvo On Call

13.1. Volvo On Call services

13.1.1. Help with Volvo On Call*

Volvo On Call can provide extra security and assistance if you have a puncture, your engine breaks down or you have an accident.

Volvo On Call not only offers additional comfort and control via the Volvo Cars app, but also a range of auxiliary services via the SOS and ON CALL buttons on the roof, such as emergency assistance in the event of an accident, theft notification, roadside assistance and remote unlocking.

* Option/accessory.

13.1.2. Emergency assistance with Volvo On Call*

Press the SOS button to contact a Volvo On Call service centre, or an emergency call centre, in an emergency situation.

Volvo On Call Service Centre [1]

To summon help in case of illness, external threats to the car or passengers, a Volvo On Call service centre can be alerted manually by depressing the SOS button for at least 2 seconds. The car calls the Volvo On Call service centre and a message is sent containing the car's position, among other things.

1. The Volvo On Call service centre tries to establish verbal contact with the car's driver and to find out the extent of the emergency situation and the need for help.
2. The Volvo On Call Service Centre then contacts the necessary assistance (police, ambulance, towing, etc.).

If verbal contact cannot be established, the Volvo On Call Service Centre contacts the relevant authorities that assist with appropriate action.

Prioritise public emergency number [1]

It is possible to set up the system so that the car phones a public emergency call centre instead of a Volvo On Call service centre. See the separate instructions.

Emergency call centre [2]

To summon help in case of illness, external threats to the car or passengers, an emergency call centre can be alerted manually by depressing the SOS button for at least 2 seconds.

1. The emergency call centre tries to establish verbal contact with the car's driver and to find out the extent of the emergency situation and the need for help.
2. The emergency call centre sends the necessary assistance (police, ambulance, towing, etc.).

> **Note**
>
> The SOS button must only be used in the event of accident, illness or an external threat against the car and its passengers. The SOS function is only intended for emergency situations. Abuse may lead to supplementary charges.
>
> The Volvo Cars app and ON CALL button can be used for all other services [3], including roadside assistance.

Emergency number

When the collision alarm is activated the system attempts to establish contact with the country's Volvo On Call service centre. If this is not possible, then the call is routed to the designated emergency number for the area where the car is located.

The ON CALL - and SOS buttons can be deactivated when the car's electrical system is in ignition position I, II or if the engine is running:

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **Communication** → **Volvo On Call**.
3. Select **SOS/On Call button lock** to deactivate.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Available services vary depending on market.

[2] Applies to markets where Volvo On Call service centre is not offered.

[3] Available services vary depending on the market.

13.1.3. Automatic collision alarm with Volvo On Call*

If a collision occurs, the car reports this automatically to a Volvo On Call service centre, or an emergency call centre, which can send out emergency assistance.

Volvo On Call Service Centre [1]

When the car's safety system is triggered, e.g. in an accident in which the activation level is reached for seatbelt tensioners or airbags, the car automatically calls a Volvo On Call service centre and a message is sent containing the position of the car, among other things.

1 The Volvo On Call service centre tries to establish verbal contact with the car's driver and to find out the extent of the collision and the need for help.

2 The Volvo On Call Service Centre then contacts the necessary assistance (police, ambulance, towing, etc.).

If verbal contact cannot be established, the Volvo On Call Service Centre contacts the relevant authorities that assist with appropriate action.

Prioritise public emergency number [1]

It is possible to set up the system so that the car phones a public emergency call centre instead of a Volvo On Call service centre. See the separate instructions.

Emergency call centre [2]

When the car's safety system is triggered, e.g. in an accident in which the activation level is reached for seatbelt tensioners or airbags, a signal will be automatically sent directly to an emergency call centre.

1. The emergency call centre tries to establish verbal contact with the car's driver and to find out the extent of the collision and the need for help.
2. The emergency call centre sends the necessary assistance (police, ambulance, towing, etc.).

Emergency number

When the collision alarm is activated the system attempts to establish contact with the country's Volvo On Call service centre. If this is not possible, then the call is routed to the designated emergency number for the area where the car is located.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Available services vary depending on market.

[2] Applies to markets where Volvo On Call service centre is not offered.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

13.1.4. Send destinations to the car's navigation system via a Volvo On Call* service centre

Contact a Volvo On Call service centre to have destinations sent directly to the car's navigation system. [1]

Press the ON CALL button in the car's roof for help with finding e.g. a restaurant, a hotel, a workshop, a tourist attraction or another destination. An operator sends the destination to the car, and the destination can be added as an intermediate destination or destination in the centre display.

It is possible to ask the operator at the Volvo On Call service centre for several destinations during the same call. However, they will be sent to the car one at a time.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets and cars with Sensus Navigation*.

13.1.5. Remote Vehicle Immobiliser (RVI) with Volvo On Call*

If the car is stolen, an immobiliser can be activated remotely. [1], [2]

If the car has been stolen then the owner can contact a Volvo On Call service centre via the Volvo Cars app or the authorities.

> **Note**
>
> This also applies if the car was opened and stolen with the associated key.

After having been in contact with the authorities, the Volvo On Call service centre deactivates the keys in order to prevent the car from being started. A deactivated car can only be restarted by contacting a Volvo On Call service centre and PIN code verification. Following which, the Volvo On Call Service Centre performs activation of the car.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only where legislation permits and in cooperation with the proper authorities.

[2] Available services vary depending on market.

13.1.6. Remote Door Unlock (RDU) with Volvo On Call*

If the car key has been lost or locked in the car, it is possible to remotely unlock the car within the next 5 days assisted by the Volvo On Call service centre. [1]

1. Contact a Volvo On Call service centre via the Volvo Cars app.
2. When the Volvo On Call Service Centre has verified the car's owner or other authorised individual using the PIN code, an unlocking signal is sent to the car according to agreement.
3. Press gently once on the rubberised pressure plate underneath the tailgate handle to unlock the car.

> Now all doors can be opened as normal.

> **Note**
>
> If the rubberised pressure plate on the tailgate is not depressed within a certain time, predetermined by a Volvo On Call service centre, the car will be locked again.

> **Note**
>
> If, for example, the car is parked in a parking garage, the remote unlocking function may possibly be limited due to poor reception.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Available services vary depending on market.

13.1.7. Stolen Vehicle Tracking (SVT) with Volvo On Call*

If car theft is suspected, contact a Volvo On Call service centre via the Volvo Cars app to attempt to locate the car. [1]

If theft or other unauthorised use of the car has been discovered, then the car's owner along with the police and Volvo On Call service centre may agree that the car is traced.

> **Note**
>
> This also applies if the car was opened and stolen with the associated key.

The following needs to be done:

1. Contact Volvo On Call service centre and tell them you want help tracking the car. The tracking starts.
2. Make a police report.
3. Contact Volvo On Call service centre again and notify them of the police case number.

4 Volvo On Call service centre informs the police of the car's position.

> **Note**
>
> A condition for the car to be tracked is that the matter is reported to the police. Volvo On Call will only give information to the police.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Available services vary depending on market.

13.1.8. Theft Notification (TN) with Volvo On Call*

When the car's alarm is activated, the car owner receives a message to the phone number registered with the dealer and then a push notification in the Volvo Cars app. [1]

If you have lost track of where your car is located, you can contact a Volvo On Call service centre via the Volvo Cars app. If it turns out that an unauthorised person is using the car, tracking can be started. The police are then linked in.

If the alarm is switched off using the key, the service is cancelled.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Available services vary depending on market.

13.1.9. Help during a trip with Volvo On Call*

If you have a puncture, run out of fuel or your battery is discharged, for example, you can summon assistance with the ON CALL button or the Volvo Cars app.

If you hold down the ON CALL button in the roof for at least 2 seconds, verbal contact will be established between the Volvo On Call service centre and the driver. The aim of this is to agree on what assistance is required.

> **Note**
>
> The SOS button must only be used in the event of accident, illness or an external threat against the car and its passengers. The SOS function is only intended for emergency situations. Abuse may lead to supplementary charges.
>
> The Volvo Cars app and ON CALL button can be used for all other services [1], including roadside assistance.

The ON CALL - and SOS buttons can be deactivated when the car's electrical system is in ignition position I, II or if the engine is running:

1. Press **Settings**.
2. Press **Communication** → **Volvo On Call**.
3. Select **SOS/On Call button lock** to deactivate.

A separate subscription may need to be taken out for the roadside assistance service.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Available services vary depending on the market.

13.1.10. Customer service via Volvo On Call*

For questions on using the car, the ON CALL button can be used to make contact with a Volvo On Call service centre.[1] An operator is available to answer 24 hours a day.

You can also reach a Volvo On Call service centre via the Volvo Cars app's 💬 tab.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Available services vary depending on market.

13.2. Practical information on Volvo On Call

13.2.1. Getting started with Volvo On Call*

There are certain preparations you need to complete in order to get started with Volvo On Call.

Activation of Volvo On Call

When the car is collected, the retailer activates the Volvo On Call system and the owner receives an automatically generated PIN code for Volvo On Call. This PIN code is used for security reasons to identify the owner (or another approved person such as a family member) and works like a car key.

Volvo On Call subscription

For the functions to work, the car must have an active Volvo On Call subscription.

The subscription is initiated in connection with the purchase of the car when the system is activated. The subscription has a time limit but can be extended, and validity is market dependent. Among other things, the subscription can be extended in the Volvo Cars app. Make sure that everybody has access to the car's vehicle identification number (VIN).

> **Note**
>
> Automatic Crash Notification, the SOS button and roadside assistance via the ON CALL button also work without a subscription.

Volvo ID and linking the Volvo Cars app to the car

In order to use the Volvo Cars app, you need a Volvo ID. When a Volvo ID has been created, the app needs to be paired with the car. Read more about this at volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] .

> **Note**
>
> To be able to use the Volvo Cars app services, the car is required to have a valid Volvo On Call Subscription and the app needs to be paired with the car.

Buying a used car with Volvo On Call

When buying a used car with Volvo On Call, it is important to delete data from the previous owner and add your own details to make the service work. Visit a Volvo dealer for assistance.

* Option/accessory.

13.2.2. Prioritising between Volvo On Call* service centre and emergency call centre

Choose whether the car should phone Volvo On Call service centre or the emergency call centre in an emergency situation. [1], [2]

In cars with Volvo On Call, it is possible to set whether the car should contact a Volvo On Call service centre or the public emergency call centre when the automatic collision alarm is triggered or when the SOS button is pressed.

The car's factory setting is to primarily contact a Volvo On Call service centre.

To change this:

Press **Settings** in the top view in the centre display.

1
2 Press **Communication** → **Volvo On Call**.

3 Select **Prioritise public call center over Volvo call center** if you want to contact the public emergency call centre directly.

> **Note**
>
> When contact with a Volvo On Call service centre is given priority, more information is transmitted from the car and more extensive help can be given than if the public emergency call centre is the primary contact. If contact with the service centre cannot be established, the car contacts the public emergency call centre instead.
>
> If, on the other hand, the public emergency call centre is given priority and it is not possible to establish contact, no attempt is made to reach the Volvo On Call service centre instead.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to the S60, S60 Recharge, V60, V60 Recharge and V60 Cross Country.

[2] Available services vary depending on market.

13.2.3. PIN code for Volvo On Call*

For security reasons, a PIN code is used to verify that a person is authorised to perform Volvo On Call services in a certain car.

The four-digit PIN code is automatically generated by the Volvo On Call service centre or by an authorised Volvo dealer and is sent to the car owner. The PIN code proves that the user is authorised.

Using a PIN code

The Volvo On Call PIN code is required for the following services, for security reasons:

- Create a link between the Volvo Cars app and the car.
- Remote unlocking of the car via a Volvo On Call service centre.[1]
- When you start stolen car tracking via a Volvo On Call service centre.[1]
- When you create new app users for your car.
- When you cancel your Volvo On Call subscription via the app, e.g. when the car changes owners.

Forgotten or change of PIN code

If you forget or need to change PIN code (e.g. when buying a used car with Volvo On Call), contact

- a dealer or
- Volvo On Call service centre[1] via the ON CALL button or the Volvo Cars app.

The new code is sent to the car owner.

Incorrect PIN code has been entered for the Volvo Cars app repeatedly

If an incorrect PIN code has been entered ten times in a row, the account will be locked. A new PIN code must be selected in order to be able to use the app again and a new app account created by following the same process as when the previous app account was created.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Available services vary depending on market.

13.2.4. Standby battery for Volvo On Call*

If the main battery is de-energised then the standby battery for Volvo On Call is used so that the system can still be used.

The standby battery has a limited service life. When the battery needs service or replacement, a message, **Volvo On Call Service required**, is shown in the driver display.

If the message remains, contact an authorised Volvo workshop.

* Option/accessory.

13.2.5. Volvo On Call* abroad

Volvo On Call services may vary when driving between countries.

When you press the SOS button you are always connected to a Volvo On Call service centre in the market where the car is located. If there is no Volvo On Call service centre, an emergency call centre is contacted.

When you press the ON CALL button you are always connected to your home country's Volvo On Call service centre.

For more information, contact a Volvo dealer.

* Option/accessory.

13.2.6. Volvo On Call* availability

To save the battery, the Volvo On Call system is programmed to shut down when the car is not used for long periods.

Volvo On Call is fully available for 5 full days. For days 6-21, services such as, for example, remote control immobiliser and stolen vehicle tracking are initiated via Volvo On Call service centre.[1] After 22 full days, the system is disconnected to save the battery and is fully available again as soon as the car is started.

> **Warning**
>
> The system's services only work in areas where Volvo On Call partners have mobile coverage and where the technology permits.
>
> Just as with mobile phones, atmospheric disturbances or sparse transmitter coverage may lead to connection being impossible, e.g. in sparsely populated areas.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability of the functions may vary.

13.2.7. Change of ownership with Volvo On Call*

In the event of a change of ownership, there are some steps that need to be taken to unlink the previous owner and give the new owner access to Volvo On Call.

Selling a car equipped with Volvo On Call

The previous owner should take the following steps:

1. Deactivate the connection between the car and the Volvo Cars app.
2. Reset the settings in the centre display – select factory reset.

Buying a car equipped with Volvo On Call

The new owner needs to take the following steps:

1. Contact a Volvo dealer for assistance to transfer remaining time from the previous owner's Volvo On Call subscription. An extension will need to be purchased if the subscription has expired. The Volvo dealer automatically generates a PIN code via email or SMS. Keep the PIN code in a safe place.
2. Pair the Volvo Cars app with the car.

Change of owner when changing country

When a car is purchased and imported to a different country, the owner should take care to visit a dealer in the country in which the car is purchased. The dealer should then delete all customer data in their systems. In the country to which the car is imported, the owner should contact a dealer for help with starting the Volvo On Call service.

* Option/accessory.

13.3. Volvo Cars app

13.3.1. The Volvo Cars-app*

The Volvo Cars app[1] allows you to control certain functions and interact with the car via your phone.[2]

The Volvo Cars app is available for iPhone and Android phones. You can download it for free from your phone's app store. The app is updated regularly, so ensure that the latest version is installed on your phone.

Here are some of the things you can do in the app:[3]

- Checking fuel and battery level[4], lock status and other car statuses
- Locking and unlocking doors
- Starting and stopping parking climate control
- Contact Volvo for more information
- Displaying your account information

Up-to-date information on the Volvo Cars app can be found at volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support] .

Internet connection required

When you use the Volvo Cars app, your mobile device will send and receive data via the Internet. If you do not have a data plan, then your mobile network operator may charge you for that data. If you use the app abroad, you may be charged for data roaming. For more information, contact your mobile service provider.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability depends on market.

[2] Certain functions require that both car and mobile device have mobile coverage or other Internet connection.

[3] The functions available vary depending on the market and can vary over time.

[4] Applies to Twin Engine and Recharge models.

13.4. Data sharing for Volvo On Call

Data sharing for the Volvo On Call service is activated as standard. This means that you do not need to activate data sharing for this service yourself when you buy a new car or after e.g. a factory reset.

You can choose yourself to deactivate data sharing for Volvo On Call. Note that most of the Volvo On Call functions need to be able to share data for you to be able to use them. If you have paired the Volvo Cars app with your car, a notification is shown in the app if the data sharing function is deactivated for Volvo On Call.

The data sharing settings are only activated as standard for your Volvo On Call services. Sharing of data for your other online services and downloaded apps will continue to be deactivated and will need to be selected for activation in order to enable their use.

13.5. Volvo On Call*

Volvo On Call[1] provides direct contact to the car as well as extra comfort and assistance 24 hours a day.

The functions are available via the Volvo Cars app[2] as well as the ON CALL button and the SOS button in the roof of the car:

For example, you can lock and unlock the car directly from a phone via the Volvo Cars app. If an accident occurs, emergency assistance can be sent to the car, e.g. ambulance or police. Roadside assistance can be called for less urgent problems, such as a puncture.

> **Note**
>
> The SOS button must only be used in the event of accident, illness or an external threat against the car and its passengers. The SOS function is only intended for emergency situations. Abuse may lead to supplementary charges.
>
> The Volvo Cars app and ON CALL button can be used for all other services [3], including roadside assistance.

Volvo On Call system

Volvo On Call is linked to the car's safety and alarm systems as well as other systems in the car, such as locking and climate control. The car has a built-in modem for communication with a Volvo On Call service centre and the Volvo Cars app. GNSS (Global Navigation Satellite System) is used to locate the car.

Processing of personal data

Certain information, including personal data, will need to be processed in order to be able to make use of all the functions in connection with the Volvo On Call service. Read more about terms and conditions and privacy at volvocars.com/intl/legal [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/legal] .

Contact service centre

Use the car's ON CALL button or the Volvo Cars app to contact the Volvo On Call service centre.

> **Note**
>
> All calls with the Volvo On Call service centre may be recorded.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Availability depends on market.

[2] Available functions vary depending on the market.

[3] Available services vary depending on the market.

13.6. Volvo On Call* subscription

Volvo On Call is a subscription service. Your subscription includes emergency assistance and security services as well as app services.

Status of Volvo On Call subscription

The status of your Volvo On Call subscription is shown in the Volvo Cars app under **Vehicle information** in the tab. The subscription can also be extended from here.

If you do not have access to the Volvo Cars app, contact your dealer who will help you to find information on the expiry date of the subscription. You then need to state the car's vehicle identification number[1].

Message to indicate that your Volvo On Call subscription will soon be expiring

45 days before your Volvo On Call subscription is set to expire, the message **Volvo On Call subscription expires soon** will be shown in the car's display. If you are using the Android or iOS version of the Volvo Cars app, you will also receive reminders in the app.

Disabled Volvo On Call subscription

When the subscription period has expired you will be alerted via a message in the car's display showing the text **On Call deactivated**. This message disappears when the subscription is reactivated.

You will not be able to use the Volvo On Call services when your subscription has expired. That said, the emergency services via the SOS button and automatic collision alert will continue to function. You have to renew your subscription if you want to use Volvo On Call again.

Roadside assistance costs

Roadside assistance costs are included for the first X[2] years when you buy a new Volvo. After this time has passed, in most of the markets, Roadside Assistance is offered free of charge providing the car has been serviced regularly at an authorised Volvo workshop. An authorised Volvo dealer can inform you about the status of your roadside assistance agreement.

Volvo On Call can help you get back on the road even if your Roadside Assistance agreement has expired. In this case, you will be asked to pay the cost for the service that is sent out to you.

> **Note**
>
> If you do not have a valid road assistance agreement, additional recovery costs mat apply.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Vehicle Identification Number(VIN)

[2] Varies depending on market.

13.7. Extend your Volvo On Call* subscription

You can choose between different time periods[1] when you extend or reactivate your Volvo On Call subscription.

The extension can be purchased[1]

- in the Volvo Cars app
- via an authorised Volvo dealer
- online via the link store.volvocars.com. Make sure you have access to the vehicle identification number[2].

Extend your subscription using the Volvo Cars app

1. Go to the tab.
2. Select **Vehicle information**.
3. Press **Renew** under **Volvo On Call subscription**.
4. You will be forwarded to a page where you can renew the subscription.

> **Note**
>
> If you would like to purchase an extension **after** your subscription has expired, you must do this through your dealer since Volvo On Call must be reactivated by the dealer before you can continue using the services. This may cost extra. Therefore, it is a good idea to extend your subscription before it expires so that you can use the services without interruption. The subscription is extended from the date on which it should have expired.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Available options may vary depending on market.

[2] Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

13.8. Messages for Volvo On Call*

Examples of information messages that may appear when Volvo On Call is inoperative are provided here.

Discharged battery

If you receive a message indicating that the car has a discharged battery and is waiting for the Volvo On Call system to wake up, this may be because the car has not been used for a while.

To save the battery when the car is not used for any length of time, set the Volvo On Call system to standby.

Your Volvo On Call subscription is set to expire soon

45 days before your Volvo On Call subscription is set to expire, the message **Volvo On Call subscription expires soon** will be shown in the car's display. If you are using the Android or iOS version of the Volvo Cars app, you will also receive reminders in the app.

Volvo On Call has been disabled

If the Volvo On Call subscription has expired and the Volvo On Call system has been disabled, a message will be shown in the car's display which states **Volvo On Call subscription has expired**.

* Option/accessory.

---

14. Navigation

14.1. Enter destination

14.1.1. Enter destination directly on map

A destination can be specified in different ways in the navigation system* – marking a point on the map with your finger is one of them.

In many cases it is simplest to scroll to the desired position on the map and tap it with your finger.

1. Check that the map view is in max mode.
2. Scroll the map until the desired position is in view.
3. Press and hold the position - an icon is created and a menu opens.
4. Select **Go here** - guidance starts.

Delete the icon.

To erase the icon from the position:

- Select **Delete**

Adjust the position of the icon

To adjust the position of the icon:

- Tap and hold the icon, drag it to the desired position, and release.

* Option/accessory.

14.1.2. Specifying a destination with an address

A destination can be specified in different ways in the navigation system* - selecting an address is one of them.

1 When the map is shown, expand the tools field using the down arrow on the left-hand side and press **Set dest**.

> The map image changes to free text searching.

2 Press **Address**.

3 All fields do not need to be filled in. For a journey to a city, for example, it is sufficient to enter just the country and city. Guidance is then given to the city's centre.

4 Select one of the available text field options and type using the centre display keyboard:

- **Country/State/Province**
- **City/Territory/Postcode**
- **Address**
- **Number**
- **Junction**

For cars with Volvo On Call* it is also possible to send addresses and destinations to the car's navigation system via the Volvo Cars app and a Volvo On Call service centre[1].

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only applies to certain markets.

14.1.3. Specify destination with free text searching

A destination can be set in different ways in the navigation system* - with free text searching, for example, a search can be made using phone numbers, postcodes, streets, cities, coordinates and points of interest (POI[1]).

The keyboard in the centre display can be used to type most characters and to search for destinations.

1 When the map is shown, expand the tools field using the down arrow on the left-hand side and press **Set dest**.

> The map image changes to free text searching.

2 Enter a search term in the search box or first limit the hits by selecting a filter.

> Search hits are shown while characters are being entered.

3 **If the search gives the desired result** – tap on a search hit to show its information card and select to continue to use the search hit.

If the search gives too many results – tap on **Advanced filter** and select position to search around, and then select to continue to use the search hit:

- **Around car**
- **Around destination** - only shown if a destination is entered.
- **Along route** - only shown if a destination is entered.
- **Around point on map**

Coordinates

A destination can also be specified with map coordinates.

- Type, for example, “N 58.1234 E 12.5678” and tap **Search**.

The points of the compass **N**, **E**, **S** and **W** can be entered in different ways, e.g. in accordance with the following:
N 58,1234 **E** 12,5678 (with spaces)
N58,1234 **E**12,5678 (without spaces)
58,1234**N** 12,5678**E** (with the point of the compass **after** the coordinate)
58,1234-12,5678 (with hyphen **without** point of the compass)

You can use a comma [] instead of a full stop [.] if you prefer.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Point of Interest

14.1.4. Specify destination with point of interest

A destination can be specified in different ways in the navigation system* - selecting a point of interest (POI[1]) is one of them.

1 When the map is shown, expand the tools field using the down arrow on the left-hand side and press **Set dest**.

> The map image changes to free text searching.

2 Press **POI**.

3 Tap on the desired filter (some options only show a set destination or intermediate destination):

- **Near the car**
- **Near the destination**
- **Close intermediate destinations**
- **Along route**
- **Around point on map**

4 Search for and select desired point of interest.

> The information card is displayed.

5 Select **Start navigation** or **Add as waypoint**.

Many POIs (e.g. restaurants) have subcategories (e.g. fast food).

In the settings for the map you can change which POIs should be shown on the map. That setting does not affect searching for POI as destination - even excluded POIs are shown as alternative destinations.

Certain POIs are first shown on the map when the scale is 1 km (1 mile).

> **Note**
>
> - The symbol for a POI and the number of POIs varies between different markets.
> - New symbols may appear and others disappear after a map data update. You can browse the menu system to find all the symbols used in the current map system.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Point of Interest

14.1.5. Specifying a destination with latest/favourites/library

A destination can be specified in different ways in the navigation system* - selecting from a list is one of them.

1 When the map is shown, expand the tools field using the down arrow on the left-hand side and press **Set dest**.

> The map image changes to free text searching.

2 Then select one of the following lists, at the top of the screen:

- **Recent**

- **Favourites**
- **Library**

After one alternative in a list has been marked, it is added as a destination by using either the **Start navigation** button or the **Add as waypoint** button.

Last

Previous searches are listed here. Scroll and select.

Also available as a menu option in the driver display and can be viewed using the right-hand keypad on the steering wheel.

Using **Edit**, one or more items in the list can be deleted.

Favourites

The positions from **Library** that are flagged as favourites are collected in this list. Scroll and select.

A position erased from **Favourites** remains in the **Library**, but then with an "extinguished" star. To add a position in **Favourites**, go to **Library** and select the relevant position's asterisk again.

A frequently used destination can be programmed and used with **Set Home address**. An entered **Home** destination is also available as a menu option in the driver display and can be viewed using the right-hand keypad on the steering wheel.

Using **Edit**, one or more items in the list can be deleted.

Library

Saved positions and itineraries are collected here. The most recently saved appear uppermost on the list.

Tap on a position's star to select/deselect it as a favourite. A position with a highlighted/filled star is also listed under the **Favourites** heading.

Deleting a position in **Library** will also remove it from **Favourites**.

The library can be sorted in various ways:

- **Added** - sorts in chronological order.
- **Name** - sorts in alphabetical order.
- **Distance** - sorts in distance from current position.
- **Received** - positions sent to the car using Send to Car are filtered out. New positions that have not been read have a BLUE cursor which is extinguished when the positions have been read.

Using **Edit**, one or more items in the list can be deleted.

To edit a saved position in **Library**, highlight the position in the list and select **Edit position**. For example, it is possible to change the name of the position, move it on the map by dragging and dropping, and add phone number or email address.

* Option/accessory.

14.1.6. Specify destination with Send to Car

A destination can be specified in different ways in the navigation system* – using the Send to Car function is one of them.

Send destination to car

Send to Car is a function that makes it possible to send a destination/position to the car's navigation system via the Volvo Cars app*.

To use Send to Car requires a Volvo ID to be registered to the car.

Receiving and using a destination in the car

For the car to be able to receive data it must be connected to the Internet.

1 When a destination has been received by the car a notification is shown in the centre display. Tap on the notification/symbol.

> An information card is opened.

2 Select the desired use of the destination.

Using saved destination

Destinations received are saved to the navigation system's library and can be used later.

* Option/accessory.

14.1.7. Select a detour in the navigation system*

If the driver wants to avoid the nearest segment of a route, e.g. because the road is closed, a detour can be selected.

1 Expand the tools field on the left-hand side with the down arrow and then with the three points.

2

Press the symbol for **Detour** to show an alternative route with information about its longest/shortest route as well as calculated journey time. Normally only a short detour is proposed which quickly rejoins the original itinerary.

3 If the suggestion is **accepted**: Tap on the sign with detour information. The route is accepted even if you are driving on the road suggested. After the proposal is accepted, guidance is resumed - now with the detour selected as the route. If the suggestion is **not accepted** continue to drive on the original route.

An alternative to the **Detour** function is to diverge from the itinerary's route - the system then updates the route automatically and continues guidance to the destination along the most suitable route.

It is also possible to show an alternative route while driving continues.

* Option/accessory.

14.1.8. Send destinations to the car's navigation system via a Volvo On Call* service centre

Contact a Volvo On Call service centre to have destinations sent directly to the car's navigation system. [1]

Press the ON CALL button in the car's roof for help with finding e.g. a restaurant, a hotel, a workshop, a tourist attraction or another destination. An operator sends the destination to the car, and the destination can be added as an intermediate destination or destination in the centre display.

It is possible to ask the operator at the Volvo On Call service centre for several destinations during the same call. However, they will be sent to the car one at a time.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets and cars with Sensus Navigation*.

14.2. Itinerary and route

14.2.1. Information card in navigation system*

All map icons, such as destination, interim destination and saved favourites, have an information card that opens after tapping the icon.

Pressing on the information card shows a small card, two presses show a larger card with more information. The information card's content and options vary depending on the type of icon.

With, for example a marked point of interest (POI [1]), the driver can select:

- **Start navigation** - the position is saved as a destination

- **Add as waypoint** - the position is saved as an intermediate destination (only displayed at the specified destination)
- **Save** - the position is saved in the library
- **Remove from itinerary** - the position is removed if it is included in the itinerary
- **Nearby POI** - points of interest when the car's position appears

* Option/accessory.

[1] Point of Interest

14.2.2. Showing POIs along a route

A list of points of interest (POI[1]) along the route can be presented in the navigation system*.

1

Press **Ahead**.

2 Press **POI**.

> POIs along the route are shown based on distance.

3 When several POIs are in the same location they are shown as a group. Tap on the group to list POIs.

4 Select a POI.

5 Select one of the information cards alternatives and follow the instructions.

[1] Point of Interest

* Option/accessory.

14.2.3. Itinerary

The itinerary is the route suggested in the navigation system* when the user has entered a destination.

The first defined position will be the itinerary's **destination**.

The subsequent positions will be the itinerary's **intermediate destinations**.

An itinerary, its destination and intermediate destinations can easily be edited afterwards.

* Option/accessory.

14.2.4. Show an alternative route

It is possible to search for alternative routes in the navigation system* while guidance is in progress.

1 Expand the tools field with the down arrow first and then with the three points.

2

Tap on the symbol for **Itinerary** to open the itinerary.

3 Press **Alternative routes**.

4 Select an alternative route:

- **Eco**
- **Fast**
- **Scenic**

5 Tap on the map.

> The updated route is then shown on the map and guidance resumes.

* Option/accessory.

14.2.5. Edit or delete the itinerary

It is possible to remove intermediate destinations or the entire itinerary in the navigation system* while guidance is in progress.

1 Expand the tools field with the down arrow first and then with the three points.

2

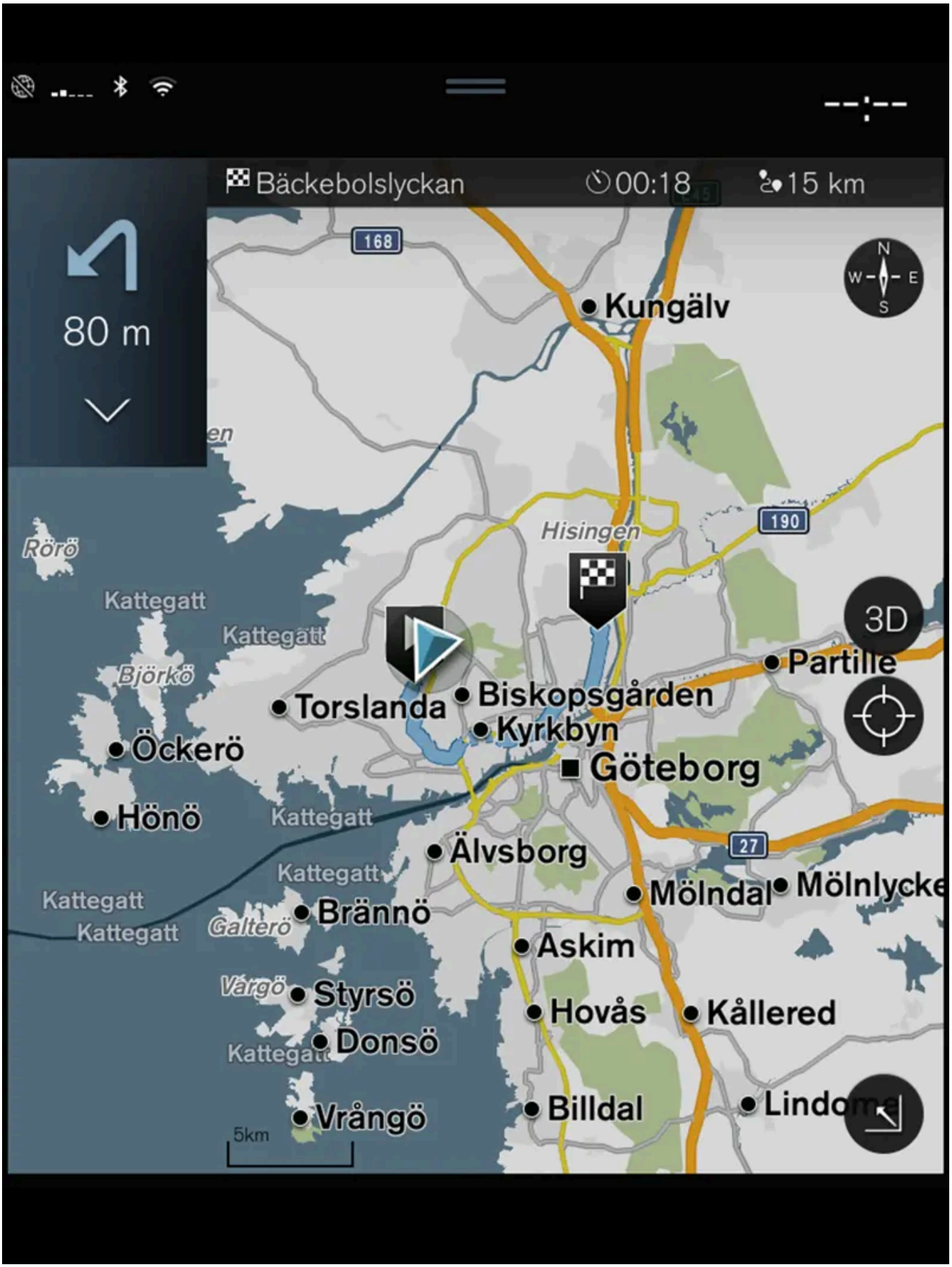
Tap on the symbol for **Itinerary** to open the itinerary.

3 Tap on the recycle bin to delete an intermediate destination in the itinerary, or tap on **Clear itinerary** to delete the whole itinerary.

* Option/accessory.

14.2.6. Show itinerary

It is possible to show the itinerary in the navigation system* during road navigation.



1 During guidance, expand the tools field with the down arrow and then the three points.

2

Tap on the symbol for **Itinerary** to open the itinerary.

* Option/accessory.

14.2.7. Showing guidance points in the itinerary

A list of the itinerary's future guidance points helps the driver to plan upcoming manoeuvres in good time.

Show a list of turns ahead in the itinerary in the navigation system* by:

1 Expanding the tools field using the down arrow on the left-hand side.

2 Expanding the tools field further with the three points.

3 Tap on the symbol for **Turn-by-Turn** (see illustration).

A list of the itinerary's guidance points is shown instead of the tools field (the list can be scrolled through). Pressing the arrow pointing left minimises the list.

The next guidance point is always placed at the top of the list.

The position is shown on the map by pressing one of the list's guidance points. A subsequent tap on the crosshairs symbol (see illustration) resets the map to the guidance view, where the map follows the car.

* Option/accessory.

14.2.8. Select a detour in the navigation system*

If the driver wants to avoid the nearest segment of a route, e.g. because the road is closed, a detour can be selected.

1 Expand the tools field on the left-hand side with the down arrow and then with the three points.

2

Press the symbol for **Detour** to show an alternative route with information about its longest/shortest route as well as calculated journey time. Normally only a short detour is proposed which quickly rejoins the original itinerary.

3 If the suggestion is **accepted**: Tap on the sign with detour information. The route is accepted even if you are driving on the road suggested. After the proposal is accepted, guidance is resumed - now with the detour selected as the route. If the suggestion is **not accepted** continue to drive on the original route.

An alternative to the **Detour** function is to diverge from the itinerary's route - the system then updates the route automatically and continues guidance to the destination along the most suitable route.

It is also possible to show an alternative route while driving continues.

* Option/accessory.

14.3. Traffic information

14.3.1. Information card in navigation system*

All map icons, such as destination, interim destination and saved favourites, have an information card that opens after tapping the icon.

Pressing on the information card shows a small card, two presses show a larger card with more information. The information card's content and options vary depending on the type of icon.

With, for example a marked point of interest (POI [1]), the driver can select:

- **Start navigation** - the position is saved as a destination
- **Add as waypoint** - the position is saved as an intermediate destination (only displayed at the specified destination)
- **Save** - the position is saved in the library
- **Remove from itinerary** - the position is removed if it is included in the itinerary
- **Nearby POI** - points of interest when the car's position appears

* Option/accessory.

[1] Point of Interest

14.3.2. Select a detour in the navigation system*

If the driver wants to avoid the nearest segment of a route, e.g. because the road is closed, a detour can be selected.

1 Expand the tools field on the left-hand side with the down arrow and then with the three points.

2

Press the symbol for **Detour** to show an alternative route with information about its longest/shortest route as well as calculated journey time. Normally only a short detour is proposed which quickly rejoins the original itinerary.

3 If the suggestion is **accepted**: Tap on the sign with detour information. The route is accepted even if you are driving on the road suggested. After the proposal is accepted, guidance is resumed - now with the detour selected as the route. If the suggestion is **not accepted** continue to drive on the original route.

An alternative to the **Detour** function is to diverge from the itinerary's route - the system then updates the route automatically and continues guidance to the destination along the most suitable route.

It is also possible to show an alternative route while driving continues.

* Option/accessory.

14.3.3. Traffic disruptions on the map

The navigation system* receives information about traffic events and traffic congestion and shows them on the map.

> **Note**
>
> Traffic information is not available in all areas/countries.
>
> Coverage areas for traffic information are being increased continuously.

You can set which traffic-related information should be shown on the map.

Traffic disruptions, such as heavy and slow-moving traffic, roadworks and accidents, are indicated by different symbols if the map has been zoomed in enough.

Roadworks appear as follows. When disturbances are more severe, their extent is also shown with a red line along the side of the road. The line indicates at the same time in which travel direction the disturbance applies - if the disturbance is in both directions the road section is marked with a line on both sides.

Information on traffic disruptions

1 Tap on the symbol for traffic disruptions.

> An information card is shown. The information can describe for example the position of the disturbance with the street name or road number, and the disturbance's nature, extent or duration.

Avoid traffic disruptions

If there is traffic congestion along the route, the alternative **Avoid** can be selected. The system then calculates an alternative route.

Real Time Traffic Information[1]

If the car is connected to the Internet, Real Time Traffic Information can also be received with RTTI[2].

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only applies to certain markets.

[2] Real Time Traffic Information

14.3.4. Showing traffic congestion along route

A list of traffic disruptions along the route can be produced when a destination is set in the navigation system*.

1 When the map is shown, expand the tools field on the left-hand side with the down arrow and then with the three points.

2

Press **Ahead**.

3 Press **Traffic**. The Traffic button is grey if there is no traffic event on the route.

> Any traffic events along the route are shown based on distance.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

4 If more information about the traffic disruption is required, tap on the row and an information card is opened. Select one of the information cards alternatives and follow the instructions.

5 Tap on **Avoid** to avoid the traffic disruption.

> The route is recalculated and guidance is given via the alternative route.

* Option/accessory.

14.3.5. Real Time Traffic Information

When the car is connected to the Internet, the driver can access extended traffic information [1] (RTTI [2]) concerning congestion, closed roads and anything else that may affect the travelling time.

If the RTTI service has been activated, information on traffic incidents and traffic flow will be retrieved constantly from an Internet service. When a car requests traffic flow information, anonymous data about the traffic flow at the car's position is provided at the same time, which contributes to the function of the service. The anonymous data is only sent when RTTI is activated. No data is provided if this service is not activated.

The service may need to be activated again, e.g. after certain software updates, after workshop visits or when creating a new driver profile.

Current traffic conditions are shown in the navigation system* for motorways, major roads and extra-urban roads, as well as certain intercity routes.

The amount of traffic information shown on the map depends on the distance to the car and is only shown within approximately 120 km (75 miles) from the car's position.

Text and symbols on the map are shown as usual and the traffic flow shows how quickly the traffic is moving on a road compared with the road's speed limit. The traffic flow is shown on the map on each side of the road with one coloured line per travel direction:

- Green - no disruptions.
- Orange - slow traffic.
- Red - congestion/traffic jam/accident.
- Black - road closed.

> **Note**
>
> Traffic information is not available in all areas/countries.
>
> Coverage areas for traffic information are being increased continuously.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] Real Time Traffic Information

* Option/accessory.

14.3.6. Activating and deactivating Real Time Traffic Information

With the car connected to the Internet, the driver can access real time traffic information [1] (RTTI [2]) in the navigation system*.

RTTI is activated and deactivated as follows:

1. Tap on **Settings** in the centre display's top view.
2. Press **Navigation** → **Traffic**.
3. Select **Real Time Traffic Information** to activate (replaces normal traffic information with RTTI) or deactivate RTTI.
4. One pop-up window with the heading **Terms and conditions** and one with the heading **Data sharing** are shown if it is the first time RTTI is used.

If the car's Internet connection is disconnected when RTTI is activated then the normal traffic information will be activated automatically. RTTI is reactivated when the Internet connection is reconnected.

Deactivate the green line

To stop displaying the green lines that show that traffic is flowing with no problems:

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **Navigation** → **Traffic** and uncheck **Show Free Flowing Traffic**.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] Real Time Traffic Information

* Option/accessory.

14.4. Settings for navigation

14.4.1. Map settings

Settings are selected here to define how the map is to be displayed in the navigation system*.

Settings → **Navigation** → **Map**

Settings can be made within the following areas:

- **Position Format**
- **Map Display Format**
- **Show Speed Cameras**
- **Show Favourites**
- **Point of Interest (POI)**

Position format

Position Format is used to choose whether the current position should be named/shown with its address or its coordinates:

- **Address**
- **Coordinates and altitude**

Map design

Map Display Format is used to choose how the map's colours should be shown:

- **Day** - bright colours.
- **Night** - dark colours so as not to interfere with night vision.
- **Auto** - the system switches between **Day** and **Night** depending on the light in the passenger compartment.

Speed cameras [1]

Show Speed Cameras - indicate whether speed cameras should be shown on the map.

Favourites

Choose whether or not **Favourites** shall be shown on the map.

Point of interest (POI [2])

The POIs to be shown on the map are indicated under **Point of Interest (POI)**. Tap the desired category, e.g. "Transportation", and then select to show all or specific sub categories. Exit the menu by pressing **Back** or **Close**.

* Option/accessory.

[1] The function is not available in all markets.

[2] Point of Interest

14.4.2. Navigation system settings*

Settings are selected here to define how the route and other information should be presented in the navigation system.

Settings → Navigation

Settings can be made within the following areas:

- **Map** - manage map content and appearance.
- **Route and Guidance** - manage guidance and route display and calculation.
- **Traffic** - manage information about traffic disruptions.

* Option/accessory.

14.4.3. Settings for route and road navigation

Settings are selected here to define how the route is to be calculated and the road navigation presented in the navigation system*.
Adjust the volume by turning the volume knob while the voice is talking.

Settings → Navigation → Route and Guidance

Settings can be made within the following areas:

- **Arrival Time Format**
- **Voice Guidance Level**
- **Choose Default Route Type**
- **Route Learning**
- **Avoidance Settings**
- **Suggest Petrol Station**

Time format

Select how arrival time should be specified:

- **ETA**[1] (estimated time of arrival at destination)
- **RTA**[2] (remaining time to arrival)

The times shown apply to the time zone of the destination.

Level for voice guidance

1 Press **Voice Guidance Level**.

2 Tap on the voice guidance required:

- **None** (no automatic voice guidance but the possibility of manually requesting current voice guidance once)
- **Low** (only one message per guidance point)
- **Medium** (up to 3 messages per guidance point, with limited information)
- **Full** (up to 4 messages per guidance point and all available information)

Standard route types

Select the standard type of route preferred:

- **Fast**
- **Eco**
- **Scenic** (motorways are avoided as far as possible, so the journey time may be long)

It is also possible to show an alternative route while driving continues.

Route learning

Select **Route Learning** if data collection to optimise route calculation should be permitted.

Avoid

Press **Avoidance Settings** to open a menu with different options that can be avoided automatically, if possible, when calculating route. For example, select tunnels, areas with congestion charge and ferries.

Suggestions for petrol stations

Press **Suggest Petrol Station** to activate or deactivate suggestions for nearby petrol stations in the driver display when the fuel level is low.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Estimated Time of Arrival

[2] Remaining Time to Arrival

14.4.4. Traffic settings

Settings are selected here to define how traffic information is displayed in the navigation system*.

Settings → Navigation → Traffic

Settings can be made within the following areas:

- **Show and Handle Traffic Events**
- **Avoid Traffic Events**
- **Show Free Flowing Traffic**
- **Real Time Traffic Information**

Show traffic events

Select whether traffic events should be shown on the map and used for route calculation:

- **None**
- **Major**
- **All**

Avoid traffic incidents

Select whether traffic incidents should be avoided when calculating a route:

- **Never**
- **Ask** (any suggestions for route changes are given during the journey)
- **Always**

Show free flowing traffic

Select **Show Free Flowing Traffic** to show this on the map.

Used Real Time Traffic Information[1]

Select **Real Time Traffic Information** to use Real Time Traffic Information via the Internet (RTTI).

* Option/accessory.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

14.5. Map update

14.5.1. Updating maps from an online car

When the car is connected to the Internet, the navigation system* maps can be updated[1].

The home region must be selected in order to avoid downloading an unnecessarily large amount of data. This also reduces the number of notifications since updates for other regions are excluded. A useful method for large map updates is via a computer to a USB memory stick for subsequent transfer to the car.

Select home region by tapping on **Download Centre** → **Maps**. Select your region and then tap on **Set as home region**.

The principle of remote updating.

1

Tap on **Download Centre** in the app view.

> The app starts, and at **Maps**, you'll see a number indicating that updates are available for the specified home region. The figure remains visible until a new search for updates has been performed or until updates have been installed.

2 Press **Maps**.

3 Press **Install** and then **Confirm**.

> Installation of selected map/map update is started.

For further information, search support information at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] or contact a Volvo dealer.

Automatic updating of map data

Automatic updating of the home region can be selected in the **Download centre**.

1 Tap on **Download Centre** in the app view.

2 Press **Maps**.

3 Automatic updating of map data can only be selected for the home region. If the home region is not already selected, press the down arrow to expand the region.

> Detailed map information is shown.

4 Press **Set as home region**.

5 Then scroll to the top of the list of regions, where you will find the currently selected home region.

6 Press the down arrow to expand the home region.

7 Tick the box for **Auto update:**.

> When the car is connected to the Internet and a map update is available, this will now be downloaded automatically to the car.

When a map download in progress is cancelled

If a map download has begun but the car is switched off before the download is complete, the process is paused and then resumed automatically when the car is started again and is reconnected to the Internet.

If one or more updates have been deselected or missed, the update files may be too large to be downloaded directly to the car. If this is the case, you can download the files from the volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com] to a USB drive and then install the map in the car.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only applies to certain countries.

14.5.2. Updating maps via computer and USB

New maps can be downloaded from an Internet-connected computer to a USB memory and then transferred from the USB memory to the car's navigation system*.

Preparations

Updating via computer and USB memory

USB memory

The following requirements apply if a USB memory is to manage an update:

Parameter	Requirements
USB standard:	At least 2.0
File system:	FAT32, exFAT or NFTS
Capacity:	Up to 128 GB This depends on the market. Detailed information is provided for each market's map under the support information at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] .

Note current map version

1

Tap on **Download Centre** in the app view.

2 Press **Maps**

> Available map regions are shown.

3

Tap on the arrow to expand the selected region.

> Detailed map information is shown.

4 Note the map information under the map image.

Downloading of map data from the Internet to a USB memory

Have the USB memory and noted map information readily available.

1 Go to Volvo Cars support site (volvocars.com/intl/support [https://www.volvocars.com/intl/support]) on a computer with Internet connection and then, under **Downloads**, select map downloads.

2 Select the type of maps to be updated.

3 Click on the region to be updated.

> A map image with information on the latest map data for the region is shown.

4 Verify that the map version is newer than the one in the car.

5 Depending on which system you have, select the download link for either Windows or Mac.

6 Select "Run" to install the download program.

7 Click on "New download" to download the map to a USB memory stick or the computer's hard disk.

8 You can verify that the download/copying to the USB memory stick has worked correctly before you install the map in the car by repeating steps 1-2 and then pressing on "Check download" in the download program.

Download times can vary depending on the size of the map and the bandwidth of the connection. Verification of correct download to the USB memory stick before map installation in the car can be made by selecting to check the download in the download program.

Mobile connections via mobile devices or situations where the subscription used may have a monthly data limit are not suitable for use when downloading.

Transferring map data from a USB to the car

The time taken to transfer from USB memory to the car varies depending on map data size. The update can be performed while driving. The navigation system can be used to update a map region, but to update a whole map market, e.g. the EU, the navigation system cannot be used during the update. If installation is not finished when the car is switched off then the update continues when next driving. It is not necessary to perform the update while driving, but the ignition must be switched on. Battery support is recommended if the car is not driven during the update.

Updating

1 Activate the navigation system.

2 Connect the USB memory to the car's USB port. If there are two USB ports then the other one must not be used at the same time.

3 The navigation system automatically detects that an update is available and, during the update of the whole map database, shows on the screen what percentage of the process is complete.

> For the update of an individual map region, the update starts immediately.
To start the update of the whole map database, the user must tap on **Confirm** - or on **Cancel** in order to cancel the installation.

4 Tap on **Confirm** - The update of the whole map database starts and information about how the process is proceeding is shown on the centre display.

5 The centre display shows when the transfer is complete - at which point, remove the USB memory.

6 Restart the infotainment system.

7 Verify that the correct map data have been transferred to the car by repeating the steps described under the previous heading "Note current map version".

Note

For the installation to start, the following criteria must be met:

- Selected area is included on the system's map. It is only possible to download the Scandinavia area if the system already has a Europe map. If a whole new map is downloaded then it overwrites the previous map.
- The version for the selected area is later than the one in the car.
- Selected area is compatible with the car's software. If the update is not compatible then new software will need to be downloaded.
- Selected area is compatible with the existing map. If the area is not compatible then the map will need to be replaced.

Interruptions

If there is an interruption during an update an explanatory text message is always shown on the centre display.

What happens if...	Answer
the Infotainment system is switched off during the update?	The process pauses and resumes automatically from where it stopped when the system is reactivated, e.g. when the engine is started.
the USB memory is pulled out before the update is complete?	The process pauses and resumes automatically from where it stopped when the USB memory is reconnected to the car.

For further information, search support information at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] or contact a Volvo dealer.

* Option/accessory.

14.5.3. Map updates

MapCare is a free-of-charge map update service for Volvo cars equipped with Sensus Navigation*.

General information about updating

Maps may be updated 2-12 times a year (depending on market).

There are two ways to update maps. Either via a computer and a USB memory, or directly from the car[1] (if the car is connected to the Internet).

The car's map is divided up into a number of predefined regions. When updating map data it is not necessary to update all the regions - the driver can choose to only update one or more specific regions.

One or several regions can be updated when the car is connected to the Internet. If a large number of regions - or the whole map - is to be updated, the total quantity of map data can be so large that it is much easier to update via a computer using a USB memory.

> **Note**
>
> If an itinerary stretches over several regions, they should all have the same version number. Otherwise there is the possibility that a calculated route may include an unexpected section of road.

Updating of the map structure

Sometimes the map structure must be changed - this occurs if a region has to be added or when a large region needs to be divided into smaller regions. When this occurs any attempt to update individual regions using a normal procedure will fail and a message will indicate the reason.

Instead, the whole map must be reinstalled using a USB memory stick. For further information, search support information at www.volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] or contact a Volvo dealer.

Updating of the navigation system software

Besides the map data, the navigation system's own software, which is subject to constant development, requires updating now and then. A situation can then arise where the latest updates of map data cannot be supported by the existing software of the navigation system. In which case, a message is shown to inform that the navigation system software must also be updated. This can be done at a Volvo dealer. It is also possible to get help with the map update itself at a Volvo dealer. However, note that even if the map update itself is free-of-charge, the workshop time for performing the update may involve charges.

Frequently asked questions

Question	Answer
Is it possible to change the platform for map data, e.g. from Europe to North America?	Yes, with some exceptions. Contact a Volvo dealer for up-to-date information.
How long does it take to download a map update?	It depends on the map file size and the connection bandwidth. Information about the update's size (MB) is shown on the screen.
How large is an update?	This depends on the market. Detailed information is provided for each market's map under the support information at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/].
None of this updating works - what should I do?	Search further support information at volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] or contact a Volvo dealer.
Unnecessary notifications for map updates are shown – what should you do?	Set the home region in order to reduce the number of notifications since this excludes updates for other areas. Tap on **Download Centre** → **Maps** and select your region, and then tap on **Set as home region**.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Only applies to certain countries.

14.6. Command list for voice control of the navigation system*

Several navigation system functions can be activated with voice commands. A list of them follows below.

Press on the right-hand keypad on the steering wheel and say one of the following commands:

- "**Navigation**" - Initiates a navigation dialogue and shows examples of commands.
- "**Take me home**" - Guidance is given to the **Home** position.
- "**Go to [City]**" - Specifies a city as a destination. Example "Drive to London".
- "**Go to [Address]**" - Specifies an address as a destination. An address must contain city and street. Example "Drive to 5 King's Road, London".

- "**Add intersection**" - Starts a dialogue where two streets must be specified. The intersection point of the specified streets then becomes the destination.

- "**Go to [Post code]**" - Specifies a post code as a destination. Example "Drive to 1 2 3 4 5".
- "**Go to [contact]**" - Specifies an address from the phone book as a destination. Example "Drive to Robyn Smith"[1].
- "**Search [POI category]**" - Searches for adjacent points of interest (POI) within a certain category (e.g. restaurants)[2]. To have the list sorted along the route - say "**Along the route**" when the results list is shown.
- "**Search [POI category]** in **[City]**" - Searches for points of interest (POI) within a certain category and city. The list of results is sorted according to the city's central point. Example "Search for restaurant in London".
- "**Search [POI name]**". Example "Search Kielder Forest".
- "**Change country/Change state**[3],[4]" - Changes the search area for navigation.
- "**Show favourites**" - Shows saved positions in the driver display.
- "**Clear itinerary**" - Erases all the stored intermediate destinations and final destination in an itinerary.
- "**Repeat voice guidance**" - Repeats the last spoken guidance.
- "**Turn off voice guidance**" - Switches off voice guidance.
- "**Turn on voice guidance**" - Starts the switched-off voice guidance.

The following commands can generally be used, regardless of the situation:

- "**Repeat**" - repeats the last voice instruction in the ongoing dialogue.
- "**Help**" - starts a help dialogue. The system replies with the commands available in the current situation, a prompt or an example.
- It is possible to stop voice control both when the system is silent and when it is speaking.
  - "**Cancel**" – stops the dialogue when the system is silent.
  - Give a long press on until two beep tones are heard – the dialogue stops, even if the system is speaking.

Addresses

When an address is entered, the search area is defined as the search area preset in the navigation system. It is possible to switch to a different search area. If the new search area uses a different language to the selected system language, the system will automatically switch to a different recognition engine. Therefore, state the address in the language used in the new search area.

> **Note**
>
> Note that addresses can only be searched for the country or state that the navigation system is preset for. To search for addresses in another country or state you first need to change search area.

Note

Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

* Option/accessory.

[1] In order to find addresses in the map database, they must have been entered correctly in the phone book, e.g. without spelling mistakes and abbreviations. Go to wego.here.com [https://wego.here.com] for spell checking.

[2] The user has the option of calling the POI or specifying it as a destination.

[3] In European countries, “Country” is used instead of “State”.

[4] For Brazil and India, the search area is changed via the centre display.

14.7. Sensus Navigation*

Sensus Navigation is a satellite-based traffic information and navigation system.

The system provides guidance to a destination and provides information along the route, such as alternative routes in the event of accidents and roadworks.

You can arrange an itinerary, search for points of interest (POI [1]) along the route, save your own locations, etc.

The car's precise position is shown, and you will be guided to your destination if you take any wrong turns.

Apart from the practical advantages, Sensus Navigation can also contribute to a better environment by improving traffic flow and by selecting the best route based on the driver's settings.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Point of Interest

14.8. Activating and deactivating the navigation system*

The navigation system is activated automatically when the driver's door is opened and is deactivated only when the driver leaves the car and locks it.

Activating navigation

1 Navigation system tile

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

2 Home button

Show the map image in the centre display by tapping on the top tile (1) on the home view.

If the centre display does not show the navigation system tile – press briefly once on the home button (2) and then tap on the navigation system (1) tile.

Then a map of the current area is shown with the car symbolised by a blue triangle.

Press on this symbol to show the map image across the entire centre display.

Warning

Observe the following.

- Direct all your attention to the road and make sure that all your concentration is on driving.
- Follow applicable traffic legislation and drive with good judgment.
- Due to weather conditions or time of year affecting the road conditions, some recommendations may be less reliable.

Deactivating navigation

The navigation system cannot be switched off but always works in the background - it is only switched off when the driver locks and leaves the car.

Note

The navigation system is also available when the engine is switched off. When the battery level gets too low the system switches off.

* Option/accessory.

14.9. Control the navigation system* with voice control

If your car is equipped with Sensus Navigation you can use voice control to give spoken commands in order to control parts of your navigation system.

Start navigation

Here you can find an introduction on how to start to use voice control in order to control the navigation system in the car.

To activate a navigation command

1 Press the voice control button on the steering wheel .

> You can now give commands, e.g. "**Navigation**" that start a navigation dialogue and show examples of commands.

> **Note**
>
> Not all system languages support voice recognition. The ones that do are highlighted with the symbol in the list of available system languages. Read more about where the information can be found in the section on settings for voice recognition.

Use voice control to get directions to an address

To get directions to a specific address, use the spoken command **Go to** followed by the address. The order in which the address is given is important. To get directions to an address via voice control, the address must be given in the following order: (1) street address; (2) street number; (3) city; according to the following example:

1 Give the **Go to** command.

> Now you can give the address you want directions to.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

2 Give the street address, e.g. "King Street"

3 Give the street number, e.g. "Five"

4 Give the city, e.g. "Gothenburg"

> In this case, the combined command will then be: "**Go to** King Street Five, Gothenburg". Provided the address is found in the system, you will now get directions to the address via your navigation system.

Use voice control to get directions to an address in another country or another county

Your navigation system installs sets of maps for the country or county where the car recognises its location. This means that in order to get correct directions across country or county borders, you need to first tell the system the country or county in which your desired destination address is located. You do this by using the **Change country** or **Change state** command. (The **Change state** command is primarily used in USA. The **Change country** command is used in the example below.)

1 Give the **Change country** command.

> Now you can give the country for the address to which you want directions, e.g. "Norway".

2 Now give the address to which you want directions by following the same procedure as in "Use voice control to get directions to an address".

> In this scenario, the combined command will be divided into 2 subcommands:

1. "**Change country**, Norway"
2. "**Go to** Karl Johans gate twenty two, Oslo"

Provided the address is found in the system, you will now get directions to Karl Johans gate 22, Oslo, Norway via your navigation system

> **Note**
>
> After changing country, try to pronounce the address you want directions to in the language of the destination country. This is necessary since the system's recognition changes automatically to the language of the selected country.

Use voice control to get directions to an address given as **Home** position

If you have given an address in your navigation system as a **Home** position, you can use a spoken command to get directions to the position.

1 Give the **Take me home** command.

> If the navigation system has a home position saved, you will now get directions to the position.

Use voice control to get directions to a place, shop or other specific business without giving an exact address

You can use your navigation system to get directions to special places or a specific type of business, so-called points of interest (POI [1]). Examples of points of interest are, for example, restaurants, hotels, petrol stations, museums or sights and landmarks.

You use the **Search** command to search for a point of interest. You can search for both a specific point of interest as well as point of interest categories.

> **Note**
>
> It is important which command you choose to use for obtaining directions to different alternatives. Please note that when you want directions to a point of interest, use the **Search** command. This is different from when you want directions to specific addresses. Then the **Go to** command must be used instead.

Search for a specific place or business

[POI name] here refers to a specific place or business, a so-called point of interest, e.g. a hotel, a restaurant, a municipal park, etc.

1. Give the **Search** command.

> Now you can specify a specific point of interest you want directions to.

2. State **[POI name]**, e.g. "Castle Forest"

> In this case, the combined command will then be: "**Search** Castle Forest". Provided the place is found in the system, you will now get directions to the place via your navigation system.

Search for a point of interest category e.g. shops, hotels, restaurants, museums or other sights and landmarks or businesses

[POI category] here refers to specific types of place or business, so-called points of interest, e.g. hotels, restaurants, museums, etc.

1. Give the **Search** command.

> Now you can specify the type of point of interest you want to find and get directions to.

2. State **[POI category]**, e.g. "restaurant"

> In this case, the combined command will then be: "**Search** restaurant". The navigation system will now search for restaurants located near and around the car, which results in a list in your driver display. The list that appears consists of suggestions the system has produced based on your command. Categories and close results are at the top, and the lower the relevance a suggestion is deemed to have, the lower down the list it appears.
> Since you are looking for a category in this example, it may be a good idea to choose the category option closest to your search.

3. Select the category most appropriate for your search target in the list, in this case "restaurant(s)", by speaking the number of the row in which the option appears in the driver display.

> Now you can see your search results and select an option that suits you.

Use voice control to stop directions

If you want to stop directions and all of the intermediate destinations and the final destination, this can be done with a spoken command.

1 Give the **Clear itinerary** command.

> The navigation system stops the directions and deletes all of the intermediate destinations and the final destination along the travel itinerary.

How to give postcode and house number

The number commands are stated differently depending on the function to be controlled:

- **Postcodes** must be spoken individually, number by number, e.g. zero three one two two four four three (03122443).
- **House numbers** can be spoken individually or in groups, e.g. two two or twenty-two (22). For some languages, it is also possible to state them with hundreds, e.g. 19 hundred 22 (1922). For English and Dutch, several groups can be said in sequence, e.g. twenty-two twenty-two (22 22). For English, double or triple can be used, e.g. double zero (00). Numbers can be given within the range 0-2300.

Set destination using the phone book's contact list

If you want to set the address for a contact in the phone's phone book as destination then you can do this with the "**Go to [contact]**" command. However, for the address to be found in the database requires that the address is entered with the correct spelling and without abbreviations.

To spell check addresses in HEREs database, go to wego.here.com [https://wego.here.com]

* Option/accessory.

[1] Point Of Interest

14.10. Frequently asked questions about the navigation system*

The following are some frequently asked questions concerning the navigation system Sensus Navigation.

The system does not always calculate the fastest/shortest route

When calculating a route, several factors are taken into account to determine the theoretically best solution. Factors include route distance, road width, road classification, traffic intensity and speed limits. However, an experienced driver with local knowledge can quite possibly select a better route.

The system may for example use toll roads or ferries while the driver has chosen to avoid them

For technical reasons, the system can only use larger roads when calculating a route extending over a long distance.

If you selected to avoid toll roads and motorways, then they are avoided to the greatest possible extent and are only used if there is no other reasonable alternative available.

The position of the car on the map is wrong

The navigation system shows the position of the car to an accuracy of about 20 metres (65 ft).

There is a greater risk of error when driving on roads lying parallel to another road, on winding roads, on roads with several levels and after driving a long distance without making any distinctive turns.

High mountains, buildings, tunnels, viaducts, over/underpasses etc. also have a negative effect on the reception of satellite signals, which means that accuracy in calculating the position of the car may decrease.

Calibrating

Calibration takes place when you lock the car and allow it to remain locked for 15-30 seconds. If the problem with incorrect position persists following calibration, contact a workshop to check/calibrate the antenna unit.

The position of the car on the map is incorrect after transportation

If the car is transported, for example by ferry or train, or in such a way as to impede the reception of satellite signals, it can take up to 5 minutes before the position of the car is correctly calculated.

The car symbol on the screen behaves illogically after the tyres have been changed

In addition to the satellite receiver, the car's speed sensor and a gyroscope assist in calculating the current position, speed and direction of travel of the car. After fitting the spare wheel or changing between summer and winter tyres the system needs to "learn" the size of the new wheels.

In order that the system shall function optimally it is therefore recommended that the car is driven for a while on roads with good satellite reception (good visibility).

The map image does not correspond with the real situation

Factors such as the constant expansion and rebuilding of the road network, new traffic regulations constantly being introduced etc. mean that the map database is not always, in every situation, complete.

Because of this the map data is being constantly developed and updated - check now and again to see if there are any updates.

The car symbol on screen jumps forwards or spins

The system may need a few seconds to sense the position and movement of the car before driving off.

Switch off both the system and the engine. Start again, but remain stationary for a while before starting to drive.

The map information is not up to date

See the answer under the next heading.

Is the latest map information installed?

Map data are updated and improved continuously. In connection with map updates via computer and USB, the current map version in the car can be shown. Check the map version in the car and compare with the available map version in the support information on volvocars.com [https://www.volvocars.com/] .

Current traffic information is not shown

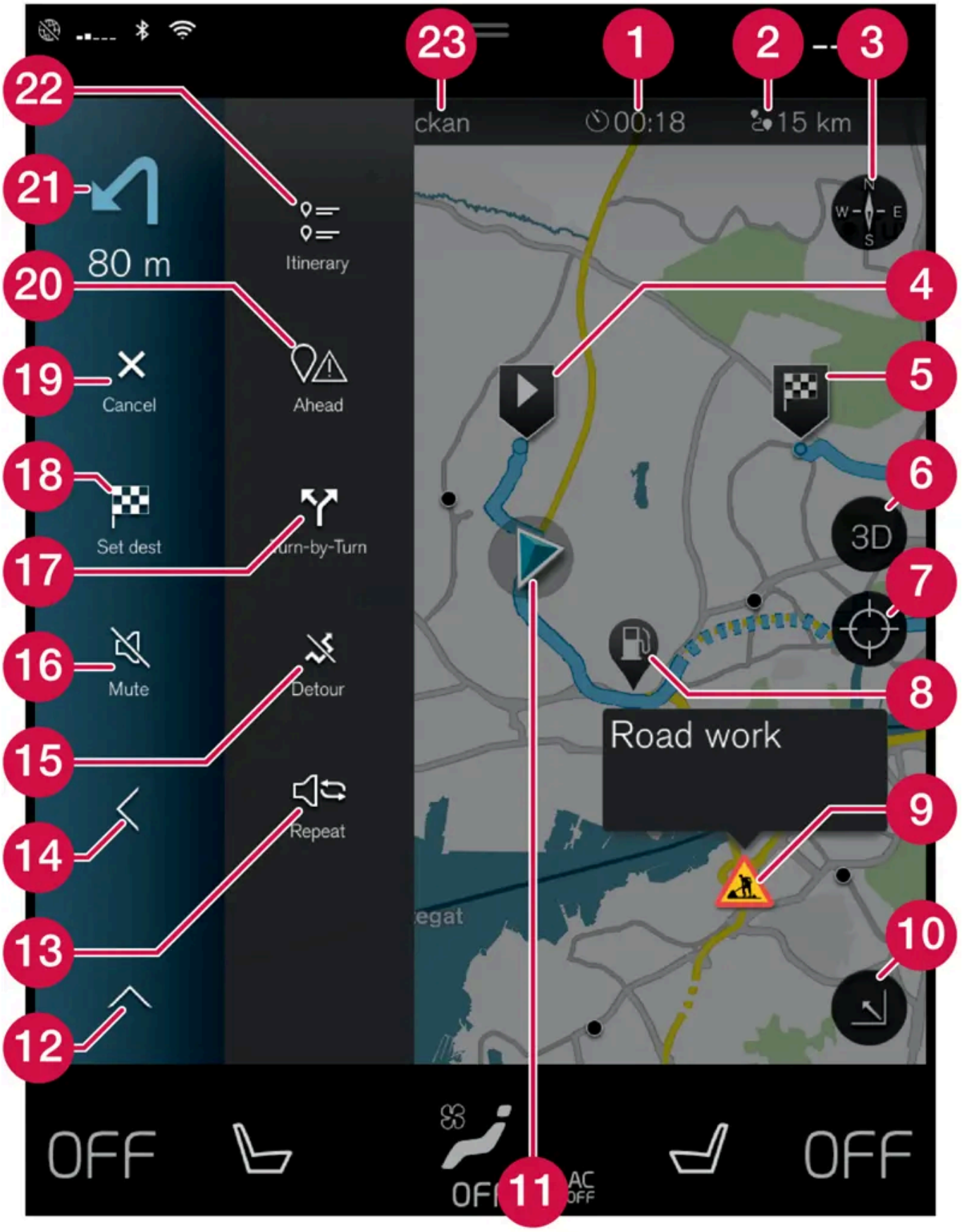
Activate Real Time Traffic Information (RTTI [1]) in order to continuously retrieve information on traffic congestion, road closures and other events that may affect journey time. The car must be connected to the Internet where there is coverage in order to continuously retrieve traffic information.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Real Time Traffic Information

14.11. Symbols and buttons in the navigation system*

The map in the centre display shows symbols and colours providing information about various roads and the area around the car and the route. A tool bar with different buttons for different settings is to the left.



Symbols and buttons on the map

1	Arrival time/remaining travel time
2	Distance to destination
3	Compass/changes between north and travel direction up
4	Starting
5	Destination/final destination
6	Changes map display between 2D and 3D
7	Reset the map to follow the car
8	Point of interest (POI [1])
9	Traffic information
10	Minimises (expanded view) or maximises the map image (full screen)
11	Car on planned route
12	Minimises the tools field
13	Repeat the current voice guidance
14	Minimises the tools field
15	Calculate detour
16	Voice guidance temporarily On/Off
17	Shows list with the itinerary's guidance points
18	Specifying destinations/intermediate destinations
19	Cancels guidance
20	Shows list of the itinerary's points of interest (POI [1]) and traffic information
21	Next manoeuvre
22	Itinerary and Alternative route
23	Destination/final destination

* Option/accessory.

[1] Point of Interest

14.12. Navigation license agreements*

A license[1] is an agreement granting a right to conduct some activity or to make use of another person's right under the terms and conditions of the agreement.

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

PLEASE READ THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT CAREFULLY BEFORE USING THE HERE DATABASE.

NOTICE TO THE USER

THIS IS A LICENSE AGREEMENT - AND NOT AN AGREEMENT FOR SALE – BETWEEN YOU AND HERE EUROPE B.V. (“HERE”) FOR YOUR COPY OF THE HERE NAVIGABLE MAP DATABASE, INCLUDING ASSOCIATED COMPUTER SOFTWARE, MEDIA AND EXPLANATORY PRINTED DOCUMENTATION PUBLISHED BY HERE (JOINTLY ”THE DATABASE”). BY USING THE DATABASE, YOU ACCEPT AND AGREE TO ALL TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (”AGREEMENT”). IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THE TERMS OF THIS AGREEMENT, PROMPTLY RETURN THE DATABASE, ALONG WITH ALL OTHER ACCOMPANYING ITEMS, TO YOUR SUPPLIER FOR A REFUND.

OWNERSHIP

The Database and the copyrights and intellectual property or neighboring rights therein are owned by HERE and its licensors. Ownership of the media on which the Database is contained is retained by HERE and/or your supplier until you have paid in full any amounts due to HERE and/or your supplier pursuant to this Agreement or similar agreement(s) under which the Database is provided to you.

LICENSE GRANT

HERE grants you a non-exclusive license to use the Database for your personal use or, if applicable, for use in your business' internal operations. This license does not include the right to grant sub-licenses.

LIMITATIONS ON USE

The Database is restricted for use in the specific system for which it was created. Except to the extent explicitly permitted by mandatory laws (e.g. national laws based on the European Software Directive (91/250) and the Database Directive (96/9)), you may not extract or reutilize substantial parts of the contents of the Database nor reproduce, copy, modify, adapt, translate, disassemble, decompile, reverse engineer any portion of the Database. If you wish to obtain interoperability information as meant in (the national laws based on) the European Software Directive, you shall grant HERE reasonable opportunity to provide said information on reasonable terms, including costs, to be determined by HERE.

The Database includes information provided under license to HERE from third parties and is subject to the supplier terms and copyright notices set forth at the following URL:

Here.com/supplierterms

TRANSFER OF LICENSE

You may not transfer the Database to third parties, except when installed in the system for which it was created or when you do not retain any copy of the Database, and provided that the transferee agrees to all terms and conditions of this Agreement and confirms this in writing to HERE. Multi-disc sets may only be transferred or sold as a complete set as provided by HERE and not as subset thereof.

LIMITED WARRANTY

HERE warrants that, subject to the warnings set out below, for a period of 12 months after acquisition of your copy of the Database, it will perform substantially in accordance with HERE's Criteria for Accuracy and Completeness existing on the date you acquired the Database; these criteria are available from HERE at your request. If the Database does not perform in accordance with this limited warranty, HERE will use reasonable efforts to repair or replace your non-conforming copy of the Database. If these efforts do not lead to performance of the Database in accordance with the warranties set out herein, you will have the option to either receive a reasonable refund of the price you paid for the Database or to rescind this Agreement. This shall be HERE's entire liability and your sole remedy against HERE. Except as expressly provided in this section, HERE does not warrant nor make any representations regarding the use of results of the use of the Database in terms of its correctness, accuracy, reliability, or otherwise. HERE does not warrant that the Database is or will be error free. No oral or written information or advice provided by HERE, your supplier or any other person shall create a warranty or in any way increase the scope of the limited warranty described above. The limited warranty set forth in this Agreement does not affect or prejudice any statutory legal rights that you may have under the legal warranty against hidden defects.

If you did not acquire the Database from HERE directly, you may have statutory rights against the person from whom you have acquired the Database in addition to the rights granted by HERE hereunder according to the law of your jurisdiction. The above warranty of HERE shall not affect such statutory rights and you may assert such rights in addition to the warranty rights granted herein.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY

The price of the Database does not include any consideration for assumption of risk of consequential, indirect or unlimited direct damages which may arise in connection with your use of the Database. Accordingly, in no event shall HERE be liable for any consequential or indirect damages, including without limitation, loss of revenue, data, or use, incurred by you or any third party arising out of your use of the Database, whether in an action in contract or tort or based on a warranty, even if HERE has been advised of the possibility of such damages. In any event HERE's liability for direct damages is limited to the price of your copy of the Database.

THE LIMITED WARRANTY AND LIMITATION OF LIABILITY, SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, DO NOT AFFECT OR PREJUDICE YOUR STATUTORY RIGHTS WHERE YOU HAVE ACQUIRED THE DATABASE OTHERWISE THAN IN THE COURSE OF A BUSINESS.

WARNINGS

The Database may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results. The Database does not include or reflect information on - inter alia - travel time and may not include neighborhood safety; law enforcement; emergency assistance; construction work; road or lane closures; road slope or grade; bridge height, weight or other limits; road conditions; special events depending on the navigation system brand you possess.

GOVERNING LAW

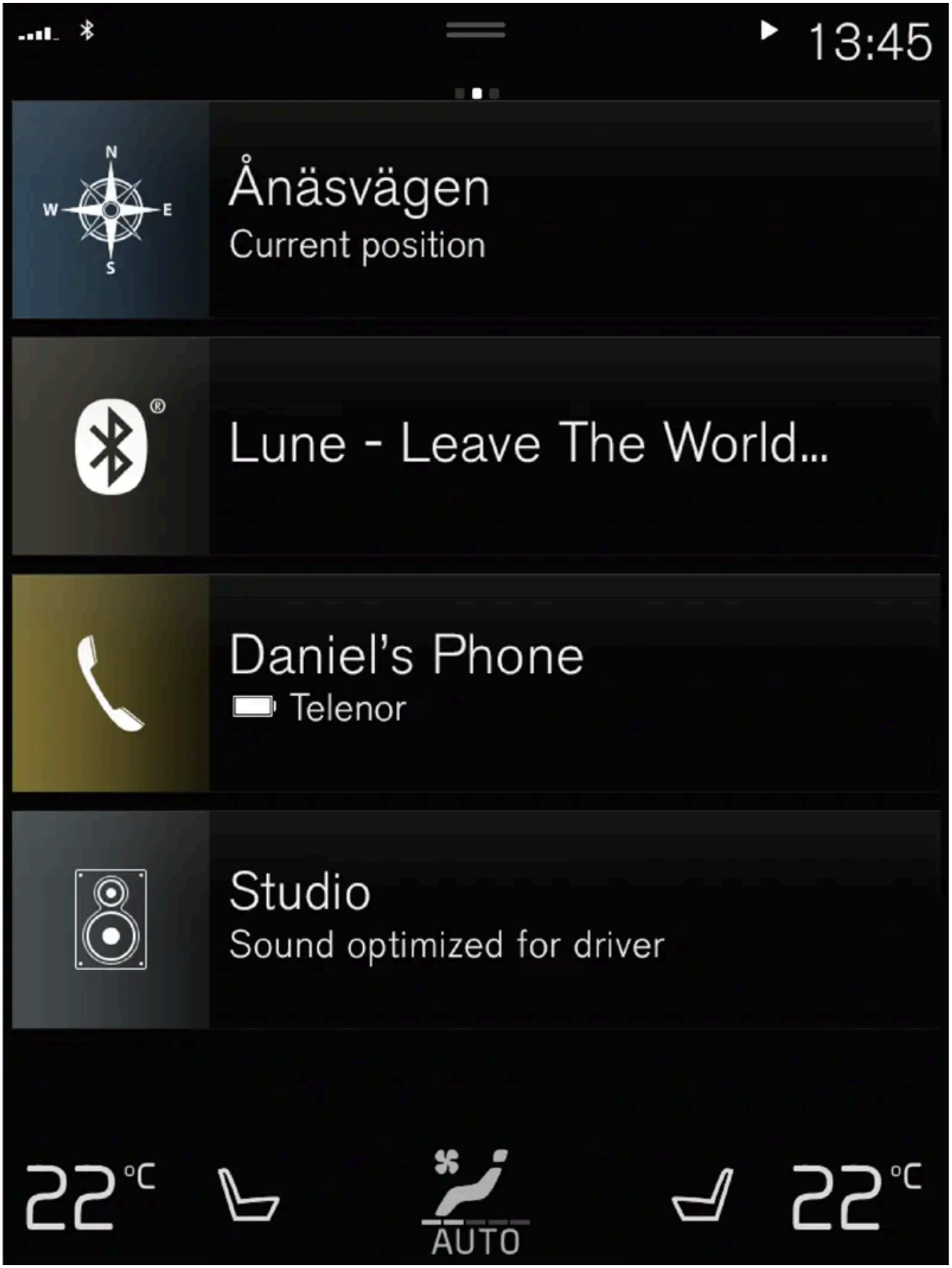
This Agreement shall be governed by the laws of the jurisdiction, in which you reside at the date of acquisition of the Database. Should you at that moment reside outside the European Union or Switzerland, the law of the jurisdiction within the European Union or Switzerland where you acquired the Database shall apply. In all other cases, or if the jurisdiction where you acquired the Database cannot be defined, the laws of the Netherlands shall apply. The courts competent at your place of residence at the time you acquired the Database shall have jurisdiction over any dispute arising out of, or relating to this Agreement, without prejudice to HERE' right to bring claims at your then current place of residence.

* Option/accessory.

[1] EULA = End User License Agreement

14.13. Navigation system* in centre display

The navigation system is presented and operated in several different ways, e.g. via the centre display.



The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

All settings for the navigation system are defined via the centre display. Here, the driver sets how the map is to be displayed or enters a destination.

If the map image is not shown in the centre display – tap on the top tile (for the navigation system).

Where am I?

What geographic position does the car have now?

- Press the map's car symbol (blue triangle) - the information is shown directly on the map.

Find the car symbol on the map

After zooming in and out and moving around on the map, it can sometimes be hard to find your way back to the position of the car. Press the crosshairs to reset the map to follow the car symbol.

North or direction of travel upwards on the map

There are two ways of showing the car's movement in relation to the map. Press the symbols to switch between having north or the direction of travel upwards on the map.

When the map is shown with north upwards, the car symbol moves in the current compass direction on the map. If the car symbol moves to the left on the map, the car is driving westwards.

When the car symbol is pointing upwards, the map rotates under the car symbol, depending on how the car is turning. The compass symbol points towards north (N) on the map, and the centre of the compass shows the direction in which the car is pointing:

Compass symbols	Compass direction
N	North
NE	Northeast
E	East
SE	Southeast
S	South
SW	Southwest
W	West
NW	Northwest

2D or 3D display

Tap on the symbols to shift between 2D and 3D display.

For 3D display, the car's direction of travel is always shown upwards. The map rotates under the car symbol, depending on how the car is turning. The compass symbol indicates which direction north is (N) on the map, and the centre of the compass shows the direction in which the front of the car is pointing. The map scale is not shown in 3D mode.

For 2D display, the map is shown with north upwards, and the car symbol moves in the current compass direction on the map.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Zoom in

Make the map larger by tapping the centre display twice in quick succession or by placing two fingers on the centre display and separating them outwards.

Zoom out

Zoom out from the map by tapping once with two fingers on the centre display or dragging two fingers together on the centre display.

Scroll

Place one finger on the map, swipe in the desired direction, and release. The scroll function is only possible with the map maximised, not minimised.

Switching heading display

Maximise the map and press on the map heading at the top of the centre display. Choose between the following displays as the heading on the map:

1. Destination Destination, arrival time (**ETA**) or remaining travel time (**RTA**) and distance to destination (Distance). To select **ETA** or **RTA**, see the section "Settings for route and road navigation".
2. Current position as address (Address) or as coordinates (Coordinates). When coordinates are shown, altitude is also shown (Altitude). To choose between address and coordinates, see section "Map settings".

* Option/accessory.

14.14. Navigation system* in driver display

The navigation system is presented and operated in several different ways, e.g. via the driver display.

The map is only shown in the 12" driver display.

During driving the driver is guided by voice guidance and instructions on the driver display. Map display in the driver display can also be activated without a set destination.

The right-hand steering wheel keypad and the driver display

The right-hand steering wheel buttons can be used to manage some of the functions in the navigation system, e.g. **Take me home** and **Cancel guidance**. If a message is shown the driver display, it must first be acknowledged or dismissed for the menu to be shown.

1 Opening/closing the menu. The menu is closed automatically after a period of inactivity or with certain options.

2 Browsing between menus.

3 Browsing between menu options.

4 Confirm or highlight an option.

* Option/accessory.

14.15. Activating and deactivating the navigation system* in the driver display

The navigation system is shown automatically in the driver display when a destination is set. The navigation system can also be shown without specifying a destination.

1. Drag down the centre display's top view.
2. Press **Settings**.
3. Press **My Car** → **Displays** → **Driver Display Information**.
4. Press the radio button **Show Map** to show the navigation system in the driver display without an entered destination.

* Option/accessory.

14.16. Suggest new map information with Map Creator

If your Volvo is equipped with Sensus Navigation, maps from the Here map supplier are shown. If you find that any information is missing from a map, or want to suggest changes, you can do this at Here's Map Creator service. Such information can include new addresses or rerouted roads.

On Here's Map Creator [https://mapcreator.here.com/?site=volvo-com-consumers] service, you can create an account to log in and suggest map changes. Instructions for how to do this are also found there.

The changes you suggest are sent to Here for review. Once the information has been verified and approved, the information you suggested is added to their maps. The changes will be available in your Volvo after your suggestion has been approved by Here and implemented in a map update that you then install in your navigation system.

Suggestions for changes that are reported are reviewed and checked thoroughly before Here approves them and adds them to their maps. It can take up to twelve months before the changes reach the maps in your car.

> **Note**
>
> Volvo does not have the opportunity to verify, approve or implement the requests for map changes you send to Here.

14.17. Traffic information providers

Information on which companies deliver traffic information to your car and its systems in different countries is found below.

Region	Country	RTTI[1]	RDS-TMC[2]	Sirius XM [3]	VICS	T-DMB
Africa	South Africa	INRIX				
Asia	China	INRIX				
	Indonesia	INRIX				
	Japan				VICS	
	Korea					KBS
	Singapore	INRIX				
	Thailand	INRIX				
Europe	Austria	INRIX	[4]			
	Belgium	INRIX				
	Czech Republic	INRIX	[4]			
	Denmark	INRIX	[4]			
	Finland	INRIX				
	France	INRIX				
	Germany	INRIX	[4]			
	Hungary	INRIX				
	Italy	INRIX				
	Luxembourg	INRIX				
	Netherlands	INRIX				
	Norway	INRIX				
	Poland	INRIX				
	Portugal	INRIX				
	Russia	INRIX				
	Slovakia	INRIX				
	Slovenia	INRIX				
	Spain	INRIX	[4]			
	Sweden	INRIX	[4]			
	Switzerland	INRIX	[4]			
	Turkey	INRIX				
	UK	INRIX	ITIS			
Middle East	Bahrain	INRIX				
	Kuwait	INRIX				
	Oman	INRIX				
	Qatar	INRIX				
	Saudi Arabia	INRIX				
	The United Arab Emirates	INRIX				
North America and Central America	Canada	INRIX				
	Mexico	INRIX				
	USA	INRIX				

Region	Country	RTTI [1]	RDS-TMC [2]	Sirius XM [3]	VICS	T-DMB
Oceania and Pacific Ocean	Australia	INRIX				
	New Zealand	INRIX				
South America	Brazil		HERE			

[1] Traffic information via the internet (requires internet connection)

[2] Traffic information via the FM band.

[3] Traffic information via Sirius satellite radio.

[4] Free service only.

15. Wheels and tyres

15.1. Changing wheels

15.1.1. Changing wheel

Wheel changes must always be performed correctly. Instructions on how a wheel is removed and mounted and what is important to remember are provided below. Check that the tyre dimension is approved for use on the car.

Warning

- If a wheel must be changed in a trafficked environment, passengers must stand in a safe place.
- Use a jack designed for the car when changing tyres. Use supports to secure the car for all other work.
- Never crawl under the car or reach under with a part of your body when it is raised on a jack.
- Passengers must leave the car when it is raised on the jack.

Important

The jack* included with the car is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture. Only the jack belonging to the specific model is to be used to jack up the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

When the jack is not in use it must be stored in its storage space under the cargo area floor. The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to have space.

Removing a wheel

Read through all instructions before beginning. Take out the tools needed before jacking up the car.

1. Activate the hazard warning flashers and set out a warning triangle if a wheel shall be changed in a trafficked location.
2. Make sure that the parking brake is activated and engage gear position P.
3. Chock in front of and behind the wheels that remain on the ground. Use, for example, heavy wooden blocks or large stones.

4 Screw together the towing eye with the wheel wrench to the stop position.

5 Remove the plastic caps from the wheel bolts with the intended tool.

6 With the car still on the ground, use the wheel bolt wrench/towing eye to undo the wheel bolts ½-1 turn by pressing downwards (anticlockwise). Always start with the lockable wheel bolts*.

7 Follow the instructions for how to safely raise the car with the jack.

8 Raise the car high enough to allow the wheel to be removed to move freely. Remove the wheel bolts and lift off the wheel.

Mounting a wheel

1 Clean the surfaces between wheel and hub.

2 Put on the wheel. Ensure that the correct dimension is fitted in the correct position for cars with different front and rear tyre or wheel dimensions. Tighten the wheel bolts thoroughly.

Do **not** use lubricant on the threads of the wheel bolts.

3 Lower the car so that the wheels cannot rotate.

4 Tighten the wheel bolts crosswise. It is important that the wheel bolts are tightened properly. Tighten to 140 Nm (103 foot-pound). Check the tightening torque with a torque wrench.

5 Refit the plastic caps over the wheel bolts.

6 Check the tyre pressure and save the new tyre pressure in the system for tyre pressure monitoring*.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Warning

The wheel bolts may need to be re-tightened several days after the wheel change. Temperature differences and vibration may mean that they are not attached equally as tightly.

Note

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

* Option/accessory.

15.1.2. Jack*

The jack can be used to raise the car, for example, to change to a wheel.

Important

The jack* included with the car is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture. Only the jack belonging to the specific model is to be used to jack up the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

When the jack is not in use it must be stored in its storage space under the cargo area floor. The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to have space.

* Option/accessory.

15.1.3. Wheel bolts

Wheel bolts are used to attach the wheels to the hubs.

Only use rims that are tested and approved by Volvo and which are Volvo genuine accessories.

Check the tightening torque of the wheel bolts with a torque wrench.

Do **not** use lubricant on the threads of the wheel bolts.

> **Warning**
>
> The wheel bolts may need to be re-tightened several days after the wheel change. Temperature differences and vibration may mean that they are not attached equally as tightly.

> **Important**
>
> The wheel bolts must be tightened to 140 Nm. (103 foot-pound). Overtightening or loose tightening may damage the nuts and the bolts.

Lockable wheel bolt kit*

To loosen or tighten the lockable wheel bolts – turn the wrench in the lock bolt until it fully engages in the code grooves. Always start with the lockable wheel bolts if the wheel shall be removed. When fitting the wheel, finish with the lock screw.

> **Important**
>
> Remember not to use bending force when you loosen/tighten the wheel bolts. This could damage the code groove in the lock bolt and the wheel wrench and so make it impossible to fit/remove the wheel.

When the wheel wrench is not in use it must be stored in its place in the foam block under the cargo area floor. It is important to remember this if the car is due to visit a workshop in order to have the tool available. If you lose the wrench, contact your Volvo dealer.

* Option/accessory.

15.1.4. Spare wheel*

The spare wheel, the Temporary Spare type, can be used to temporarily replace a punctured normal wheel.

The spare wheel is only designed for temporary use. Replace it with a normal wheel as soon as possible.

The car's driving characteristics can be changed when the spare wheel is used and the ground clearance is reduced. Do not wash the car in an automatic car wash if the Temporary Spare is being used.

Recommended tyre pressure must be maintained regardless of the position of the temporary spare wheel on the car.

If the spare wheel is damaged, a new one can be purchased from a Volvo dealer.

Warning

- Never drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) with a spare wheel fitted on the car.
- The car must never be driven fitted with more than one "Temporary Spare" wheel.
- The car may have different driving characteristics while driving with the spare wheel. The spare wheel must be replaced with a normal wheel as soon as possible.
- The spare wheel is smaller than the normal wheel, which affects the car's ground clearance. Look out for high kerbs and do not machine-wash the car.
- Follow the manufacturer's recommended tyre pressure for the spare wheel.
- On all-wheel drive cars, the drive on the rear axle can be disengaged.
- If the spare wheel is fitted to the front axle then it is not possible to use snow chains at the same time.
- The spare wheel must not be repaired.

Important

The car must not be driven with tyres of different dimensions or with a spare tyre other than the one the car is approved for. Using tyres of different dimensions can cause serious damage to the car's transmission due to the different rolling circumferences.

Cars designed for different front and rear tyre or wheel dimensions must have the same type and make of tyres on the front and rear axles.

* Option/accessory.

15.1.5. Handling the spare wheel*

Follow these instructions for handling the spare wheel.

Taking out the spare wheel

The illustration is generic and appearance may differ.

Applicable to cars with 48 V support battery.

The spare wheel is located under the cargo area floor in the spare wheel well with the outside upwards. The spare wheel is secured with the same bolt that attaches in the body. The foam block contains all the tools for changing a wheel.

1. Fold up the cargo area floor.
2. Undo the retaining screw.
3. Lift out the spare wheel.

Taking out the spare wheel

The illustration is generic and appearance may differ.

Applicable to cars without 48V support battery.

The spare wheel is located under the load floor and is attached by a strap. The foam block contains all the tools for changing a wheel.

1. Fold up the cargo area floor.
2. Undo the straps and lift out the spare wheel.

Storing the punctured tyre

1. Screw back the mounting screw that held the spare wheel in place.

> **Important**
>
> Do not attempt to unscrew the lower part of the mounting screw if it is secured in the body. There is a risk it may break.
>
> If the lower attachment of the mounting screw does loosen from the body underneath the spare wheel, refit it in the hole and turn clockwise to reattach it.

> **Warning**
>
> For cars with 48V battery, the screw is attached in the battery box instead of the body. If the lower part of the mounting screw remains fitted when the spare wheel has been removed, it should be removed to avoid risk of crushing when the damaged tyre is put back in place.

2. Put the tools back in their right place in the foam block.
3. Then fold down the cargo area floor and place the punctured tyre in the cargo area.

* Option/accessory.

15.1.6. Snow chains

Use of snow chains and/or winter tyres can help to improve the traction in winter conditions.

Volvo recommends that snow chains are not used on wheel dimensions greater than 18 inches

Warning

Use Volvo genuine snow chains or equivalent chains designed for the car model, and tyre and rim dimensions. Only **single-sided** snow chains are permitted.

In the event of uncertainty about the show chain, Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted. The wrong snow chains may cause serious damage to the car and lead to an accident.

Using snow chains may result in malfunction of the tyre pressure monitoring system * [1].

Important

Snow chains can be used on the car with the following restrictions:

- Always follow the mounting instructions from the manufacturer carefully. Fit the chains as tensioned as possible and tension them at regular intervals.
- Snow chains must only be used on the front wheels (also applies to all-wheel drive cars).
- In some cases, snow chains must NOT be used, such as if accessory, aftermarket or "special" tyres and wheels are fitted that have a different size to the original tyres and wheels. Sufficient distance must be maintained between the chains and brakes, suspension and body components.
- Check local regulations with regard to using snow chains before fitting them.
- Never exceed the chain manufacturer's specified maximum speed. You must never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) under any circumstances.
- Avoid bumps, holes or sharp turns when driving with snow chains.
- Avoid driving on bare ground as this wears out both the snow chains and tyres.
- Driving with snow chains may have a negative effect on the car's driving characteristics. Avoid fast or sharp turns, as well as braking with locked wheels.
- Some types of chain that are firmly tensioned affect brake components and must therefore NOT be used.

You can obtain more information on snow chains from a Volvo dealer.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

15.1.7. Winter tyres

Winter tyres are adapted for winter road conditions.

Volvo recommends winter tyres specially developed for winter driving on all wheels if there is a risk of snow or ice. Tyre dimensions are dependent on engine variant. When driving on winter tyres, the correct type of tyres must be fitted to all four wheels.

A tyre that meets the minimum values for traction on snow has the following pictogram on the tyre label.

The tyre label for a tyre that meets the relevant minimum values for traction on ice must include the following pictogram:

Studded tyres are not included in tyre marking.

Tips for changing to winter tyres

When summer and winter wheels are changed, mark which side of the car they were mounted on, for example **L** for left and **R** for right.

Contact a Volvo dealer for advice on which rim and tyre type suit your car best.

Studded tyres

Studded winter tyres should be run in gently for 500-1000 km (300-600 miles), so the studs settle properly into the tyres. This gives the tyre, and especially the studs, a longer service life.

> **Note**
>
> Laws regarding the use of studded tyres may vary. Always follow local laws and regulations.

Tread depth

Road conditions with ice, slush and low temperatures place considerably higher demands on tyres than summer conditions. Volvo therefore recommends not to drive on winter tyres that have a tread depth of less than 4 mm (0.15 inches).

15.1.8. Punctures

Activate the hazard warning flashers if the car has a puncture in a trafficked environment.

Think about safety. If possible, move the car out of danger from traffic. Call roadside assistance if necessary.

If possible, exit the car from the side with least traffic.

Put on a reflective vest and then position the warning triangle so that other road users are warned in good time.

Dealing with a puncture

The car is equipped with either a puncture repair kit for temporary tyre repair or a spare wheel*, see the respective section for user instructions.

* Option/accessory.

15.1.9. Tool kit

Tools that can be useful during towing, wheel changes or similar are found in the car's cargo area.

Examples of tools.

1 Jack*

2 Tool for removing the plastic caps from the wheel bolts

3 Funnel for filling fluids

4 Wheel wrench* and towing eye

If the car is fitted with a spare wheel*, there is a jack and a wheel bolt wrench instead of emergency puncture repair kit.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

15.2. Tyres

15.2.1. Dimension designation for tyre

Designations for tyre dimension, load index and speed rating.

The car has an approval for the complete vehicle with certain combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

Designation of dimensions

All tyres have a dimension designation, for example: 235/55 R18 100V.

235	Tyre width (mm)
55	Ratio between tyre wall height and tyre width (%)
R	Radial ply
18	Rim diameter in inches
100	Codes for the maximum permitted tyre load, tyre load index (LI)
V	Speed rating for maximum permitted speed, speed rating (SS). (In this case 240 km/h (149 mph).)

Load index

Each tyre has a certain capacity to carry a load, a load index (LI). The car's weight determines the load capacity required of the tyres.

Speed rating

Each tyre can withstand a certain maximum speed. Tyre speed rating, SS (Speed Symbol), must at least correspond with the car's top speed. The table below shows the maximum permitted speed for each speed rating (SS). The only exception to these regulations is winter tyres [1], where a lower speed rating may be used. If such a tyre is selected, the car must not be driven more quickly than the tyre is rated for. For example, cars with Q rating tyres must be driven at speeds not exceeding 160 km/h (100 mph). The road conditions and applicable road traffic rules determine how quickly the car can be driven, not the speed rating of the tyres.

> **Note**
>
> The maximum permitted speed is specified in the table.

Q	160 km/h (100 mph) (used only on winter tyres)
T	190 km/h (118 mph)
H	210 km/h (130 mph)
V	240 km/h (149 mph)
W	270 km/h (168 mph)
Y	300 km/h (186 mph)

Warning

The lowest permitted tyre load index (LI) and speed rating (SS) for the tyres for each respective engine variant are shown in the specifications, which can be found in the printed owner's manual. If a tyre with too low a load index or speed rating is used, it may overheat and be damaged.

[1] Both those with metal studs and those without.

15.2.2. Approved tyre pressures

Approved tyre pressures for each engine alternative can be found in the table.

Note

All engines, tyres or combinations of these are not always available in all markets.

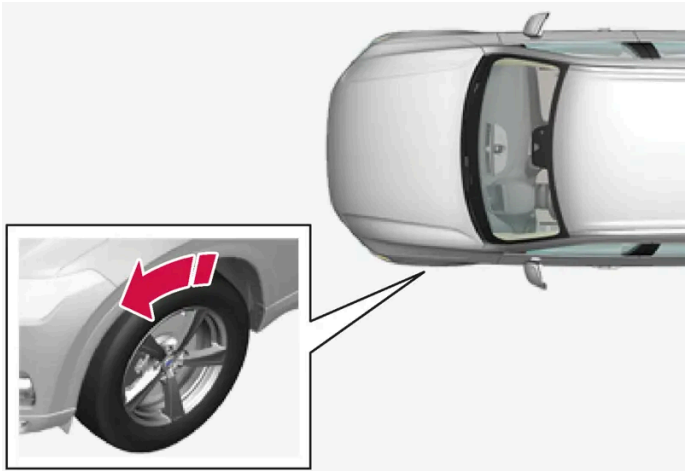
Engine	Tyre size	Speed	Load, 1-3 persons		Max. load		ECO pressure[1]
			Front kPa (psi)[2]	Rear kPa (psi)	Front kPa (psi)	Rear kPa (psi)	Front/rear kPa (psi)
All engines	235/60 R17 235/55 R18 235/50 R19 245/45 R20 245/40 R21	0-180 km/h(0-112 mph)	230 (33)	230 (33)	260 (38)	260 (38)	260 (38)
	Temporary Spare Tyre	max 80 km/h(max 50 mph)	420 (60)	420 (60)	420 (60)	420 (60)	–

[1] Economical driving.

[2] In certain countries the "bar" unit is used alongside the SI unit "Pascal": 1 bar = 100 kPa.

15.2.3. Tyres' rotation direction

Tyres with a tread pattern which are designed to only turn in one direction have the direction of rotation marked with an arrow.



The arrow shows the tyre's direction of rotation.

- Tyres must rotate in the same direction during their entire service life.
- Tyres should only be switched between front and rear positions, never between left and right-hand sides, or vice versa.
- If the tyres are fitted incorrectly, the car's braking characteristics and capacity to force rain and slush out of the way are adversely affected.
- The tyres with the deepest tread depth should always be fitted to the rear of the car in order to reduce the risk of oversteer skidding.
- On cars with different front and rear tyre or wheel dimensions, it is not permitted to change position between front and rear wheels.
- Volvo recommends that the rear tyres do not have substantially less tread depth than the front tyres in order to reduce the risk of oversteer skidding when driving on wet roads.

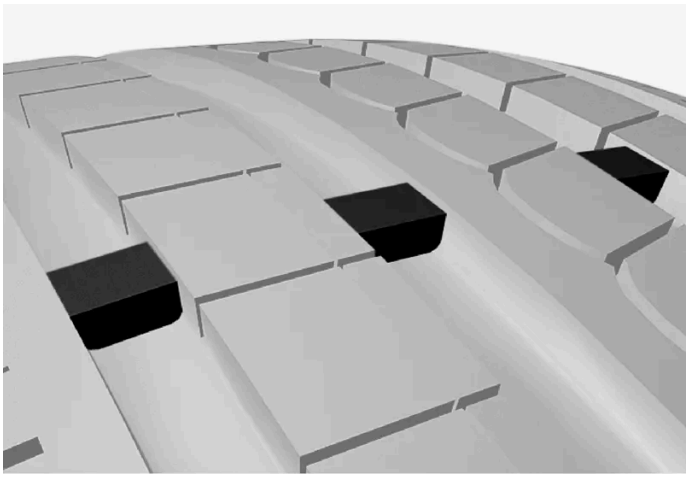
Note

Make sure that the front and rear axles have the same type, dimension and make of tyres.

Cars with different front and rear tyre dimensions must have the same type and make of tyres on the front and rear axles.

15.2.4. Tread wear indicators on the tyres

Tread wear indicators show the status of the tyre's tread depth.



A tread wear indicator is a narrow elevation across the longitudinal grooves of the tyre's tread pattern. On the side of the tyre are the letters TWI (Tread Wear Indicator). When the tyre's tread depth is down to 1.6 mm (1/16 inch), the tread will be level in height with the tread wear indicators. Change to new tyres as soon as possible. Remember that tyres with little tread depth provide very poor grip in rain and snow.

15.2.5. Dimension designation for wheel rim

Wheel and rim dimensions are designated in accordance with the examples in the table below.

The car has an approval for the complete vehicle with certain combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

All wheel rims have a dimension designation, for example: 7.5Jx18x50.5.

7.5	Rim width in inches
J	Rim flange profile
18	Rim diameter in inches
50.5	Off-set in mm (distance from wheel centre to wheel contact surface against the hub)

15.2.6. Minimum permitted tyre load index and speed rating for tyres

The table below shows minimum permitted load index (LI) and speed rating (SS) for tyres.

Engine	man/ aut	Minimum permitted load index (LI)[1]	Minimum permitted speed rating (SS)[2]
T2(B3154T9)	man	96	H
T2(B3154T9)	aut	96	H
T3(B3154T7)	man	96	H

Engine	man/ aut	Minimum permitted load index (LI)[1]	Minimum permitted speed rating (SS)[2]
T3(B3154T2)	aut	96	H
T3(B3154T4)	aut	96	H
T4(B4204T47)	aut	96	H
T4(B4204T31)	aut	96	H
T4 AWD(B4204T47)	aut	96	H
T4 AWD(B4204T31)	aut	96	H
T4 AWD(B4204T51)	aut	96	H
T5 AWD(B4204T18)	aut	96	H
T5 AWD(B4204T36)	aut	96	H
B3(B420T4)	aut	96	H
B4(B420T6)	aut	96	H
B4(B420T5)	aut	96	H
B4 AWD(B420T6)	aut	96	H
B4 AWD(B420T5)	aut	96	H
B5 AWD(B420T2)	aut	96	H
B5 AWD(B420T10)	aut	96	H

[1] The tyre's load index must be at least equal to or greater than indicated in the table.

[2] The tyre's speed rating must be at least equal to or greater than indicated in the table.

15.3. Tyre pressure

15.3.1. Tyre pressure monitoring

15.3.1.1. Tyre pressure monitoring system*

The tyre pressure monitoring system[1] gives a warning with an indicator symbol in the driver display when the pressure in one or more of the car's tyres is too low.

This symbol illuminates to indicate low tyre pressure. Check the tyre pressure in the **Car Status** app in the centre display.

If there is a fault in the system the tyre pressure warning symbol flashes for approximately one minute and then remains illuminated.

System description

The tyre pressure monitoring system measures differences in rotation speed between the different wheels via the ABS system in order to be able to determine whether they have the correct tyre pressure. If the tyre pressure is too low, the tyre's diameter is changed and, as a result, so is its rotation speed. By comparing the tyres with each other the system can determine whether one or more tyres have pressure that is too low.

General information on the tyre monitoring system

In the information below, the tyre monitoring system is referred to generically as TPMS.

Each tyre, including the spare tyre*, should be checked once a month. When checking, the tyre should be cold and have the air pressure recommended by the car manufacturer specified on the tyre pressure label or in the tyre pressure table. If the car has tyres of a different size than that recommended by the manufacturer, find out what the correct air pressure level is for these.

As an extra safety feature, the car is equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS), which shows when the air pressure in one or more tyres is too low. When the indicator symbol for low air pressure is lit, stop and check the tyres as soon as possible and inflate to the correct air pressure.

Driving with tyres that have tyre pressure that is too low may cause the tyre to overheat, which can cause a tyre failure. Low tyre pressure also reduces fuel efficiency as well as tyre service life, and can affect car handling and stopping ability. Note that TPMS does not replace regular tyre maintenance. It is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if the limit for low tyre pressure has not been reached so that the indicator symbol illuminates.

The car is also equipped with a TPMS system fault indicator, which indicates when the system is not functioning correctly. The TPMS system fault indicator is combined with the indicator symbol for low tyre pressure. When the system detects a fault, the symbol in the driver display will flash for about one minute and then remain illuminated. This procedure will be repeated when the car is started until the fault has been rectified. When the symbol is illuminated, the system's ability to detect or warn of low tyre pressure may be affected.

A TPMS system fault can occur for several reasons, such as after changing to a spare tyre, or changing tyres or wheels that prevent TPMS from functioning correctly.

Always check the indicator symbol for TPMS after changing one or more tyres in order to ensure the new tyre or wheel is working correctly with TPMS.

To bear in mind

- Always save a new tyre pressure in the system after changing a tyre or adjusting tyre pressure.
- The use of snow chains may affect the tyre pressure monitoring system. This is indicated by a symbol and message in the driver display. When the snow chains are removed, all tyres should be checked and adjusted to the recommended tyre pressure. After that, the new tyre pressure needs to be saved in the tyre pressure monitoring system.
- If a spare wheel* is used, it is possible that the tyre pressure monitoring system will not work correctly due to the differences between the wheels.
- The system does not replace the need for regular tyre inspection and maintenance.
- It is not possible to switch off the tyre pressure monitoring system.

Warning

- Incorrect tyre pressure may lead to tyre failure, which could result in the driver losing control of the car.
- The system cannot indicate sudden tyre damage in advance.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

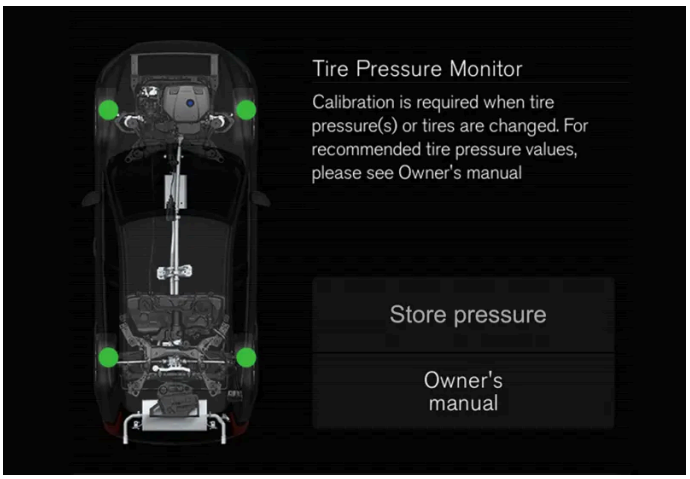
15.3.1.2. See tyre pressure status in the centre display*

With the system for tyre pressure monitoring[1], tyre pressure status can be viewed in the centre display.

Checking status

Several minutes driving above 35 km/h (22 mph) are required for the system to become active.

1. Open the **Car Status** app in the app view.
2. Tap on **TPMS** to show the status of the tyres.



The figure is schematic. Layout may vary depending on car model or updated software.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

15.3.1.3. Action in the event of warning for low tyre pressure

When the system for tyre pressure[1] warns that tyre pressure is too low, action is required.

Check and rectify the tyre pressure when the indicator symbol for the system is illuminated and the message for low tyre pressure message is shown.

1. Switch off the car.
2. Check the tyre pressure in all four tyres with a tyre pressure gauge.
3. Inflate the tyres to the correct pressure, see the decal on the door pillar on the driver's side showing the recommended pressure for factory fitted tyres.
4. Always save a new tyre pressure in the system via the centre display after the tyre pressure has been adjusted.

   Note that the indicator symbol does not extinguish until the low tyre pressure has been rectified and storing a new tyre pressure has been started.

   Several minutes of driving are required at a speed above 35 km/h (22 mph) in order for the system to be able to store the new reference value.

Note

To avoid incorrect tyre pressure, the pressure should be checked on cold tyres. "Cold tyres" means the tyres are the same temperature as the ambient temperature (approx. 3 hours after the car has been driven). After a few kilometres of driving, the tyres warm up and the pressure increases.

Note

- After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
- Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

Warning

- Incorrect tyre pressure may lead to tyre failure, which could result in the driver losing control of the car.
- The system cannot indicate sudden tyre damage in advance.

[1] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

15.3.1.4. Saving a new reference value for tyre pressure monitoring*

In order for the system for tyre pressure monitoring[1] to work correctly, a reference value for the tyre pressure must be saved. This must take place every time the tyres are changed or the tyre pressure is changed so that the system can warn about low pressure correctly.

Perform the following procedure to store a new tyre pressure as a reference value in the system:

1. Switch off the car.
2. Inflate the tyres to the correct pressure, see the decal on the door pillar on the driver's side showing the recommended pressure for factory fitted tyres.
3. Start the car.
4. Open the **Car Status** app in the app view.
5. Press **TPMS**.
6. > **Note**
   >
   > The car must be stationary for the **Store Pressure** button to be selectable.

   Press **Store Pressure**.
7. Tap on **OK** to confirm that the tyre pressure in all four tyres has been checked and adjusted.
8. Drive the car until the new tyre pressure has been saved. The new tyre pressure is stored when the car is driven at a speed above 35 km/h (22 mph).

> When sufficient data have been collected for the system to be able to detect low tyre pressure, the animation showing the progress of storing the new reference value disappears from the centre display. The system does not provide additional confirmation that a new tyre pressure has been saved.

If storing fails, a message is shown.

> **Warning**
>
> The exhaust gases contain carbon monoxide, which is invisible and odourless, but highly toxic. The procedure to save a new tyre pressure must therefore always be performed outdoors or in a workshop with exhaust extraction.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

15.3.1.5. Messages for tyre pressure monitoring*

A number of messages for the tyre pressure monitoring system[1] can be shown. Here are some examples.

Driver display: **Tyre pressure low Check Car Status app in center display**	The indicator symbol switches on to indicate that there is low tyre pressure in one or more tyres. See the **Car Status** app in the centre display for more information.
Driver display: **Tyre pressure system Temporarily unavailable**	The indicator symbol flashes and changes to constant glow after approx. 1 minute. The system is currently unavailable, activated shortly.
Driver display: **Tyre pressure system Service required**	The indicator symbol flashes and changes to constant glow after approx. 1 minute. The system is not working correctly, contact a workshop[2].

* Option/accessory.

[1] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

15.3.2. Checking tyre pressure

Correct tyre pressure helps to improve driving stability, save fuel and extend the service life of the tyres.

Tyre pressure decreases over time, this is a natural phenomenon. Tyre pressure also varies depending on ambient temperature. Driving on tyres with tyre pressure that is too low could result in the tyres overheating and being damaged. Tyre pressure affects travelling comfort, road noise and driving characteristics.

Check the tyre pressures monthly. Use the recommended tyre pressure for cold tyres in order to maintain good tyre performance. Tyre pressure that is too low or too high may cause uneven wear on the tyres.

Warning

- Under-inflation is the most common cause of tyre failure. This may result in severe tyre cracking, tread separation, or "blow-out", with reduced control of the vehicle, which may lead to increased risk of injury.
- Tyres with pressure that is too low reduce the load capacity of the car.

Cold tyres

The tyre pressure must be checked when the tyres are cold. Tyres are considered cold when they have the same temperature as the surrounding air. This temperature is normally reached when the car has been parked for at least three hours.

After having driven approximately 1.6 km (1 mile) these tyres are considered as warm. If you have to drive further than this to inflate the tyres, first check and record the tyre pressure. Then inflate to a suitable tyre pressure when you arrive at the pump.

When the outside temperature changes, the tyre pressure also changes. A decrease in temperature of 10 degrees causes the tyre pressure to decrease 7 kPa (1 psi). Check the tyre pressure regularly and adjust to the correct pressure, which is specified on the car's tyre information decal or certification label.

If you check the tyre pressure when the tyres are warm then you must never release any air. The tyres are warm due to driving and it is normal for the pressure to increase above the recommended pressure for cold tyres. A warm tyre with tyre pressure equal to or below the recommendation for cold tyres may have a pressure that is far too low.

15.3.3. Adjusting tyre pressure

Tyre pressure decreases over time, this is a natural phenomenon. The tyre pressure must therefore sometimes be adjusted in order to maintain the recommended tyre pressure.

Use the recommended tyre pressure for cold tyres in order to maintain good tyre performance and even tread wear.

> **Note**
>
> To avoid incorrect tyre pressure, the pressure should be checked on cold tyres. "Cold tyres" means the tyres are the same temperature as the ambient temperature (approx. 3 hours after the car has been driven). After a few kilometres of driving, the tyres warm up and the pressure increases.

1. Remove the cap from the valve on one tyre and then press down the tyre pressure gauge firmly onto the valve.
2. Inflate the tyres to the correct pressure, see the decal on the door pillar on the driver's side showing the recommended pressure for factory fitted tyres.
3. Refit the dust cap.

   > **Note**
   >
   > - After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
   > - Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

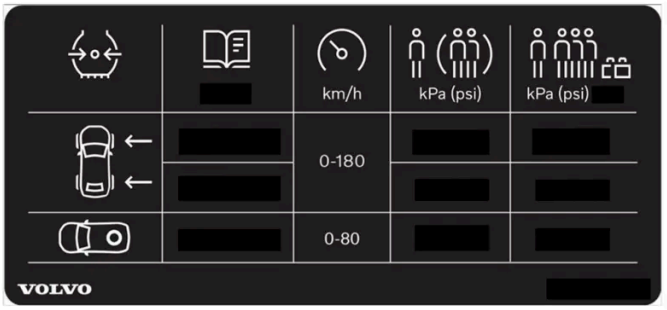
4. Check the tyres visually for any implanted nails or other objects that could puncture the tyre and cause leakage.
5. Check the sidewalls for any cavities, cuts, bumps or other irregularities.
6. Repeat this for all tyres, including the spare tyre*.

> **Note**
>
> If you have over-inflated, release air by pressing in the metal pin in the centre of the valve. Then check the pressure again using the tyre pressure gauge.
>
> Some spare tyres require a higher tyre pressure than other tyres. Check in the tyre pressure table or on the tyre pressure label.

* Option/accessory.

15.3.4. Location of tyre pressure label

The tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (between frame and rear door) shows which pressures the tyres should have at different loads and speed conditions.



Tyre pressure label location

The decal displays the designation for the factory-fitted tyres on the car, as well as load limits and tyre pressure.

> **Note**
>
> It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and locations in the car. The information that applies to your particular car can be found on the decal on the car.

Improved fuel economy with ECO pressure

For a light load (max. 3 people) and a speed of up to 180 km/h (112 mph), the ECO pressures can be chosen for good fuel economy. However, the lower comfort pressures are recommended instead if improved noise and travelling comfort are desired.

15.4. Emergency puncture repair

15.4.1. Emergency puncture repair kit

The emergency puncture repair kit (TMK[1]) is used to seal a puncture as well as to check and adjust the air pressure in the tyre.
Cars equipped with spare tyre* do not have the emergency puncture repair kit.

The puncture repair kit consists of a compressor and a bottle with sealing fluid. The sealing works as a temporary repair.

> **Note**
>
> The sealing fluid is effective at sealing tyres with tread punctures but has limited ability to seal tyres with sidewall punctures. Do not use the emergency puncture repair kit on tyres displaying larger slits, cracks or similar damage.

> **Note**
>
> The compressor is intended for temporary emergency puncture repair and is approved by Volvo.

Location

The puncture repair kit is located in the foam block under the cargo area floor.

Sealing fluid expiry date

The bottle of sealing fluid must be replaced if the bottle's expiry date has passed (see the decal on the bottle). Treat the old bottle as environmentally hazardous waste.

[1] Temporary Mobility Kit

* Option/accessory.

15.4.2. Inflating tyres with the compressor from the puncture repair kit

The car's original tyres can be inflated using the compressor in the emergency puncture repair kit.

1 The compressor must be switched off. Make sure that the switch is in position 0 (Off), and take out the electrical cable and the air hose.

2 Attach the air hose directly into the compressor's bottle bracket and then turn clockwise by 90 degrees.

Move the warning decal to the side of the compressor. It does not need to be attached to the wheel cover unless the sealing fluid is used.

3 Unscrew the tyre's dust cap and screw in the air hose's valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre's air valve.

4 Connect the electrical cable to the closest 12 V socket and start the car.

> **Warning**
>
> Inhaling car exhaust fumes could result in danger to life. Never leave the engine running in sealed areas or areas that lack sufficient ventilation.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the car is running.

5 Start the compressor by flicking the switch to position I (On).

6

> **Important**
>
> Risk of overheating. The compressor must not run for more than 10 minutes.

Inflate the tyre to the pressure specified on the tyre pressure label on the driver side door pillar. Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.

7 Switch off the compressor. Detach the air hose and the electrical cable.

8 Refit the dust cap on the tyre.

> **Note**
>
> - After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
> - Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

> **Note**
>
> The compressor is an electrical device. Follow local regulations related to waste management.

15.4.3. Using a puncture repair kit

The emergency puncture repair kit (TMK[1]) can be used to seal a puncture. Read through all instructions before use.

Overview

1. Label, maximum permitted speed
2. Switch
3. Electrical cable
4. Bottle bracket
5. Pressure gauge
6. Pressure reducing valve
7. Decal, warning for wheel cover
8. Sealing fluid bottle
9. Bottle opening
10. Connection for bottle
11. Air hose
12. Connection valve

Connecting

Warning

Please keep the following points in mind when using the tyre sealing system:

- The sealing fluid bottle contains natural rubber latex. This substance is harmful if swallowed.
- The contents of this bottle may cause allergic skin reactions or otherwise be potentially harmful to the respiratory tract, the skin, the central nervous system, and the eyes.

Precautions:

- Store out of the reach of children.
- Harmful if ingested.
- Avoid prolonged or repeated contact with the skin. If sealing fluid has come into contact with your clothes, remove them.
- Wash thoroughly after handling.

First aid:

- Skin: Wash affected areas of skin with soap and water. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.
- Eyes: Flush with plenty of water for least 15 minutes, occasionally lifting the upper and lower eyelids. Get medical attention if symptoms occur.
- Inhalation: Move the exposed person to fresh air. If irritation persists, get medical attention.
- Ingestion: Get medical attention.
- Disposal: Dispose of this material and its container at a hazardous or special waste collection point. Always follow state and local environmental regulations.

Warning

Do not remove the bottle or air hose while the puncture repair kit is being used.

1 **Preparations**

Set up the warning triangle and activate the hazard warning lights if a tyre is being sealed in a trafficked location.

If the puncture was caused by a nail or similar, allow this to remain in the tyre. It helps to seal the hole.

2 Detach the decal for maximum permitted speed that is affixed on one side of the compressor. Affix it visibly on the wind-screen as a reminder to observe the speed limit. You should not drive faster than 80 km/h (50 mph) after the emergency tyre repair kit has been used.

In addition, remove the warning decal and attach it firmly to the side of the wheel so that it doesn't fall off.

3 Check that the switch is in position 0 (Off), and locate the electrical cable and the air hose.

4 Fit the sealing fluid bottle in the compressor and then turn clockwise 90 degrees.

The bottle is equipped with a non-return valve which means that the fluid does not come out unless it is fitted in the compressor.

5 Attach the air hose to the bottle's opening and turn clockwise 90 degrees.

6 Unscrew the tyre's dust cap and screw in the air hose's valve connection to the bottom of the thread on the tyre's air valve.

7 **Begin puncture repair**

Connect the electrical cable to the closest 12 V socket and start the car.

> **Note**
>
> Make sure that none of the other 12 V sockets is in use when the compressor is operating.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not leave children in the car without supervision when the car is running.

> **Warning**
>
> Inhaling car exhaust fumes could result in danger to life. Never leave the engine running in sealed areas or areas that lack sufficient ventilation.

8 Start the compressor by flicking the switch to position I (On).

When the compressor starts, the pressure can increase up to 7 bar (102 psi), but the pressure drops after about 30 seconds.

> **Warning**
>
> Never stand next to the tyre when the compressor is running. If cracks or unevenness arise then the compressor must be switched off immediately. The journey should not be continued. Call roadside assistance for recovery to a tyre centre. Volvo recommends an authorised tyre centre.

9 Inflate the tyre for 7 minutes.

> **Important**
>
> The compressor must not be operated for longer than 10 minutes - risk of overheating.

10 Switch off the compressor to check the pressure on the pressure gauge. Minimum pressure is 1.8 bar (26 psi) and maximum is 2.5 bar (36 psi). Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.

To access the pressure reducing valve, the sealing fluid bottle must first be removed. Remove the bottle in the following order:

1. Remove the air hose from the tyre valve.
2. Remove the air hose from the bottle.
3. Remove the bottle from the compressor.
4. Refit the air hose directly in the compressor.
5. Refit the air hose to the tyre valve.
6. Release air by pressing the pressure reducing valve.

> **Warning**
>
> If the pressure is below 1.8 bar (26 psi) then the hole in the tyre is too big. The journey should not be continued. Call roadside assistance for recovery to a tyre centre. Volvo recommends an authorised tyre centre.

11 Switch off the compressor and detach the electrical cable.

12 Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve and refit the dust cap on the tyre.

> **Note**
>
> - After a tyre has been inflated, always refit the dust cap in order to avoid damage to the valve from gravel, dirt, etc.
> - Only use plastic dust caps. Metal dust caps can rust and become difficult to unscrew.

13 Clean the air hose before putting it away and be careful that there is no leakage of sealing fluid.

14 As soon as possible, drive at least 3 km (2 miles) at a maximum speed of 80 km/h (50 mph) so that the sealing fluid can seal the tyre, and then perform a follow-up check.

> **Warning**
>
> Sealant will spurt out of the puncture during the first few rotations of the tyre. Make sure that nobody is standing near the car and gets the sealing fluid splashed onto them when the car is driven away. The distance should be at least 2 metres (7 feet).

15 **Follow-up inspection**

Connect the air hose on the tyre valve and screw in the valve connection to the bottom of the tyre valve's thread. The compressor must be switched off.

16 Read the tyre pressure on the pressure gauge.

- If it is below 1.3 bar (19 psi) then the tyre is insufficiently sealed. The journey should not be continued. Call roadside assistance for recovery.
- If the tyre pressure is higher than 1.3 bar (19 psi), the tyre must be inflated to the pressure specified in accordance with the tyre pressure label on the driver's side door pillar (1 bar = 100 kPa = 14.5 psi). Release air using the pressure reducing valve if the tyre pressure is too high.

> **Warning**
>
> Check the tyre pressure regularly.

Volvo recommends that the car is driven to the nearest authorised Volvo workshop for the replacement/repair of the damaged tyre. Advise the workshop that the tyre contains sealing fluid.

The sealing fluid bottle and hose must be replaced after use. Volvo recommends that these replacements be performed by an authorised Volvo workshop.

> **Warning**
>
> Maximum mileage with tyres containing sealing fluid is 200 km (120 miles).

> **Note**
>
> The compressor is an electrical device. Follow local regulations related to waste management.

[1] Temporary Mobility Kit

15.5. Winter driving

15.5.1. Snow chains

Use of snow chains and/or winter tyres can help to improve the traction in winter conditions.

Volvo recommends that snow chains are not used on wheel dimensions greater than 18 inches

Warning

Use Volvo genuine snow chains or equivalent chains designed for the car model, and tyre and rim dimensions. Only **single-sided** snow chains are permitted.

In the event of uncertainty about the show chain, Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop should be contacted. The wrong snow chains may cause serious damage to the car and lead to an accident.

Using snow chains may result in malfunction of the tyre pressure monitoring system * [1].

Important

Snow chains can be used on the car with the following restrictions:

- Always follow the mounting instructions from the manufacturer carefully. Fit the chains as tensioned as possible and tension them at regular intervals.
- Snow chains must only be used on the front wheels (also applies to all-wheel drive cars).
- In some cases, snow chains must NOT be used, such as if accessory, aftermarket or "special" tyres and wheels are fitted that have a different size to the original tyres and wheels. Sufficient distance must be maintained between the chains and brakes, suspension and body components.
- Check local regulations with regard to using snow chains before fitting them.
- Never exceed the chain manufacturer's specified maximum speed. You must never exceed 50 km/h (30 mph) under any circumstances.
- Avoid bumps, holes or sharp turns when driving with snow chains.
- Avoid driving on bare ground as this wears out both the snow chains and tyres.
- Driving with snow chains may have a negative effect on the car's driving characteristics. Avoid fast or sharp turns, as well as braking with locked wheels.
- Some types of chain that are firmly tensioned affect brake components and must therefore NOT be used.

You can obtain more information on snow chains from a Volvo dealer.

* Option/accessory.

[1] Indirect Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (ITPMS)

15.5.2. Winter tyres

Winter tyres are adapted for winter road conditions.

Volvo recommends winter tyres specially developed for winter driving on all wheels if there is a risk of snow or ice. Tyre dimensions are dependent on engine variant. When driving on winter tyres, the correct type of tyres must be fitted to all four wheels.

A tyre that meets the minimum values for traction on snow has the following pictogram on the tyre label.

The tyre label for a tyre that meets the relevant minimum values for traction on ice must include the following pictogram:

Studded tyres are not included in tyre marking.

Tips for changing to winter tyres

When summer and winter wheels are changed, mark which side of the car they were mounted on, for example **L** for left and **R** for right.

Contact a Volvo dealer for advice on which rim and tyre type suit your car best.

Studded tyres

Studded winter tyres should be run in gently for 500-1000 km (300-600 miles), so the studs settle properly into the tyres. This gives the tyre, and especially the studs, a longer service life.

> **Note**
>
> Laws regarding the use of studded tyres may vary. Always follow local laws and regulations.

Tread depth

Road conditions with ice, slush and low temperatures place considerably higher demands on tyres than summer conditions. Volvo therefore recommends not to drive on winter tyres that have a tread depth of less than 4 mm (0.15 inches).

15.5.3. Preparations for a long trip

Before a driving holiday or some other type of long journey, it is important to check the car's functions and equipment particularly carefully.

Check that

- the engine is working normally and that fuel consumption is normal
- there are no leaks (fuel, oil or other fluid)
- braking effect on braking works as intended
- the tyres have sufficient tread depth and pressure. Change to winter tyres when driving to areas where there is a risk of snowy or icy road surfaces

- starter battery charging is good
- the wiper blades are in good condition
- a warning triangle and high-visibility vest are located in the car - legally required in certain countries

It may also be advisable to make sure that the maps in the navigation system* are updated, and to check the regulations for loading and for travelling on a car ferry or train, if appropriate.

Note that additional data roaming costs may be charged when the car is online abroad.

* Option/accessory.

15.5.4. Winter driving

For winter driving it is important to perform certain checks of the car in order to ensure that it can be driven safely.

Check the following in particular before a cold season:

- The engine coolant must contain 50% glycol. This mixture protects the engine against frost down to approx. -35°C (-31°F). To avoid health risks, different types of glycol must not be mixed.
- The fuel tank must be kept filled to prevent condensation.
- Engine oil viscosity is important. Oils with lower viscosity (thinner oils) facilitate starting in cold weather and also reduce fuel consumption while the engine is cold.
- The condition of the starter battery and charge level must be inspected. Cold weather places great demands on the starter battery and its capacity is reduced by the cold.

- The condition of the battery and its charge level must be inspected. Cold weather places higher demands on the battery and its capacity is reduced by the cold.
- Use washer fluid with antifreeze to avoid ice forming in the washer fluid reservoir.

See the separate section for engine oil recommendations.

Slippery driving conditions

To achieve optimum roadholding Volvo recommends using winter tyres on all wheels if there is a risk of snow or ice.

> **Note**
>
> The use of winter tyres is a legal requirement in certain countries. Studded tyres are not permitted in all countries.

Practise driving on slippery surfaces under controlled conditions to learn how the car reacts.

15.6. Tyres

The function of the tyres is to carry load, provide grip on the road surface, dampen vibration and protect the wheel from wear.

The tyres greatly affect the car's driving characteristics. The type of tyre, dimensions, tyre pressure and speed rating are important for how the car performs.

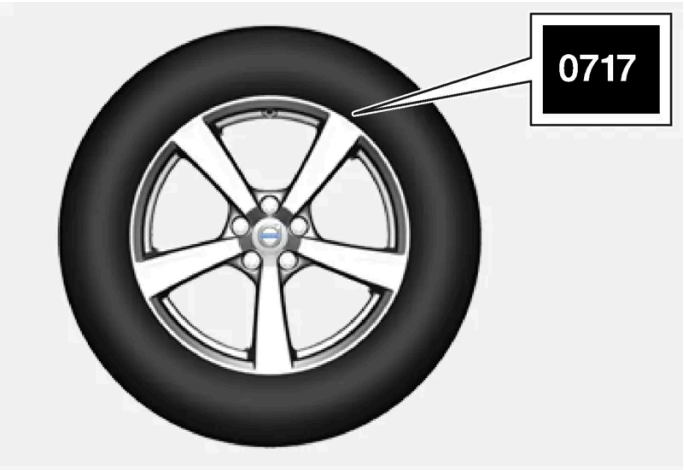
The car is fitted with tyres according to the tyre information sticker found on the driver's side door pillar (between the front door and the rear door).

> **Warning**
>
> A damaged tyre may lead to loss of control over the car.

Recommended tyres

On delivery, the car is equipped with Volvo original tyres that have the VOL[1] marking on the side of the tyres. These tyres are carefully adapted to the car. In the event of changing tyres, it is therefore important that the new tyres also have this marking in order for the car's driving characteristics, comfort and fuel consumption to be maintained.

New tyres



Tyres are perishable. After a few years they begin to harden at the same time as the friction capacity/characteristics gradually deteriorate. For this reason, aim to get as fresh tyres as possible when you replace them. This is especially important with regard to winter tyres. The last four digits in the sequence mean the week and year of manufacture. This is the tyre's DOT marking (Department of Transportation), and this is stated with four digits, for example 0717. The tyre is then manufactured in week 07, year 2017.

Tyre age

All tyres older than 6 years old should be checked by an expert even if they seem undamaged. Tyres age and decompose, even if they are hardly ever or never used. The function can therefore be affected. This applies to all tyres that are stored for future use. Examples of external signs which indicate that the tyre is unsuitable for use are cracks or discolouration.

Tyre economy

- Maintain the correct tyre pressure.
- Avoid fast starts, heavy braking and squealing tyres.
- Tyre wear increases with speed.
- Correct wheel alignment is very important.
- Unbalanced wheels worsen tyre economy and travelling comfort.
- The tyres should rotate in the same direction during their entire service life.
- When you change tyres, the tyres with the deepest tyre tread can be fitted on the rear axle in order to reduce the risk of oversteer skidding during aquaplaning, cornering or sudden braking on wet roads.
- If you drive over kerbstones or deep holes you can damage the tyres and/or wheel rims permanently.
- On cars with different front and rear tyre or wheel dimensions, it is not permitted to change position between front and rear wheels.

Tyre rotation

Driving style, tyre pressure, climate and road condition affect how quickly the tyres age and wear. Correct tyre pressure results in more even wear.

To avoid major differences in tread depth, and to prevent wear patterns forming on the tyres, the front and rear wheels can be switched with each other. A suitable distance for the first change is approx. 5000 km (approx. 3100 miles) and then at 10000 km (approx. 6200 miles) intervals.

Volvo recommends the an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted for checking if you are uncertain about tread depth. If significant differences in wear (> 1 mm difference in tread depth) between tyres have already occurred, then the least worn tyres should be fitted on the rear. Understeer skidding is normally easier to correct than oversteer skidding. This is why it is important for the rear wheels not to lose grip before the front wheels.

> **Important**
>
> Cars with different tyre or wheel dimensions on the front and rear axles must always have the wider tyres and/or wheels on the rear axle. It is therefore not permitted to change between front and rear wheels in order to obtain a more even tyre wear between front and rear tyres, for example.

Storing wheels and tyres

When you store complete wheels (tyres fitted on wheel rims) they should be hung up or positioned lying on their sides on the floor.

Tyres not fitted on rims must be stored lying on their sides or standing upright, but not hung up.

> **Important**
>
> Tyres should be stored in a cool, dry and dark place, and should never be stored close to solvents, petrol, oils, etc.

Warning

- Wheel rim size and tyre size for your Volvo are specified to meet stringent requirements for stability and driving characteristics. Unapproved combinations of wheel rim size and tyre size may have a negative effect on the car's stability and driving characteristics.
- Any damage caused by the fitting of unapproved combinations of wheel rim size and tyre size is not covered by the new car warranty. Volvo accepts no liability for death, personal injury or any costs caused by such installations.

[1] There may be deviations for certain tyre dimensions.

15.7. Approved wheel and tyre sizes

In certain countries not all approved sizes are indicated by the registration document or other documents. The following table shows all approved combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

✓ = Approved

Engine	man/ aut	235/60R17 7,5x17x50,5	235/55R18[1] 7,5x18x50,5	235/50R19 7,5x19x50,5	245/45R20 8x20x50.5	245/40R21 8x21x50.5
T2(B3154T9)	man	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T2(B3154T9)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T3(B3154T7)	man	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T3(B3154T2)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T3(B3154T4)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T4(B4204T47)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T4(B4204T31)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T4 AWD(B4204T47)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T4 AWD(B4204T31)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T4 AWD(B4204T51)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T5 AWD(B4204T18)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T5 AWD(B4204T36)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
B3(B420T4)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
B4(B420T6)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
B4(B420T5)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
B4 AWD(B420T6)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
B4 AWD(B420T5)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
B5 AWD(B420T2)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
B5 AWD(B420T10)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

[1] 235/55 R18 on cars equipped with 18" brakes is only possible when using approved wheel rims. Check with your Volvo dealer how your car is equipped.

16. Loading, storage and passenger compartment

16.1. Loading

16.1.1. Recommendations for loading

There are a number of things that are important to bear in mind when loading the car.

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight.

> **Warning**
>
> The car’s driving properties change depending on the weight and positioning of the load.

Loading in the cargo area

Good things to remember when loading:

- Position the load firmly against the rear seat's backrest.
- Heavy objects should be placed as low as possible. Avoid placing heavy loads on lowered backrests.
- Cover sharp edges with something soft to avoid damaging the upholstery.
- Secure all loads to the load retaining eyelets with straps or web lashings.

> **Warning**
>
> A loose object weighing 20 kg (44 pounds) can, in a frontal collision at a speed of 50 km/h (30 mph) carry the impact of an item weighing 1000 kg (2200 pounds).

> **Warning**
>
> Leave 10 cm (4 inches) space between the load and the side windows if the car is loaded to above the top edge of the door windows. Otherwise, the intended protection of the inflatable curtain, which is concealed in the headlining, may be compromised.

Warning

Always secure the load. During heavy braking the load may otherwise shift, causing injury to the car's occupants.

Cover sharp edges and sharp corners with something soft.

Switch off the engine and apply the parking brake when loading/unloading long items. Otherwise you may accidentally knock the gear lever or gear selector with the load into a drive position - and the car could then move off.

Increasing the space in the cargo area

To expand the cargo area and simplify loading, the rear seat's backrest can be lowered. Note that objects must not prevent the function of the WHIPS system for the front seats if any of the rear seat's backrests is folded down.

A through-load hatch* in the rear seat can be folded down for carrying long and narrow loads.

* Option/accessory.

16.1.2. Bag hooks

Bag hooks keep carrier bags in place and prevent them from overturning and spreading their contents across the cargo area.

Along the sides

There is a bag hook in the side panel on each side of the cargo area.

Important

The bag hooks may be loaded with a maximum of 5 kg (11 lbs).

Under the floor hatch*

1 Lift the handle in the centre of the cargo area floor and fold up the floor.

2 Move the cargo area floor forward to upright position and fit it in the adjustment groove on each side.

> It is now possible to hang bags with handles at a suitable height on the hooks.

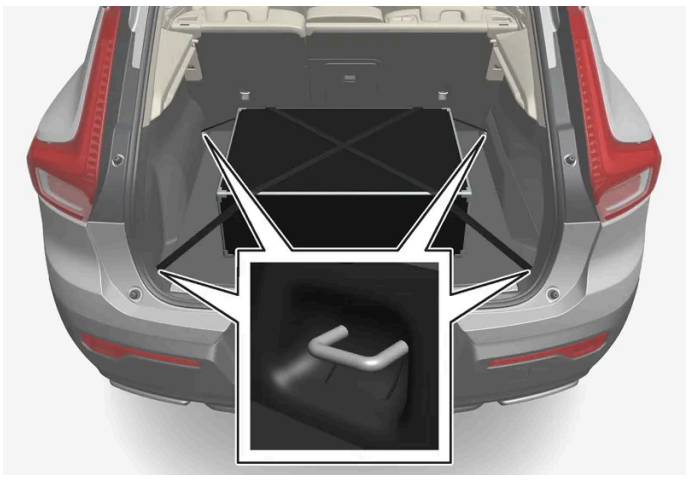
In glovebox

There is also an extensible hook in the glovebox that can be used for hanging up a bag.

* Option/accessory.

16.1.3. Load retaining eyelets

Use the load retaining eyelets to attach straps in order to anchor items in the cargo area.



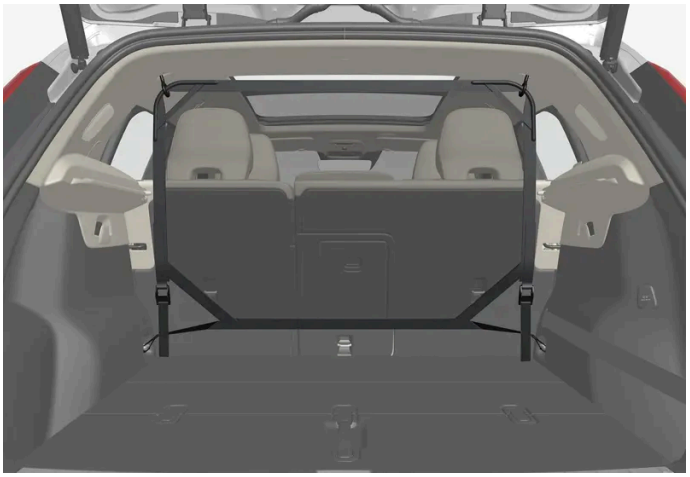
The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

> **Warning**
>
> Hard, sharp and heavy objects that are loose or protrude may cause injury during heavy braking.
>
> Always secure large and heavy objects with a seatbelt or cargo retaining straps.

16.1.4. Fitting and removing the safety net*

The safety net prevents loads from being thrown forward in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden braking.

The safety net is fitted into four mounting points.



For reasons of safety, the safety net must always be fastened and anchored as described below.

The net is made of a strong nylon fabric and can be secured two different locations in the car:

- Rear fitting - behind the rear seat.
- Front fitting - behind the front seats.

> **Warning**
>
> Loads in the luggage compartment must be anchored well, and also using a correctly fitted safety net.

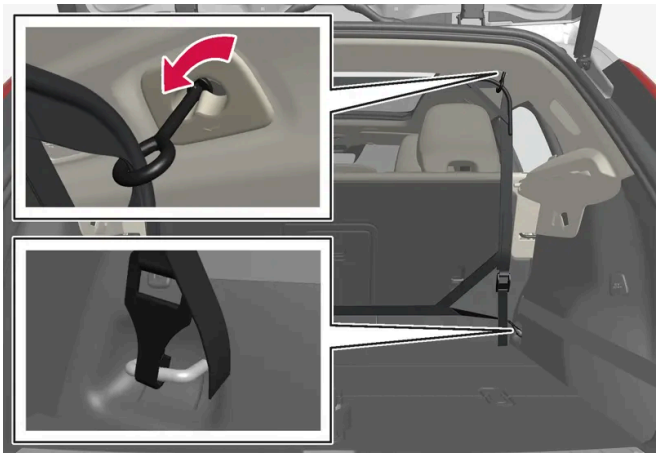
Fitting the safety net

> **Warning**
>
> Check that the safety net's upper mountings are correctly fitted and that the puller-straps are securely hooked on.
>
> Damaged safety nets must not be used.

Note

With forward mounting, the safety net is most easily mounted via the rear doors.

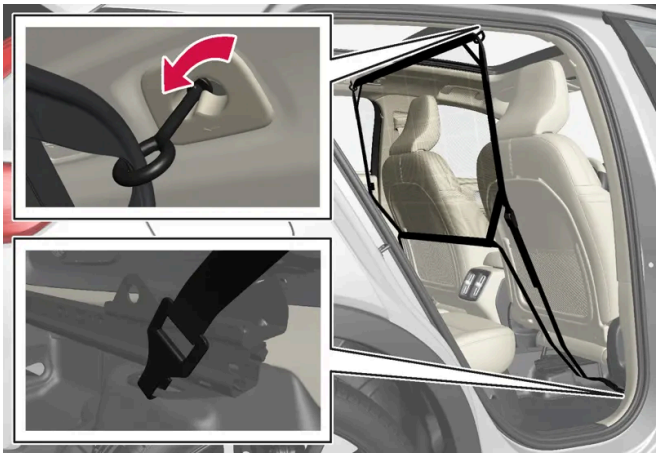
1. Unfold the safety net with the upper attachment hooks facing up.
2. Hook one retaining hook of the net into the front or rear roof mounting with the anchoring strap locks turned towards you.
3. Hook the net's second attachment hook to the roof bracket on the opposite side.

   Take care to press forward the net's retaining hooks for each respective roof mounting's front end position.
4. 

   Rear fitting.

   For rear fitting:

   With the net fitted in the rear roof mountings, hook the safety net's puller-straps into the front load retaining eyelets in the cargo area.

   Front fitting.

   For front fitting:

   With the net fitted in the front roof mountings, hook the puller-straps into the outer eyes on the rear of all seat slide rails. The procedure is facilitated if the backrests are straightened and the seats are moved forward slightly.

   Pay attention to make sure that you do not exert hard pressure on the net when the seat and backrest are moved back again. Only adjust until the seat or backrest makes contact with the net.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

> **Important**
>
> If a seat or backrest is pushed backwards hard into the safety net, the net and roof mounts may be damaged.

5 Tension the safety net with the anchoring straps.

Removing the safety net

The safety net can be easily removed and folded up.

1 Reduce safety net tension by pressing the button in the anchoring strap lock and feeding out a little of the anchoring strap on each side.

2 Press in the catches and detach both of the anchoring strap's hooks.

3 Undo the upper attachments and release the net from the roof mountings.

4 Fold up the net and store it in its case.

Refit any clothing hook if required.

* Option/accessory.

16.1.5. Roof load and loading on load carriers

For loading on the car's roof, the load carriers that Volvo have developed are recommended.

This is to reduce the risk of damage to the car. Volvo's load carriers are available for purchase at authorised Volvo retailers.

Carefully follow the installation instructions supplied with the carriers.

- Distribute the load evenly over the load carriers. Put the heaviest objects at the bottom.
- Check periodically that the load carriers and load are properly secured. Lash the load securely with retaining straps.
- If the load is longer than the car at the front, e.g. a canoe or kayak, fit the towing eye to its front socket and attach the bungee to this.
- The size of the area exposed to the wind, and therefore fuel consumption, increase with the size of the load.
- Drive gently. Avoid quick acceleration, heavy braking and hard cornering.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Warning

The car's centre of gravity and driving characteristics are altered by roof loads.

Follow the car's specifications with regard to weights and maximum permitted load.

16.1.6. Towbar-mounted bicycle rack*

When using a bicycle rack, the bicycle racks that Volvo has developed are recommended.

This is in order to avoid damage to the car and in order to achieve the maximum possible safety during a journey. Volvo's bicycle racks are available for purchase at authorised Volvo dealers.

Carefully follow the instructions enclosed with the bicycle rack.

- Bicycle rack including load must weigh a maximum of 75 kg (165 pounds).

Warning

Incorrect use of the bicycle rack may cause damage to the towbar and car.

The bicycle rack can loosen from the towbar if it

- is incorrectly fitted on the towball
- is overloaded, see the bicycle rack's instructions for maximum load weight
- is used for carrying something other than bicycles.

The car's driving characteristics are affected when a bicycle rack is fitted on the towbar. For example due to:

- increased weight
- reduced acceleration capacity
- reduced ground clearance
- changed braking capacity.

Recommendations for loading bicycles on the bicycle rack

The larger the distance between the load's centre of gravity and the towball, the greater the load on the towbar.

Load according to the following recommendations:

- Fit the heaviest bicycle furthest in, closest to the car.
- Keep the load symmetrical and as close to the centre of the car as possible e.g. by loading the bicycles facing alternately if several bicycles are loaded.
- Remove loose objects from the bicycle for transportation, e.g. bicycle basket, battery, child seat. Partly to reduce the load on the towbar and bicycle rack, and partly to reduce the wind resistance, which affects fuel consumption.

- Do not use protective covers on the bicycles. This may affect manoeuvrability, impair visibility and increase fuel consumption. It may also lead to an increased load on the towbar.

* Option/accessory.

16.1.7. Driving with a trailer

When driving with a trailer, there are a number of points that are important to think about regarding the towbar, the trailer and how the load is positioned in the trailer.

Payload depends on the car's kerb weight. The total of the weight of the passengers and all accessories, e.g. towbar, reduces the car's payload by a corresponding weight.

The car is supplied with the necessary equipment for towing a trailer.

- The car's towbar must be of an approved type.
- Distribute the load on the trailer so that the weight on the towbar complies with the specified maximum towball load. Towball load is calculated as part of the car's payload.
- Increase the tyre pressure to the recommended pressure for a full load.
- The engine is loaded more heavily than usual when driving with a trailer.
- Do not tow a heavy trailer when the car is brand new. Wait until it has been driven at least 1000 km (620 miles).
- The brakes are loaded much more than usual on long and steep downhill slopes. Downshift to a lower gear when shifting manually and adjust your speed.
- Follow the regulations in force for the permitted speeds and weights.
- Maintain a low speed when driving with a trailer up long, steep ascents.
- The maximum indicated trailer weight only applies to heights up to 1000 metres above sea level (3280 ft). At higher elevations, the engine output and the vehicle's climbing ability are reduced due to the reduced air density, and the maximum trailer load must therefore be reduced. The weight of the car and trailer must be decreased by 10% for each additional 1000 m (3280 ft) or part thereof.
- Avoid driving with a trailer on inclines of more than 12%.

> **Note**
>
> Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes, in combination with poorer fuel quality than recommended, are factors that considerably increase the car's fuel consumption.

Trailer weights

Warning

Follow the stated recommendations for trailer weights. Otherwise, the car and trailer may be difficult to control in the event of sudden movement and braking.

Note

The stated maximum permitted trailer weights are those permitted by Volvo. National vehicle regulations can further limit trailer weights and speeds. Towbars can be certified for higher towing weights than the car can actually tow.

Level control*

The car's system for level control endeavours to maintain a constant height regardless of load (up to the maximum permissible weight). When the car is stationary the rear of the car lowers slightly, which is normal.

When driving in hilly terrain

Under certain circumstances, there may be a risk of overheating when towing a trailer. If the engine and drive system overheats, a warning symbol comes on in the driver display and a message is displayed.

The following applies for cars with automatic gearbox:

The automatic gearbox adapts the gears depending on load and engine speed.

Steep inclines

Do not lock the automatic gearbox in a higher gear than the engine "can cope with" - it is not always a good idea to drive at a high gear with low engine speed.

Parking on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Activate the parking brake.
3. Select gear position P.
4. Release the brake pedal.

Block the wheels with chocks when parking a car with hitched trailer on a hill.

Starting on a hill

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Select gear position D.

3 Releasing the parking brake.

4 Release the brake pedal and start driving off.

* Option/accessory.

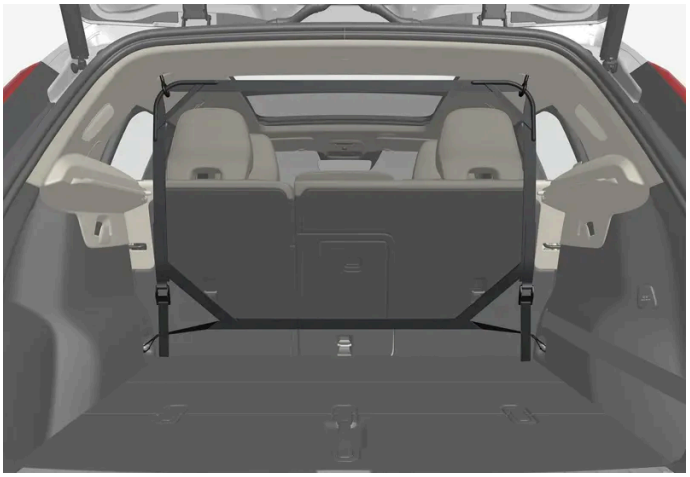
16.2. Cargo area

16.2.1. Safety net, safety grille and cargo cover

16.2.1.1. Fitting and removing the safety net*

The safety net prevents loads from being thrown forward in the passenger compartment in the event of sudden braking.

The safety net is fitted into four mounting points.



For reasons of safety, the safety net must always be fastened and anchored as described below.

The net is made of a strong nylon fabric and can be secured two different locations in the car:

- Rear fitting - behind the rear seat.
- Front fitting - behind the front seats.

Warning

Loads in the luggage compartment must be anchored well, and also using a correctly fitted safety net.

Fitting the safety net

Warning

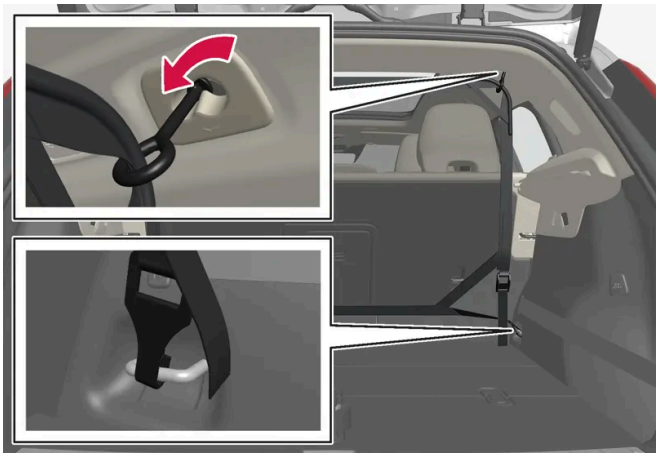
Check that the safety net's upper mountings are correctly fitted and that the puller-straps are securely hooked on.

Damaged safety nets must not be used.

Note

With forward mounting, the safety net is most easily mounted via the rear doors.

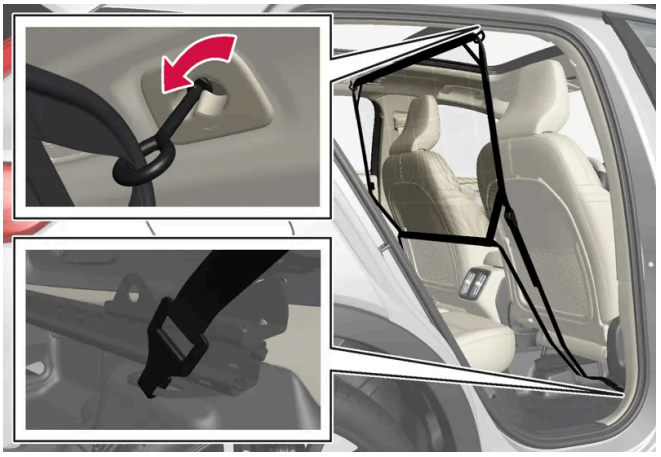
1. Unfold the safety net with the upper attachment hooks facing up.
2. Hook one retaining hook of the net into the front or rear roof mounting with the anchoring strap locks turned towards you.
3. Hook the net's second attachment hook to the roof bracket on the opposite side.

   Take care to press forward the net's retaining hooks for each respective roof mounting's front end position.
4. 

   Rear fitting.

   For rear fitting:

With the net fitted in the rear roof mountings, hook the safety net's puller-straps into the front load retaining eyelets in the cargo area.



Front fitting.

For front fitting:

With the net fitted in the front roof mountings, hook the puller-straps into the outer eyes on the rear of all seat slide rails. The procedure is facilitated if the backrests are straightened and the seats are moved forward slightly.

Pay attention to make sure that you do not exert hard pressure on the net when the seat and backrest are moved back again. Only adjust until the seat or backrest makes contact with the net.

> **Important**
>
> If a seat or backrest is pushed backwards hard into the safety net, the net and roof mounts may be damaged.

5 Tension the safety net with the anchoring straps.

Removing the safety net

The safety net can be easily removed and folded up.

1 Reduce safety net tension by pressing the button in the anchoring strap lock and feeding out a little of the anchoring strap on each side.

2 Press in the catches and detach both of the anchoring strap's hooks.

3 Undo the upper attachments and release the net from the roof mountings.

4 Fold up the net and store it in its case.

Refit any clothing hook if required.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

16.2.2. Cargo area

The car has a flexible cargo area that makes it possible to transport and secure large objects.

By folding down the backrests in the rear seat, the cargo area can become quite spacious. Use the load retaining eyelets or bag holders available for holding the load securely in place. The parcel shelf can be both easily removed and stored under the cargo area floor to make space for bulky loads.

The car's towing eye and puncture repair kit or spare wheel* are stored under the cargo area floor.

* Option/accessory.

16.2.3. Bag hooks

Bag hooks keep carrier bags in place and prevent them from overturning and spreading their contents across the cargo area.

Along the sides

There is a bag hook in the side panel on each side of the cargo area.

> **Important**
>
> The bag hooks may be loaded with a maximum of 5 kg (11 lbs).

Under the floor hatch*

1 Lift the handle in the centre of the cargo area floor and fold up the floor.

2 Move the cargo area floor forward to upright position and fit it in the adjustment groove on each side.

> It is now possible to hang bags with handles at a suitable height on the hooks.

In glovebox

There is also an extensible hook in the glovebox that can be used for hanging up a bag.

* Option/accessory.

16.2.4. First aid kit*

The first aid kit contains first aid equipment.

Store the first aid kit in an appropriate place in the cargo area, e.g. in the space on the right-hand side. The first aid kit has Velcro straps and can be attached directly to the panel.

* Option/accessory.

16.2.5. Remove and store the parcel shelf

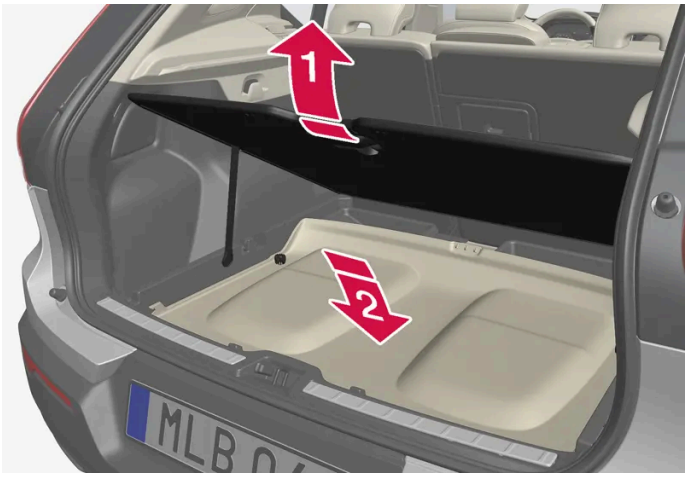
The parcel shelf can be removed to increase the size of the cargo area.

Removing parcel shelf

1
Detach the parcel shelf's lifting eyes on both sides.

2
Unhook the parcel shelf at the front edge and remove it.

Parcel shelf storage beneath the cargo area floor



The removed parcel shelf can be stored under the cargo area floor.

1
Fold up the cargo area floor and secure it in raised position with the support arm.

2
Turn the upper side of the parcel shelf downwards and lower it into the space with the rear part facing forwards.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

With folding cargo area floor*:

1

Fold up the folding cargo area floor forwards to be able to lower the parcel shelf downwards with the upper side turned down and the rear part facing forwards.

2 Fold the cargo area floor back to level position.

* Option/accessory.

16.2.6. Folding up the cargo area floor

The cargo area floor can be secured in raised position using the support arm.

1 Grip the handle to fold up the cargo area floor.

2 Fold up the support arm and secure the end in the socket on the underside of the cargo area floor.

> The cargo area floor remains in raised position.

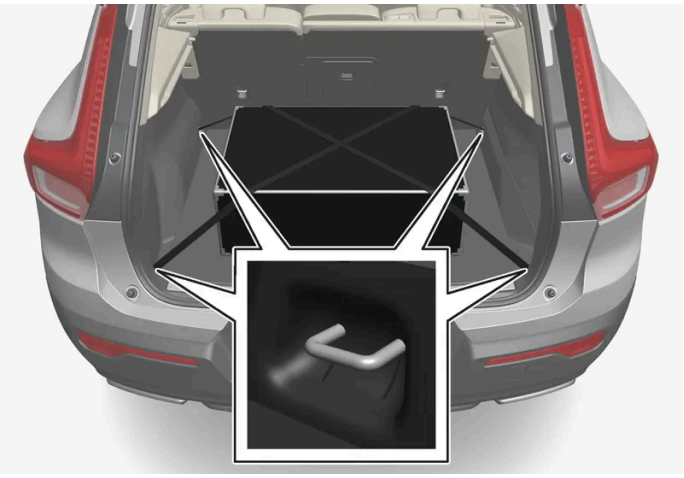
With folding cargo area floor*

1 Lift the handle in the middle of the folding cargo area floor and fold it forwards.

* Option/accessory.

16.2.7. Load retaining eyelets

Use the load retaining eyelets to attach straps in order to anchor items in the cargo area.



Warning

Hard, sharp and heavy objects that are loose or protrude may cause injury during heavy braking.

Always secure large and heavy objects with a seatbelt or cargo retaining straps.

16.2.8. Warning triangle

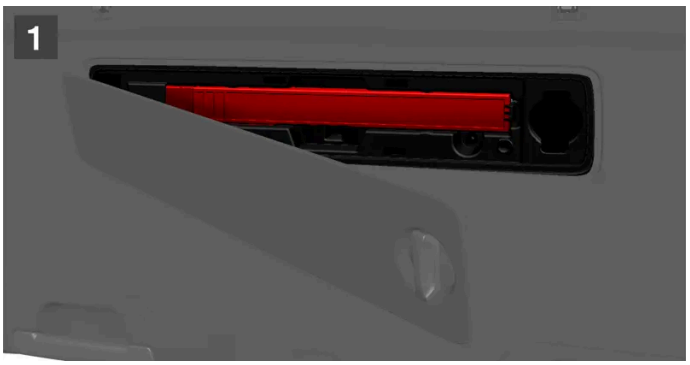
Use the warning triangle to warn other road users if the car is stationary in traffic.

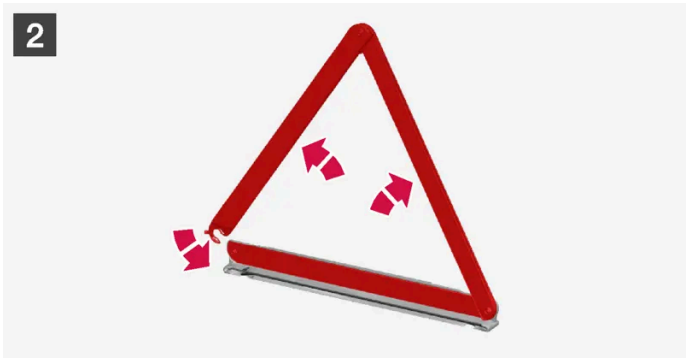
Also activate the hazard warning flashers.

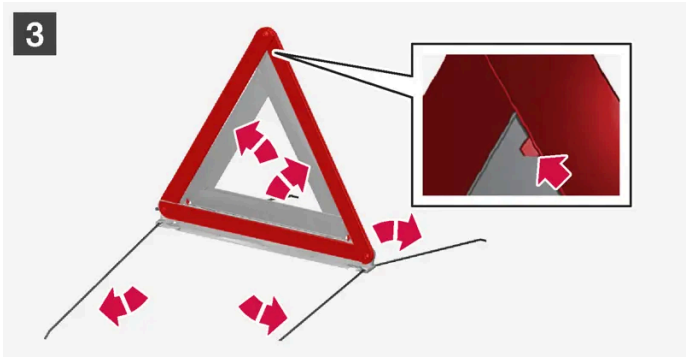
Storage spaces

The warning triangle is located in the compartment on the inside of the tailgate.

Folding up the warning triangle







1 1

Open the hatch by first turning the knob a quarter turn and then pulling the hatch from its brackets in the top and bottom edges.

Press the latch that secures the warning triangle slightly to the right and remove the case.

2 2

Remove the warning triangle from the case, unfold it and put the ends together.

3 3

Fold out the warning triangle's support legs.

Follow the regulations for the use of a warning triangle. Position the warning triangle in a suitable place with regard to traffic.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Make sure that the warning triangle and case are properly secured in their storage space and that the hatch is fully closed after use.

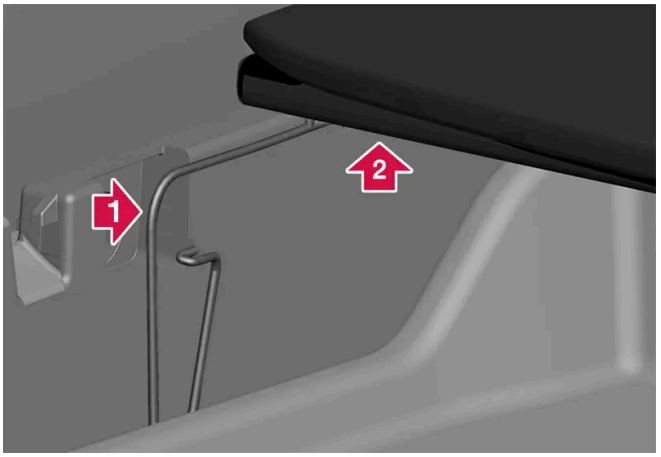
16.2.9. Release folding cargo area floor*

The folding cargo area floor can be released to facilitate access to e.g. the SIM card holder or the lower storage area.

1

Fold the folding cargo area floor forwards.

2



1 Press the lock spring as indicated by the arrow until it stops. Maintain the pressure.

2 At the same time, lift the cargo area floor a few millimetres up from the base.

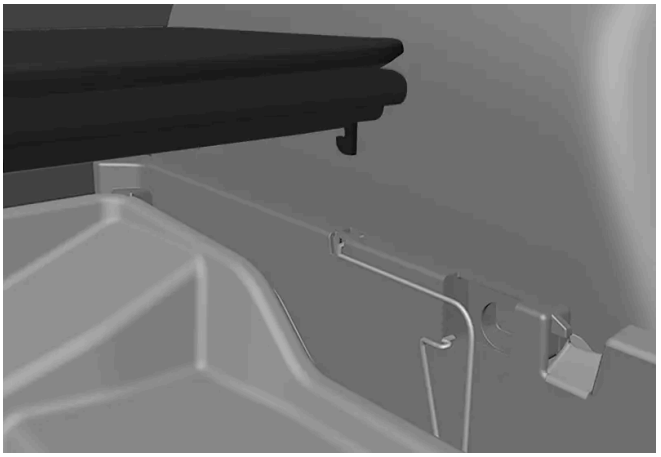
The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

3 Release the pressure from the lock spring, but continue holding up the cargo area floor.

4

Carry on holding up the cargo area floor and press the lock spring on the other side as indicated by the arrow.

> If the actions in section 2 have been completed correctly, the cargo area floor should now have been released from its side brackets.



The cargo area floor can be placed carefully back onto the lock springs without being locked in position.

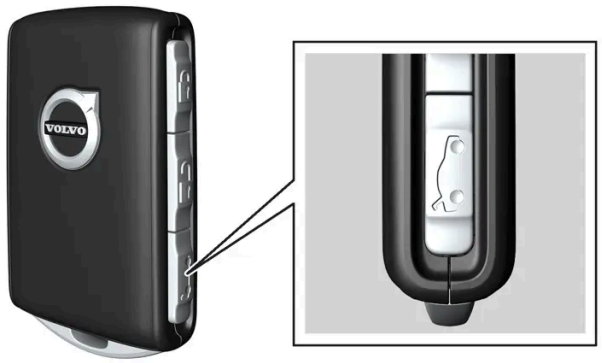
> **Note**
>
> The cargo area floor is also secured with hinges at the front.
>
> Volvo recommends leaving the cargo area floor in its front hinges.

5 Press on the cargo area floor to lock it back into its brackets.

* Option/accessory.

16.2.10. Unlocking the tailgate with a key button

There is a button on the key to unlock the tailgate only.



1 Press the key's button.

> The tailgate is unlocked and can be opened from the outside.
The side doors are still locked and the alarm is armed*. The lock and alarm indicator on the instrument panel extinguishes in order to show that the entire car is not locked.
If the tailgate is not opened within 2 minutes then it is relocked and the alarm is re-armed.

Power operated tailgate*

1 Hold the key's button depressed for a couple of seconds.

> The tailgate is unlocked and opened, while the side doors remain locked and their alarm functions armed*.

Note

If the system for the power operated tailgate* works continuously for a long time, it is deactivated in order not to overload it. It can be used again after a few minutes.

* Option/accessory.

16.2.11. Setting the max. opening for electrically operated tailgate*

Set the amount the tailgate should be opened if the car is, for example, parked in a garage with limited headroom.

To adjust max. opening

1. Open the tailgate manually - and stop it in the desired opening position.
2. Press and hold button on the bottom of the tailgate for approx. 3 seconds.

> Two acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been saved.

> **Note**
>
> It is not possible to program an opening position lower than half-open tailgate.

Reset max. opening

1. Open the tailgate manually to the fully open position.
2. Press and hold the button on the underside of the tailgate for approx. 3 seconds.

> Two acoustic signals sound to indicate that the set position has been cleared.

* Option/accessory.

16.2.12. Operating the tailgate with foot movement*

The tailgate can be opened and closed using a foot movement* under the rear bumper. The function makes things easier when your hands are full.

If the car is equipped with keyless locking and unlocking* then you can unlock the tailgate with a foot movement.

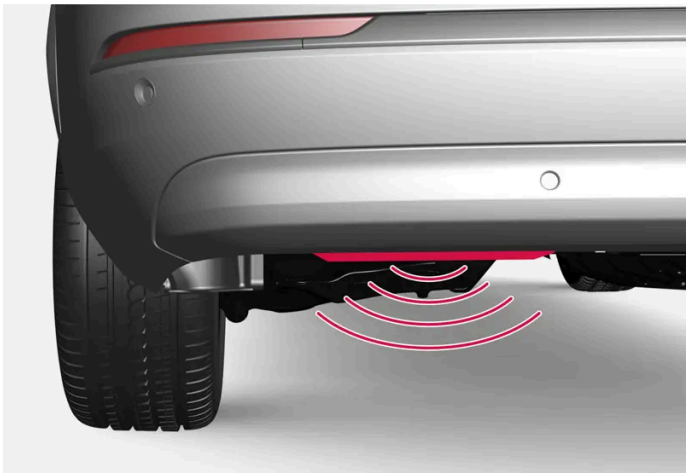
The function with both opening and closing of the tailgate is also available when the car is equipped with power operated tailgate*.

Note

The foot-operated tailgate function is available in two versions:

- Opening and closing with foot movement
- Only unlocking with foot movement (lift up the tailgate manually to open it)

Note that the function for opening and closing with foot movement requires power operated tailgate*.



The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The detector is located on the left-hand side of the bumper.

One of the car's keys must be within range behind the car, approx. 1 metre (3 feet). This also applies when the car is unlocked.

Opening and closing with foot movement

1

Kicking motion within the detector's activation area.

Make **one** forward kicking motion under the left part of the rear bumper. The bumper must not be touched. Then take a step back.

> A short acoustic signal sounds when the tailgate is opened/closed.

If several kicking motions are made without a key within range, the function is deactivated after a while.

Do not leave your foot positioned under the car during the kicking motion. The activation may then fail.

Cancelling opening or closing with foot movement

1 Make **one** forward kicking motion while opening or closing is in progress in order to stop the movement of the tailgate.

The key does not need to be in range to cancel opening or closing.

If the tailgate is stopped just before being fully closed, it will open on the next activation.

Note

Make sure you keep the area around the foot movement detector clean. A build-up of dirt, ice or snow may disrupt its function.

Note

Pay attention to the possibility that the system may be activated in a car wash if the key is within range.

* Option/accessory.

16.2.13. Unlocking the tailgate from the inside of the car

The tailgate can be unlocked from inside the car using a button beside the steering wheel on the instrument panel.

1 Briefly press the button on the instrument panel.

> The tailgate is unlocked and can be opened from the outside.

With the power operated tailgate option*:

1 Hold the instrument panel's button depressed for a couple of seconds.

> The tailgate is opened.

Note

If the system for the power operated tailgate* works continuously for a long time, it is deactivated in order not to overload it. It can be used again after a few minutes.

* Option/accessory.

16.2.14. Keyless unlocking of the tailgate*

With keyless locking and unlocking, it is sufficient to press lightly on the rubberised pressure plate underneath on the tailgate handle to unlock.

> **Note**
>
> One of the car's keys must be within range behind the car for unlocking to work.

The tailgate is held closed by an electrical lock.

To open:

1. Press gently on the rubberised pressure plate beneath the tailgate handle.

> The lock is released.

2. Lift by the outside handle in order to open the tailgate.

> **Important**
>
> - Handle the rubber panel with care to avoid damage to its electrical contact. Minimal force is required for activation.
> - Do not exert the lifting force on the rubber panel when opening – lift the handle.

It is also possible to unlock the tailgate with a foot movement* under the rear bumper, see separate section.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not drive with an open tailgate! Toxic exhaust fumes could be drawn into the car through the cargo area.

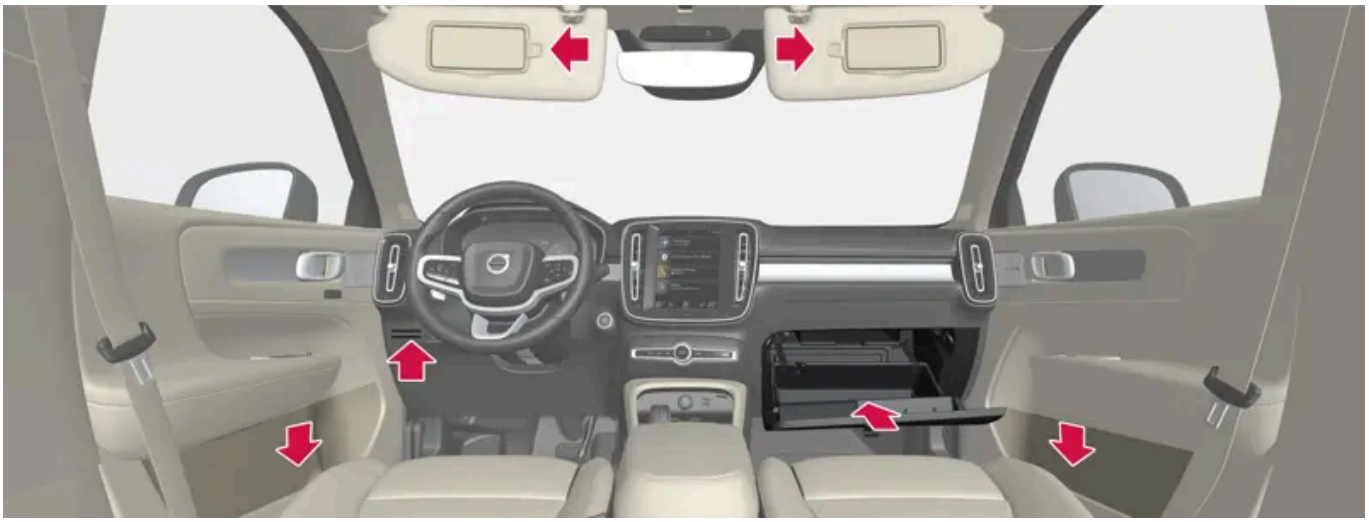
* Option/accessory.

16.3. Storage and passenger compartment

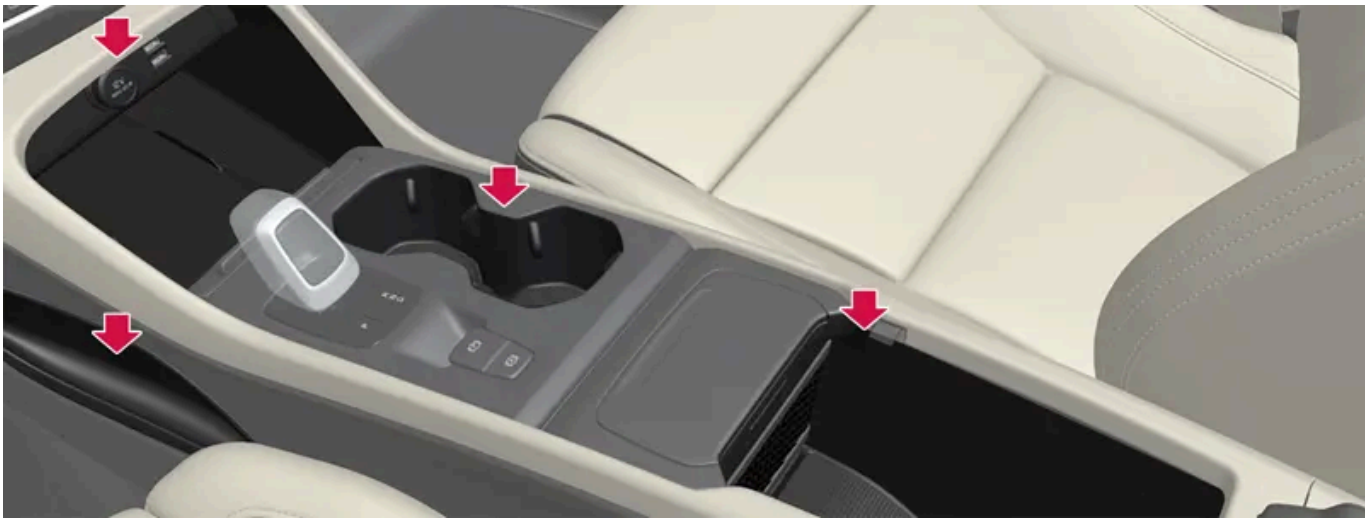
16.3.1. Passenger compartment interior

Overview of the passenger compartment's interior and storage locations.

Front seat



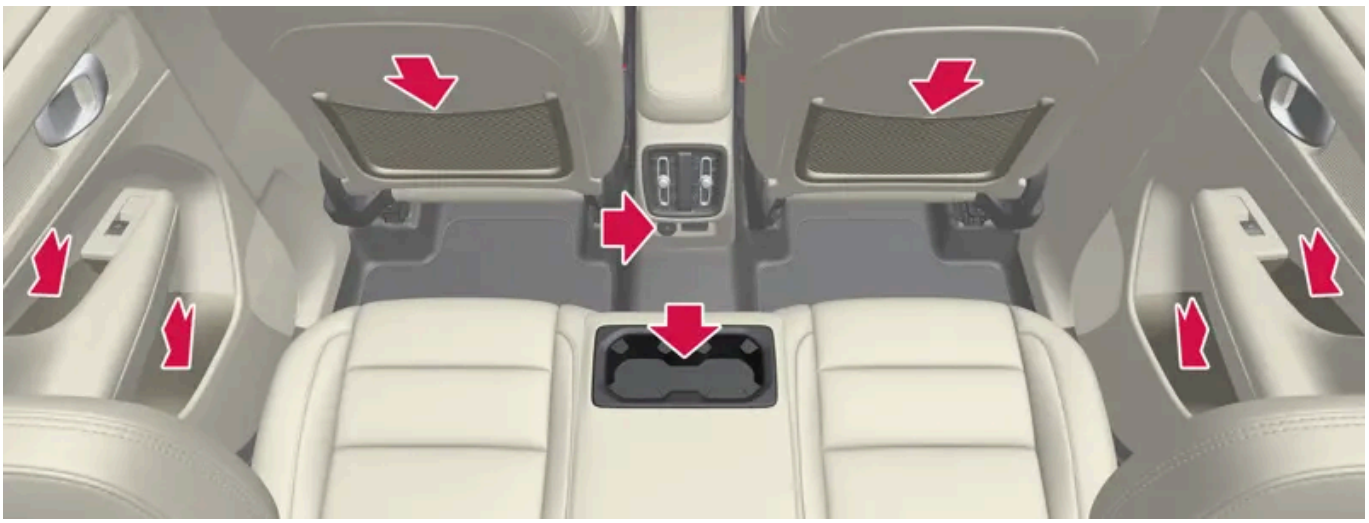
Storage compartment in door panel, card holder* beside the steering wheel, sun visor and glovebox with extensible hook.



Storage compartment for legroom, electrical socket and USB ports* above the wireless phone charger*, cup holder and storage under armrest in the tunnel console.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Rear seat



Storage compartment in the door panel, cup holder* in the centre seat backrest, storage pocket on the front seat backrest, as well as USB ports in the tunnel console.

Warning

Keep loose objects such as phones, cameras, remote controls for accessories, etc. in the glove compartment or other compartments. Otherwise they may injure people in the car in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Important

Keep in mind that high gloss surfaces, for example, are easily scratched by metal objects. Do not place keys, phones and other items on sensitive surfaces.

* Option/accessory.

16.3.2. Emptying the ashtray*

When there is a cigarette lighter fitted in the car there is a detachable ashtray in the tunnel console.

1 Detach the ashtray by pulling it straight up and empty the contents.

2 Refit the ashtray in the tunnel console.

> **Warning**
>
> Exercise caution with smouldering glow and ash so that they do not damage the interior or injure passengers, for example. Only extinguish cigarettes on the intended surface.

* Option/accessory.

16.3.3. Using the cigarette lighter*

The cigarette lighter can be a complement to the 12 V socket in the front section of the tunnel console.

Cigarette lighter in tunnel console, front seat.

1 Press the button on the lighter.

> The button jumps up when the lighter starts to glow.

2 Pull the lighter out from the socket and use the glow to give a light.

3 Refit the lighter in the socket.

> **Warning**
>
> Take care when the lighter is activated so that the glowing part does not, for example, damage the interior or injure passengers.

* Option/accessory.

16.3.4. Electrical sockets

There is one 12V electrical socket in the tunnel console and one 12V electrical socket* in the luggage compartment/cargo area.
If a problem occurs with an electrical socket, contact a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

12 V electrical socket

12 V electrical socket in tunnel console, front seat.

The 12 V sockets can be used for various accessories designed for this, such as music players, cooler boxes and mobile phones.

12 V electrical socket in cargo area*.

* Option/accessory.

16.3.5. Using electrical sockets

12 V sockets can be used for various accessories designed for this, such as music players, cooler boxes and mobile phones.

For the sockets to supply current, the car's electrical system must be set in the lowest ignition position I. The sockets are then active as long as the starter battery level does not become too low.

If the engine is switched off and the car is locked, the sockets are deactivated. If the engine is switched off and the car is not locked, or is locked with double lock temporarily deactivated, then the sockets continue to be active for a further seven minutes.

> **Note**
>
> Remember that use of the electrical socket with the engine switched off entails a risk of discharging the starter battery, which can limit functionality.
>
> Accessories that are connected to the electrical sockets may be activated even when the car's electrical system is disconnected or if preconditioning is used. For this reason, disconnect the connectors when they are not in use in order to avoid the starter battery being discharged.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Warning

- Do not use accessories with large or heavy connectors - they can damage the socket or come loose when driving.
- Do not use accessories that can cause interference to the car's radio receiver or electrical system for example.
- Position the accessory so that it is not at risk of injuring the driver or passengers in the event of heavy braking or collision.
- Keep an eye on connected accessories as they can generate heat that can burn passengers or the interior.

Using 12 V sockets

1. Remove the blanking plug (tunnel console) or fold down the cover (cargo area) in front of the socket and plug in the accessory's connector.
2. Unplug the accessory's connector and refit the blanking plug (tunnel console) or fold up the cover (cargo area) when the socket is not in use or if the socket is left unattended.

Important

Maximum socket output is 120 W (10 A) per socket.

16.3.6. Using the glovebox

The glovebox is located on the passenger side. Among other things, the car's printed owner's information can be stored in the glovebox. There is also space for a pen and card holder.

Glovebox with extensible hook.

The hook on the glovebox can be extended when the glovebox is open so that it can be used after the glovebox has been closed.

> **Important**
>
> The hook must be either fully retracted or fully extended otherwise it will be broken when the glovebox is closed.

16.3.7. Sun visors

There are sun visors in the roof in front of the driver seat and the front seat passenger seat which can be folded down and angled out to the side when necessary.

The figure is schematic - the design may vary.

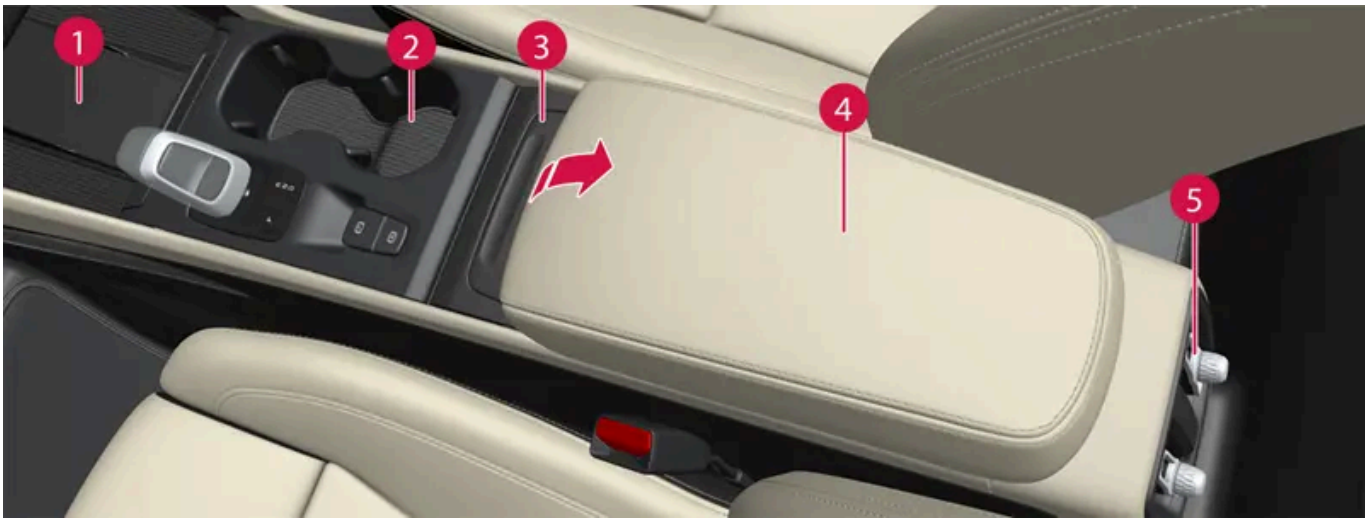
The mirror lighting* is switched on automatically when the guard is lifted up.

The mirror frame incorporates a holder for e.g. cards or tickets.

* Option/accessory.

16.3.8. Tunnel console

The tunnel console is located between the front seats.



1. Wireless phone charger*
2. Storage compartment with cup holder.
3. Waste bin* [1] that can be removed and emptied.
4. Storage compartment under the armrest.
5. Climate controls for the rear seat climate functions* or storage compartment. There are also USB ports underneath.

Warning

Keep loose objects such as phones, cameras, remote controls for accessories, etc. in the glove compartment or other compartments. Otherwise they may injure people in the car in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Important

Keep in mind that high gloss surfaces, for example, are easily scratched by metal objects. Do not place keys, phones and other items on sensitive surfaces.

Note

One of the detectors for the alarm* is located under the tunnel console's cup holder. Avoid leaving coins, keys and other metal objects in the cup holder, since this may trigger the alarm.

Note

The USB ports can be used for charging a phone or tablet, for example. Only the front USB port can be used to play media in the car's audio system.

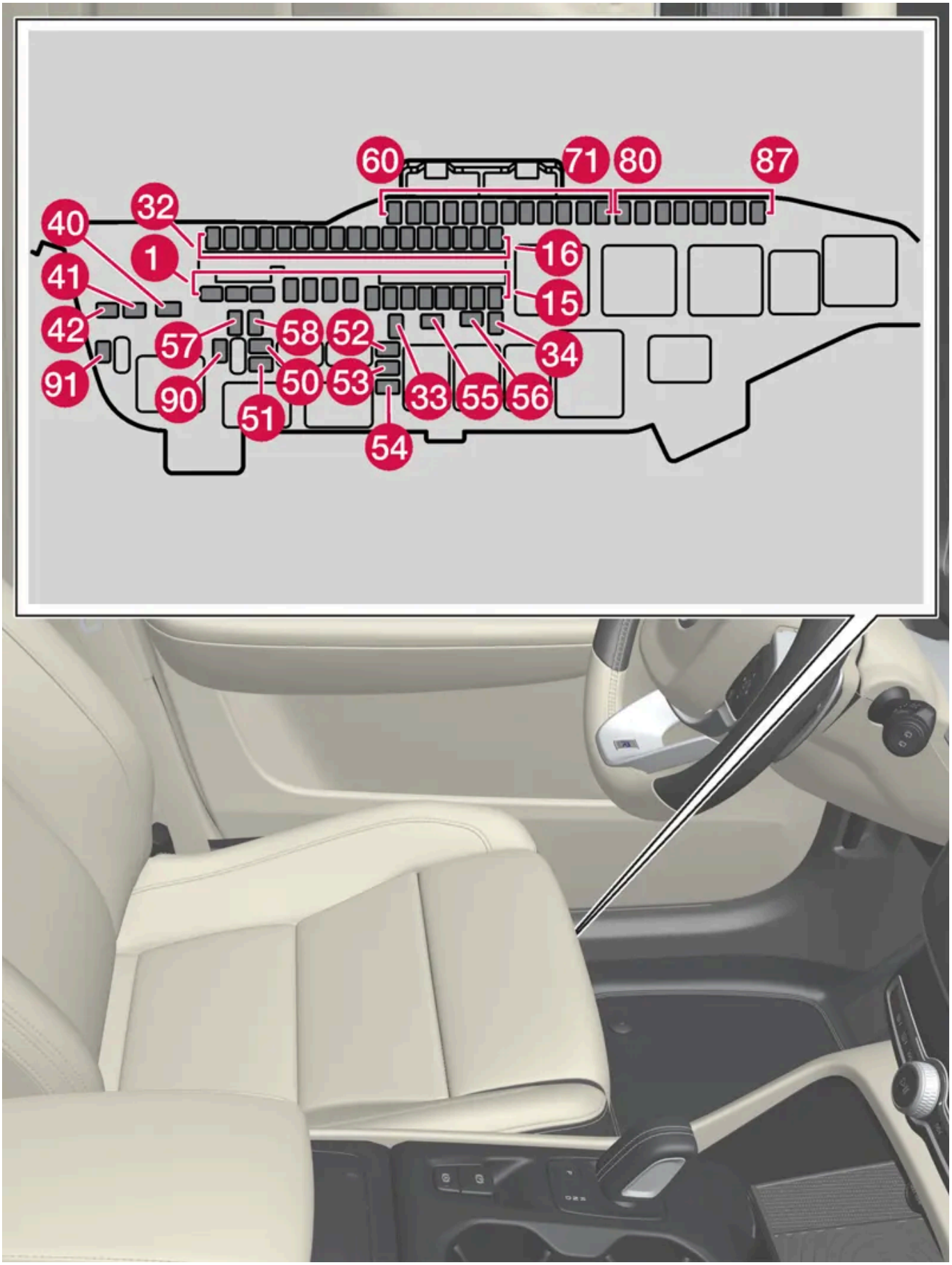
* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

[1] Only in cars with automatic gearbox.

16.3.9. Fuses under the left-hand front seat

Fuses under the left-hand front seat protect, amongst other things, electrical sockets, displays and door modules.



The **fuse box in the engine compartment** provides space for several spare fuses.

Positions

Fuse locations are shown on the inside of the cover. Functions and components in the fuse table cover several models and engine alternatives. A fuse description can therefore apply to fewer than those in the table, or be completely missing, depending on how the car is equipped.

If a position has several values in the table, the value depends on variations in equipment level. In which case, follow the value of the fuse being replaced. In the event of doubt – contact a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

	Function	Ampere	Type
1	Audio control module	40	MCase+ HT[1]
2	Central Electric Module A: Sensors, radar units, power seats*	40	MCase+ HT[1]
3	Central Electric Module B: Sensors, radar units, power seats*	40	MCase+ HT[1]
4	Fan module for climate control system, front	40	MCase+ HT[1]
5	Power operated tailgate*	25	MCase+[1]
6	Power seat*, right	20	MCase+[1]
7	Parking heater*	25	MCase+[1]
8	–	–	MCase+[1]
9	Door module, right rear	20	Micro
10	Door module, left rear	20	Micro
11	Door module, left front	20	Micro
12	–	–	Micro
13	Door module, right front	20	Micro
14	Seat heating, rear*	15	Micro
15	Control module, 48 V battery	5	Micro
16	Calculation module	5	Micro
17	–	–	Micro
18	Steering lock	7.5	Micro
19	Control module, climate control	7.5	Micro
20	Interior movement detectors*	5	Micro
21	Driver display	5	Micro
22	Keypad in centre console	5	Micro
23	Steering wheel module	5	Micro
24	Module for start knob Electronic shifting module Electronic parking brake	5	Micro
25	Centre display	5	Micro
26	Control module, online car Control module, Volvo On Call	5	Micro
27	Multiband antenna module	5	Micro
28	Relay coils	5	Micro
29	Opening the tailgate with foot motion*	5	Micro

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

	Function	Ampere	Type
30	Sensus control module TV*	15	Micro
31	Diagnostic port OBD-II	10	Micro
32	Alcohol lock*	5	Micro
33	Lock motor for head restraint, left rear	15	Micro
34	Lock motor for head restraint, right rear	15	Micro
40	Rear window defroster	30	MCase+[1]
41	Seatbelt pretensioner, left	40	MCase+ HT[1]
42	Seatbelt pretensioner, right	40	MCase+ HT[1]
50	Humidity sensor 48 V alternator and voltage converter	5	Micro
51	Control module for fuel pump	20	Micro
52	Coolant pump	7.5	Micro
53	Heated steering wheel*	15	Micro
54	Air humidity sensor	5	Micro
55	Headlamp washers*	25	MCase+[1]
56	Windscreen and rear window washers	25	MCase+[1]
57	–	–	MCase[1]
58	–	–	MCase[1]
59	–	–	Micro
60	–	–	Micro
61	–	–	Micro
62	–	–	Micro
63	Seatbelt tensioner	5	Micro
64	Blind Spot Information (BLIS)*	5	Micro
65	–	–	Micro
66	–	–	Micro
67	All Wheel Drive (AWD) control module*	15	Micro
68	Exhaust system	5	Micro
69	Parking camera*	5	Micro
70	–	–	Micro
71	Control module for airbags and seatbelt tensioners	5	Micro
80	Rear window wiper	15	Micro
81	Roof console for panoramic roof*	20	Micro
82	Sun sensor	5	Micro
83	Interior lighting Dimming of interior rearview mirror* Rain and light sensor* Control panels in rear doors and cargo area	7.5	Micro
84	–	–	Micro
85	Control module, driver support functions	5	Micro
86	Alcohol lock*	5	Micro

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

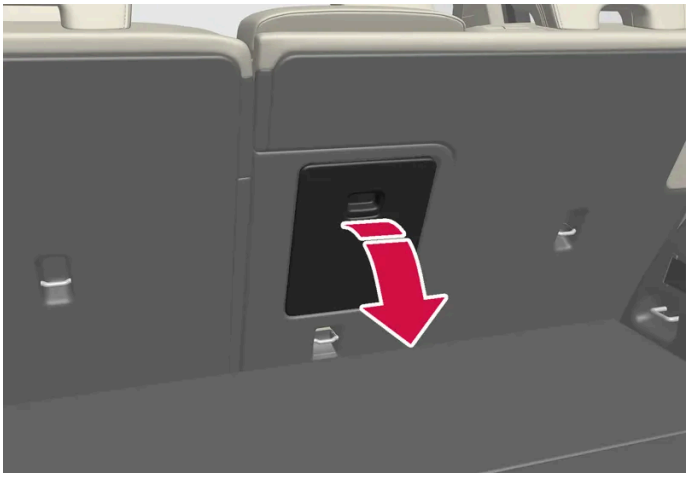
	Function	Ampere	Type
87	Wireless mobile charger* USB port	5	Micro
90	–	–	Micro
91	–	–	Micro

[1] This type of fuse should be replaced by a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

16.4. Through-load hatch in the rear seat*

The hatch in the rear seat's backrest can be opened to transport long narrow items, e.g. skis.



1. In the cargo area, grip the hatch's handle and fold down the hatch.
2. Fold forward the armrest in the rear seat.
3. Adjust the centre seat's head restraint upwards so that the steel tubes do not block the hatch opening.

If the private locking function is used then the through-load hatch must be closed.

* Option/accessory.

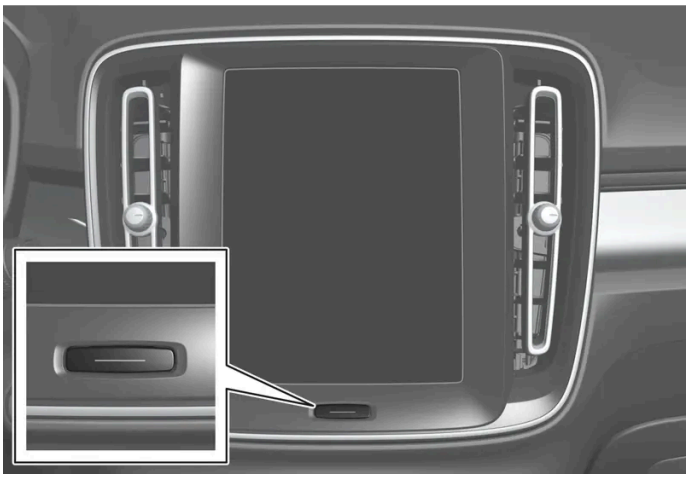
17. Maintenance and service

17.1. Car care

17.1.1. Interior cleaning

17.1.1.1. Cleaning the centre display

Dirt, stains and grease from fingers can affect the centre display's performance and readability. Clean the screen frequently with a microfibre cloth.



1. Turn off the centre display with a long press on the home button.
2. Wipe the screen with a clean and dry microfibre cloth using small circular movements. If necessary, lightly moisten the microfibre cloth with clean water.
3. Activate the display with a short press on the home button.

> **Important**
>
> The microfibre cloth used to clean the centre display must be free from sand and dirt.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Important

When cleaning the centre display, only use gentle pressure on the screen. Heavy pressure can damage the screen.

Important

Do not spray any liquid or caustic chemicals directly on the centre display. Do not use window cleaning agent, other cleaning agents, aerosol spray, solvents, alcohol, ammonia or cleaning agent containing abrasive.

Never use abrasive cloths, paper towels or tissue paper, since they may scratch the centre display.

17.1.1.2. Cleaning the driver display

Gently wipe the display's cover glass with a clean and dry microfibre cloth. If necessary, lightly moisten the microfibre cloth.

Never use cleaning agent. A special cleaning agent available from Volvo dealers can be used for more difficult cleaning.

17.1.1.3. Cleaning the leather steering wheel

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Leather needs to breathe. Never cover the leather steering wheel with protective plastic. We recommend Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes for cleaning the leather steering wheel. First remove dirt, dust, etc. with a damp sponge or cloth.

Important

Sharp objects, e.g. rings, can damage the leather on the steering wheel.

17.1.1.4. Cleaning the seatbelts

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Use water and a synthetic detergent. A special textile cleaning agent is available from Volvo retailers. Ensure that the seatbelt is dry before allowing it to retract.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

17.1.1.5. Cleaning the interior

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Important

- Certain items of coloured clothing (e.g. dark jeans and suede garments) may stain the upholstery. If this occurs, it is important to clean and treat these parts of the upholstery as soon as possible.
- Never use strong solvents such as washer fluid, pure petrol or white spirit or concentrated alcohol to clean the interior, since this may damage the upholstery as well as other interior materials.
- Never spray the cleaning agent directly onto components that have electrical buttons and controls. Wipe them instead using a moistened cloth containing the cleaning agent.
- Sharp objects and Velcro may damage the fabric upholstery.
- Only use cleaning agents on the type of material for which they were intended.

17.1.1.6. Cleaning textile floor and entrance mats

It is recommended to use a fabric cleaning agent when cleaning mats. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Remove inlaid carpets for separate cleaning of the floor carpet and the inlaid carpets. Each inlay mat is secured with pins.

1. Remove the inlay mat by taking hold of the inlay mat at each pin and lifting the mat straight up.
2. Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust and dirt.

   Note

   The inlay mats must not be swung around without care or hit against objects to remove dirt since this can crack the inlay mats.

3. A textile cleaner is recommended for stains on the floor mat, after vacuuming.
4. After cleaning, fit the inlay mat in place by pressing it in at each pin.

Warning

Only use one inlaid mat at each seat, and check before setting off that the mat by the driver's seat is firmly affixed and secured in the pins so that it does not get caught adjacent to and under the pedals.

17.1.1.7. Cleaning interior plastic, metal and wood parts

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away.

A fibrillated fibre or microfibre cloth, lightly moistened with water, available from Volvo dealers, is recommended for cleaning interior parts and surfaces.

Do not scrape or rub stains. Never use strong stain removers, either.

> **Important**
>
> Do not use solvent that contains alcohol when cleaning the glass for the driver display.

> **Important**
>
> Keep in mind that high gloss surfaces are easily scratched. Clean these surfaces with a clean, dry microfibre cloth using small, circular motions. If needed, dampen the microfibre cloth with a little clean water.

17.1.1.8. Cleaning leather upholstery*

Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo. Clean regularly, and deal with stains straight away. Vacuuming is important prior to using cleaning agents.

Volvo's leather upholstery* is treated to preserve its original appearance.

Leather upholstery* is a natural product that changes and acquires a beautiful patina over time. Regular cleaning and treatment are required in order that the properties and colours of the leather shall be preserved. Volvo offers a comprehensive product, Volvo Leather Care KitWipes, for cleaning and treatment of leather upholstery. The protective outer layer of the leather is preserved when this is used according to the instructions.

To achieve results that are as good as possible, Volvo recommends cleaning and application of the protective cream one to four times per year (or more frequently if required). Volvo Leather Care Kit/Wipes is available from Volvo dealers.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Cleaning the leather upholstery

1 Apply the leather cleaner to a damp sponge and squeeze until a foam is created.

2 Use the sponge on the stain in a circular motion.

3 Thoroughly dampen the stain using the sponge, allow the sponge to absorb the stain without scrubbing.

4 Wipe the stain with a soft cloth and allow the leather to dry thoroughly.

Protecting the leather upholstery

1 Apply a small amount of leather protective agent to a cloth and then apply it to the leather in light circular motions.

2 Allow to dry for about 20 minutes.

> Protecting the leather upholstery makes it more resistant to the stresses from the sun's UV radiation.

* Option/accessory.

17.1.1.9. Cleaning fabric upholstery and headlining

It is recommended to use fabric cleaning agent when cleaning textile fabric and Nubuck textile. Clean if necessary, and treat stains straight away.

> **Important**
>
> Never scrape or rub a stain since this may damage the upholstery.

> **Important**
>
> Never use stain removing agent or strong solvents, they could damage the upholstery.

Cleaning fabric upholstery

1. Start by vacuum cleaning the upholstery.
2. Follow the instructions for the fabric cleaning agent.

3. When cleaning fabric, a spray extraction cleaner is recommended for suction of the washing fluid and subsequent water rinsing.

> **Important**
>
> Some coloured clothing (such as jeans and suede garments) may stain the fabric upholstery. Heavy stains such as oil may be difficult to remove.

> **Important**
>
> Always clean the entire upholstery, even there are only individual stains. This is to avoid water rings.

> **Note**
>
> Do not remove the upholstery for cleaning.

Cleaning the headlining

1. Brush the headlining carefully using a soft brush.
2. Follow the instructions for the fabric cleaning agent.
3. Then use a soft and lint-free cloth to wipe the headlining.

> **Important**
>
> Careless cleaning can damage the headlining.

17.1.2. Exterior cleaning

17.1.2.1. Cleaning the exterior lamps

Dirty lamps have impaired functionality. Clean them regularly, e.g. when refuelling.

Clean the exterior lamps, such as headlamps and rear lamps, with a soft and clean sponge together with mild soap and luke-warm water.

Temporary condensation on the inside of the lens in connection with cleaning is quite normal. All exterior lamps are designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out from the lamp housing after the lamp has been illuminated for a while.

Important

Do not use any strong cleaning agent or chemicals for cleaning the lamps. Such products, e.g. cleaning agents with alcohol content, may cause the lens to crack.

Important

Do not rub with a dry sponge or rag as it may cause electric discharges that damage components in the lamp.

17.1.2.2. Cleaning the wiper blades

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the car is left dirty, the more difficult it will be to get it completely clean and there is a risk of scratching the paintwork. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo that is recommended by Volvo.

Asphalt, dust and salt residue on wiper blades, as well as insects, ice etc. on the windscreen, impair the service life of wiper blades.

When cleaning, set the wiper blades in service position.

Note

Wash the wiper blades and windscreen regularly with a lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo. Do not use any strong solvents.

17.1.2.3. Car paintwork

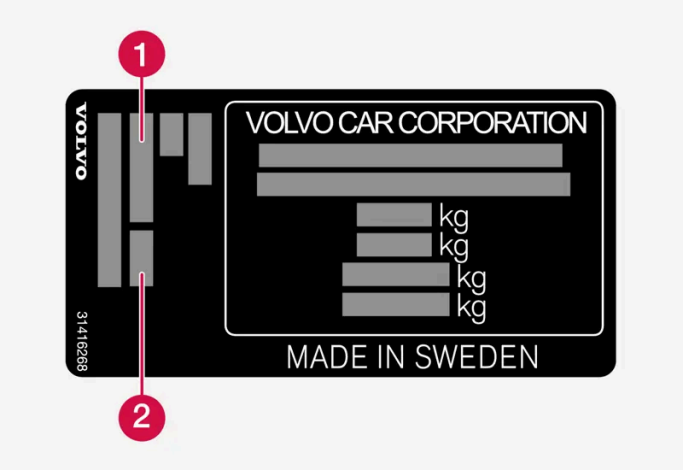
The paintwork consists of several layers and is an important part of the car's rustproofing, and should therefore be checked regularly.

The most common types of paintwork damage are stone chips, scratches, and marks on the edges of wings, doors and bumpers. To avoid the onset of rust, damaged paintwork should be rectified immediately.

17.1.2.4. Colour codes

The decal for the colour code is positioned on the car's right-hand door pillar between the front and rear door and will be visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.

Colour code



1 Exterior colour code

2 Any secondary exterior colour code

17.1.2.5. Touching up minor paintwork damage

Paint is an important part of the car's rustproofing and should therefore be checked regularly. The most common types of paintwork damage are stone chips, scratches, and marks on e.g. the edges of wings, doors and bumpers.

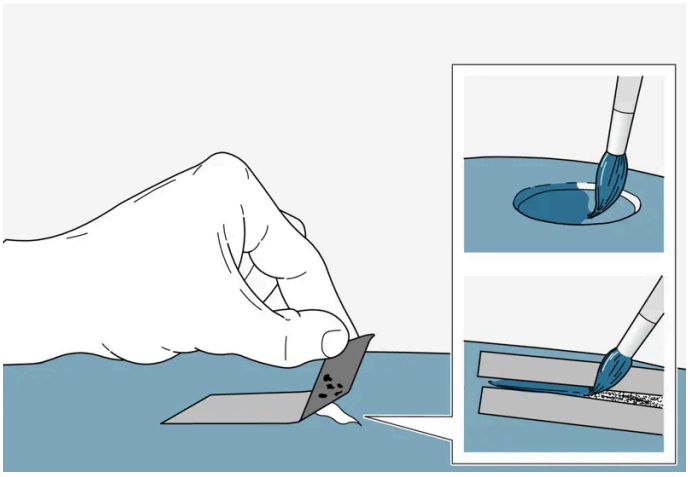
To avoid the onset of rust, damaged paintwork should be rectified immediately.

> **Note**
>
> When paint is repaired the surface must be clean and dry. The temperature of the surface should be at least 15 °C (59 °F).

Materials that may be needed

- Primer – a special adhesive primer in a spray can is available for e.g. plastic-coated bumpers.
- Basecoat and clearcoat - available in spray cans or as touch-up pens/sticks [1].
- Masking tape.
- Fine sand paper.

Applying touch-up paint to the damaged surface



If the damage has not reached down to the metal, the touch-up paint can be applied directly after the surface has been cleaned.

1. Apply a piece of masking tape over the damaged surface. Then remove the tape to remove any loose paint.

   If the damage is down to the metal, use of a primer is appropriate. In the event of damage to a plastic surface, an adhesive primer should be used to give better results - spray into the lid of the spray can and brush on thinly.

2. Before painting, gentle polishing using a very fine polishing agent may be carried out locally if required (e.g. if there are any uneven edges). The surface is thoroughly cleaned (grease and salt should be removed) and left to dry.

3. Stir the primer well and apply using a fine brush, a matchstick or similar. Finish off with a basecoat and clearcoat once the primer has dried.

For scratches, implement the same procedure but mask around the damaged area to protect the undamaged paintwork.

Touch-up pens and spray paints for touching up paintwork are available from Volvo dealers.

> **Note**
>
> If the stone chip has not penetrated down to the meal and an undamaged layer of paint remains in place, fill in with base coat and clear coat as soon as the surface has been cleaned.

[1] Follow the instructions that are included with the package for the touch-up pen/stick.

17.1.2.6. Cleaning the exterior

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This means that the car is easier to clean since the dirt does not attach as firmly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the car fresh. Perform the cleaning in a car wash with oil separator. Use car care products recommended by Volvo.

17.1.2.7. Rustproofing

The car has protection against corrosion.

Anti-corrosion protection for the body consists of metallic protective coatings on the sheet metal, a high-quality painting process, corrosion-protected and minimised metal overlap, and shielding plastic components, abrasion protection and supplemental rust inhibitor on exposed areas. In the chassis, exposed components of the wheel suspension are made of corrosion-resistant cast aluminium.

Inspection and maintenance

The car's anti-corrosion protection normally requires no maintenance, but a good way to reduce the risk of corrosion is to keep the car clean. Strong alkaline or acidic cleaning solutions must be avoided on glossy trim components. Any stone chips should be rectified as soon as they are discovered.

17.1.2.8. Automatic car wash

It is important to prepare the car if it shall be washed in an automatic car wash. Follow the instructions carefully for how to handle the car before and during washing.

An automatic car wash may be a quick and easy way to clean the car, but will not reach all the parts of the car that need to be cleaned on a regular basis. Volvo recommends supplementing automatic car washing with hand washing.

> **Note**
>
> Avoid washing a brand new car in an automatic car wash during the first few months. This would allow the paintwork to fully harden.

Preparations before washing

In an automatic car wash where the car is pulled through the car wash, it is important to switch off functions that prevent the car from rolling freely.

- Secure or remove protruding exterior parts such as retrofitted auxiliary lamps and antennas.
- Make sure that the automatic rain sensor function is deactivated. The windscreen wipers must be switched off the whole time the car is being washed to avoid the risk of damage.
- Deactivate the automatic braking at standstill function using the button Ⓐ on the tunnel console.
- Deactivate the automatic activation of parking brake function via settings in the centre display.

During washing

Important

Keep the windows, doors and tailgate closed the whole time the car is being washed.

If the car is equipped with keyless locking and unlocking*:

Take out the key and store it openly in the front part of the car while the car is being washed. This minimises the risk of opening the tailgate unintentionally by pressing a button, or that the key is incorrectly detected outside the car.

1. Drive into the car wash and stop at the designated location.
2. Select gear position N.
3. Set the car in ignition position 0 by holding the start button depressed for several seconds.

> The engine is switched off, and at the same time the car can roll freely.

4. The car travels through the automatic car wash.

   Keep the seatbelt fastened the whole time the car is being washed.

> Do not forget to restore the adjustments that were made before the car wash.

After washing

Press the brake pedal gently for a short time while driving after the brake linings have been exposed to the wetness. This heats the brakes with friction so that they dry more quickly and reduces the risk of corrosion.

Warning

Always test the foot brake and parking brake after washing the car in order to restore their function.

* Option/accessory.

17.1.2.9. Cleaning exterior plastic, rubber and trim components

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the car is left dirty, the more difficult it will be to get it completely clean and there is a risk of scratching the paintwork. Use car shampoo that is recommended by Volvo.

A special cleaning agent available from Volvo dealers is recommended for the cleaning and care of coloured plastic parts, rubber and trim components, e.g. glossy trim mouldings. When using such a cleaning agent the instructions must be followed carefully.

Avoid washing the car with detergent with a pH value below 3.5 or above 11.5. This can cause discolouration of anodised aluminium components*, as illustrated. We advise against use of abrasive polishing agents, as illustrated.

Parts that should be washed using a cleaning agent with a pH value between 3.5 and 11.5.

> **Important**
>
> Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber.
>
> When using degreasant on plastic and rubber, only rub with light pressure if it is necessary. Use a soft washing sponge.
>
> Polishing glossy trim mouldings could wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.
>
> Polishing agent that contains abrasive must not be used.

> **Important**
>
> Avoid washing the car with cleaning agent with a pH value lower than 3.5 or higher than 11.5. This may result in discolouration of anodised aluminium parts such as roof rack and around the side windows.
>
> Never use metal polishing agent on anodised aluminium parts, this can result in discolouration and destroy the surface treatment.

* Option/accessory.

17.1.2.10. Cleaning wheel rims

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the car is left dirty, the more difficult it will be to get it completely clean and there is a risk of scratching the paintwork. Perform the cleaning in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo that is recommended by Volvo.

Use rim cleaning agent recommended by Volvo.

Strong rim cleaning agents can damage the surface and cause stains on chrome-plated aluminium rims.

17.1.2.11. Handwashing

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. This means that the car is easier to clean since the dirt does not attach as firmly. It also reduces the risk of scratches and keeps the car fresh. Carry out cleaning in a cleaning area with an oil separator, and use car shampoo. Use cleaning agents and car care products recommended by Volvo.

Important points to remember when handwashing the car

- Avoid washing the car in direct sunlight. This can cause the detergent or wax to dry and have an abrasive effect.
- Remove bird droppings from the paintwork as soon as possible. They contain substances that damage and discolour paintwork very quickly. For example, use soft paper or sponge soaked in plenty of water. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended for the removal of any discolouration.
- Wash the underbody, including wheel housings and bumpers.
- Rinse the entire car until the dissolved dirt has been removed so as to reduce the risk of scratches from washing. Do not spray directly onto the locks.
- If necessary, use cold degreasing agent on very dirty surfaces. Note that in this case, the surfaces must not be hot from the sun.
- Wash using a sponge, car shampoo and plenty of lukewarm water. Ensure that the sponge is dirt-free. Dirt on the sponge may cause you to scratch the car during washing.
- Clean the wiper blades with a lukewarm soap solution or car shampoo.
- Dry the car using a clean, soft chamois or a water scraper. If you avoid allowing drops of water to dry in strong sunlight, you reduce the risk of water drying stains which may need to be polished out.
- After the car has been washed, tar from asphalt may remain. Use tar remover that is recommended by Volvo to get rid of the last spots.

Warning

Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

Important

Dirty headlamps have impaired functionality. Clean them regularly, e.g. when refuelling.

Do not use any corrosive cleaning agents but use water and a non-scratching sponge instead. See separate section for more information.

Note

Outside lighting such as headlamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal, all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

Important

- Make sure that the panoramic roof* and sun visor are closed before washing the car.
- Never use polishing agent with abrasive properties on the panoramic roof.
- Never use wax on the rubber mouldings around the panoramic roof.

Important

Remember to remove dirt from the drain holes in the doors, the sills, and in the panoramic roof after washing the car.

* Option/accessory.

17.1.2.12. High-pressure washing

The car should be washed as soon as it becomes dirty. The longer the car is left dirty, the more difficult it will be to get it completely clean and there is a risk of scratching the paintwork. Wash the car in a car wash with oil separator. Use car shampoo that is recommended by Volvo.

When using high-pressure washing, use sweeping movements and make sure that the nozzle does not come closer than 30 cm (13 in.) to the surface of the car. Do not spray directly on the locks or inside the fuel filler flap.

Important

Do not rinse water hotter than 60 °C onto the exterior lamps, such as headlamps and rear lamps. See separate section for more information.

17.1.2.13. Polishing and waxing

Polish and wax the car if the paintwork is dull or to give the paintwork extra protection. The car does not need to be polished until it is at least one year old. However, the car can be waxed during this time. Do not polish or wax the car in direct sunlight, the surface being polished should be a maximum of 45 °C (113 °F).

- Wash and dry the car thoroughly before you begin polishing or waxing. Clean off asphalt and tar stains using tar remover or white spirit. More stubborn stains can be removed using fine rubbing paste designed for car paintwork. Use cleaning agent recommended by Volvo.
- Polish first with a polish and then wax with liquid or solid wax. Follow the instructions on the packaging carefully. Many preparations contain both polish and wax.

Important

Never polish or wax any matt details on the car. This can destroy the matt effect and give the surface a permanent shine.

Important

Avoid waxing and polishing on plastic and rubber.

When using degreasant on plastic and rubber, only rub with light pressure if it is necessary. Use a soft washing sponge.

Polishing glossy trim mouldings could wear away or damage the glossy surface layer.

Polishing agent that contains abrasive must not be used.

Important

Use cleaning agent recommended by Volvo. Other treatment such as preserving, sealing, protection, lustre sealing or similar could damage the paintwork. Paintwork damage caused by such treatments is not covered by Volvo warranty.

17.2. Wiper blades and washer fluid

17.2.1. Wiper blades and washer fluid

Together with the washer fluid, the wipers aim to improve visibility as well as headlamp pattern.

The washer nozzles are heated* automatically in cold weather to prevent the washer fluid from freezing.

Information indicating that the washer fluid needs topping up appears in the driver display when there is approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remaining.

* Option/accessory.

17.2.2. Setting the wiper blades in service position

In some situations, the windscreen's wiper blades must be set in service position (vertical position), e.g. when they shall be replaced.

Wiper blades in service position.

In order to change, clean or lift the wiper blades (e.g. for scraping off ice from the windscreen) they must be in service position.

> **Important**
>
> Before placing the wiper blades in the service position, make sure that they are not frozen down.

Activating/deactivating service mode

Service mode can be activated/deactivated when the car is stationary and the windscreen wipers are not on. Service mode is activated/deactivated via the function view in the centre display:

Press the **Wiper Service Position** button. The light indicator in the button illuminates when service mode is activated. When activated, the wipers move to the service position. To deactivate the service mode, press **Wiper Service Position** again. The light indicator in the button extinguishes when service mode is deactivated.

The wiper blades also exit the service position if:

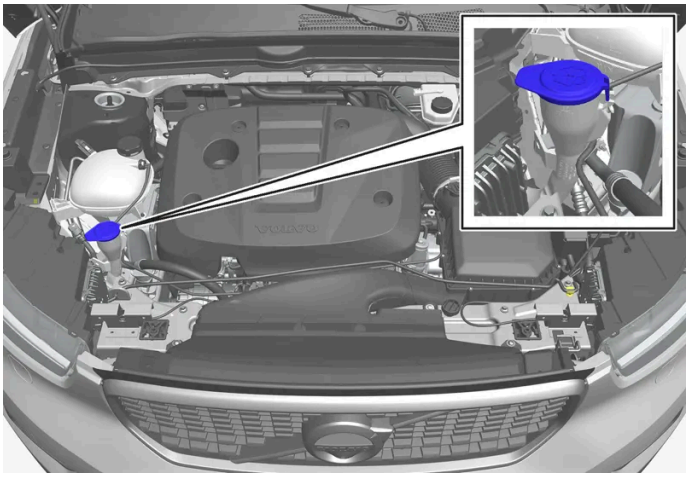
- Windscreen wiping is activated.
- Windscreen washing is activated.
- The rain sensor is activated.
- The car is driven away.

> **Important**
>
> If the wiper arms in service position have been folded up from the windscreen, they must be folded back down onto the windscreen before the activation of wiping, washing or the rain sensor, as well as before driving. This is to avoid scraping the paint on the bonnet.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

17.2.3. Topping up washer fluid

Washer fluid is used for cleaning the headlamps as well as the windscreen and rear window. Washer fluid with antifreeze must be used when the temperature is under the freezing point.



Washer fluid is filled into the reservoir with the blue cap. The reservoir is used for windscreen washer, rear window washer and headlamp washers*.

> **Note**
>
> When approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remains in the reservoir, the message **Washer fluid Level low, refill** is shown in the driver display, together with the symbol.

Prescribed grade: Washer fluid recommended by Volvo – with frost protection during cold weather and for temperatures below freezing point.

> **Important**
>
> Use Volvo genuine washer fluid or equivalent with a recommended pH of between 6 and 8, in working dilution (e.g. 1:1 with neutral water).

> **Important**
>
> Use washer fluid with antifreeze when the temperature is below freezing to avoid the fluid freezing inside the pump, reservoir and hoses.

Volume:

- Cars **with** headlamp washing: 5.5 litres (5.8 qts).
- Cars **without** headlamp washing: 3.5 litres (3.7 qts).

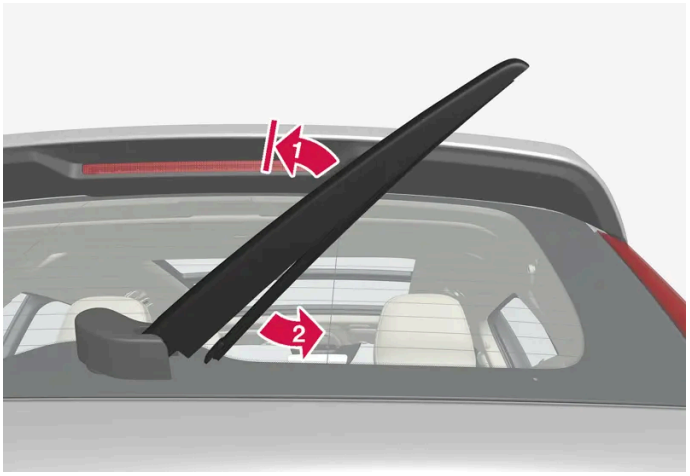
* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

17.2.4. Replacing the wiper blade, rear window

The wiper blades sweep water away from the windscreen and rear window. Together with washer fluid, they aim to clean the windows and ensure visibility while driving. Windscreen and rear window wiper blades can be replaced.

Replacing the wiper blade, rear window



Lift the wiper arm from the window and pull the lower section of the blade to the right.

1 1
Grip the centre of the wiper arm and lift it from the windscreen to lock position.

> **Note**
>
> There is a lock position at half extension angle that may feel like resistance. This lock prevents the arm from falling back against the windscreen. The wiper arm must be pulled past the lock for wiper blade replacement.

2 2
Grip the lower part of the blade and pull to the right until the blade loosens from the arm.

3 Press the new wiper blade into place. You should be able to hear a click. Check that it is firmly installed.

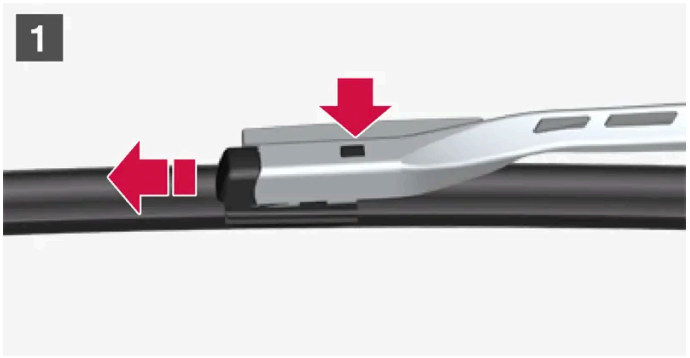
4 Lower the wiper arm.

> **Important**
>
> Check the blades regularly. Neglected maintenance shortens the service life of the wiper blades.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

17.2.5. Replacing windscreen wiper blades

The wiper blades sweep water away from the windscreen and rear window. Together with washer fluid, they aim to clean the windows and ensure visibility while driving. Windscreen and rear window wiper blades can be replaced.



1 1

Fold up the wiper arm when it is in service position. Service position is activated/deactivated via the function view in the centre display when the car is stationary and the windscreen wipers are not on. Press the button located on the wiper blade mounting and pull straight out parallel with the wiper arm.

2 2

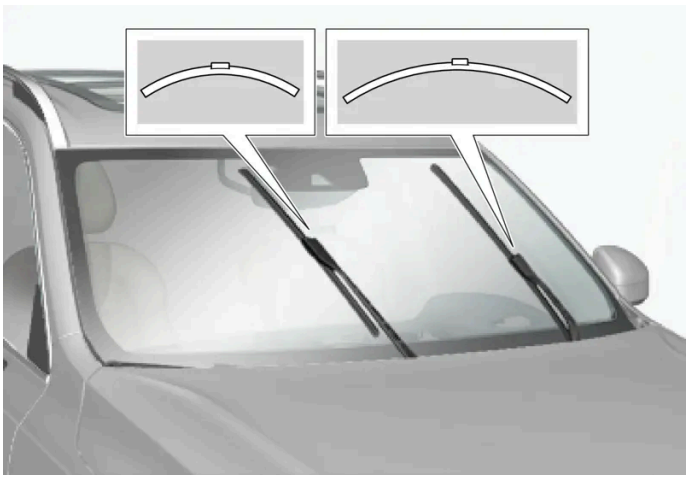
Slide in the new wiper blade until a "click" is heard.

3 Check that the blade is firmly installed.

4 Fold the wiper arm back towards the windscreen.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The wiper blades are different lengths

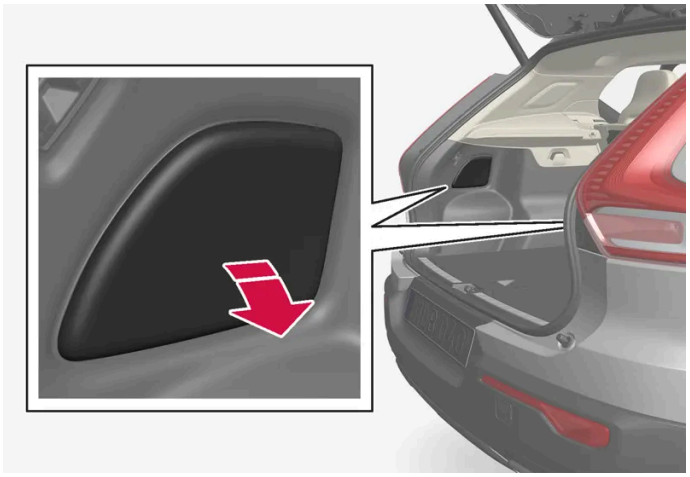


> **Note**
>
> When replacing the wiper blades, note that they have different lengths. The blade on the driver's side is longer than on the passenger side.

17.3. Bulb replacement

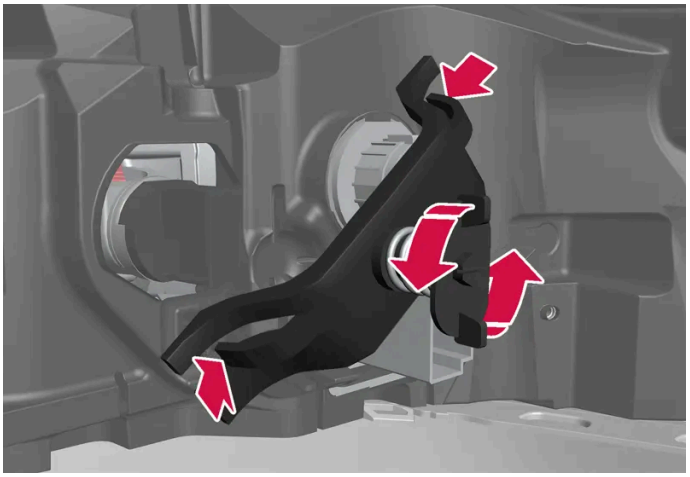
17.3.1. Replacing the rear direction indicator bulb

Bulbs for rear direction indicators are located behind the panel in the side of the cargo area.

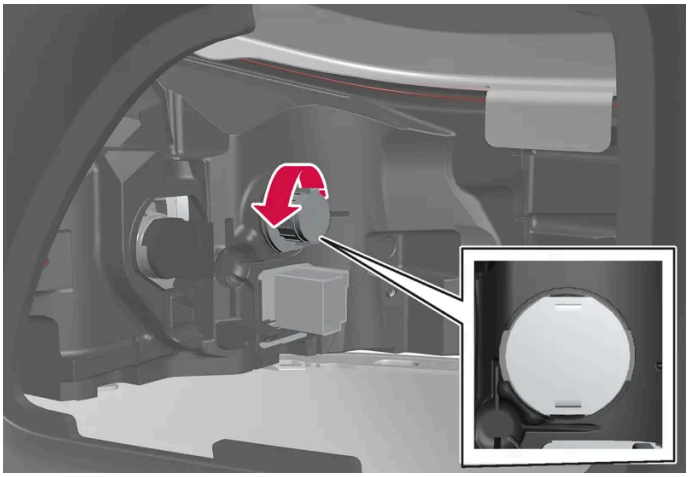


1. Press in the panel hatch at the upper edge to detach it.

2. Move the insulation aside to access the supporting bridge.



3. Unscrew and remove the spring bolt anticlockwise, press the clips into the sides and remove the supporting bridge. It is easiest to allow the screw to remain in the supporting bridge.

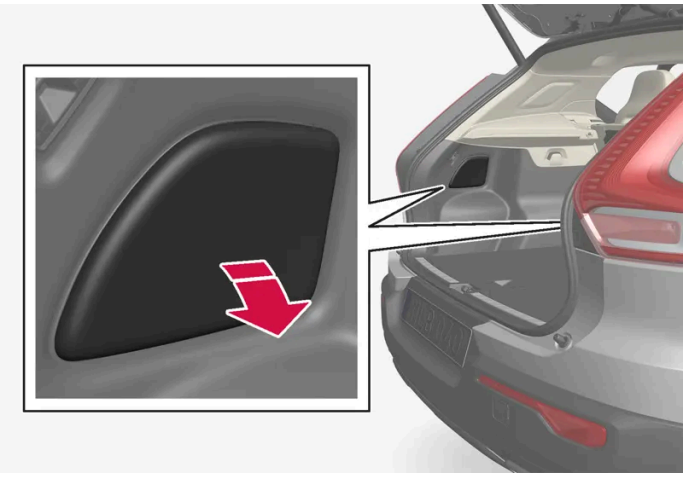


4. Undo the grey bulb holder by turning it anticlockwise and pulling it out.
5. Remove the bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise.
6. Fit a new bulb by pressing it in and turning it clockwise.
7. Attach the bulb holder by turning it clockwise.
8. Fit the supporting bridge with associated spring bolt and make sure that the clips align in the correct position. Tighten the spring bolt until it stops, max. 2 Nm (1.5 ft lbs).
9. Move back the insulation and then hook in the panel and press it back into place.

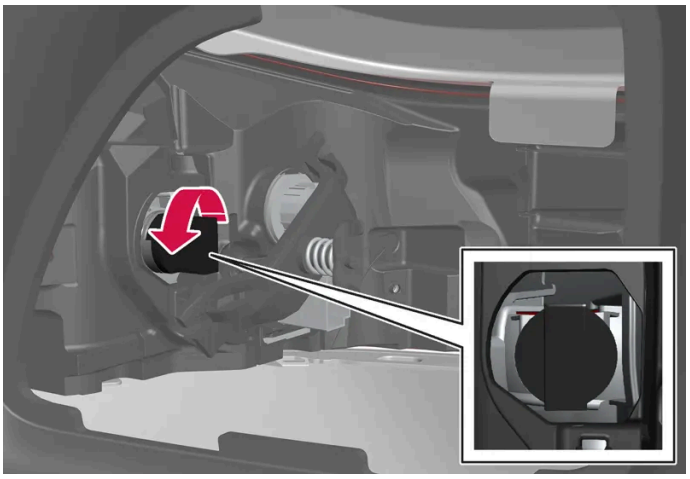
> **Important**
>
> Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

17.3.2. Changing brake light bulb

Bulbs for brake lights are located behind the panel in the side of the cargo area.



1. Press in the panel hatch at the upper edge to detach it.
2. Move the insulation aside to access the brake light bulb.

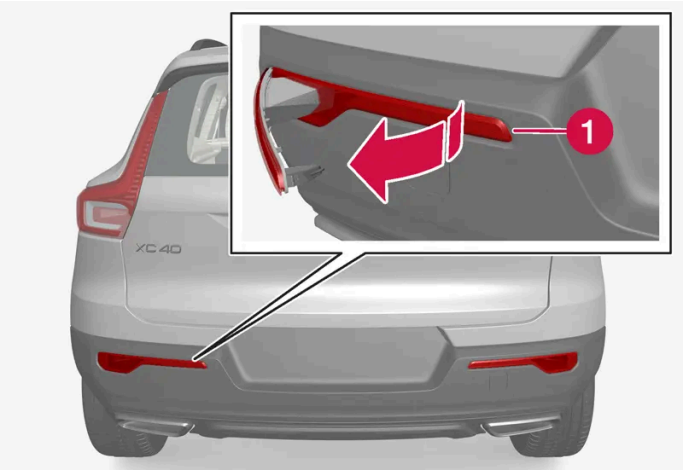


3. Undo the black bulb holder by turning it anticlockwise and pulling it out.
4. Remove the bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise.
5. Fit a new bulb by pressing it in and turning it clockwise.
6. Attach the bulb holder by turning it clockwise.
7. Move back the insulation and then hook in the panel and press it back into place.

> **Important**
>
> Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

17.3.3. Replacing the rear fog lamp bulb

The rear foglight is fitted in the rear bumper on the driver's side.



The rear fog light is only fitted on the driver's side.

1. Loosen the foglight unit on the driver's side by inserting a flat object, such as a table knife or a screwdriver, on the bulb kit's narrower short side of the keypad and then prize the foglight unit out.
2. Unplug the connector.
3. Undo the bulb holder by turning it anticlockwise and pulling it out.
4. Remove the bulb by pressing it in and turning anticlockwise.
5. Fit a new bulb by pressing it in and turning it clockwise.
6. Attach the bulb holder by turning it clockwise.
7. Plug in the connector.
8. Insert the hook on the wide part of the foglight unit in the rear bumper and rotate the unit inwards so that the clips engage.

17.3.4. Bulb replacement

Lamp types vary depending on model and equipment level. If a bulb[1] breaks, it can be replaced according to the method described in the Owner's Manual.
If a fault occurs in LED[2] lamps, the entire lamp unit usually must be replaced.

> **Note**
>
> For information about bulbs not covered in this Owner's Manual, contact a Volvo dealer or an authorised Volvo workshop.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Warning

The car's electrical system must be in ignition position 0 when replacing bulbs.

Important

Never touch the glass part of the bulbs with your fingers. Grease from your fingers is vaporised by the heat, coating the reflector and then causing damage.

Note

If an error message remains after the broken bulb has been replaced then we recommend visiting an authorised Volvo workshop.

Note

Outside lighting such as headlamps and rear lamps may temporarily have condensation on the inside of the lens. This is normal and all exterior lighting is designed to withstand this. Condensation is normally vented out of the lamp housing when the lamp has been switched on for a time.

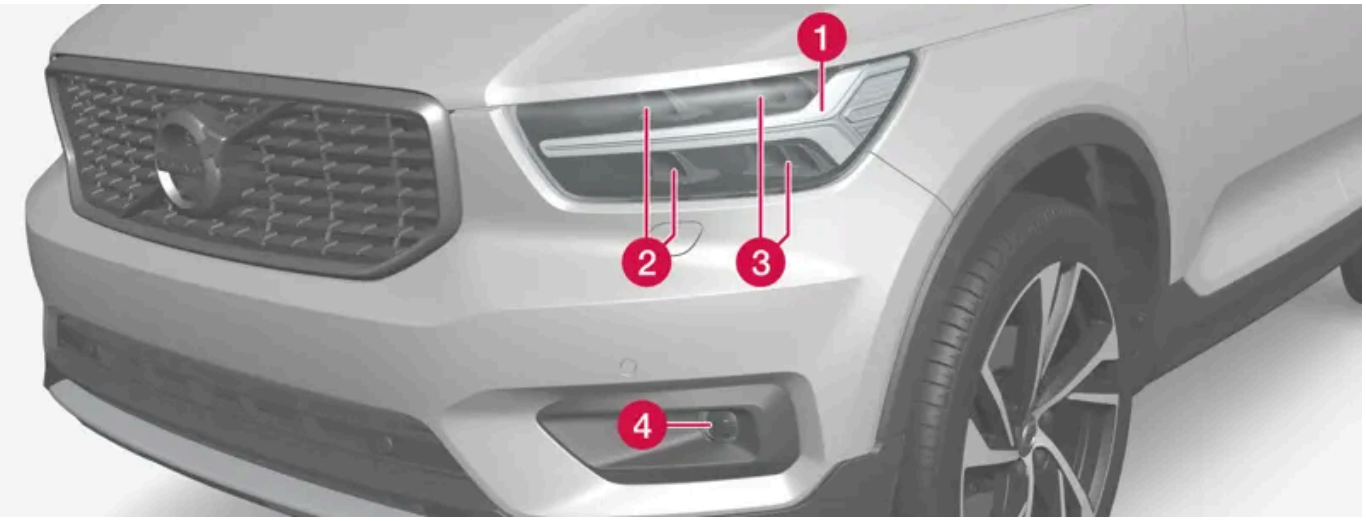
[1] Some cars have no bulbs.

[2] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

17.3.5. Exterior lamp positions

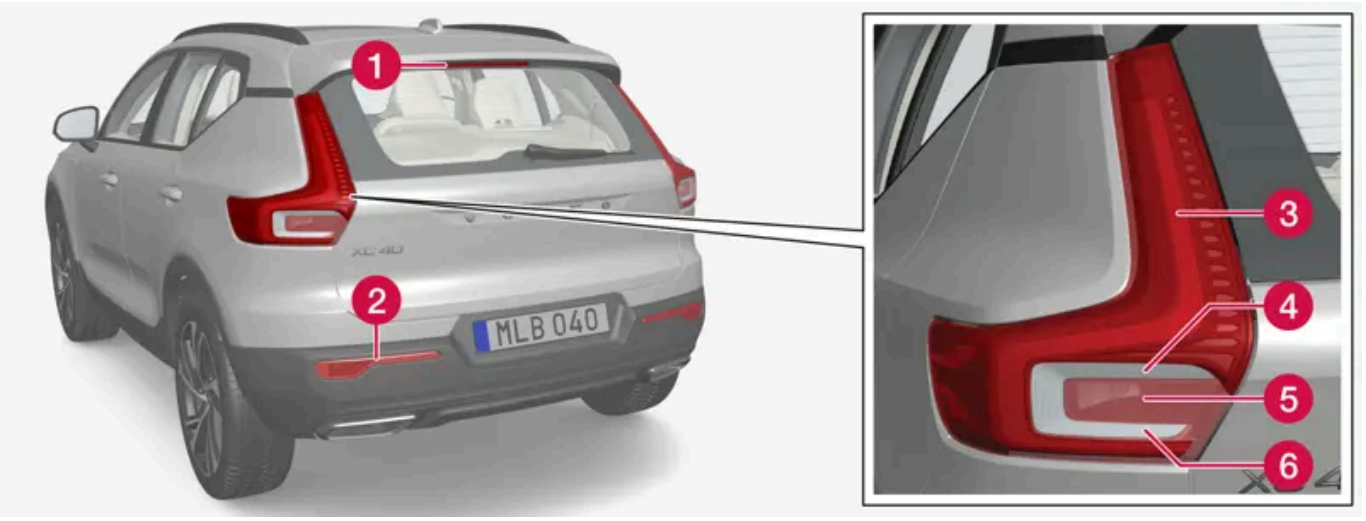
The exterior lighting of the car uses different lamps. An LED[1] type lamp must be replaced by a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Lamps, front



1. Daytime running lights/position lamps/direction indicators (LED)
2. Main beam (LED)
3. Dipped beam (LED)
4. Front fog lamps/cornering lights* (LED)

Lamps, rear



1. Brake light - central, high-level (LED)
2. Fog lamp
3. Position lamps (LED)
4. Direction indicators
5. Brake lights
6. Reversing lamps (LED)

[1] LED (Light Emmitting Diode)

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

17.3.6. Bulb specifications

Specifications for replaceable bulbs.
Contact a workshop[1] if faults occur in lamps other than bulbs. If a fault occurs in LED[2] lamps, the entire lamp unit usually must be replaced.

Function	W[3]	Type
Rear direction indicators	24	PY24W
Brake lights	21	H21W LL
Rear fog lamp	21	H21W LL

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

[2] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

[3] Watt

17.3.7. Checking trailer lamps*

When connecting a trailer – check that the trailer lamps work before departure.

Checking trailer lamps*

Automatic checking

After a trailer is connected electrically, it is possible to check that the trailer lamps are working via an automatic lamp activation. The function helps the driver check that the trailer lamps are working before starting off.

The car must be switched off to perform the check.

1. When a trailer is connected to the towbar, the **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check** message is shown in the driver display.
2. Confirm the message by pressing the right-hand steering wheel keypad's O button.

> The lamp check starts.

3. Exit the car to check lamp functionality.

> All trailer lamps start to flash - then the lamps are switched on one at a time.

4. Visually check that all lamps available on the trailer are operational.
5. After a moment, all lamps on the trailer flash again.

> The check is complete.

Switching off automatic checking

The automatic checking function can be switched off in the centre display.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting**.
3. Deselect **Automatic Trailer Lamp Check**.

Manual checking

If the automatic checking is switched off then it is possible to start the check manually.

1. Press **Settings** in the top view.
2. Press **My Car** → **Lights and Lighting**.
3. Select **Manual Trailer Lamp Check**.

> The lamp check starts. Exit the car to check lamp functionality.

Rear fog lamp on trailer

When connecting the trailer, the rear fog lamp may not light up on the car. In such cases, the rear fog lamp function switches to the trailer. Upon activation of the rear fog lamp, check therefore that the trailer is equipped with a rear fog lamp to travel safely.

Symbols and messages in the driver display

If one or more of the trailer's direction indicators or brake light bulbs is broken, the driver display shows a symbol and a message. Other lights on the trailer must be checked manually by the driver before setting off.

Symbol	Message
	• Trailer turn indicator Right turn indicator malfunction • Trailer turn indicator Left turn indicator malfunction
	• Trailer brake light Malfunction

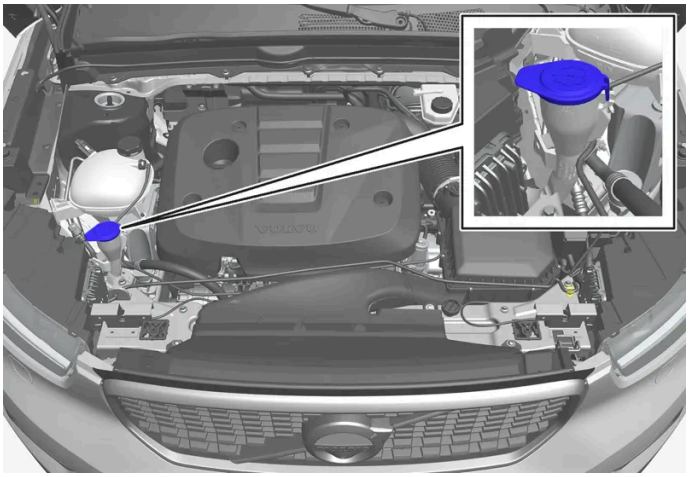
If any lamp for the trailer's direction indicators is broken, the driver display symbol for direction indicators will also flash more quickly than normal.

* Option/accessory.

17.4. Engine compartment

17.4.1. Topping up washer fluid

Washer fluid is used for cleaning the headlamps as well as the windscreen and rear window. Washer fluid with antifreeze must be used when the temperature is under the freezing point.



Washer fluid is filled into the reservoir with the blue cap. The reservoir is used for windscreen washer, rear window washer and headlamp washers*.

Note

When approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remains in the reservoir, the message **Washer fluid Level low, refill** is shown in the driver display, together with the symbol.

Prescribed grade: Washer fluid recommended by Volvo – with frost protection during cold weather and for temperatures below freezing point.

Important

Use Volvo genuine washer fluid or equivalent with a recommended pH of between 6 and 8, in working dilution (e.g. 1:1 with neutral water).

Important

Use washer fluid with antifreeze when the temperature is below freezing to avoid the fluid freezing inside the pump, reservoir and hoses.

Volume:

- Cars **with** headlamp washing: 5.5 litres (5.8 qts).
- Cars **without** headlamp washing: 3.5 litres (3.7 qts).

* Option/accessory.

17.4.2. Brake fluid – specifications

Brake fluid is the medium in a hydraulic brake system that is used to transfer pressure from e.g. a brake pedal via a master brake cylinder, which in turn acts on the brake callipers.

Prescribed grade: Volvo Original or equivalent fluid compliant with a combination of Dot 4, 5.1 and ISO 4925 class 6.

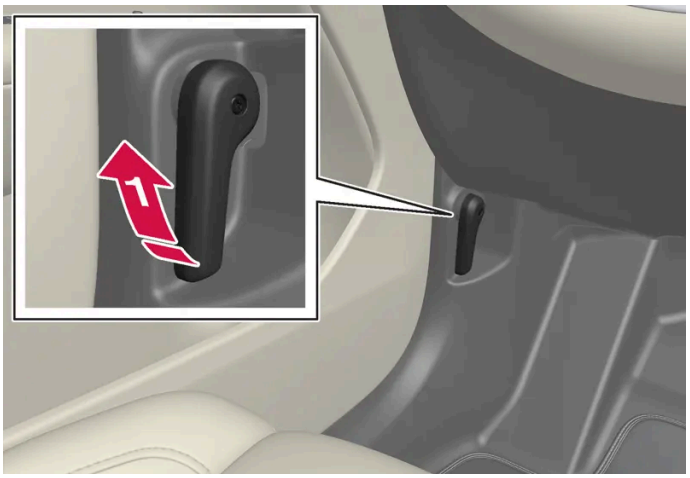
Note

It is recommended that brake fluid is changed or filled by an authorised Volvo workshop.

17.4.3. Opening and closing the bonnet

The bonnet can be opened using the handle in the passenger compartment and a handle under the front edge of the bonnet. It is important to follow the instructions for closing and to check that the bonnet is fully closed if it has been open.

Open the bonnet



1. Pull the handle beside the pedals to release the bonnet from its fully closed position.

2. Move the handle under the bonnet upwards to release the catch and lift the bonnet.

Warning - bonnet not closed

Open bonnet is indicated by a warning symbol and graphic in the driver display as well as by an acoustic signal.

> **Note**
>
> If the car indicates that the bonnet is open despite it being fully closed – open the bonnet and follow the instructions for closing again. Visit a workshop if the problem persists – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Close the bonnet

> **Warning**
>
> Make sure that nothing is in the way of the bonnet closing to avoid crushing damage.

1 Lower the bonnet.

2 When the bonnet stops against the lock catch, push the bonnet to close it completely.

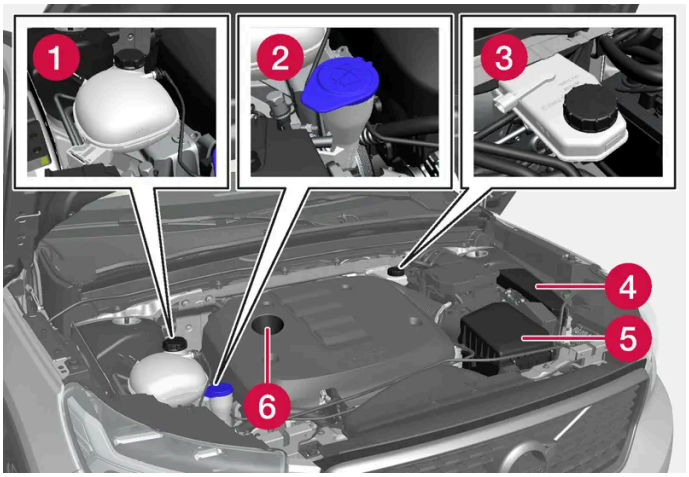
> The bonnet must be audibly locked on both sides.

3 Check that the bonnet has been properly locked and that it is not open slightly.

> **Warning**
>
> Never drive with an open bonnet.
>
> Thoroughly check that the bonnet is fully closed after it has been open.
>
> If the car warns or indicates that the bonnet is open, or if something else suggests that it is not fully closed – stop immediately and close it firmly.

17.4.4. Engine compartment overview

The engine compartment contains several service-related parts.



The appearance of the engine compartment may differ depending on model and engine variant.

1 Coolant expansion tank

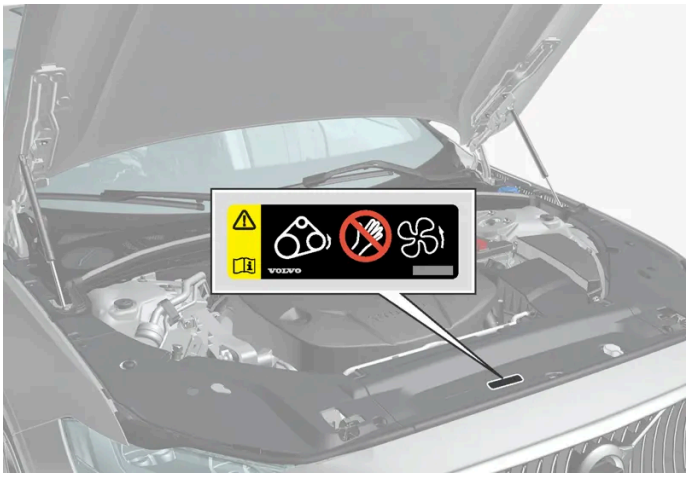
2 Washer fluid filler pipe

3 Reservoir for brake fluid (located on the driver's side)

4 Central electrical unit

5 Air filter

6 Engine oil filler pipe



Location of warning decal for the engine compartment. The appearance of the engine compartment may differ depending on model and engine variant.

Note

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and locations in the car. The information that applies to your particular car can be found on the decal on the car.

Warning

Remember that the radiator fan (located at the front of the engine compartment, behind the radiator) may start or continue to operate automatically for up to approx. 6 minutes after the engine has been switched off.

Always have the engine cleaned by a workshop - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. There is a risk of fire if the engine is hot.

Warning

The ignition system works at a very high and hazardous voltage. The car's electrical system must always be in ignition position 0 when work is being performed in the engine compartment.

Do not touch the spark plugs or ignition coil when the car's electrical system is in ignition position II or when the engine is hot.

17.4.5. Coolant

The coolant cools the internal combustion engine to the correct operating temperature. The surplus heat can be used to heat the passenger compartment.

Prescribed grade:

Ready-mixed coolant approved by Volvo.

If the concentrated coolant is used, mix it with 50% pure water. Level of cleanliness must meet Volvo's requirements. Consult a Volvo dealer if unsure.

In order to prevent deterioration of cooling system function, which may lead to engine malfunction among other things, it is recommended that only coolant approved by Volvo should be used.

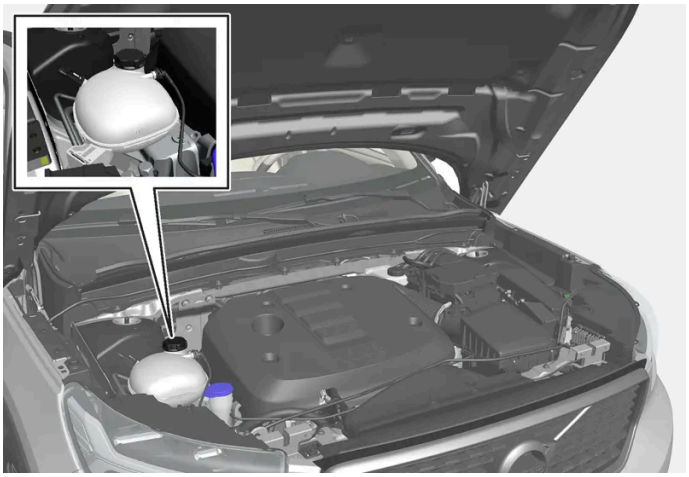
> **Warning**
>
> Coolant must not be swallowed. It can cause damage to the kidneys and other organs. The product contains, among other things, ethylene glycol, inhibitor and water.

17.4.6. Topping up coolant

When topping up the coolant, follow the instructions on the packaging. Never top up with water only. The risk of freezing increases with both too little and too much coolant concentrate.

If there is coolant under the car, if there is coolant smoke, or if more than 2 litres (approx. 2 quarts) have been filled, always call for recovery to avoid the risk of engine damage due to a defective cooling system when attempting to start the car.

> **Warning**
>
> The coolant can be very hot when the engine has been running. Always allow the coolant to cool before unscrewing the filler cap.
>
> When filling - carefully unscrew the cap to release any overpressure.



Coolant expansion tank

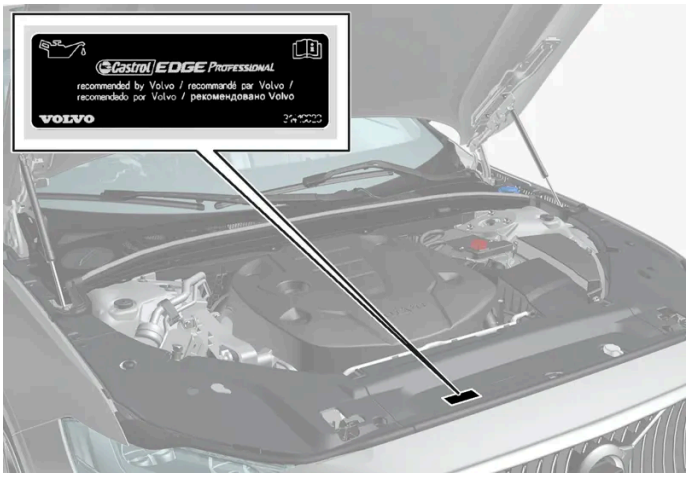
1 Screw off the cap and top up with coolant if necessary. The coolant level must lie between the MIN and MAX marks on the expansion tank.

Important

- Coolant is harmful to ingest and may cause organ damage.
- Only use coolant of Volvo-approved quality. If concentrated liquid is used, make sure that the ratio is 50 % coolant to 50 % water of approved quality.
- Hard water, and water with a high content of chlorine, chlorides and other salts or contaminants may cause corrosion to the cooling system.
- Do not mix different coolants.
- New coolant must be used to replace all coolant when replacing a large component in the cooling system.
- Only operate the engine when the cooling system is filled to the correct level. When the coolant level is too low, it may lead to overheating, resulting in engine damage.

17.4.7. Engine oil

Only use engine oil of the prescribed quality. This is a requirement in order for the recommended service intervals and warranty to be applicable.



Location of warning decal for the engine compartment. The appearance of the engine compartment may differ depending on model and engine variant.

Volvo recommends:

If the engine oil cannot be checked on a regular basis and the level falls too low, there is a risk that this will cause serious damage to the engine.

Note

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and locations in the car. The information that applies to your particular car can be found on the decal on the car.

Important

In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise there is a risk of the service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact of the car being affected.

If engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used, engine related components may become damaged. Volvo disclaims any liability for any such damage.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

Symbols for low oil level

Volvo uses different systems to warn about the oil level or low oil pressure. Low oil pressure is indicated by a warning symbol in the driver display. Warning or information about the car's oil level can be indicated by a warning symbol in the driver display as well as message texts. Contact a Volvo dealer for more information.

Change the engine oil and oil filter in accordance with the intervals specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

17.4.8. Checking and filling with engine oil

The oil level is measured electronically and is shown in the centre display.

See oil level in the centre display

Example of oil level display.

The oil level can only be shown when the car has been started. The oil level should be checked regularly.

1. Open the **Car Status** app from the app view in the centre display.
2. Press **Status** to show the oil level.

Note

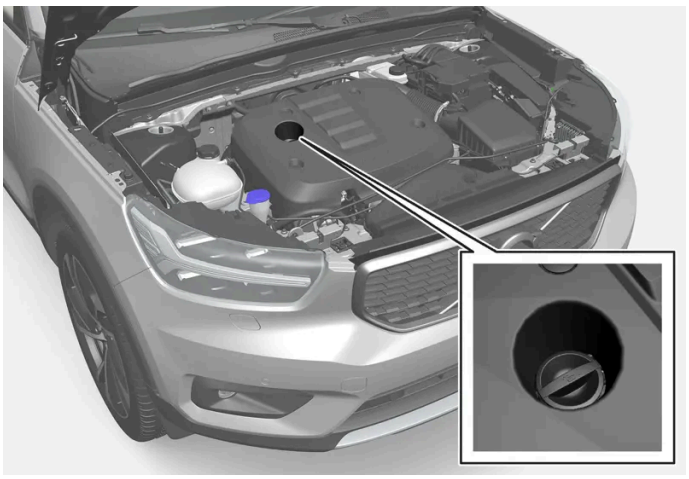
The system cannot directly detect changes when the oil is filled or drained out. The car must have been driven approx. 30 km (approx. 20 miles) and have been stationary for 5 minutes with the engine switched off and on level ground before the oil level indication is correct.

If the right conditions for measuring the oil level (time after engine shutdown, the car's inclination, outside temperature, etc.) are not met, then the message **No value available** will be shown in the centre display. This does **not** mean that there is something wrong in the car's systems.

Important

If this symbol is shown then the oil pressure may be too low. Stop the car as quickly as possible and have the car recovered to a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Fill the engine oil



Filler pipe[1],[2].

In some cases, oil may need to be topped up between service intervals. No action with regard to engine oil level needs to be taken until a message is shown in the driver display.

> **Warning**
>
> If the **Engine oil level Service required** message is shown, visit a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. The oil level may be too high.

> **Warning**
>
> Do not spill oil onto the hot exhaust manifold due to the risk of fire.

> **Important**
>
> If a message prompts you to top up the engine oil, only fill with the specified amount. If the level is too high, it may result in operational disruption.

[1] Engines with electronic oil level sensor do not have a dipstick.

[2] The appearance of the engine compartment may differ depending on model and engine variant.

17.4.9. Engine oil – specifications

Engine oil grade and volume for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

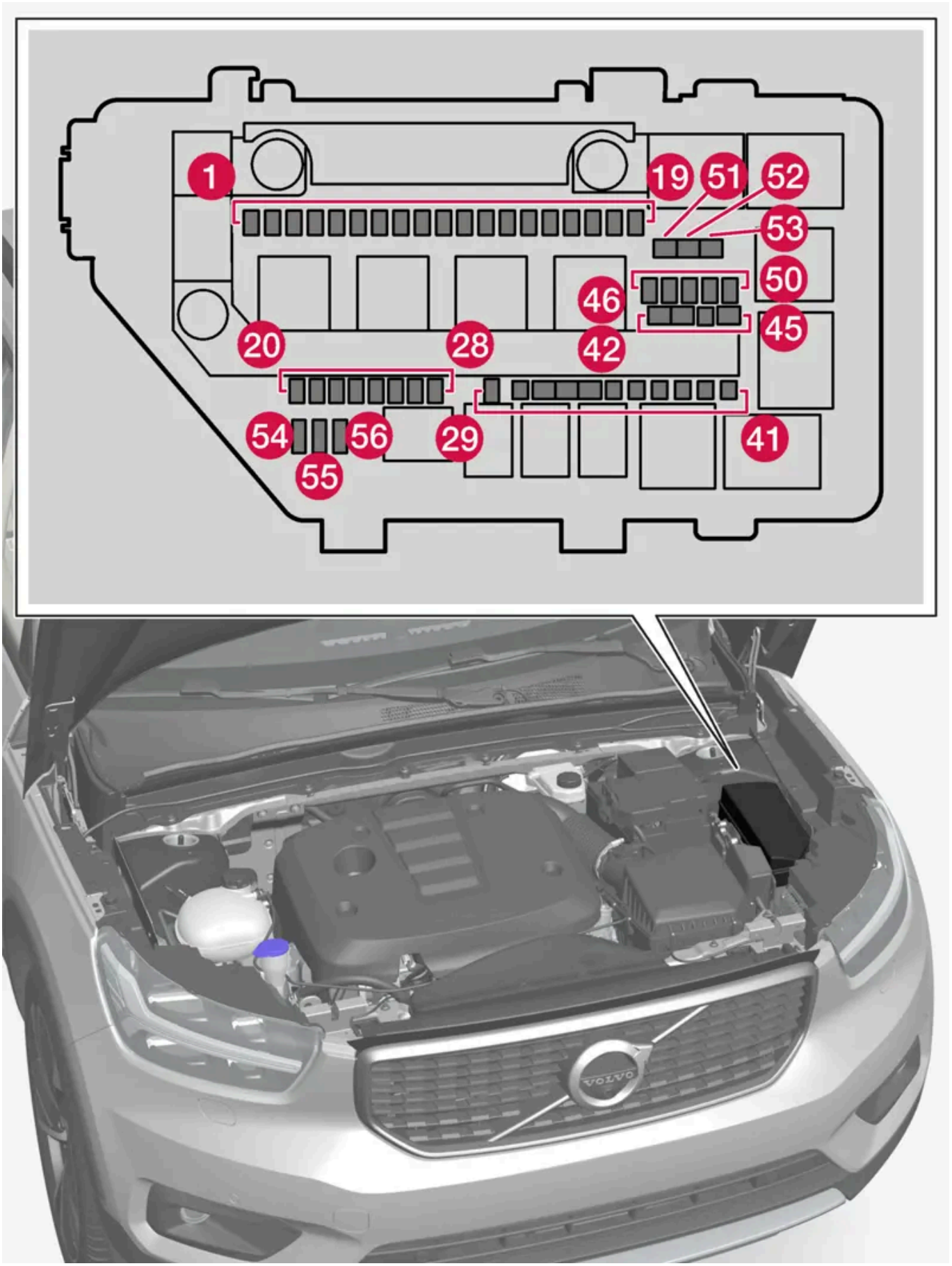
Volvo recommends:

Engine	Engine code[1]	Volume, incl. oil filter (litres, approx.)	Oil grade
T2	B3154T9	5,6	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20
T3	B3154T4	5,6	
T3	B3154T7	5,6	
T3	B3154T2	5,6	
T4 / T4 AWD	B4204T31	5,6	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20
T4 AWD	B4204T51	5,6	
T5 AWD	B4204T36	5,6	
T5 AWD	B4204T18	5,6	
B3	B420T4	6.1	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20
B4 / B4 AWD	B420T5	6.1	
B4 / B4 AWD	B420T6	6.1	
B5 AWD	B420T2	6.1	
B5 AWD	B420T10	6.1	

[1] The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

17.4.10. Fuses in engine compartment

Fuses in the engine compartment protect engine and brake functions, amongst other things.



The fuse box provides space for several spare fuses.

Positions

Fuse locations are shown on the inside of the cover. Functions and components in the fuse table cover several models and engine alternatives. A fuse description can therefore apply to fewer than those in the table, or be completely missing, depending on how the car is equipped.

If a position has several values in the table, the value depends on variations in equipment level. In which case, follow the value of the fuse being replaced. In the event of doubt – contact a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

	Function	Ampere	Type
1	USB port, tunnel console, rear*	5	Micro
2	12 V socket, tunnel console, front	15	Micro
3	–	–	Micro
4	12 V socket cargo area*	15	Micro
5	Engine Control Module (ECM)	20	Micro
6	Spark plugs/ignition coils	15	Micro
7	Engine Control Module (ECM) Fuel evaporation valve (EVAP)	15	Micro
8	Control module, spoiler damper Control module, radiator damper Solenoid engine oil pump Solenoid AC compressor Engine component group (components related to engine function, including turbo/compressor and cooling/temperature control of drivetrain. Contents depend on engine alternative.)	10 15	Micro
9	Lambda probe group	15	Micro
10	Engine Control Module (ECM)	15	Micro
11	Coolant pump	20	Micro
12	Headlamp, right	20	Micro
13	Headlamp, left	20	Micro
14	Airbags	5	Micro
15	Accelerator pedal sensor	5	Micro
16	Supplied when the ignition is switched on: Engine control module, Transmission components, Electric steering servo, Central electronic module, Control module for brake system	5	Micro
17	Electric additional heater* Firewall module, diagnostic port	5	Micro
18	Alcohol lock*	5	Micro
19	–	–	Micro
20	Internal relay coils	5	Micro
21	–	–	Micro
22	Brake pedal sensor	5	Micro
23	Calculation unit	5	Micro
24	Actuator, transmission	5	Micro
	Actuator, clutch	25	Micro
25	Transmission control module	15	Micro
	Actuator, clutch	25	Micro
26	Engine Control Module (ECM)	5	Micro

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

	Function	Ampere	Type
27	–	–	Micro
28	–	–	Micro
29	Horn (honk)	20	Micro
30	Siren*	5	Micro
31	Windscreen wipers	30	MCase+[1]
32	Control module, brake system (valves, parking brake)	40	MCase+ HT[1]
33	Control module, brake system (ABS pump)	40	MCase+ HT[1]
34	–	–	MCase+ HT[1]
35	Actuator, transmission Transmission control module	25 30	MCase+[1]
36	Transmission control module	30	MCase+[1]
38	Headlamps	30	MCase+[1]
39	Control module, brake assistance	30	MCase+[1]
40	–	–	MCase+[1]
41	Towbar control module*	25	MCase+[1]
42	Towbar control module*	40	MCase+ HT[1]
43	–	–	MCase+ HT[1]
44	Power driver seat*	20	MCase+[1]
45	–	–	MCase[1]
46	–	–	Micro
47	–	–	Micro
48	–	–	Micro
49	–	–	Micro
50	–	–	Micro
51	–	–	MCase+[1]
52	Heated windscreen*, right	40	MCase+ HT[1]
53	Heated windscreen*, left	40	MCase+ HT[1]
54	Control function, support battery	5	Micro
55	Headlamp, left	20	Micro
56	Headlamp, right	20	Micro

* Option/accessory.

[1] This type of fuse should be replaced by a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

17.5. Tools and accessories

17.5.1. Jack*

The jack can be used to raise the car, for example, to change to a wheel.

Important

The jack* included with the car is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture. Only the jack belonging to the specific model is to be used to jack up the car. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

When the jack is not in use it must be stored in its storage space under the cargo area floor. The jack needs to be cranked together to the correct position in order to have space.

* Option/accessory.

17.5.2. Emergency puncture repair kit

The emergency puncture repair kit (TMK[1]) is used to seal a puncture as well as to check and adjust the air pressure in the tyre.
Cars equipped with spare tyre* do not have the emergency puncture repair kit.

The puncture repair kit consists of a compressor and a bottle with sealing fluid. The sealing works as a temporary repair.

Note

The sealing fluid is effective at sealing tyres with tread punctures but has limited ability to seal tyres with sidewall punctures. Do not use the emergency puncture repair kit on tyres displaying larger slits, cracks or similar damage.

Note

The compressor is intended for temporary emergency puncture repair and is approved by Volvo.

Location

The puncture repair kit is located in the foam block under the cargo area floor.

Sealing fluid expiry date

The bottle of sealing fluid must be replaced if the bottle's expiry date has passed (see the decal on the bottle). Treat the old bottle as environmentally hazardous waste.

[1] Temporary Mobility Kit

* Option/accessory.

17.5.3. First aid kit*

The first aid kit contains first aid equipment.

Store the first aid kit in an appropriate place in the cargo area, e.g. in the space on the right-hand side. The first aid kit has Velcro straps and can be attached directly to the panel.

* Option/accessory.

17.5.4. Warning triangle

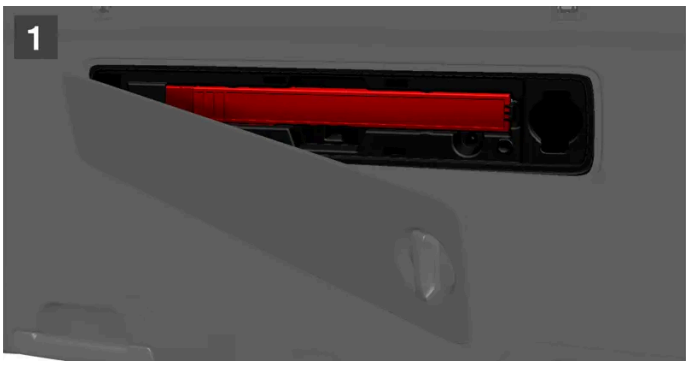
Use the warning triangle to warn other road users if the car is stationary in traffic.

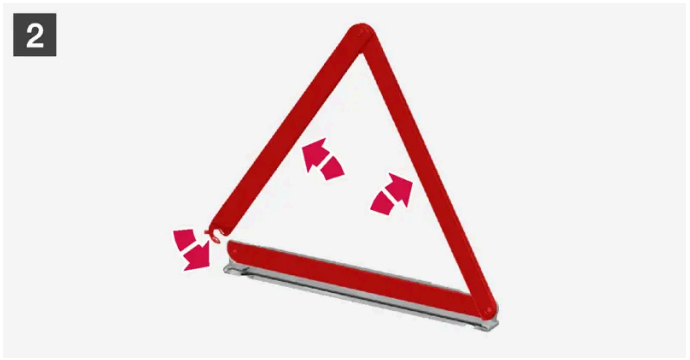
Also activate the hazard warning flashers.

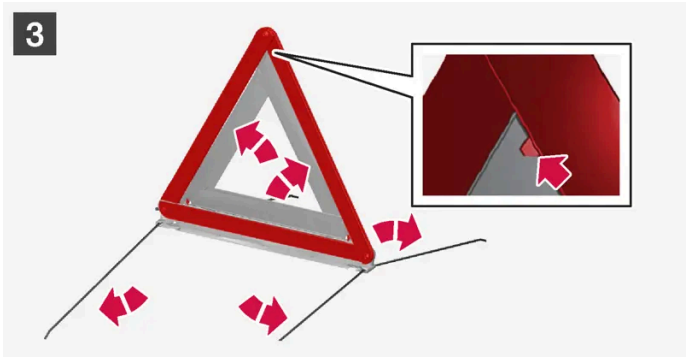
Storage spaces

The warning triangle is located in the compartment on the inside of the tailgate.

Folding up the warning triangle







1 1

Open the hatch by first turning the knob a quarter turn and then pulling the hatch from its brackets in the top and bottom edges.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Press the latch that secures the warning triangle slightly to the right and remove the case.

2 2
Remove the warning triangle from the case, unfold it and put the ends together.

3 3
Fold out the warning triangle's support legs.

Follow the regulations for the use of a warning triangle. Position the warning triangle in a suitable place with regard to traffic.

Make sure that the warning triangle and case are properly secured in their storage space and that the hatch is fully closed after use.

17.5.5. Tool kit

Tools that can be useful during towing, wheel changes or similar are found in the car's cargo area.

Examples of tools.

1 Jack*

2 Tool for removing the plastic caps from the wheel bolts

3 Funnel for filling fluids

4 Wheel wrench* and towing eye

If the car is fitted with a spare wheel*, there is a jack and a wheel bolt wrench instead of emergency puncture repair kit.

* Option/accessory.

17.6. Fuses

17.6.1. Fuses and central electrical units

Electrical functions and components are protected by a number of fuses in order to protect the car's electrical system from damage by short circuiting or overloading.

> **Warning**
>
> Never replace a fuse with a foreign object or a fuse of higher amperage. This may lead to damage to the electrical system and cause fire.
>
> Contact an authorised Volvo workshop about replacing the fuses not described in the owner's manual.

If an electrical component or function does not work, it may be because the component's fuse was overloaded and has blown. If the same fuse blows repeatedly then there is a fault in a component. Volvo recommends contacting an authorised Volvo workshop for checking.

Location of central electrical units

1. Engine compartment
2. Under the left-hand front seat

17.6.2. Replacing a fuse

A fuse that has been overloaded needs to be changed in order to restore the function of the electrical component it is protecting.

1. Locate the correct fuse in the fuse lists for the various fuse boxes.
2. Pull out the fuse and check from the side to see whether the curved wire has blown.

3 If this is the case, replace it with a new fuse of the same colour and amperage.

Note

Some fuse boxes may contain special tweezers for a better grip on the fuse.

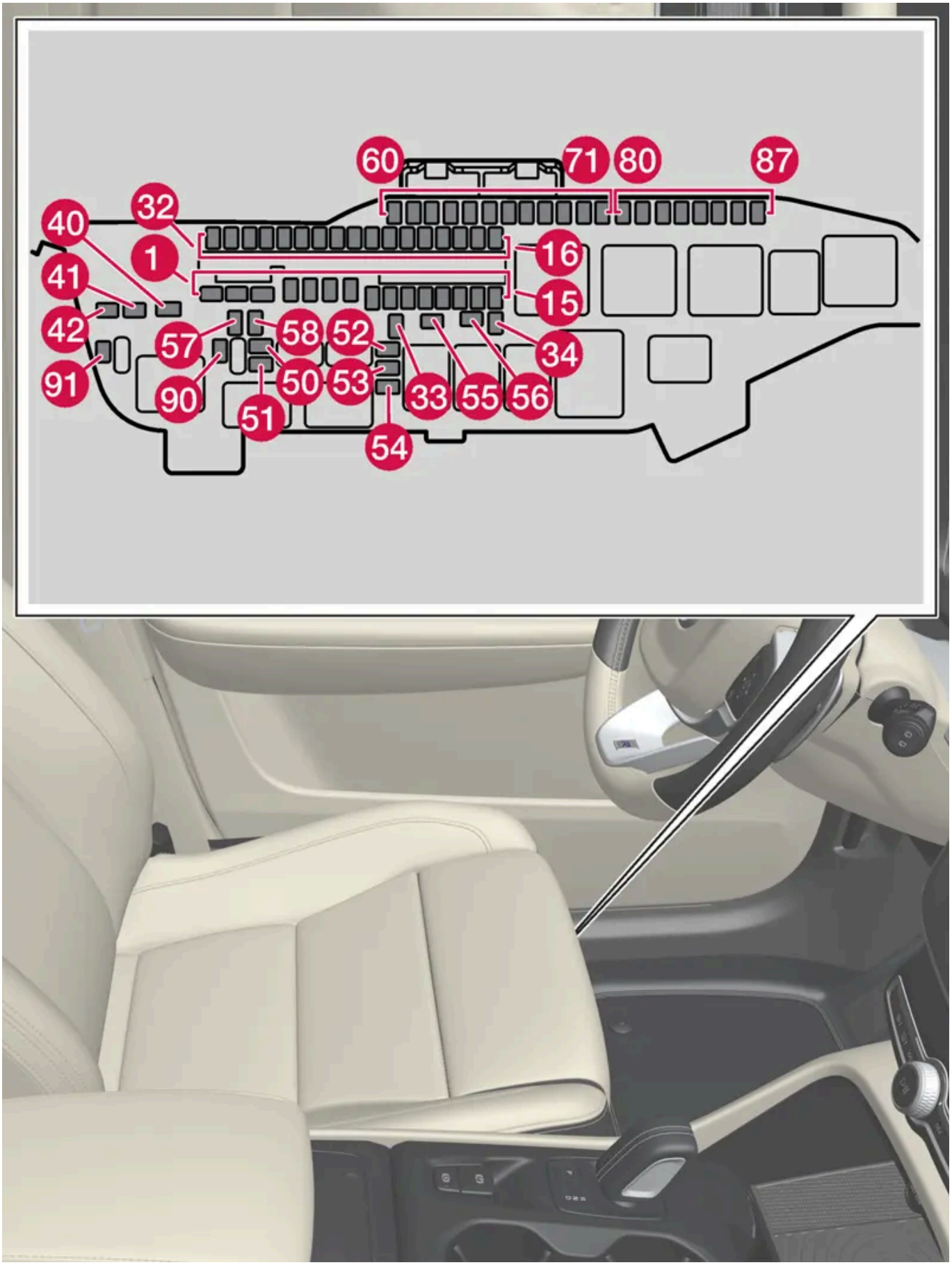
Warning

Never replace a fuse with a foreign object or a fuse of higher amperage. This may lead to damage to the electrical system and cause fire.

Contact an authorised Volvo workshop about replacing the fuses not described in the owner's manual.

17.6.3. Fuses under the left-hand front seat

Fuses under the left-hand front seat protect, amongst other things, electrical sockets, displays and door modules.



The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

The **fuse box in the engine compartment** provides space for several spare fuses.

Positions

Fuse locations are shown on the inside of the cover. Functions and components in the fuse table cover several models and engine alternatives. A fuse description can therefore apply to fewer than those in the table, or be completely missing, depending on how the car is equipped.

If a position has several values in the table, the value depends on variations in equipment level. In which case, follow the value of the fuse being replaced. In the event of doubt – contact a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

	Function	Ampere	Type
1	Audio control module	40	MCase+ HT[1]
2	Central Electric Module A: Sensors, radar units, power seats*	40	MCase+ HT[1]
3	Central Electric Module B: Sensors, radar units, power seats*	40	MCase+ HT[1]
4	Fan module for climate control system, front	40	MCase+ HT[1]
5	Power operated tailgate*	25	MCase+[1]
6	Power seat*, right	20	MCase+[1]
7	Parking heater*	25	MCase+[1]
8	–	–	MCase+[1]
9	Door module, right rear	20	Micro
10	Door module, left rear	20	Micro
11	Door module, left front	20	Micro
12	–	–	Micro
13	Door module, right front	20	Micro
14	Seat heating, rear*	15	Micro
15	Control module, 48 V battery	5	Micro
16	Calculation module	5	Micro
17	–	–	Micro
18	Steering lock	7.5	Micro
19	Control module, climate control	7.5	Micro
20	Interior movement detectors*	5	Micro
21	Driver display	5	Micro
22	Keypad in centre console	5	Micro
23	Steering wheel module	5	Micro
24	Module for start knob Electronic shifting module Electronic parking brake	5	Micro
25	Centre display	5	Micro
26	Control module, online car Control module, Volvo On Call	5	Micro
27	Multiband antenna module	5	Micro
28	Relay coils	5	Micro
29	Opening the tailgate with foot motion*	5	Micro

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

	Function	Ampere	Type
30	Sensus control module TV*	15	Micro
31	Diagnostic port OBD-II	10	Micro
32	Alcohol lock*	5	Micro
33	Lock motor for head restraint, left rear	15	Micro
34	Lock motor for head restraint, right rear	15	Micro
40	Rear window defroster	30	MCase+[1]
41	Seatbelt pretensioner, left	40	MCase+ HT[1]
42	Seatbelt pretensioner, right	40	MCase+ HT[1]
50	Humidity sensor 48 V alternator and voltage converter	5	Micro
51	Control module for fuel pump	20	Micro
52	Coolant pump	7.5	Micro
53	Heated steering wheel*	15	Micro
54	Air humidity sensor	5	Micro
55	Headlamp washers*	25	MCase+[1]
56	Windscreen and rear window washers	25	MCase+[1]
57	–	–	MCase[1]
58	–	–	MCase[1]
59	–	–	Micro
60	–	–	Micro
61	–	–	Micro
62	–	–	Micro
63	Seatbelt tensioner	5	Micro
64	Blind Spot Information (BLIS)*	5	Micro
65	–	–	Micro
66	–	–	Micro
67	All Wheel Drive (AWD) control module*	15	Micro
68	Exhaust system	5	Micro
69	Parking camera*	5	Micro
70	–	–	Micro
71	Control module for airbags and seatbelt tensioners	5	Micro
80	Rear window wiper	15	Micro
81	Roof console for panoramic roof*	20	Micro
82	Sun sensor	5	Micro
83	Interior lighting Dimming of interior rearview mirror* Rain and light sensor* Control panels in rear doors and cargo area	7.5	Micro
84	–	–	Micro
85	Control module, driver support functions	5	Micro
86	Alcohol lock*	5	Micro

	Function	Ampere	Type
87	Wireless mobile charger* USB port	5	Micro
90	–	–	Micro
91	–	–	Micro

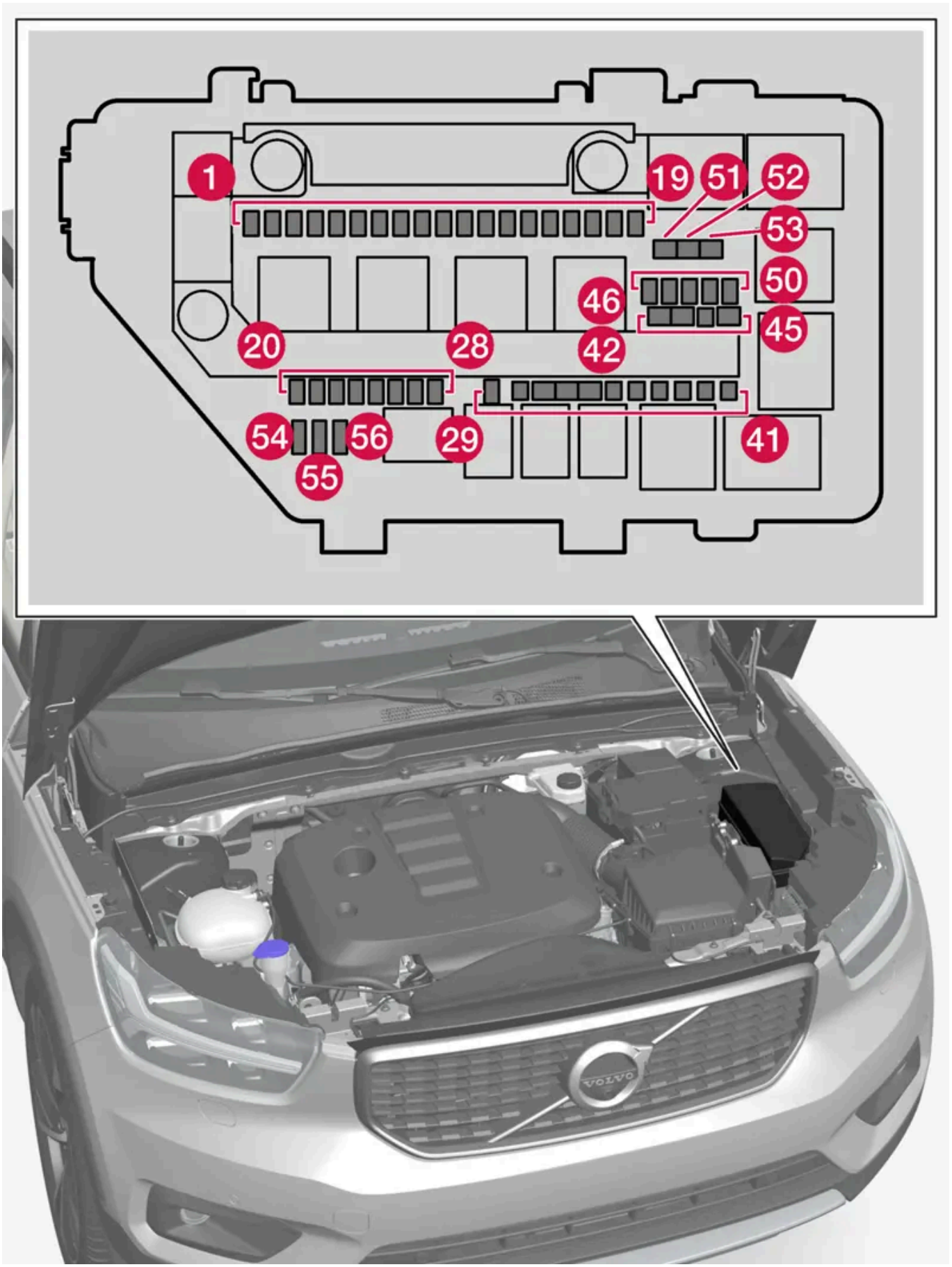
[1] This type of fuse should be replaced by a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

17.6.4. Fuses in engine compartment

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Fuses in the engine compartment protect engine and brake functions, amongst other things.



The fuse box provides space for several spare fuses.

Positions

Fuse locations are shown on the inside of the cover. Functions and components in the fuse table cover several models and engine alternatives. A fuse description can therefore apply to fewer than those in the table, or be completely missing, depending on how the car is equipped.

If a position has several values in the table, the value depends on variations in equipment level. In which case, follow the value of the fuse being replaced. In the event of doubt – contact a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

	Function	Ampere	Type
1	USB port, tunnel console, rear*	5	Micro
2	12 V socket, tunnel console, front	15	Micro
3	–	–	Micro
4	12 V socket cargo area*	15	Micro
5	Engine Control Module (ECM)	20	Micro
6	Spark plugs/ignition coils	15	Micro
7	Engine Control Module (ECM) Fuel evaporation valve (EVAP)	15	Micro
8	Control module, spoiler damper Control module, radiator damper Solenoid engine oil pump Solenoid AC compressor Engine component group (components related to engine function, including turbo/compressor and cooling/temperature control of drivetrain. Contents depend on engine alternative.)	10 15	Micro
9	Lambda probe group	15	Micro
10	Engine Control Module (ECM)	15	Micro
11	Coolant pump	20	Micro
12	Headlamp, right	20	Micro
13	Headlamp, left	20	Micro
14	Airbags	5	Micro
15	Accelerator pedal sensor	5	Micro
16	Supplied when the ignition is switched on: Engine control module, Transmission components, Electric steering servo, Central electronic module, Control module for brake system	5	Micro
17	Electric additional heater* Firewall module, diagnostic port	5	Micro
18	Alcohol lock*	5	Micro
19	–	–	Micro
20	Internal relay coils	5	Micro
21	–	–	Micro
22	Brake pedal sensor	5	Micro
23	Calculation unit	5	Micro
24	Actuator, transmission	5	Micro
	Actuator, clutch	25	Micro
25	Transmission control module	15	Micro
	Actuator, clutch	25	Micro
26	Engine Control Module (ECM)	5	Micro

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

	Function	Ampere	Type
27	–	–	Micro
28	–	–	Micro
29	Horn (honk)	20	Micro
30	Siren*	5	Micro
31	Windscreen wipers	30	MCase+[1]
32	Control module, brake system (valves, parking brake)	40	MCase+ HT[1]
33	Control module, brake system (ABS pump)	40	MCase+ HT[1]
34	–	–	MCase+ HT[1]
35	Actuator, transmission Transmission control module	25 30	MCase+[1]
36	Transmission control module	30	MCase+[1]
38	Headlamps	30	MCase+[1]
39	Control module, brake assistance	30	MCase+[1]
40	–	–	MCase+[1]
41	Towbar control module*	25	MCase+[1]
42	Towbar control module*	40	MCase+ HT[1]
43	–	–	MCase+ HT[1]
44	Power driver seat*	20	MCase+[1]
45	–	–	MCase[1]
46	–	–	Micro
47	–	–	Micro
48	–	–	Micro
49	–	–	Micro
50	–	–	Micro
51	–	–	MCase+[1]
52	Heated windscreen*, right	40	MCase+ HT[1]
53	Heated windscreen*, left	40	MCase+ HT[1]
54	Control function, support battery	5	Micro
55	Headlamp, left	20	Micro
56	Headlamp, right	20	Micro

* Option/accessory.

[1] This type of fuse should be replaced by a workshop. An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

17.7. Battery

17.7.1. Replacing the battery in the key

The battery in the key can be replaced when it has discharged. The service life of the battery depends on how much the key is used. The Key Tag* battery cannot be replaced.

The key's battery needs to be replaced when the information symbol is illuminated and the **Car key battery low** message is shown in the driver display.

Another sign that the battery level is low is decreased range for the key.

The battery in the button-less key (Key Tag)* cannot be replaced - a new key can be ordered from an authorised Volvo workshop.

> **Important**
>
> Hand in a discharged Key Tag to an authorised Volvo workshop where it can be deleted from the car's system. The key can still be used to start the car via back-up start when the battery has been discharged.

Opening the key and changing its battery

> **Important**
>
> Avoid touching the contact surfaces of a new battery with your fingers. This impairs the battery's functionality.

Hold the key so that its front with the Volvo logotype is facing up, and with the keyring bracket facing you.

There is a catch on the left of the keyring bracket. If it is on the wrong side then the front and rear have been mixed up when the battery was replaced on an earlier occasion.

1 1

Slide the catch by the keyring bracket to the side, and slide the front shell away from the bracket.

> The shell detaches and can be lifted off.
There is a further catch under the shell to detach the rear.

2 2

Slide the catch that was behind the front shell to the side, and slide the rear shell away from the key ring bracket.

> The shell detaches and can be lifted off.
The battery cover is under the shell.

3 3

Turn the battery cover anticlockwise to OPEN position. Use a screwdriver or a coin, for example.

Lift off the battery cover. If it is difficult to detach, you can prize it upward using a narrow tool.

4 4

The battery (+) side is facing upwards. Loosen the battery by pressing on its edge and then lifting it out.

5 5

Install a new battery with the (+) side up. Avoid touching the key's battery contacts with your fingers.

Position the edge of the battery under the two outer plastic catches.

Then press down on the battery so that it is held in place by the upper plastic catch.

> **Note**
>
> Use batteries with the designation CR2032, 3 V.

> **Note**
>
> Volvo recommends that replacement batteries for the key meet UN Manual of Test and Criteria, Part III, sub-section 38.3. The batteries that are included or the batteries used for replacement by an authorised Volvo workshop will meet the same criterion.

6 6

Refit the battery cover and turn clockwise to CLOSE position.

7 7

Refit the rear shell in reverse order to how it was removed. There is no logotype on the rear shell. Press in the shell until you hear a click, and then slide it the last few millimetres to its original position.

> A further click will indicate that the shell is properly positioned and securely attached.

There must be no gaps remaining.

8 8

Turn the key and refit the front shell in the same way as for the rear.

Warning

Check that the battery is fitted correctly with the correct polarity. If the key shall not been used for a long time, remove the battery to avoid battery leakage and damage. Batteries with damage or leaks may cause corrosive injury on contact with the skin. Therefore, use protective gloves when handling damaged batteries.

- Keep batteries out of the reach of children.
- Do not leave batteries lying around since they can be swallowed by children or pets.
- Batteries must not: be dismantled, short-circuited or thrown into open flames.
- Do not try to charge non-rechargeable batteries. They may explode.
- Check battery operated products for signs of damage on a regular basis.

The key should not be used if anything indicates that the key or its battery has been damaged or has started to leak. Keep defective products out of the reach of children.

Important

Used batteries must be recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

* Option/accessory.

17.7.2. Overloading the starter battery

High power consumption without the car being able to charge the starter battery leads to low battery level and some electric functions being reduced or switched off. If the battery level decreases to below a certain limit, it is not possible to start the car without jump starting or charging with an external charger.

There are several measures that reduce power consumption. Avoid using the ignition position II when the car is switched off. Instead, use ignition position I - which consumes less power. Do not use functions which use a lot of power when the car is not being driven. Examples of such functions are:

- ventilation fan
- headlamps
- windscreen wiper
- audio system
- accessories that are activated in the car.

If the battery level is low, a message is shown in the driver display. The energy-saving function then shuts down certain functions or reduces certain functions such as the ventilation fan and audio system.

1 In which case, charge the starter battery by starting the car and then running it for at least 15 minutes - starter battery charging is more effective during driving than running the engine at idling speed while stationary.

If the battery level continues to be low after the measures have been taken, the car should be checked at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Note

High current take-off may lead to low battery level, which temporarily limits the start/stop function. The engine then starts automatically without the driver lifting his/her foot from the brake pedal.

For cars with manual gearbox, the start/stop function is deactivated without the clutch pedal being depressed if the gear lever is in neutral position. The start/stop function will be available again when there is a sufficient level in the battery.

17.7.3. Using jump starting with another battery

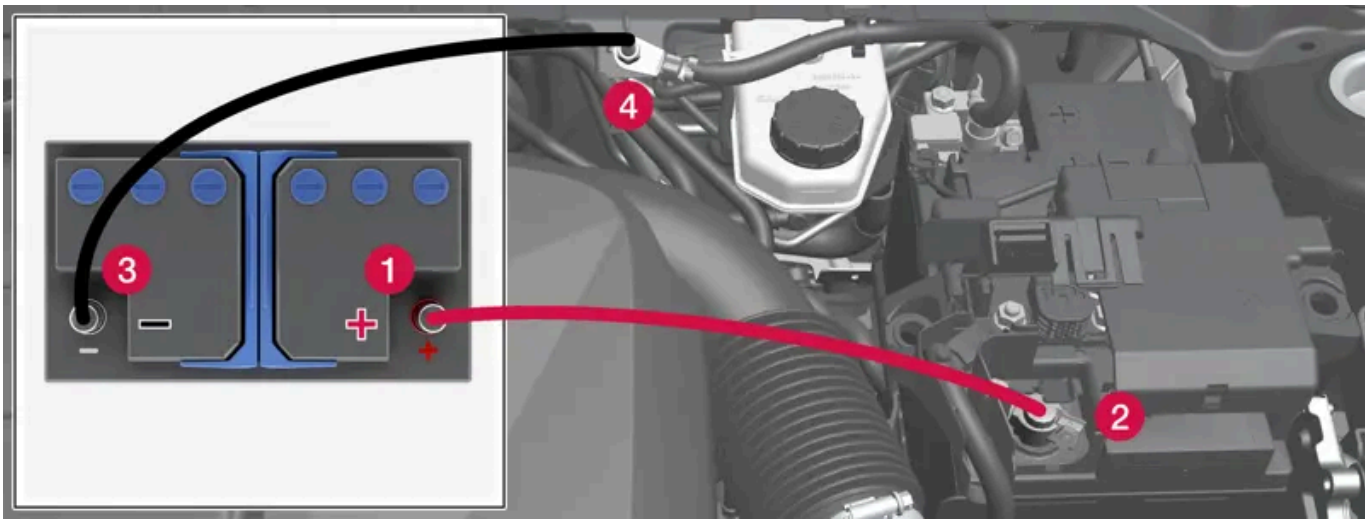
If the starter battery is discharged then the car can be started with current from another battery.

Jump starting requires access to another car's 12V battery as well as jump leads.

Important

The charging points in mild hybrid type cars are designed for only jump starting the car itself. Do not use the charging points of mild hybrids to start other cars – the fuse for the charging circuit may be overloaded so that it stops working.

In mild hybrid[1] type cars, a discharged starter battery may be caused by an overloaded fuse that prevents charging. If a fuse has been triggered, the message **12 V Battery Fuse failure Service required** is shown in the driver display. Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.



Charging points for jump starting own car. The appearance in the engine compartment may vary depending on car model and equipment level.

When jump starting the car, the following steps are recommended to avoid short circuits or other damage:

1. Set the car's electrical system in ignition position 0.
2. Check that the donor battery has a voltage of 12 V.
3. If the battery is installed in another car – switch off its engine and make sure that the cars do not touch each other.
4. Connect one of the red jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's positive terminal (1).

   > **Important**
   >
   > Connect the jump lead carefully to avoid a short circuit and contact with other components in the engine compartment.

5. Open the positive charging point's cover (2).
6. Attach the red jump lead's other clamp onto the car's positive charging point (2).
7. Attach one of the black jump lead's clamps to the donor battery's negative terminal (3).
8. Attach the black jump lead's other clamp onto the car's negative charging point (4).
9. Check that the jump lead clamps are affixed securely so that there are no sparks during the starting attempt.
10. Start the engine of the donor car and allow it to run for a few minutes at a rotation speed higher than normal idle approx. 1500 rpm.
11. Start the engine in the car with the discharged battery.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Important

Do not touch the connections between cable and car during the starting attempt. There is a risk of sparks forming.

12 Remove the jump leads in reverse order - first the black and then the red.

Make sure that none of the black jump lead's clamps comes into contact with the car's positive charging point, the donor battery's positive terminal, or the clamp connected to the red jump lead.

Warning

48 V voltage can be dangerous in the event of incorrect intervention. Do not touch anything on the batteries that is not clearly described in the owner's manual.

- 48 V support battery must never be used for jump starting.
- External electrical equipment must not, under any circumstances, be connected to the 48 V battery.
- The 48 V battery may only be serviced and replaced by a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Warning

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- Do not connect the jump leads to any fuel system component or any moving part. Be careful of hot engine parts.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.
- Never smoke near the battery.

Note

If the starter battery has such a low State Of Charge (SoC) that the car has no normal electrical functions and the engine is then jump-started with an external battery or a battery charger, the Start/stop function may continue to be activated. If the Start/stop function then auto-stops the engine shortly afterwards, there is a great risk that engine auto-start will fail because the battery has not had the time to recharge sufficiently.

If the car has been jump-started, or if there is insufficient time to charge the battery using a battery charger, the Start/stop function will be temporarily deactivated until the battery has been sufficiently recharged by the car. In an outside temperature of approx. +15 °C (approx. 60 °F), the battery needs to be charged for at least 1 hour by the car. In a lower outside temperature, the charging time may increase to 3–4 hours. The recommendation is to charge the battery if possible using an external battery charger.

[1] Cars with engine alternative B3, B4, B5 or B6 are the mild hybrid type.

17.7.4. Batteries and power supply

The car's own power supply is connected to several different batteries and components. These make it possible to use the car's electrical functions.

The car's primary electrical system operates with 12 V voltage and powers electrical equipment.

In addition to the primary electrical system, mild hybrid* type cars are equipped with a 48 V system.

Batteries

In order to supply power to the various components, your car is equipped with the following:

- a 12 V starter battery that powers the car's primary electrical system
- a support battery that helps during the Start/Stop function's starting sequence. The battery is either a 12 V battery or, if the car is the mild hybrid* type, a 48 V battery that also allows regenerative braking while driving.

> **Warning**
>
> 48 V voltage can be dangerous in the event of incorrect intervention. Do not touch anything on the batteries that is not clearly described in the owner's manual.
>
> - 48 V support battery must never be used for jump starting.
> - External electrical equipment must not, under any circumstances, be connected to the 48 V battery.
> - The 48 V battery may only be serviced and replaced by a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

* Option/accessory.

17.7.5. Recycling the batteries

Used batteries must be recycled in an environmentally sound manner.

Consult a workshop in the event of uncertainty about how this type of waste should be disposed of - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended. The 48V battery in mild hybrid[1] type cars must only be handled by authorised workshop personnel.

[1] Cars with engine alternative B3, B4, B5 or B6 are the mild hybrid type.

17.7.6. Symbols on the batteries

There are information and warning symbols on the batteries.

	Use protective goggles.
	Further information in the owner's manual for the car.
	Store the battery out of the reach of children.
	The battery contains corrosive acid.
	Avoid sparks and naked flames.
	Risk of explosion.
	Must be taken for recycling.

17.7.7. Starter battery

The starter battery powers the car's primary electrical system, which includes the electrical equipment and starting the engine. If the car is the mild hybrid* type, the support battery is used instead to start the internal combustion engine.

The starter battery is a 12 V-battery that is dimensioned to power the car model's specific electrical system and functions.

- Never disconnect the starter battery when the engine is running.
- Check that the cables to the starter battery are correctly connected and properly tightened.

> **Important**
>
> On certain models, the battery is attached with a retaining strap. Make sure the retaining strap is properly tightened.

> **Important**
>
> If the battery is replaced, make sure you replace it with a battery with the same size, cold starting capacity and type as the original battery (see the decal on the battery). Volvo recommends that you use an authorised Volvo workshop for replacing the battery.

Warning

If the starter battery is disconnected, the automatic opening and closing function must be reset to work properly. A reset must take place for pinch protection to work.

Warning

- The battery can generate oxyhydrogen gas, which is highly explosive. A spark can be formed if a jump lead is connected incorrectly, and this can be enough for the battery to explode.
- Do not connect the jump leads to any fuel system component or any moving part. Be careful of hot engine parts.
- The battery contains sulphuric acid, which can cause serious burns.
- If sulphuric acid comes into contact with eyes, skin or clothing, flush with large quantities of water. If acid splashes into the eyes - seek medical attention immediately.
- Never smoke near the battery.

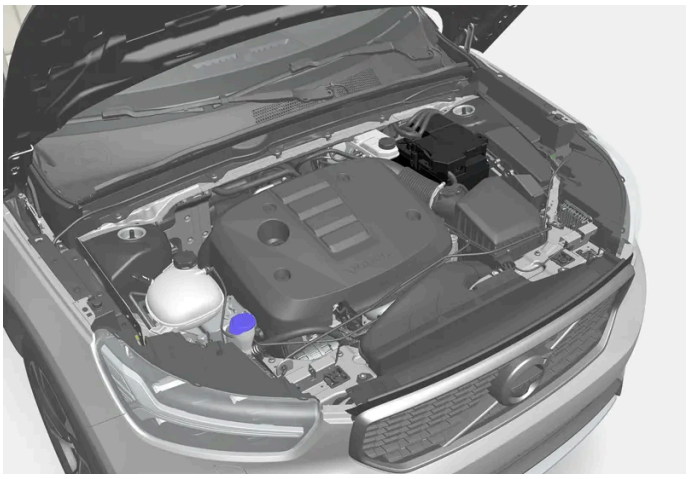
The service life and capacity of the starter battery

The service life of the starter battery is influenced by a number of factors, such as the number of starts, discharges, driving style, driving conditions, and climate conditions. The battery's starting capacity gradually decreases over time. Extreme cold further limits starting capacity.

The battery level may become low if the car if the car is not used for any length of time or if it only travels short distances.

To keep the starter battery in good condition, at least 15 minutes of driving a week is recommended, or connecting the battery to a battery charger with automatic trickle charging. A starter battery that is kept fully charged has a maximum service life.

Location



The starter battery is located in the engine compartment.

Specifications for starter battery

Battery type	H6 EFB[1]	H6 EFB[1]
Voltage (V)	12	12

Battery type	H6 EFB[1]	H6 EFB[1]
Cold start capacity[2] - CCA[3] (A)	680	720
Size, L×B×H	278×175×190 mm (10.9×6.9×7.5 inches)	278×175×190 mm (10.9×6.9×7.5 inches)
Capacity (Ah)	70	70

* Option/accessory.

[1] Available on certain markets.

[2] According to EN standard.

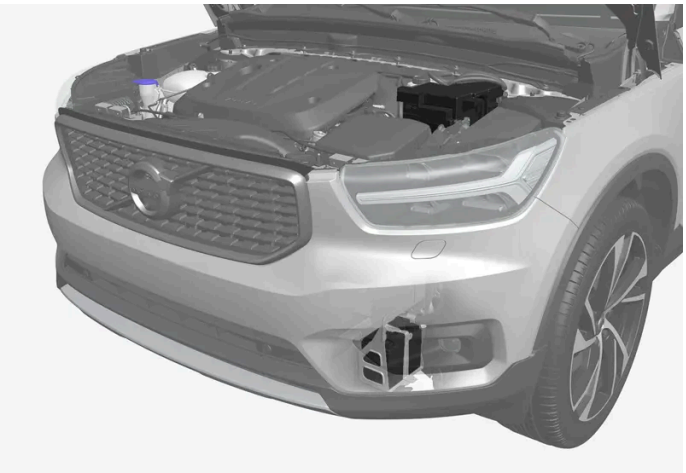
[3] Cold Cranking Amperes.

17.7.8. Support battery

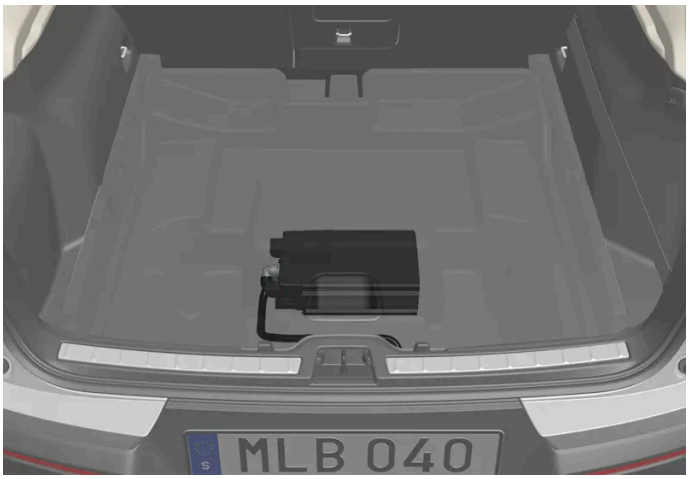
The car is equipped with a support battery that helps during the start/stop function's starting sequence.

The battery is either a 12 V battery or, if the car is the mild hybrid* type, a 48 V battery that also allows regenerative braking while driving.

Location



12 V support battery is located down in the engine compartment. The starter battery is also shown here (top).



If the car is the mild hybrid type, it will have a 48 V support battery instead, located on the left-hand side of the cargo area. The battery must only be handled by an authorised workshop.

Support battery maintenance

The support battery normally requires no more service than the normal 12 V battery (starter battery). A workshop should be contacted in the event of questions or problems - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

> **Important**
>
> If the 12 V battery is replaced, make sure you replace it with a battery with the same size, cold starting capacity and type as the original battery. Volvo recommends that you use an authorised Volvo workshop for replacing the battery.

> **Warning**
>
> 48 V voltage can be dangerous in the event of incorrect intervention. Do not touch anything on the batteries that is not clearly described in the owner's manual.
>
> - 48 V support battery must never be used for jump starting.
> - External electrical equipment must not, under any circumstances, be connected to the 48 V battery.
> - The 48 V battery may only be serviced and replaced by a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

Specifications for support battery

Battery type	AGM
Voltage (V)	12
Cold start capacity[1] - CCA[2] (A)	170
Size, L×B×H	150×90×130 mm (5.9×3.5×5.1 inches)
Capacity (Ah)	10

If the car is the mild hybrid* type, it will be equipped with a lithium-ion type 48 V battery instead.

* Option/accessory.

[1] According to EN standard.

[2] Cold Cranking Amperes.

17.8. Service

17.8.1. Servicing the climate control system

The air conditioning system must only be serviced and repaired by an authorised workshop.

Troubleshooting and repair

The air conditioning system contains fluorescent tracing agents. Ultraviolet light is used for leak detection.

Volvo recommends that an authorised Volvo workshop is contacted.

The car's climate control system uses a freon-free refrigerant, either R1234yf or R134a depending on market. Information about which refrigerant the car's climate control system uses is printed on a decal located on the inside of the bonnet.

Warning

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. Service and repair of the system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians.

Warning

The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R1234yf. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repair of the refrigerant system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

17.8.2. Volvo service programme

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service programme as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

Volvo recommends engaging an authorised Volvo workshop to perform the service and maintenance work. Volvo workshops have the personnel, special tools and service literature that can provide the highest quality of service.

Important

For the Volvo warranty to apply, check and follow the instructions in the Service and Warranty Booklet.

17.9. Car status

17.9.1. Car status

Information on the general status of the car can be shown in the centre display.

Car Status is opened in the centre display's app view. This shows the following tabs:

- **Messages** - status messages
- **Status** - checking engine oil level and AdBlue level[1]
- **TPMS** - checking the tyre pressure
- **Appointments** – car information[2]

[1] AdBlue Applies to cars with diesel engines.

[2] Applies to certain markets.

17.9.2. Sending car information to a workshop

It is possible to send vehicle information from the car[1] at any time, e.g. if you book a workshop appointment and want to help your workshop by providing them with better data so that your visit can be planned. Sending car information is not the same as booking a service appointment.

1. Open the **Car Status** app from the app view in the centre display.
2. Press **Appointments**.
3. Press **Send car data**.

> A message that vehicle data are being sent is shown at the top of the centre display. You can cancel data transmission by tapping the X in the activity indicator.
> The information is sent via the car's Internet connection[2].

This car information can be accessed by any retailer if they have the car's identification number (VIN[3]).

Car information content

The data sent is the last information saved (the last time the car was running) and includes information in the following areas:

- service requirement
- time since last service
- function status
- fluid levels
- meter reading
- the car's vehicle identification number (VIN[3])
- the car's software version
- the car's diagnostics data.

[1] Applies to certain markets.

[2] Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.

[3] Vehicle Identification Number.

17.10. Download Center

17.10.1. Download Center

Use the Download Centre app in the car's centre display to handle software[1] such as apps and maps.

Download Centre is started from the app view in the centre display and enables:

- searching for and updating specific software
- updating map data for Sensus Navigation*
- downloading, updating and uninstalling apps.

[1] Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.

* Option/accessory.

17.10.2. Updating software via Download Centre

Some software, e.g. apps and maps, can be updated via Download Centre if the car is connected to the internet[1].

The message **New software updates available See Download Center** is shown in the centre display's status bar when a new software update is available.

Search for updates

1 Go to **Download Centre** in the centre display's app view.

> A search is started. If a new search has already been made since start-up, the system needs to be restarted before a new search can be made. If an installation is already in progress, no search is made.
Select software area to view which updates are available.

Starting an update

1 Select one of the installation options in the Download Centre's list of available updates.

> Download of selected software starts.
The update can be cancelled during the download phase by pressing the cross next to the selected software. When the download is finished and the installation has started, it is no longer possible to cancel the update.

Note

The speed of other online services may be affected during the download. You can cancel the download and restart it later, or prioritise the update by switching off other online services, such as Internet radio.

Note

If you switch off the ignition and leave the car, the update resumes next time you use the car.

[1] Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.

17.10.3. Tips in the event of problems with updates via the Download Centre

When the car is connected to the Internet[1] it is possible to update several of the car's systems directly from the centre display. Here are some frequently asked questions and answers.

No connection to the service

If the **No connection to service** message is shown then this means that the connection to the service is not working. There may be several reasons as to why the connection is not working. A number of possible causes and solutions are listed below.

Your car has no Internet connection

Make sure your car is connected to the Internet by means of one of the following options:

- Wi-Fi
- Bluetooth-connected phone
- Car modem (P-SIM)

Then restart the app by going back to home view, then press **Download Centre**.

The Internet connection is working, but the remote updates service is not available at the moment

Restart the app by going back to home view, then press **Download Centre**. A new search is then started and the enquiry is sent to the remote updates function. If the error message is displayed repeatedly for more than 12 hours, the service may be temporarily out of action or down for maintenance. If the fault persists for more than 48 hours, contact your Volvo dealer or Volvo Cars Customer Service for more assistance.

The service has been inactive for 12 months

If the **Download Centre** service has not been used for 12 months, it will take longer to start the next time you use the service (approximately 60 seconds). The remote updates service will start more quickly the next time you start it, as long as the service has been used within 12 months.

The car loses its Internet connection while updating

If the car loses its Internet connection while an update is in progress, check the Internet connection and then restart the function.

If an update or download in progress stops responding despite restarting the car

If you experience that an update or download in progress stops responding despite having restarted the car, please visit a workshop[2] to have this rectified.

Too many apps installed

The space for apps is a maximum of 10 GB. If the space is full it is not possible to perform updates from the car. It may be full if you store a lot of music offline, for example. Free up memory by deleting an app or stored offline music, for example.

If the infotainment system restarts by itself during an ongoing installation/update

If the car's infotainment system restarts by itself during an ongoing installation of an app or a system update, try to reinstall the app or system update. If you find that this doesn't help, visit a workshop[2] for further assistance.

If a map update stops in the message Leave car with engine off to finalise

If you have completed a map update and get the message **Leave car with engine off to finalise** and the message does not disappear after a restart, visit a workshop[2] for further assistance. If possible, wait 14 days and the message will disappear by itself.

More help

If you have not received answers to your questions and need more help, contact your Volvo dealer or Volvo Cars Customer Service.

> **Note**
>
> An update may be interrupted when the ignition is switched off and the car left. However, the update does not need to be completed before the car is left as the update will be resumed the next time the car is used.

> **Note**
>
> Data downloading can affect other services such as transfer data, e.g. web radio. If the effect on other services is experienced as problematic, the download can be interrupted. Alternatively, it may be appropriate to switch off or cancel other services.

[1] Data is transferred (data traffic) when using the Internet, and this may involve a cost.

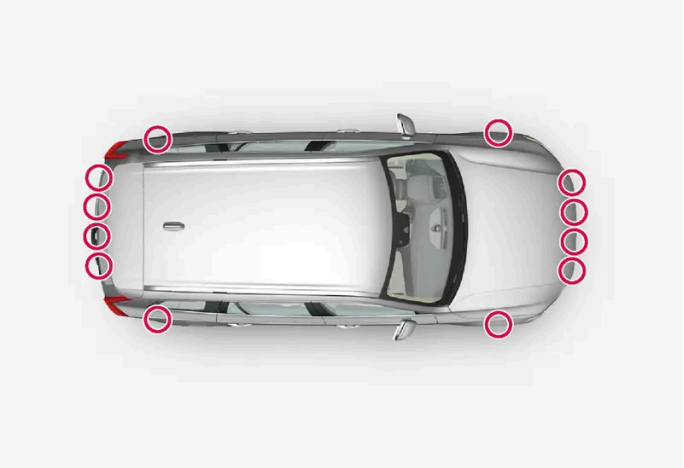
[2] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

17.11. Recommended maintenance for camera and radar units

In order that the camera and radar units shall function correctly, they must be kept clear of dirt, ice and snow, and be cleaned regularly with water and car shampoo.

> **Note**
>
> Dirt, ice and snow covering the sensors may cause incorrect warning signals, reduced or no function.

The following illustrations mark out the surfaces to be kept clean – on both the left and right-hand sides of the car.



Location of the parking sensors around the car

Location of front camera and radar unit

Location of rear radar units

- To ensure best possible functionality, the surfaces in front of the sensors must be kept clean.
- Do not affix any objects, tape or labels in the area of the sensors.
- Clean camera lenses regularly with lukewarm water and car shampoo - be careful not to scratch the lenses.

> **Important**
>
> Maintenance of driver support components must only be performed at a workshop – an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

17.12. Brake system maintenance

Check brake system components regularly for wear.

To keep the car as safe and reliable as possible, follow the Volvo service intervals as specified in the Service and Warranty Booklet. After replacing brake linings and brake discs, braking effect is only adapted after they have been "worn in" for a few hundred kilometres (miles). Compensate for the reduced braking effect by depressing the brake pedal harder. Volvo recommends only fitting brake linings that are approved for your Volvo.

> **Important**
>
> The wear on the brake system's components must be checked regularly.
>
> Contact a workshop for information about the procedure or engage a workshop to carry out the inspection - an authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

17.13. Operational disruption

If you experience an operational disruption or deviation from the car's normal function then it may be due to a fault or the specific circumstances of the situation.

Some functions have limitations in particular situations and require that certain conditions are fulfilled in order to work. The driver display and centre display may show messages in order to inform about such a situation.

Find out more about fault-tracing and the limitations of various functions in related articles below.

If the car is not drivable

Activate the hazard warning flashers if the car has broken down or been forced to stop unexpectedly in a trafficked environment. Think about safety and, if possible, move the car out of danger from traffic. Put on a reflective vest and then position the warning triangle so that other road users are warned in good time. Call roadside assistance if the cause cannot be remedied at your location.

17.14. Data transfer between car and workshop via Wi-Fi

Volvo's workshops have a specific Wi-Fi network for data transfer between the car and the workshop. The car is connected using the key's buttons, so it is important to take along a key with buttons in the event of a workshop visit.

During a workshop visit, your service technician can perform fault-tracing and update software via the network.

Connection with a key

Press three times on the lock button on the key to connect the car to the workshop's network. Connection is normally handled by the service technician.

When the car is connected to a Wi-Fi network, the symbol appears in the centre display.

It is not possible to use the key to connect to other Wi-Fi networks.

> **Warning**
>
> The car must not be driven when connected to the workshop's networks and systems.

17.15. Raise the car

It is important to use the marked lifting points on the car's chassis when using a jack to raise the car.

Arrows along the bottom edge of the side of the car mark where the jacking points/lifting points (marked in red) are located.

Note

Volvo recommends only using the jack that belongs to the car model in question. If a jack is selected other than the one recommended by Volvo, follow the instructions supplied with the equipment.

The normal car jack is only designed for occasional, short-term use, such as when changing a wheel after a puncture. If the car is to be jacked up more often, or for a longer time than is required just to change a wheel, use of a garage jack is recommended. In this instance, follow the instructions for use that come with the equipment.

Warning

- Apply the parking brake and set the gear selector in Park position (P).
- Chock the wheels standing on the ground using solid wood blocks or large stones.
- Check that the jack is not damaged, that the threads are thoroughly lubricated and that it is free from dirt.
- Check that the jack is resting on a firm, level surface that is not slippery and is not slanted.
- The jack must be correctly attached in the jack's bracket.
- Never position anything between the ground and the jack, or between the jack and the car's jacking point.
- Passengers must leave the car when it is raised on the jack.
- If a wheel must be changed in a trafficked environment, passengers must stand in a safe place.
- Use a jack designed for the car when changing tyres. Use supports to secure the car for all other work.
- Never crawl underneath the car and do not extend any part of your body under the car when it is raised by a jack.

Warning

If the car is raised using a workshop jack, this must be placed beneath one of the four jacking points. Take care to position the workshop jack so that the car cannot slip off. Make sure that the jack plate is fitted with a rubber guard so that the car remains stable and is not damaged. Always use axle stands or similar.

When not in use, the jack* should be stored in its stowage space under the cargo area floor.

Read through all instructions before beginning. Take out the tools needed before jacking up the car.

1. Set up the warning triangle and activate the hazard warning lights if, for example, a tyre is being changed in a trafficked location.
2. Apply the parking brake and engage gear position P, or engage first gear if the car has a manual gearbox.
3. Chock in front of and behind the wheels that remain on the ground. Use, for example, heavy wooden blocks or large stones.
4. Position the jack or the lift arms at the designated spots of the car's undercarriage. Arrows along the bottom edge of the side of the car mark where the jacking points/lifting points are located. There are two jacking points on each side of the car. There is a recess for the jack at each point.

5. Position the jack on level, firm and non-slippery ground under the jacking point that will be used.
6. Crank up until it is correctly aligned and so that it makes contact with the car's jacking point. Check that the head of the jack (or lifting arms at a workshop) is correctly positioned in the jacking point so that the bump in the centre of the head fits into the jacking point hole, and check that the base of the jack is positioned vertically below the jacking point.
7. Turn the jack so that the crank is as far away from the side of the car as possible, at which point the jack's arms are perpendicular to the direction of the car.
8. Raise the car high enough to perform the intended measure.

* Option/accessory.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

18. Specifications

18.1. Dimensions and weights

18.1.1. Towing capacity and towball load

Towing capacity and towball load for driving with a trailer can be read in the tables.

Max. weight braked trailer

> **Note**
>
> Use of vibration dampers on the towbar is recommended for trailers heavier than 1800 kg.

Engine	Engine code[1]	Gearbox	Max. weight braked trailer (kg)	Max. towball load (kg)
T2	B3154T9	Manual select	1600	110
T2	B3154T9	Automatic	1600	110
T3	B3154T7	Manual select	1600	110
T3	B3154T2	Automatic	1600	110
T3	B3154T4	Automatic	1600	110
T4	B4204T31	Automatic	1800	110
T4 AWD	B4204T31	Automatic	2100	110
T5 AWD	B4204T18	Automatic	2100	110
T5 AWD	B4204T36	Automatic	2100	110
B3	B420T4	Automatic	1600	100
B4	B420T5	Automatic	2000	100
B4	B420T6	Automatic	2100	110
B4 AWD	B420T5	Automatic	2100	100
B4 AWD	B420T6	Automatic	2100	110
B5 AWD	B420T2	Automatic	2100	110
B5 AWD	B420T10	Automatic	2100	110

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Important

When driving with a trailer, it is permitted to exceed the vehicle's gross vehicle weight (including towball load) by a maximum of 100 kg (220 lbs), provided that speed is limited to 100 km/h (62 mph). National legal requirements for the vehicle combination, such as speed, etc. must be observed.

Note

If there is no weight data in the table, this is available in an enclosed supplement.

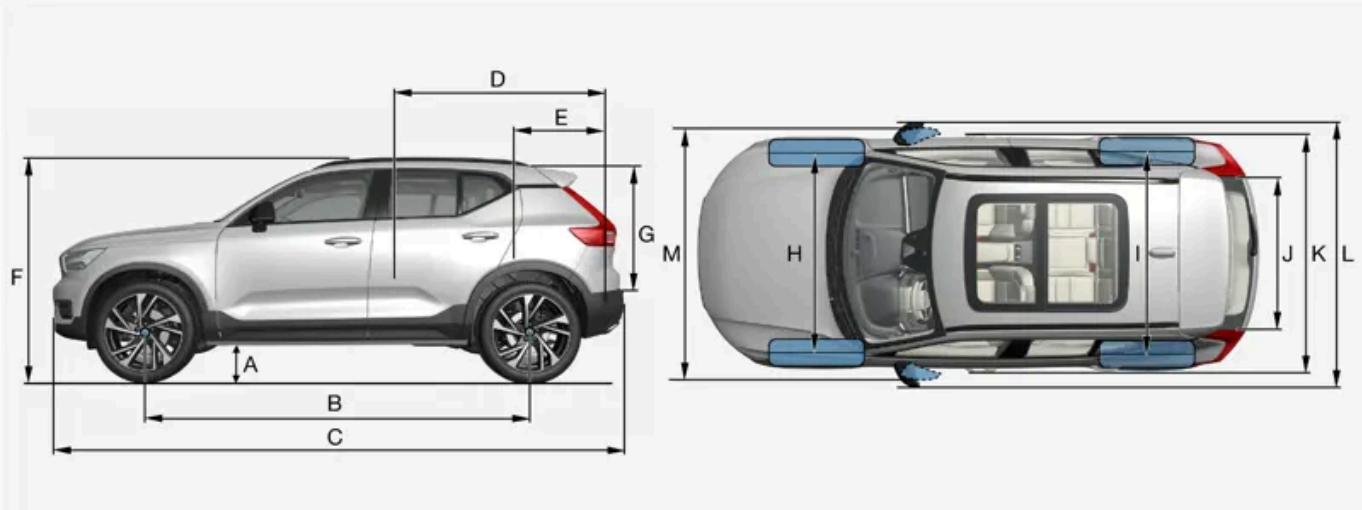
Max. weight unbraked trailer

Unbraked trailer	
Max. weight (kg)	750
Max. towball load (kg)	50

[1] The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

18.1.2. Dimensions

Measurement of car length, height, etc. can be read in the table.



	Dimensions	mm	inches
A	Ground clearance [1]	205	8.1
B	Wheelbase	2702	106.4
C	Length	4425	174.2
D	Load length, floor, folded seat	1670	65.7

	Dimensions	mm	inches
E	Load length, floor	887	34.9
F	Height[2]	1658	65,3
G	Load height	733	28.9
H	Front track	1601	63.0
I	Rear track	1626	64.0
J	Load width, floor	1059	41.7
K	Width	1873 (1863[3])	73,7 (73,3[3])
L	Width including folded-out door mirrors	2034	80,1
M	Width including folded-in door mirrors	1910	75.2

[1] At kerb weight + 1 person. (Varies slightly depending on tyre dimension, chassis option, etc.)

[2] Including roof antenna, for kerb weight.

[3] Body width.

18.1.3. Weights

Max. gross vehicle weight, etc. can be read on a label in the car.

Kerb weight includes the driver, the fuel tank 90% full, plus and all oils and fluids.

The weight of passengers and accessories, and towball load (when a trailer is hitched) influence the load capacity and are not included in the kerb weight.

Permitted max. load = Gross vehicle weight - Kerb weight.

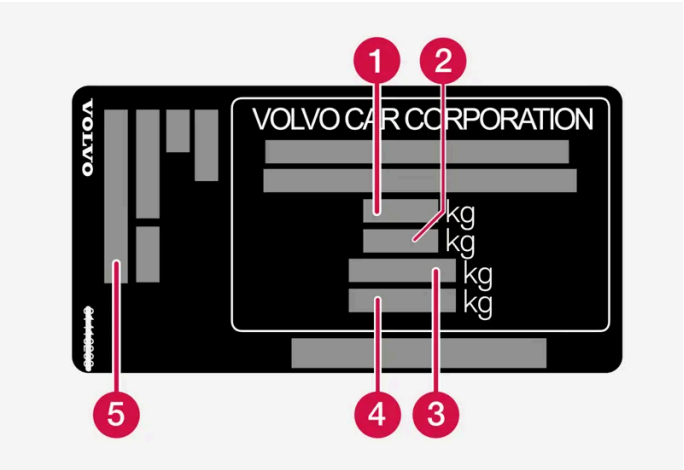
Note

The documented kerb weight applies to cars in the standard version - i.e. a car without extra equipment or accessories. This means that for every accessory added the loading capacity of the car is reduced correspondingly by the weight of the accessory.

Examples of accessories that reduce load capacity are the different equipment levels, as well as other accessories such as tow bar, load carrier, roof box, audio system, auxiliary lamps, GPS, fuel-driven heater, safety grille, carpets, cargo cover, power seats, etc.

Weighing the car is a certain way of ascertaining the kerb weight of your own particular car.

> **Warning**
>
> The car's driving characteristics change depending on how heavily it is loaded and how the load is distributed.



The decal is positioned on the door pillar, and will be visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.

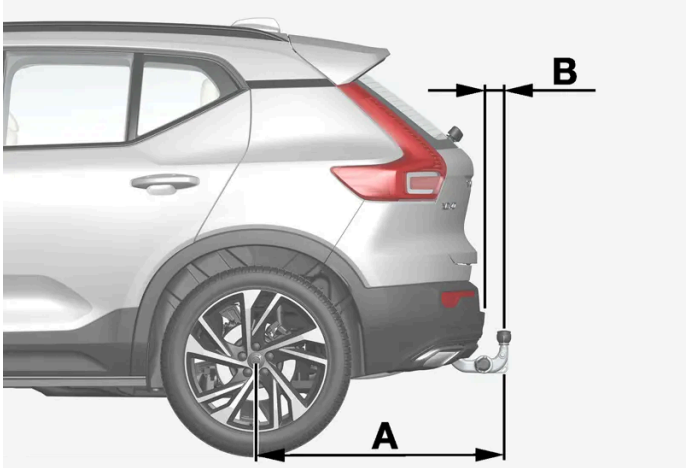
1. Max. gross vehicle weight
2. Max. train weight (car+trailer)
3. Max. front axle load
4. Max. rear axle load
5. Equipment level

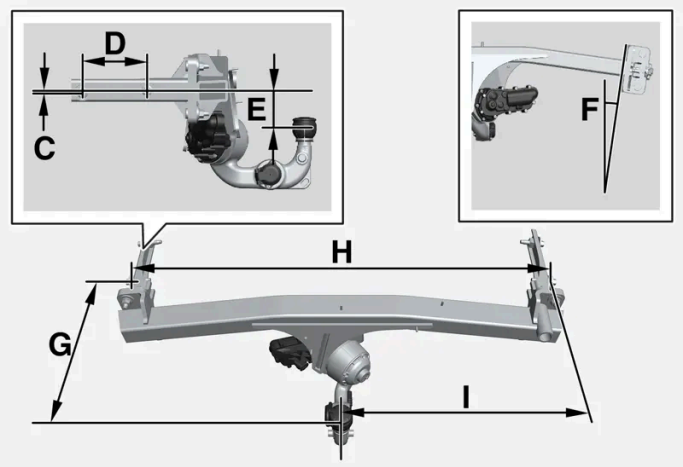
Max. load: See registration document.

Max. roof load: 75 kg.

18.1.4. Specifications for towbar*

Dimensions and mounting points for towbar.





Dimensions, mounting points in mm (inches)	
A	939 (37)
B	72 (2.8)
C	6 (0.24)
D	145 (5.7)
E	88 (3.5)
F	Side beam tilts 8 degrees
G	353 (13.9)
H	1048 (41.3)
I	524 (20.6)

* Option/accessory.

18.2. Specifications for engine

18.2.1. Engine specifications

Engine specifications (power, etc.) for each respective engine alternative can be found in the table below.

> **Note**
>
> Not all engines are available in all markets.

> **Note**
>
> If there is no engine data in the table, this is available in an enclosed supplement.

Engine	Engine code[1]	Output (kW/rpm)	Output (hp/rpm)	Max. rated power (kW/rpm)	Max. rated power (hp/rpm)	Torque (Nm/rpm)	No. of cylinders
T2	B3154T9	95/5000	129/5000	–	–	245/1600–3000	3
T3	B3154T4	110/5500	150/5500	–	–	265/1500–3000	3
T3	B3154T7	120/5500	163/5500	–	–	265/1850–3000	3
T3	B3154T2	120/5500	163/5500	133/5500	181/5500	265/1500–3000	3
T4 / T4 AWD	B4204T31	140/5000	190/5000	–	–	300/1700–4000	4
T4 AWD	B4204T51	140/4700	190/4700	156/4700	211/4700	300/1400-4000	4
T5 AWD	B4204T36	183/5500	249/5500	–	–	350/1800-4500	4
T5 AWD	B4204T18	185/5500	252/5500	–	–	350/1800-4800	4
B3	B420T4	120/4750–5250	163/4750–5250	–	–	265/1500–4000	4
B4 / B4 AWD	B420T6	145/4800–5400	197/4800–5400	–	–	300/1500–4200	4
B4 / B4 AWD	B420T5	145/4750–5250	197/4750–5250	–	–	300/1500–4500	4
B5 AWD	B420T10	183/5400–5700	249/5400–5700	–	–	350/1800-4800	4
B5 AWD	B420T2	184/5400–5700	250/5400–5700	–	–	350/1800-4800	4

[1] The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

18.2.2. Adverse driving conditions for engine oil

Adverse driving conditions can lead to abnormally high oil temperature or oil consumption. Below are some examples of adverse driving conditions.

Check the oil level more frequently for long journeys:

- towing a caravan or trailer

- in mountainous regions
- at high speeds
- in temperatures colder than -30 °C (-22 °F) or hotter than +40 °C (+104 °F).

The above also apply to shorter driving distances at low temperatures.

Choose a fully synthetic engine oil for adverse driving conditions. It provides extra protection for the engine.

Volvo recommends:

Important

In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.

An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise there is a risk of the service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact of the car being affected.

If engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used, engine related components may become damaged. Volvo disclaims any liability for any such damage.

Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

18.2.3. Engine oil – specifications

Engine oil grade and volume for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

Volvo recommends:

Engine	Engine code[1]	Volume, incl. oil filter (litres, approx.)	Oil grade
T2	B3154T9	5,6	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20
T3	B3154T4	5,6	
T3	B3154T7	5,6	
T3	B3154T2	5,6	

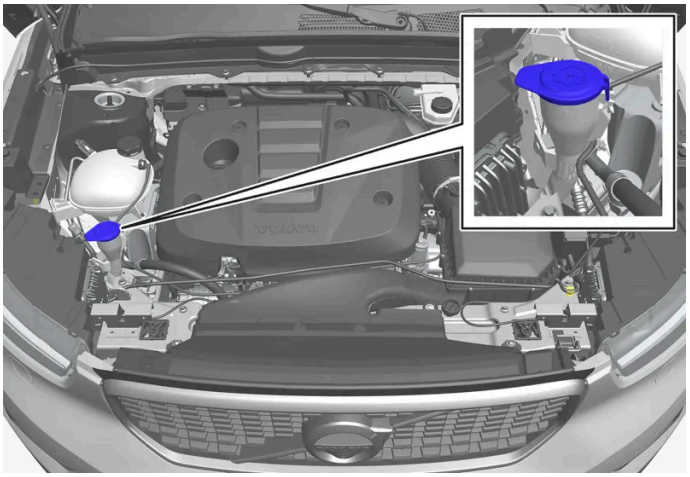
Engine	Engine code[1]	Volume, incl. oil filter (litres, approx.)	Oil grade
T4 / T4 AWD	B4204T31	5,6	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20
T4 AWD	B4204T51	5,6	
T5 AWD	B4204T36	5,6	
T5 AWD	B4204T18	5,6	
B3	B420T4	6.1	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20
B4 / B4 AWD	B420T5	6.1	
B4 / B4 AWD	B420T6	6.1	
B5 AWD	B420T2	6.1	
B5 AWD	B420T10	6.1	

[1] The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

18.3. Specifications for fluids and lubricants

18.3.1. Topping up washer fluid

Washer fluid is used for cleaning the headlamps as well as the windscreen and rear window. Washer fluid with antifreeze must be used when the temperature is under the freezing point.



Washer fluid is filled into the reservoir with the blue cap. The reservoir is used for windscreen washer, rear window washer and headlamp washers*.

Note

When approx. 1 litre (1 qt) of washer fluid remains in the reservoir, the message **Washer fluid Level low, refill** is shown in the driver display, together with the symbol.

Prescribed grade: Washer fluid recommended by Volvo – with frost protection during cold weather and for temperatures below freezing point.

Important

Use Volvo genuine washer fluid or equivalent with a recommended pH of between 6 and 8, in working dilution (e.g. 1:1 with neutral water).

Important

Use washer fluid with antifreeze when the temperature is below freezing to avoid the fluid freezing inside the pump, reservoir and hoses.

Volume:

- Cars **with** headlamp washing: 5.5 litres (5.8 qts).
- Cars **without** headlamp washing: 3.5 litres (3.7 qts).

* Option/accessory.

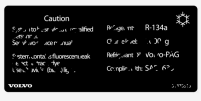
18.3.2. Air conditioning – specifications

The car's climate control system uses a freon-free refrigerant, either R1234yf or R134a, depending on market. Information about which refrigerant the car's climate control system uses is printed on a decal located on the underside of the bonnet.

Refrigerant and compressor oil are used in the air conditioning system. Information is shown below about the label for refrigerant quantity, and the table below shows the prescribed quality and volume for compressor oil.

A/C decal

Decal for R134a



Decal for R1234yf

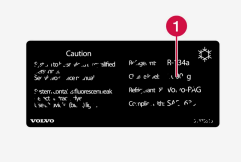
Symbol explanation R1234yf

Symbol	Meaning
	Caution
	Mobile air conditioning system (MAC)
	Lubricant type
	A trained and certified technician is required in order to service the mobile air conditioning system (MAC)
	Flammable refrigerants

Refrigerant

Refrigerant amount is printed on the decal located on the underside of the bonnet.

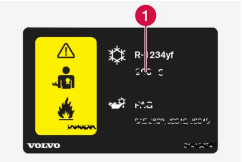
Cars with R134a refrigerant



1 Refrigerant amount.

> **Warning**
>
> The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R134a. Service and repair of the system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians.

Cars with R1234yf refrigerant



1 Refrigerant amount.

> **Warning**
>
> The air conditioning system contains pressurised refrigerant R1234yf. In accordance with SAE J2845 (Technician Training for Safe Service and Containment of Refrigerants Used in Mobile A/C System), service and repair of the refrigerant system must only be performed by trained and certified technicians in order to ensure the safety of the system.

Compressor oil

Volume	Prescribed grade
130 ml (4.40 fl. oz.)	PAG SP-A2

Evaporator[1]

> **Important**
>
> The A/C system's evaporator must never be repaired or replaced with a previously used evaporator. A new evaporator must be certified and labelled in accordance with SAE J2842.

[1] Only applies to cars with R1234yf refrigerant

18.3.3. Brake fluid – specifications

Brake fluid is the medium in a hydraulic brake system that is used to transfer pressure from e.g. a brake pedal via a master brake cylinder, which in turn acts on the brake callipers.

Prescribed grade: Volvo Original or equivalent fluid compliant with a combination of Dot 4, 5.1 and ISO 4925 class 6.

> **Note**
>
> It is recommended that brake fluid is changed or filled by an authorised Volvo workshop.

18.3.4. Transmission fluid – specifications

For cars equipped with the seven-speed dual clutch transmission 7-DCT, the transmission fluid needs to be changed, the change interval is 60 000 km. For other transmissions (six and eight-speed), and in normal driving conditions, the transmission fluid does not need to be changed throughout the service life of transmission. However, it may be necessary in adverse driving conditions.

Manual gearbox

Variant	Number of gears	Prescribed transmission fluid
M76	6	BOT 352 B1

Automatic gearbox

Variant	Number of gears	Prescribed transmission fluid
7-DCT	7	Dual clutch oil, D1
AWF8G30 AWF8G45	8	AW-2
TG-81SC	8	AW-1

> **Note**
>
> Check with your Volvo dealer if you are not sure which variant your car is equipped with.

18.3.5. Fuel tank - volume

The fuel tank's filling capacity can be read in the table below.

	All engines
Litres (approx)	54
US gallons (approx)	14.2

18.3.6. Adverse driving conditions for engine oil

Adverse driving conditions can lead to abnormally high oil temperature or oil consumption. Below are some examples of adverse driving conditions.

Check the oil level more frequently for long journeys:

- towing a caravan or trailer
- in mountainous regions
- at high speeds
- in temperatures colder than -30 °C (-22 °F) or hotter than +40 °C (+104 °F).

The above also apply to shorter driving distances at low temperatures.

Choose a fully synthetic engine oil for adverse driving conditions. It provides extra protection for the engine.

Volvo recommends:

> **Important**
>
> In order to fulfil the requirements for the engine's service intervals all engines are filled with a specially adapted synthetic engine oil at the factory. The choice of oil has been made very carefully with regard to service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact.
>
> An approved engine oil must be used in order that the recommended service intervals can be applied. Only use a prescribed grade of oil for both filling and oil change, otherwise there is a risk of the service life, starting characteristics, fuel consumption and environmental impact of the car being affected.
>
> If engine oil of the prescribed grade and viscosity is not used, engine related components may become damaged. Volvo disclaims any liability for any such damage.
>
> Volvo recommends that oil changes are carried out at an authorised Volvo workshop.

18.3.7. Engine oil – specifications

Engine oil grade and volume for each respective engine alternative can be read in the table.

Volvo recommends:

Engine	Engine code[1]	Volume, incl. oil filter (litres, approx.)	Oil grade
T2	B3154T9	5,6	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20
T3	B3154T4	5,6	
T3	B3154T7	5,6	
T3	B3154T2	5,6	
T4 / T4 AWD	B4204T31	5,6	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20
T4 AWD	B4204T51	5,6	
T5 AWD	B4204T36	5,6	
T5 AWD	B4204T18	5,6	

Engine	Engine code[1]	Volume, incl. oil filter (litres, approx.)	Oil grade
B3	B420T4	6.1	Castrol Edge Professional V 0W-20 or VCC RBS0-2AE 0W-20
B4 / B4 AWD	B420T5	6.1	
B4 / B4 AWD	B420T6	6.1	
B5 AWD	B420T2	6.1	
B5 AWD	B420T10	6.1	

[1] The engine code, component number and serial number can be found on the engine.

18.4. Specifications for wheels and tyres

18.4.1. Approved tyre pressures

Approved tyre pressures for each engine alternative can be found in the table.

> **Note**
>
> All engines, tyres or combinations of these are not always available in all markets.

Engine	Tyre size	Speed	Load, 1-3 persons		Max. load		ECO pressure[1]
			Front kPa (psi)[2]	Rear kPa (psi)	Front kPa (psi)	Rear kPa (psi)	Front/rear kPa (psi)
All engines	235/60 R17 235/55 R18 235/50 R19 245/45 R20 245/40 R21	0-180 km/h(0-112 mph)	230 (33)	230 (33)	260 (38)	260 (38)	260 (38)
	Temporary Spare Tyre	max 80 km/h(max 50 mph)	420 (60)	420 (60)	420 (60)	420 (60)	–

[1] Economical driving.

[2] In certain countries the "bar" unit is used alongside the SI unit "Pascal": 1 bar = 100 kPa.

18.4.2. Approved wheel and tyre sizes

In certain countries not all approved sizes are indicated by the registration document or other documents. The following table shows all approved combinations of wheel rims and tyres.

✓ = Approved

Engine	man/ aut	235/60R17 7,5x17x50,5	235/55R18[1] 7,5x18x50,5	235/50R19 7,5x19x50,5	245/45R20 8x20x50.5	245/40R21 8x21x50.5
T2(B3154T9)	man	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T2(B3154T9)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T3(B3154T7)	man	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T3(B3154T2)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T3(B3154T4)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T4(B4204T47)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T4(B4204T31)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T4 AWD(B4204T47)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T4 AWD(B4204T31)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T4 AWD(B4204T51)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T5 AWD(B4204T18)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
T5 AWD(B4204T36)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
B3(B420T4)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
B4(B420T6)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
B4(B420T5)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
B4 AWD(B420T6)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
B4 AWD(B420T5)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
B5 AWD(B420T2)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓
B5 AWD(B420T10)	aut	✓	✓	✓	✓	✓

[1] 235/55 R18 on cars equipped with 18" brakes is only possible when using approved wheel rims. Check with your Volvo dealer how your car is equipped.

18.4.3. Minimum permitted tyre load index and speed rating for tyres

The table below shows minimum permitted load index (LI) and speed rating (SS) for tyres.

Engine	man/ aut	Minimum permitted load index (LI)[1]	Minimum permitted speed rating (SS)[2]
T2(B3154T9)	man	96	H
T2(B3154T9)	aut	96	H
T3(B3154T7)	man	96	H
T3(B3154T2)	aut	96	H
T3(B3154T4)	aut	96	H
T4(B4204T47)	aut	96	H

Engine	man/ aut	Minimum permitted load index (LI)[1]	Minimum permitted speed rating (SS)[2]
T4(B4204T31)	aut	96	H
T4 AWD(B4204T47)	aut	96	H
T4 AWD(B4204T31)	aut	96	H
T4 AWD(B4204T51)	aut	96	H
T5 AWD(B4204T18)	aut	96	H
T5 AWD(B4204T36)	aut	96	H
B3(B420T4)	aut	96	H
B4(B420T6)	aut	96	H
B4(B420T5)	aut	96	H
B4 AWD(B420T6)	aut	96	H
B4 AWD(B420T5)	aut	96	H
B5 AWD(B420T2)	aut	96	H
B5 AWD(B420T10)	aut	96	H

[1] The tyre's load index must be at least equal to or greater than indicated in the table.

[2] The tyre's speed rating must be at least equal to or greater than indicated in the table.

18.5. Bulb specifications

Specifications for replaceable bulbs.
Contact a workshop[1] if faults occur in lamps other than bulbs. If a fault occurs in LED[2] lamps, the entire lamp unit usually must be replaced.

Function	W[3]	Type
Rear direction indicators	24	PY24W
Brake lights	21	H21W LL
Rear fog lamp	21	H21W LL

[1] An authorised Volvo workshop is recommended.

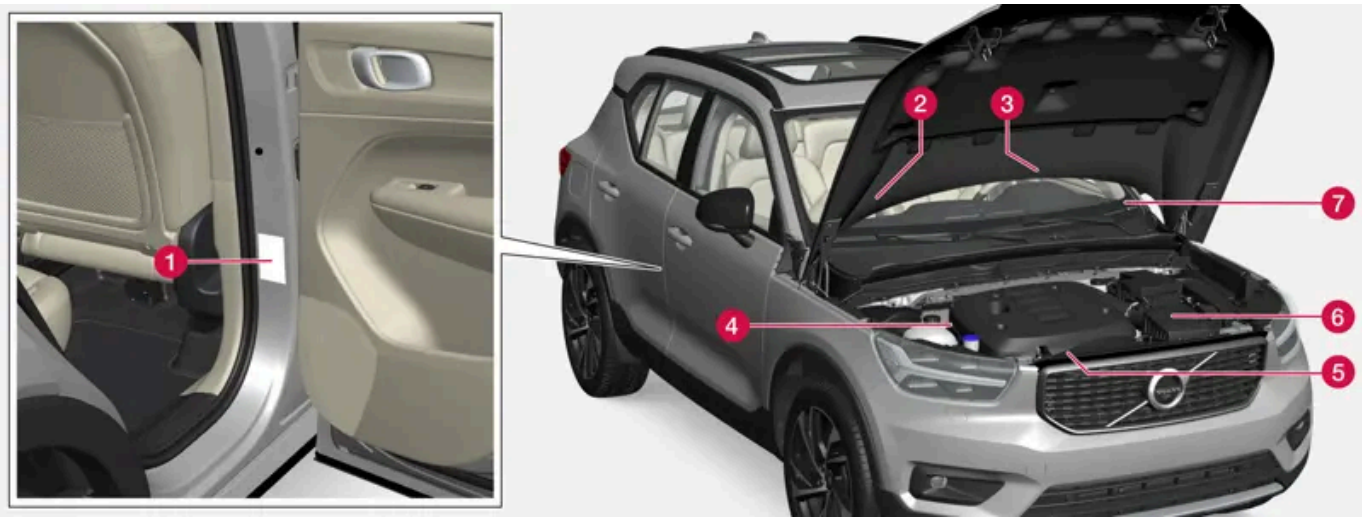
[2] LED (Light Emitting Diode)

[3] Watt

18.6. Type designations

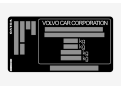
The decals in the car contain information such as chassis number, type designation, colour code, etc.

Label location



The figure is schematic - parts may vary depending on market and model.

Knowing the car's type designation, vehicle identification and engine numbers can facilitate contact with a Volvo dealer regarding the car and when ordering spare parts and accessories.



1 Decal for type designation, vehicle identification number, permissible maximum weights and code designation for exterior colour and type approval number. The decal is positioned on the door pillar, and will be visible when the right-hand rear door is opened.

2 Decal for A/C system for cars with refrigerant R1234yf.

2 Decal for A/C system for cars with refrigerant R134a.

3 Label for parking heater.

4 Decal for engine code and the engine's serial number. For certain engine alternatives there is no decal. In these cases, the engraved engine code can be read directly on the engine instead.

5 Label for engine oil.

6 Decal for gearbox type designation and serial number.

7 Decal for the car's identification number - VIN (Vehicle Identification Number). The decal is located on the top left-hand part of the instrument panel and is visible through the windscreen.

Further information on the car is presented in the registration document.

The content of this manual represents the status of the user manual at the time of printing and may not be completely valid in future instances. For more information, refer to the first page for the complete disclaimer note.

Note

It is not intended that the decals illustrated in the owner's manual should be exact replicas of those in the car. They are included to show their approximate appearance and locations in the car. The information that applies to your particular car can be found on the decal on the car.

18.7. Fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions

The information in the tables below is in accordance with WLTP (Worldwide Harmonised Light-Duty Vehicles Test Procedure), which is an international test method for vehicles.
The fuel consumption for a vehicle is measured in litres per 100 km and carbon dioxide emissions (CO_2) are measured in gram CO_2 per km.

Explanation	
	Urban driving (slow)
	Suburban driving (average speed)
	Extra-urban driving (fast)
	Motorway driving (very fast)
	Combined value (combined driving)
CO_2	Gram CO_2/km
ø	Litres/100 km
man	Manual gearbox
aut	Automatic gearbox
	Low value
	High value

Note

If there is no consumption and emissions data in the table, this is available in an enclosed supplement.

			CO_2	ø	CO_2	ø	CO_2	ø	CO_2	ø	CO_2	ø
T2(B3154T9)	man		203	8.9	152	6.7	135	5.9	164	7.2	158	7.0
			216	9.6	167	7.4	149	6.6	182	8.0	173	7.6

			CO_2	Ø⛽	CO_2	Ø⛽	CO_2	Ø⛽	CO_2	Ø⛽	CO_2	Ø⛽
T2(B3154T9)	aut		226	10.0	163	7.2	140	6.2	164	7.3	165	7.3
			240	10.6	176	7.8	151	6.7	182	8.0	179	7.9
T3(B3154T7)	man		203	9.0	151	6.6	135	5.9	162	7.2	157	6.9
			212	9.4	168	7.4	150	6.6	181	8.0	173	7.6
T3(B3154T2)	aut		225	9.9	162	7.2	140	6.2	163	7.2	164	7.3
			240	10.6	176	7.8	151	6.7	182	8.0	179	7.9
B3(B420T4)	aut		208	9.1	139	6.1	126	5.6	153	6.8	150	6.6
			219	9.6	156	6.9	142	6.2	173	7.6	166	7.3
B4(B420T5)	aut		204	9.0	139	6.2	127	5.6	154	6.8	150	6.6
			221	9.7	158	7.0	141	6.2	172	7.6	166	7.3
B4 AWD(B420T5)	aut		217	9.6	150	6.6	135	6.0	161	7.1	158	7.0
			227	10.0	164	7.2	149	6.6	179	7.9	173	7.6
B5 AWD(B420T2)	aut		256	11.3	167	7.4	145	6.4	172	7.6	174	7.7
			265	11.7	179	7.9	157	6.9	188	8.3	187	8.2

The values in the table above for fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions are based on special drive cycles (see below). The car's weight may increase depending on its equipment level. Together with how heavily the car is loaded, this affects fuel consumption and CO_2 emissions. According to WLTP, every car has unique fuel consumption and CO_2 emission values, depending on how the car is equipped. These values range between the low value and high value in the table above. In many markets, you can find your car's unique fuel consumption and CO_2 emission values in the car's registration document.

There are several reasons for fuel consumption that is higher than the values in the table. Examples of these include:

- If the car is equipped with extra equipment that affects its weight.
- Driving style.
- If the customer chooses wheels other than those mounted as standard on the basic version of the model, this could increase rolling resistance.
- High speed causes increased air resistance.
- Fuel quality, road and traffic conditions, weather and the condition of the car.

A combination of the examples above could increase consumption considerably.

There may be huge deviations in fuel consumption if comparing to the drive cycle profiles (see below), which are used in the certification of the car and on which consumption figures in the table are based. For further information, please refer to the referenced regulations.

> **Note**
>
> Extreme weather conditions, driving with a trailer or driving at high altitudes, in combination with poorer fuel quality than recommended, are factors that considerably increase the car's fuel consumption.

WLTP standard

From and including 1 September 2018, a new standard was introduced for calculating consumption values in the car. The WLTP standard (Worldwide Harmonised Light-Duty Vehicles Test Procedure) represents the average driving conditions for everyday driving. In comparison with the previous standard (NEDC), WLTP takes into account more varied traffic situations and speeds, but also equipment and weight classes. Optional equipment that affects consumption is deactivated during testing, e.g. air conditioning, seat heating, etc. The new standard should provide more realistic figures when it comes to fuel consumption, carbon dioxide and emissions. The values are intended to allow comparison between different cars and not to represent your typical normal consumption.

Drive cycle profiles

A drive cycle simulates actual average driving of the car. The standard is based on four different drive cycle profiles, which are as follows:

- **Urban driving** – slow driving
- **Suburban driving** – average speed driving
- **Extra-urban driving** – fast driving
- **Motorway driving** – very fast driving.

Every drive cycle is determined by different conditions such as speed, time and mileage, for example.

The official value for combined driving, which is shown in the table, is a combination of the results from the four drive cycles, in accordance with legal requirements.

The exhaust gases are collected in order to extrapolate the carbon dioxide emissions (CO_2 emissions) during the four drive cycles. These were then analysed to determine the value for CO_2 emissions.